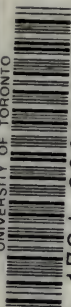
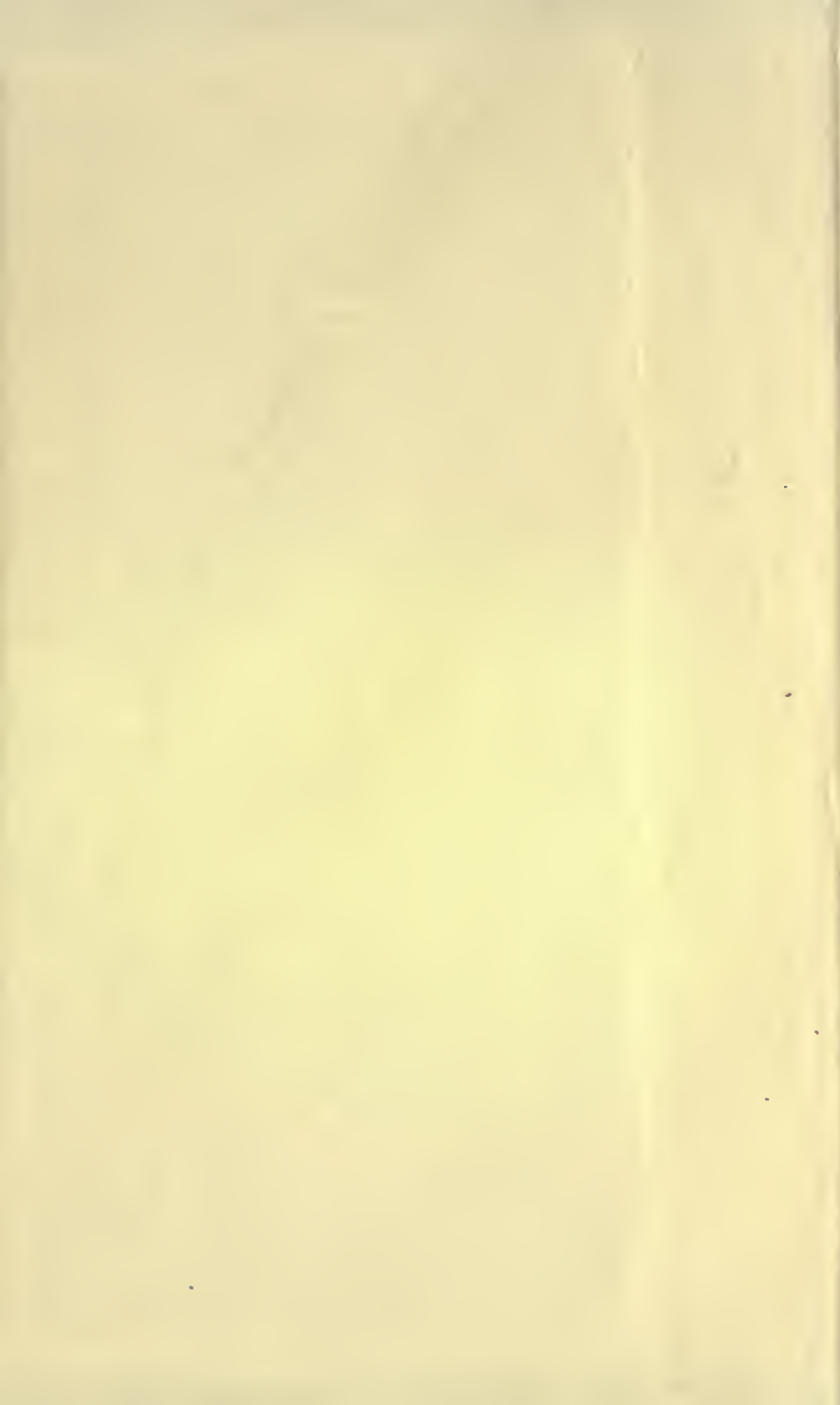
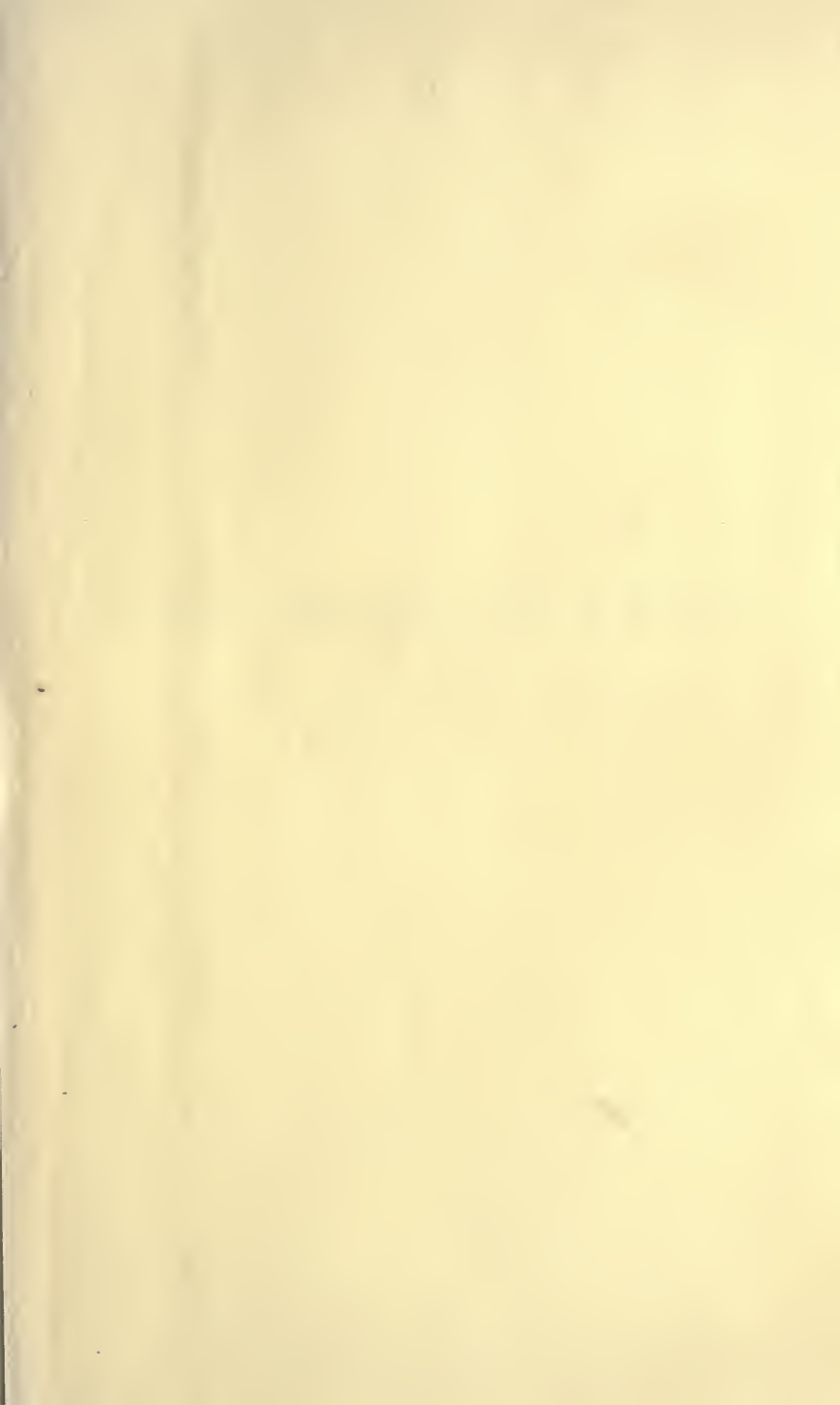


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00361182 9





Caxton's Blanchardyn and Eglantine.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, No. LVIII.

1890.

L
OR THE EA

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

~~Quo
Philol.
Eng.~~

492
23

Carton's

Blanchardyn and Eglantine

c. 1489.

FROM LORD SPENCER'S UNIQUE IMPERFECT COPY,
COMPLETED BY THE ORIGINAL FRENCH AND THE SECOND
ENGLISH VERSION OF 1595,

EDITED BY

DR. LEON KELLNER,
OF VIENNA.

38083
7/10/96

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCXC.

PR
1119
E5
no. 58

Extra Series,
LVIII.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

TO
DR. F. J. FURNIVALL,
THE DISINTERESTED FURTHERER
OF
TRUE SCHOLARSHIP,
THIS BOOK IS DEDICATED.

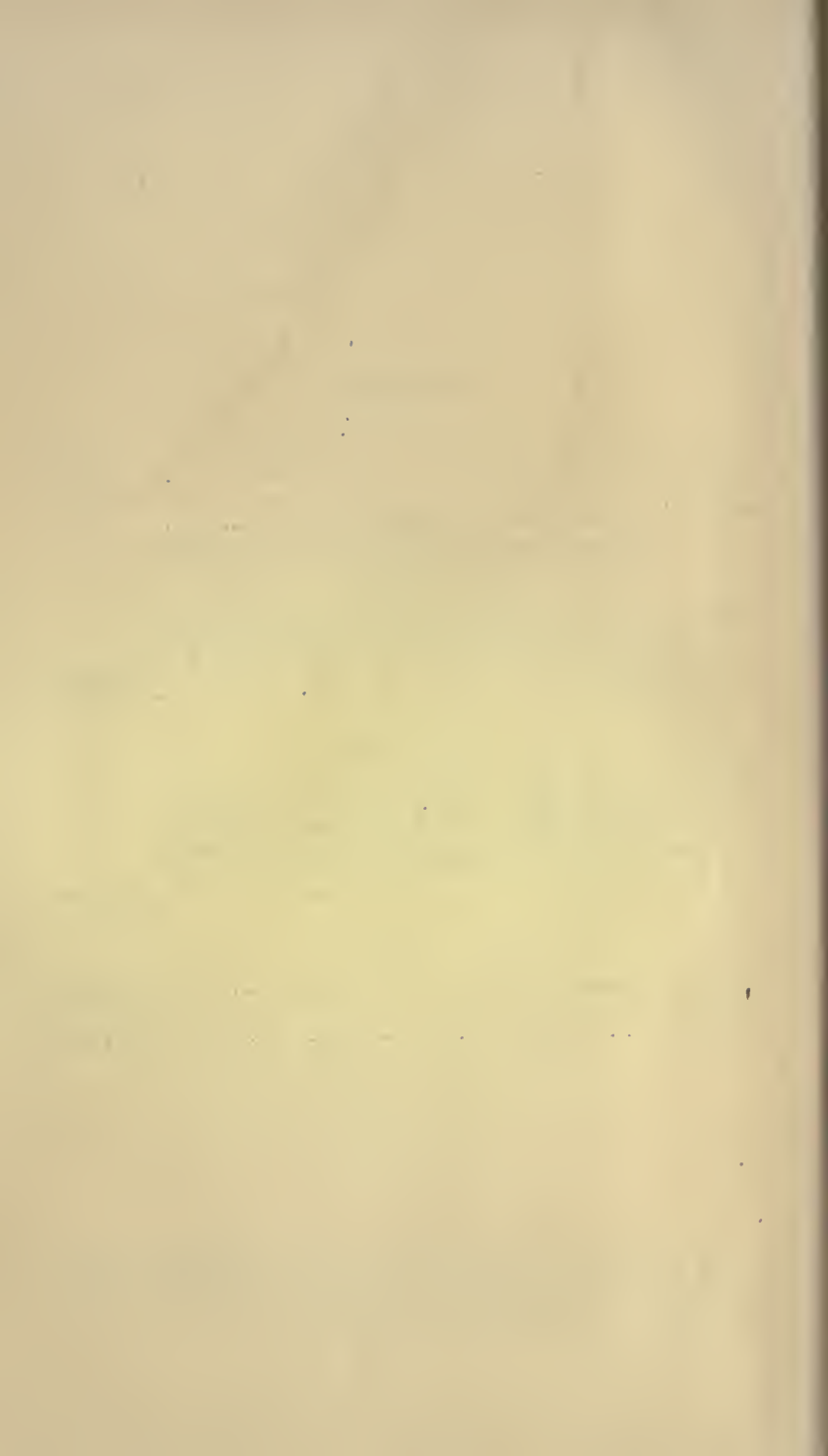
CONTENTS.

	PAGES
INTRODUCTION ON CAXTON'S SYNTAX, STYLE, ETC. ...	v-cxxvii
Caxton's Blanchardyn and Eglantine ...	1-206
(less Leaf VI, supplied from the Paris MS. Bibl. Nat. 24,371, of the French original.)	
Continuation FROM THOMAS POPE GOODWINE'S ¹ EN- GLISHING OF 1595, AND THE PARIS MS. (which ends on p. 219) ...	206-223

APPENDIX.

TITLE-PAGES AND DEDICATIONS OF THE TWO PARTS OF THE Blanchardine and Eglantine OF 1595, BY THOMAS POPE GOODWINE, THEREIN CALLED "P. T. G. GENT," p. 231 ...	225-234
INDEX OF NAMES ...	235-236
GLOSSARY ...	237-242

¹ The unique copy of Part I of the second edition of 1597, in the Public Library, Hamburg, has the name of 'the translator or paraphrast,' Thomas Pope Goodwine, to its Dedication to M. William Peeter (see below, p. 229-233).—Hazlitt's *Collections and Notes* (1876), p. 40.



CONTENTS OF INTRODUCTION.

I. SYNTAX OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

NOUN.

- § 1. *Relations between the Noun and the other parts of speech*, p. v.
- § 2. *Abstract and concrete Nouns interchanged*, p. viii.
- § 3. *Number*, p. ix.
- § 4. *The Nominative Case*, p. xi.
- § 5. *The Genitive Case*, p. xv.
- § 6. *The Dative Case*, p. xxiii.
- § 7. *The Accusative Case*, p. xxiv.
- § 8. *The Article*, p. xxvi.
- § 9. *The Adjective*, p. xxviii.
- § 10. *Personal Pronouns*, p. xxix.
- § 11. *Reflexive Pronoun*, p. xxxv.
- § 12. *The Possessive Pronoun*, p. xxxv.
- § 13. *The Demonstrative Pronouns*, p. xxxvi.
- § 14. *Interrogative Pronouns*, p. xxxvii.
- § 15. *The Relative Pronoun*, p. xxxvii.
- § 16. *The Indefinite Pronouns*, p. xlv.

VERB.

- § 17. *Impersonal Verbs*, p. xlvii.
- § 18. *Intransitive, Transitive, and Reflexive Verbs*, p. li.
- § 19. *Auxiliary Verbs*, p. liii.
- § 20. *Voice*, p. liv.
- § 21. *Verbal Forms in Old English, indifferent with regard to Voice*, p. lv.
- § 22. *Tense*, p. lvi.
- § 23. *Mood*, p. lxi.
- § 24. *Imperative Mood*, p. lx.
- § 25. *The Infinitive. Active and Passive*, p. lxi.
- § 26. *The Simple Infinitive not so much restricted as in Modern English*, p. lxiv.

- § 27. *'To' and 'for to' preceding the Gerundial Infinitive*, p. lxv.
- § 28. *Functions of the Infinitive*, p. lxv.
- § 29. *The Infinitive Absolute*, p. lxvi.
- § 30. *The Infinitive in connection with the Accusative (or Nominative) Case*, p. lxx.
- § 31. *The Infinitive sometimes omitted*, p. lxxi.
- § 32. *The Present Participle*, p. lxxi.
- § 33. *The Past Participle*, p. lxxii.
- § 34. *The Verbal Noun*, p. lxxiv.
- § 35. *The Adverb*, p. lxxvii.
- § 36. *Prepositions*, p. lxxxii.
- § 37. *Conjunctions*, p. lxxxvi.

II. SYNTAX OF THE SENTENCE.

- § 38. *Concord*, p. xci.
- § 39. *Co-ordination instead of Subordination*, p. xciv.
- § 40. *Noun Clauses*, p. xcv.
- § 41. *Change of direct and indirect speech*, p. xcvi.
- § 42. *Adjective Clauses*, p. c.

III. ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

- § 43. *Subject and Predicate (Inversion)*, p. ci.
- § 44. *The Predicative Verb*, p. ciii.
- § 45. *Place of the Object*, p. ciii.
- § 46. *Place of the Attribute*, p. cv.
- § 47. *Place of the Adverb*, p. cvi.
- § 48. *Apposition*, p. cvii.
- § 49. *Contraction*, p. cviii.

APPENDIX.

- I. *Caxton as a translator. His style*, p. cx.
- II. *The Manuscripts and Prints of the Romance*, p. cxvi.

LIST OF BOOKS QUOTED IN THE INTRODUCTION.

- Abbott, A Shakspearian Grammar.
 Aelfric's Homilies. Ed. B. Thorpe.
 Aelfric's Lives of Saints. Ed. Skeat, E. E. T. S.
 Aneren Riwle. Ed. Morton.
 Ayenbite of Inwyt, by Dan Michel. Ed. R. Morris, E. E. T. S.
 Aymon, The four Sonnes of, by Caxton. Ed. Octavia Richardson, E. E. T. S.
 Beowulf. Ed. M. Heyne, Paderborn, 1879.
 Blades, William Caxton, 4^o.
 Blanchardyn and Eglantyne. The present edition.
 Blickling Homilies. Ed. R. Morris, E. E. T. S.
 Boorde, Andrew. Ed. J. F. Furnivall, E. E. T. S.
 Charles the Grete, by Caxton. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, E. E. T. S.
 Chaucer, Boece. Boethius's De Consolatione philosophiæ. Ed. R. Morris, 1886.
 Chaucer Society.
 Chaucer. Ed. R. Morris, 1866, 6 vols.
 Chronicle, Anglo-Saxon. Ed. Earle.
 Cura Pastoralis, Pope Gregory's. Old English Translation. Ed. Sweet, E. E. T. S.
 Curial, Caxton's. Ed. F. J. Furnivall, E. E. T. S.
 Cursor Mundi. A Northumbrian Poem of the 14th Century. Ed. R. Morris,
 I—V. London, E. E. T. S.
 Curtesye, Book of, by Caxton. Ed. F. J. Furnivall, E. E. T. S.
 Einenkel, Streifzüge durch die M.E. Syntax. Münster, 1887.
 Elene, Cynewulf's. Ed. Zupitza. Berlin, 1877.
 Eneydos, Caxton's. Ed. M. T. Culley, E. E. T. S.
 Gascoigne, Steel-Glass. Ed. Arber.
 Genesis and Exodus, Story of. Ed. R. Morris, E. E. T. S.
 Gesta Romanorum. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, 1879, E. E. T. S.
 Gorboduc or Ferrex and Porrex. Ed. L. Toulmin-Smith. Heilbronn, 1883.
 Greene, Robt., Works. Ed. A. Dyce.
 Guy of Warwick. Ed. Zupitza, E. E. T. S.
 Hampole, Prose Treatises. Ed. Perry, E. E. T. S.
 Huon of Burdeux, by Sir John Bouchier, Lord Berners. Ed. S. L. Lee, E. E. T. S.
 Koch, C. F., Historische Grammatik der englischen Sprache II. Second edition.
 Revised by Zupitza.
 Layamon's Brut. Ed. Sir F. Madden.
 Lyly's Euphues. Ed. Landmann. Heilbronn, 1887.
 Marlowe's Works. Ed. A. Dyce.
 Melusine. Ed. A. K. Donald, E. E. T. S.
 Morte Darthur, by Malory. Ed. O. H. Sommer, 1889.
 O. E. H. = Old English Homilies, I. II. Ed. R. Morris, E. E. T. S.
 Old English Miscellany. Ed. R. Morris, E. E. T. S.
 Orm. = Ormulum. Ed. White-Holt.
 Orosius. Ed. Sweet, E. E. T. S.
 Peele's Works. Ed. A. Dyce.
 Piers Plowman. Ed. Skeat, E. E. T. S.
 Schmidt, Alex., Shakspeare-Lexicon.
 Shakspeare's Works. Globe Edition.
 Spenser's Works. Ed. R. Morris.
 Starkey, England in the Reign of Henry VII. Ed. J. M. Cowper and S. H.
 Herrtage, E. E. T. S.
 Trevisa, Higden's Polychronicon. Ed. Churchill Babington and Rawson Lumby.
 Wills, Bury. Camden Society.
 Wills, Early English. Ed. F. J. Furnivall, E. E. T. S.
 Wulfstan, Homilies. Ed. Napier. Berlin, 1883.
 Wyclif's English Works. Ed. F. D. Matthew, E. E. T. S.

INTRODUCTION.

I. SYNTAX OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 1. *RELATIONS between the Noun and the other parts of speech.*

From the logician's point of view, every 'part of speech' has a province of its own, strictly limited and separated from the other 'parts'; but in practice, language constantly cuts the line drawn by Aristotle, and some English students are wont to say that nearly every short English noun and verb can be used as verb, noun, and adjective, while nearly every adjective can be used as a noun: 'a plant, plant-life or plant-culture, to plant; tea, tea-district, we'll tea you at our tent; love, love trifles, to love; his english, English ways, to english; the true, the beautiful; true that line,' &c.

In Old English there are several instances in which both noun and adjective are denoted by the same form of a word, as *earfoð* (difficulty and difficult), *leoht* (light *sb.*, bright *adj.*), *weorð* (worth, *sb.* and *adj.*), *yrre* (wrath, *sb.* and *adj.*); every adjective may be used substantively, in the singular as well as in the plural, in the positive as well as in the comparative and superlative degree; the infinitive and the verbal noun (in *-ung*, *-ing*) may be said to belong to the noun as well as to the verb. Theoretically, the tendency of every literary language of the present day is to observe the laws of logic in grammar and style, and to restrict as far as possible the use of every part of speech to its own dominion, though practically, as stated above, speakers and writers claim and exercise full freedom in this respect. Caxton and his contemporaries did not care to be fettered by niceties of logic, and thus we have to state the following relations, in his books, between the noun and the other parts of speech.

1. *Nouns used as adjectives.*

We have kept in Modern English a few such expressions as 'queen-mother, queen-dowager, lord-lieutenant,'¹ where 'queen,' 'lord'

¹ At the Philological Society's Meeting on Nov. 1., when parts of this Introduction were read as a Paper, the Members divided these 3 sample-words into two classes, I. two nouns, 'queen-mother'; II. noun and adjective, 'queen-dowager,' 'lord-lieutenant.'

are to be looked on more as appositions than as the first part of compounds; and there are others, like 'fellow-creature, deputy-marshal, champion-sculler,' where 'fellow,' 'deputy,' 'champion' are used quite adjectively. But while in Modern English this use is restricted in common speech to a few cases,—I exclude the conscious archaisms in poetry and historic romances,—Caxton is very free in forming such *appositive compositions* :—

the paynem kyng Almodes, *Blanchardyn* 38/2, 90/25, 133/11; a man straunger,¹ *ibid.* 43/9 (original: homme estrange); a knyght straunger,¹ 51/19, 125/33; lady paramours, 78/31, 205/23; leches cyrurgiens,¹ 102/18; kyng sarasyn,¹ 129/8, 133/31 (sarasyn is a pure adjective as well, cf. 131/15); kyng prysoner, 148/5; felon conspiratours, 178/16; felon paynems, 189/1; felon enmyes, 205/25.

This is quite a common Middle English use.

Cursor Mundi—yon traitor juu, 4397; knau barns (male children), 5544. Cf. *Orm. Gloss.* s. v.

Chaucer—a coward ape, III. 198; felon look, V. 9.

Gesta Romanorum—the fole knyght, p. 20; lorell knaue, p. 80; a leper man, p. 190; the traitour servant, p. 316.

Early E. Wills (ed. Furnivall)—the freres prechoures, 17/2.

Morte Darthur—queens sorceresses, 187/27; cf. 212/19. the same traitour knyght, 289/34; cf. 290/17, 294/33.

This use becomes rare in the 16th century, and probably dies out for a time, though it is afterwards revived in literary, if not in common, speech. Berners, in his *Huon of Burdeux*, has still 'a felon traitour,' I. 5/4; 'thou false traitour knyght,' I. 41/26. But the edition of 1601 alters the latter passage into '*trayterous* knyght.' 'Traitor knight' and like expressions will, however, be found in plenty of later poems and romances, though more or less consciously as archaisms.

2. *Adjectives used substantively.*

Compared with its power in Old English, and even in the first two centuries of the Middle-English period, the adjective of the present day has lost a good deal of its vigour and independence. By inflexion, any adjective could formerly express alone what it can now say only by adding a noun: e. g. *se góda* (the good man), *þæt*

¹ This postposition of the adjective-noun, due to French influence, will be dealt with under Arrangement of Words.

gód (the good, in opposition to evil), *þá góðan* (the good ones, the righteous). We can still use: 'the good and evil of this life, of adversity,' &c.; 'the good (*pl.*) shall be happy, the evil (*pl.*) miserable, hereafter.' But in consequence of the inflexion having decayed, the independence of the adjective was to some extent given up, in order to avoid ambiguity. In Modern English prose we only retain—and in the plural only, as to persons—those which exclude all ambiguity, *e. g.* 'the poor and the rich,' always *plural* now, Psalms and Bible used *singular*, or whose ambiguity the context removes. Caxton's use of the adjectives is, in this respect, nearly modern.

The adjectives used substantively may be divided into the following groups:—

(a) Adjectives qualifying concrete nouns, mostly persons.

Specyall = friend, *Blanch.* 84/34; elsewhere, *frende specyall*, 72/10, 73/30, 75/9.

crysten = christians, 154/1, 183/31 (*crysten men*, 140/2).

famylylyer = intimate friend. 'That night noon of them alle, were he neuer so moche her famyllyer, cam to see her,' *Blanch.* 51/16.

the quycke = the quick (living) flesh. Cf. the French: *toucher au vif*, 'loue smote her ayen wyth a darte to the quycke tyll þe herte of her,' *Blanch.* 67/32.

his elder = his elders. 'He passed them that were his elder in age,' *Blanch.* 13/21. Original: *les plus sagies de soy*.

(b) Adjectives used as abstract nouns.

Such adjectives in the positive degree are rarely met with. 'Casuall fryuolles,' *Blanch.* 44/21, translates Old French 'frivoleances.' 'yet ought ye to maynten & holde *thapposite*,' *ibid.* 44/17; in certayne, 97/1.

To this group belong also the adjectives denoting *a.* languages, as: *frenshe*, *Blanch.* 1/24; *englysshc*, 1/24, 2/9; *b.* colours, as: in red, 64/10, 164/5; and *c.* adjectives in the genitive case used adverbially, as: of *freshe*, *Blanch.* 164/12, 165/21; of *newe*, *ibid.* 100/26, 147/18, 195/7. The latter correspond to the Middle English 'newes,' *Story of Gen. and Exodus* (ed. R. Morris), l. 240, and note; of *lyght* = lightly, 129/33.

There is one instance of an abstract adjective in the comparative degree: 'men must suffre, for *better* to haue,' *Blanch.* 68/25.

But it occurs pretty often in the superlative:—The thykkest of the folke = the thykkest press, 42/6, 59/5, 106/8, 167/16; it is for your best, 44/23, 185/19; he sholde do the best and the worst, 48/16; at the last, 188/20, and frequently.

3. *Prepositions used as Nouns*.

'Her best biloued (Blanchardyn) was alle redy com to his aboue ouere Rubyon,' *Blanch.* 85/3; *his aboue* (in this as well as in the following two passages) translates the French *au-dessus*; 'they were come to their aboue of their enmyes,' 142/32; 'ye are therof come to your aboue,' 149/27.

4. *The Adverb used as a Noun*.

There is one instance only in *Blanchardyn*: 'he had called alle his barons and lordes, & alle the gentylmen of there aboute,' 98/16. Cf. Modern English, *the whereabouts*; perhaps also *Aymon*, 59/5: 'ye shall now here and understande from the hensfourthon a terryble and a pyteous songe.'

§ 2. *Abstract and concrete Nouns interchanged*.

Logic classifies nouns, with reference to the mode in which things exist, into concrete and abstract. However, not only in poetry, but also in simple prose both classes are often (as now) interchanged.

(a) Abstracts used in a concrete sense:—

counseyll (as now) = French *conseil*. '(She) spake at that same owre wyth certayne of her counseyll,' *Blanch.* 76/32.

chivalrie = knights. 'I do yelde and delyuere into your handes the kynge of Polonye, your enemye, whiche I haue taken with the helpe of your sone, and of your noble and worthy cheualrye,'¹ 108/34. Cf. *Morte Darthur*, 47/22.

love = lover, sweetheart (as now), 25/2, 26/15, *et passim*. Cf. Gloss. *lover* occurs 30/14.

grace = gracious person. 'I presente this lytyl book unto the noble grace of my sayd lady,' 1/7, 8. ('Her Grace, your Grace,' now.)

Verbal nouns in *-ing*, originally abstracts, often become concrete.

clothing = clothes, *Blanch.* 148/18, 159/32. (*Bible*: 'her clothing was of wrought gold.')

kyssing = a kiss. 'That one onely kyssyng that I toke of yow,' *Blanch.* 134/8.

¹ So in Byron, Macaulay's *Ivry*, &c. &c.

It is doubtful whether 'helpes' in the following passage is correct, or a misprint for *helpers*:¹ 'Would Subyon or not, and all his helpes, the noble lady was taken out of his power,' 197/21. *Helpe* = helper looks suspicious, because it does not occur, so far as I am aware, elsewhere in Caxton; but it is used in the same sense in the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, l. 3409:

And (Ietro) at wið moysen festelike,
And tagte him siðen wittelike
Under him *helpes* oðere don.

Of course 'helpe' is not to be confounded with 'help'; the latter is abstract, the former concrete; cf. *hunte* = hunter. *Layamon*, 21337; *O. E. Hom.* II. 209; *Orm.* 13471; Chaucer, *Knight's Tale*, 1160; *Stratmann*, s. v.; Skeat, *Notes to Piers Plowman*, p. 402.

Abstracts used for concretes are not very common in Middle English:—

Cursor Mundi, *barunage* = barons, 4627, 8533.

Chaucer, *message* = messenger, *Man of Law's Tale*, 333. Cf. *sonde* = messenger, *O. E. Hom.* I. 249, *Story of Gen. and Ex.* Glossary.

Langland (*Piers Plowman*), *retynaunce* = a suit of retainers. Skeat, *Notes to P. Pl.*, p. 46. *treuthe* = a true man, a righteous man, Skeat, *l. c.* 297.

A few are retained in Modern English, as a *justice* = judge, a *witness*, &c.

(b) Concrete nouns used as abstracts.

I know of only one instance in *Blanchardyn*, *chief* = beginning: 'or euer he myght come to the chyeff of his enterpryse,' *Blanch.* 17/4. *chief* is = *cap* (caput), which exactly answers to *heafod*, head. Cf. *Morte Darthur* 144/8: 'ther by was *the hede of the streme*, a fayre fountayn.'

fiel = battle, occurs in *Morte Darthur* 172/17, and is often to be met with in Elizabethan authors: *Gorboduc*, l. 230; Gascoigne, *Steel-Glass*, pp. 58, 63, 64; Spenser, *F. Q.*, I. iii. 379; Shakspeare, Schmidt, s. v.

§ 3. *Number.*

¹ Cf. our 'lady-help,' and 'help' (American), the regular word for servant.

Not all nouns can be used in the singular as well as the plural; some are restricted to the former, some to the latter. The so-called *pluralia tantum*, which are so numerous in Modern English (bellows, gallows, etc.), are not to be met with in *Blanchardyn*. *Tydinge* is used in the singular as well as in the plural. Cf. Gloss., 'well garnysed of *vytaylle*,' *Aymon*, 182/31. *Gallows* occurs three times. 'he shold doo make and to be sette up a galhouse,' 187/24; 'to make him deye upon *the* galhouse,' 189/3; '(he) sawe a payre of galhouse,' 188/2. The French has *les fourches*. To conclude by the spelling, which also occurs in *Four Sons of Aymon*, 331/22, Caxton apparently connected the word with *house*; hence the singular, as proved by the indefinite article in the first instance.

There are several nouns in the singular and singular form, which, according to modern use (save as to 'foot'), should appear in the plural:

'Men see *atte eye* his beaulte,' 54/34, 118/1, 10; 'which of heyght was *XV fote* long,' 56/34, 163/26; '(they) fel both doune humbly at the *fote* of him,' 126/14; 'they followed after at the back of hym, as the yonge lambe do the sheep,' 106/27.¹

On the other hand, we find a few plural forms where we should expect the singular:

'When the fayr beatrix, that at her wyndow was lening her hande ouer her brestes,' 189/11. In Old English, as well as in the other Teutonic languages, 'breast,' even with reference to male persons, was often used in the plural. Cf. Grein, *s. v.* *breost*.

heuens = sky, 43/18, 98/5. The same in Old English, Grein, *s. v.* *heofon*.

shores = shore. 'They were nyghe the lande, where as the sayd mast, and Blanchardyn upon it, was cast of the waves unto the shores,' 97/35; 'he sawe hem in grete nombre, for to fyght nyghe by the see shoris,' 162/4.

Abstracts are, in Modern English, restricted to the singular; in Old and Middle English the plural is very frequent. It then denotes either *singular actions*, as: godnesses, *Orm. Ded.*, 252, 276, etc.; *different kinds of the conception*, as: twa sarinesse beoð, *O. E. Hom.*,

¹ Or lambe = lambren? Stratman quotes 'lombe' as plural from *Robert of Gloucester*, 369.

I. 103, 105; gleadshipes, *Saules Warde*, 263; or the unusual force of the conception:

‘whiche boke specyfyeth . . . of the grete adventures, labours, anguysshes, and many other grete diseases of theym bothe,’ *Blanch.* 2/3, 4; ‘the grete humylyte and courtoysyes that were in Blanchardyn,’ 50/12; ‘sore wepyng & sorowyng his byttirnesses,’ 114/18; ‘they beganne to make grete festes and grete loyes,’ 201/1; ‘other infynyte thynges that are wont to tarry the corages of some enterpryses,’ 17/11; ‘But their corages were neuer the lesse therfore,’ *Aym.* 262/29 (original: couraiges); ‘all rewthis layde aparte’ (French, regretz), 17/8, 20/6; ‘(he) toke ayen his strentthes and corage wythin hymself,’ 190/13; ‘(he) gaff louynge and thankes to our lord,’ 98/6, 119/36, 132/13.

Plurals of verbal nouns (-ing) occur: 26/3 (wepynges); 30/11 (the same); 132/13 (praysynges); 133/29 (the same); 174/10 (sobbynges). Cf. *O. E. Hom.*, I. 103, 105, 253, 255; *Ayenbite of Inwyrt*, 18, 19, 24, 83; *Gesta Rom.*, 174, 176, 235, 287; *Morte Darthur*, 173/14, 193/32; *Huon*, 16/8, 172/17, 325/7, 387/24.

CASES.

§ 4. *The Nominative Case.*

The Nominative in Middle English ranges over a wider area than in Old English. First, its dominion is enlarged in consequence of the other cases losing their characteristic inflexions, and being mistaken for the nominative; secondly, it is used in syntactic connections and expressions which were unknown to the older periods of the English language.

In the struggle between the nominative and the accusative (or dative?) case of the personal pronoun (*ye* and *you*), as late as the end of the 15th century, the nominative is far from being overcome.

1. The first function of the nominative is to express the subject of a sentence. So far as the *logical* subject is concerned, there has been no change from Old English down to Modern English times.

2. But in the course of the 14th and 15th centuries, the grammatical subject became much more frequent and important than ever it was before.

(a) While Old English is very rich in impersonal verbs, there is a tendency in the later periods of Middle English towards the personal expression, that is to say (as Koch puts it), what once appeared as a

dim sensation is made to appear as the conscious action of the free mind. Instead of 'hit hrcóweð, hit sceameð, hit licað, hit langað,' there appear 'I repent, I am ashamed, I like, I long.' This natural development was favoured by two external causes. In such instances as 'Wo was this kyng,' *Chaucer*, II. 193, what is an indirect object was mistaken for the nominative case; and secondly, the French model had great influence. See Chapter VI. on the Impersonal Verbs, p. xlvii, below.

(b) The second encroachment of the nominative on the dative case took place in the passive constructions of transitive verbs governing a direct and an indirect object, or of intransitive verbs followed by prepositions. This innovation was brought about first by the dative and accusative cases being confounded. Objects governed by verbs like 'command, answer,' etc., were consequently looked upon as accusative cases, and were treated as such, so that they became capable of the passive construction.

In Caxton's time, however, that process was not yet completed; hence such expressions as the following, which we still keep: 'as was tolde him by the knyght,' *Blanch.* 43/1; 'all that was told him,' 196/20. See the chapter on the Passive, p. lxi, below.

3. The Nominative absolute wholly supplanted the Old English dative, and became much more popular than the Old English construction (apparently from Latin) had ever been. This use, which is quite common in the 14th century (for Chaucer, cf. *Einenkel*, p. 74, ff.), occurs rather frequently in the time of Caxton, and offers nothing of special interest:—

'*This ansuere y-herde*, Alymodes . . . made his oost to approche,' *Blanch.* 57/28; '*and that doon*, . . . he shall mowe,' etc., 73/24;—preceded by *after*, 94/6; *Charles the Grete*, 44/21, 47/31, 58/31, 61/12, 62/17, and *passim*; *Huon*, 3/29, 39/5.

4. Another function of the nominative case was that in connection *with the infinitive*:—

e. g. 'I say this, be ye redy with good herte To al my lust, and that I frely may As me best liste do you laughe or smerte, *And neuer ye to gruch it night ne day.*'—*Chaucer*, II. 289. See the chapter on the Infinitive, p. lxiv, below.

5. *Interchange of the Nominative and the Accusative cases.*

(a) Though the use of *you* instead of *ye* occurs as early as the middle of the 14th century ('yhow know,' Hampole, *Pricke of Conscience*, p. 127, l. 4659; cf. *Book of Curtesye*, Introduction, p. x), the nominative holds its place on to the time of Henry VIII.

Caxton, as a rule, has preserved *ye*; it is only in the inverted position (imperative, less frequent in interrogative sentences) that *you* is introduced; but the number of *ye*'s, even in that position, prevails.

In *Blanchardyn* there are two *you*'s in the imperative:—

'Come you with me,' 60/28; 'be you sure,' 185/17. (The instances are, of course, much more numerous in *The Foure Sonnes of Aymon* and *Morte Darthur*.)

Aymon. 'But knowe *you*, that Hernyer dyde mysse of his enterpryse,' 90/15; 'Fayr chyl dren, now be *you* sure,' 129/1; 'defye *you* hym on my behalfe,' 157/32; 'now gyue *you* me good counseyll,' 203/14, 361/9, 412/26.

Interrogative sentences. 'What be *you*, fayre knyghte?' 91/25; 'telle me, how thynke *you*?' 170/1; 'what thyng aske *you* of me?' 246/20, 184/31, 291/31, 343/17, 373/29.

Morte Darthur, 206/6, 240/22, 242/14, 251/29, 255/16, 255/33, 269/8, 279/18, etc., etc.

Huon, 33/9, 33/19, 41/5, 79/32, 98/10, 102/5, 110/13, etc.

There are, however, several instances of *you* in another position:

'You holde,' *Aymon*, 26/18; 'Cosin, sayd Reynawde, *you* speke well and wysely,' *ibid.* 132/33; 'now up, Ogyer, and *you*, duke Naymes,' *ibid.* 157/23; 'yf *you* wyl yelde your selfe to his merci,' 189/22, 432/14, 438/10.

(b) There is another instance in which the nominative case has been encroached upon by the dative. That well-known tendency of using absolute personal pronouns in the dative case, which has divided the French pronouns into two different classes (*conjoins* and *absolus*), and which appears in such modern English phrases as 'it is *me*, older than *me*,' is not wholly unknown to Caxton. He always has 'it is I'¹ (never *me*!), but in the following passages, p. xiv, there is apparently a faint germ of that use.

In *Blanchardyn* the dative occurs twice where we expect the nominative case; but there seems to be a sort of mixed construction: 'And syn afre, he lyghtly dyde sette hande on the swerde, of the

¹ Chaucer 'it am I.'

whiche he smote here and there with bothe his handes by suche a strengthe, that *him* that he rought with full stroke was all in to brused,' 63/2,—him that = whom that, for 'he whom,' as if the use of the flexionless *that* threw the case on to *he*; 'and sware that he sholde neuer departe from afore the place unto the tyme that the castel were take, and *theym* of within at his wyll,' 181/31,—'them' for 'they.'

But the passages from *Aymon* do not admit of such an explanation:—

'whan thise wordes were fynysshed, all the foure brethren, and all *theym* of theyr companye arayed themselfe . . .' 78/22; 'the base courte began to be sore moved, and the crye was so great, for al *them* of the dongeon defended themselfe valyantlye,' 94/12; 'But I telle you, upon your feythe that none other shal knowe the same, but only we, *us* three, unto the tyme that the dede be accomplysshed,' 212/30. Cf. *The Curial*, 4/18: 'For ther is nothyng more suspecte to euyl peple than *them* whom they knowe to be wyse and trewe.'

On the other hand, there are striking instances of the nominative being used instead of the dative or accusative case:—

'But at thentree of a forest that was there, they loste their trayne, and went oute of ther waye, wherby they myght not folowe nor ouertake the pucell, nor *they* that brought her with theym.'—*Blanchardyn*, 181/22; 'Go ayen to Tormaday to see the noble lande of that lady, *she* of whom thou art amoureuse so moche,' 186/19.

On this point I cannot refrain from quoting those passages of a 16th century play which contain the same use, as I have never come across any parallel earlier or later. Both in the last passage of Caxton's and in those of *Sir Clyoman and Sir Clamydes* (falsely attributed to Peele, and printed in Dyce's edition of Peele's works, pp. 490—534; see my essay in *Englische Studien*, XIII, p. 187), a pronoun referring as apposition to a noun in one of the oblique cases appears in the nominative:—

To go and come, of custom free or any other task:

I mean *by Juliane, she*, that blaze of beautie's breeding. 491, *b*.

Do never view *thy father, I*, in presence any more. 497, *a*.

Sith that mine honour cowardly was stole *by caitiff he*. *ibid*.

But shall I frame, then, mine excuse *by serving Venus, she*. 501, *b*.

Than thus to see *fell fortune, she*, to hold her state in spite. 505, *b*.

Clamydes, ah, *by fortune, she*, what froward luck and fate

Most cruelly assigned is unto thy noble state. 507, *b*.

Fie on fell *Fortune, she*. 508, *a*.

Although that *with Clamydes, he*, I haue not kept my day. 511, *a*.

Yet though *unto Neronis, she*, I may not show my mind. *ibid*.

Neronis, daughter to the king, *by the king of Norway, he*,

Within a ship of merchandise convey'd away is she. 514, *a*.

So do I fly from tyrant he, whose heart more hard than flint. 515, *a*.

The Foure Sonnes of Aymon and *Huon* contain several striking instances of the nominative instead of the dative case :—

‘Reynawde toke hym, . . . and made all *they* that were wyth hym . . . to be hanged and slayne.’—*Four Sons*, 90/19 ; ‘For never Hector of Troy was worthe *thou*,’ 127/29. ‘Before you and all your barons I haue dyscomfyted in playn batayll *he* that hath brought you into all this trouble.’—*Huon*, i. 46/10. ‘Syr, ye may se here before you *he* that wolde do lyke case agaynst me.’—*ibid*. 288/16. ‘I haue found so nere me *he* that purchaseth my dethe and shame.’—*ibid*. 288/23. On pages 83, 84, and 87, *thou* is apparently a misprint for *you*.

Finally, it is worth stating that *but* and *sauf* (save) don’t govern the accusative as prepositions, but are followed by the nominative, as if they were conjunctions. ‘Noon but *I* have seen it.’—*Blanchardyn*, 43/32. ‘Al be ded sauft *I*.’—*Charles the Grete*, 102/31.

§ 5. The Genitive Case.

(a) The genitive in connection with nouns (and pronouns).

The applicability of this genitive, which was nearly unlimited in Old English, especially in poetry, is rather restricted in Caxton’s time.

1. The first function of this case, viz., that denoting birth and relationship (whence the name *genetivus*), shares its dominion with the dative :—

‘My lady Margarete . . . Moder unto our naturel & souerayn lorde.’—*Blanchardyn*, 1/3. ‘Blanchardyn, sone unto the kynge of Fryse.’—*ibid*. 1/27. ‘Blanchardyn ansuered that he was of the lande of Grece, and sone to a kynge,’ 100/1 ; ‘and sayde to the kynge, fader unto Blanchardyn,’ 174/18 ; ‘daughter to Kyng Alymodes,’ 83/9 ; ‘quene Morgause of Orkeney, moder to Sire Gawayne.’—*Morte Darthur*, 357/25 ; ‘kynge Lots wyf and moder of sir Gawayne and to sire Gaheris,’ *ibid*. 425/12.

2. The objective genitive is not very frequent :—

'She bereth in her herte care ynough and dyspleysure for the loue of him.'—*Blanchardyn*, 73/33, 76/5, 77/25; 'for right mocho he dysyred to shewe hymself, for his *ladyes loue*,' 83/8.

3. The genitive denoting quality is used in the same way as in Modern English; only it is noteworthy that Malory treats it quite as if it were an adjective, so as to use it in the comparative and superlative degree. 'She is the fairest lady and *most of beautie* in the world,' *Morte Darthur*, 357/23; more of beautie, 358/13, 358/18, 360/33, 450/13, and frequently. Instead of *of*, *a* sometimes appears:—

'yf he had been yet man *alyue*, I wolde haue gyuen you tyl his wyff.'—*Blanchardyn*, 93/22. *alyue* = of life; cf. *liues* = alive.—*Rob. of Gloucester*, 301/376; *Owl and Nightingale*, 1632; Morris, note to l. 250 of *Story of Genesis and Exodus*. 'I am not a power to reward the after thy merite.'—*Blanchardyn*, 109/9.

4. The genitive of the personal pronoun instead of the possessive pronoun occurs very frequently:—

(I) 'knewe wel that the story of hit was honeste.'—*Blanchardyn*, 1/11. 'the sowle of the (thee),' 17/21; 'for pryde of her,' 39/14; 'the herte of hym,' 39/33, 64/17, 86/20, 87/31, 92/7, 106/17, 114/32, etc.

This use is especially worth noting, when it occurs in sentences like the following:—

'ye haue exposed the body of *you and of your men*,' 171/20. In Modern English we should say: 'your body *and those of your men*.' Malory once says: 'I pray you hertely to be my good frende and to my sones,' *Morte Darthur*, 406/28.

5. The partitive genitive was not a great favourite with the English of the 14th and 15th centuries. After comparing the use of this case in that time with what it was in Old English, we cannot but conclude that the idea of partition attached to such phrases as *MĀÐMA FELA* (many treasures), *Beowulf* 36, in Old English was about to be supplanted by that of the simple apposition. Apart from the fact that the numerals, as well as many indefinite adverbs and pronouns, no longer governed the genitive, compare the following expressions:—

Robert of Gloucester (quoted by Koch, II², p. 169): 'þe þrydde

del my kingdom, y gene þe,' 285; 'þe þrydde del ys londe,' 711; 'From þe on ende Cornewayle,' 178.

Chaucer (*Einenkel*, p. 93): 'A busshel venym,' IV. 267; 'no morsel bred,' III. 215; 'the beste galoun wyn,' III. 249.

E. E. Wills (ed. Furnivall): 'a peyre schetys,' 4/16, 5/8, 41/24, 76/16, 101/18; 'a peyre bedes,' 5/3.

Bury Wills (Camden Society): 'a pece medowe,' 47; 'a peyre spectaclys,' 15; 'a quart wyne,' 16; 'a galon wine,' 30.

But there was a sudden stop in the development towards apposition instead of the genitive; and at the end of the 15th century there was a sort of reaction in favour of the Old English use. Expressions like those quoted above are not to be met with in Caxton; only a few traces of the Middle English tendency remained.

Maner without *of* occurs in *Blanchardyn* three times: 'by al manere wayes,' 50/19; 'all manere noureture,' 74/8; 'al manere poyntes,' 109/16; while there are 18 instances of *maner* + *of* viz., 28/20, 53/17, 55/27, 58/19, 60/31, 73/34, 93/32, 111/28, 117/27, 119/2, 119/11, 159/34, 174/12, 177/4, 186/8, 188/26, 197/28, 200/18.

Other is used for 'others of.' '*Other* her gentyll women,' 76/31; 'other his prysoners,' 121/25.

Also *any* occurs for 'any of':—

'Affermyng that I oughte rather tenprynte his actes and noble feates than of Godefroy of boloyne or *ony the eight.*'—Caxton's Preface to *Morte Darthur*, 2/1.

In *Aymon* is a curious remnant of what must have been rather common in the 14th century, as Chaucer offers several instances of it. The passage runs as follows: 'but of all Fraunce I am *one of the best & truest knyght* that be in it,' 272/23. These are the parallels in Chaucer:—

'Oon of the grettest auctour that men rede' (5 MSS., one has 'auctours'), III. 234; 'On of the best farynge man on lyue,' III. 8; 'On of the best enteched creature,' V. 35 (cf. *Einenkel*, p. 87).

This odd expression is made up of two constructions: I. 'One the best knyght.' II. 'One of the best knyghtes.' The former, which was at last supplanted by the second, crops up many times in Middle English, and has its parallel in other numerals:—

'Oute of pilke hilles springeþ þre þe noblest ryueres of al Europe.'—*Trevisa*, I. 199. 'I deuyse to Iohane my doughter . . . III. the

best pilwes after choys of the forseide Thomas my sone.'—*E. E. Wills*, 5/9. 'I wyll that Richard my sone haue tweyne my best hors.'—*ibid.* 23/23. 'II. the best yren broches.'—*ibid.* 46/17. 'too the best sanapes,' 101/ 24, *Guy of Warwick* (ed. Zupitza), 8095; 'at two the firste strokes,' *Morte Darthur*, 343/29; 'two the best knyghtes that euer were in Arthurs dayes,' *ibid.* 419/31.

This free use of apposition (instead of the modern genitive) did not die out before the time of James I.:—

'Enough is, that thy foe doth vanquisht stand
Now at thy mercy: Mercy not withstand:
For he is *one the truest knight* aliue.'—*Faerie Q.*, I. iii. 37.

'Or who shall not great Nightes children scorne,
When two of *three her Nephewes* are so foule forlorne?'
Ibid. I. v. 23.

'His living like sawe never living eye,
Ne durst behold; his stature did exceed
The hight *three the tallest sonnes* of mortall seed.'—*Ibid.* I. vii. 8.

'Was reckoned *one the wisest* prince that there had reigned.'
Shakspere, *Henry VIII.*, II. ii. 48.

Apart from this liberty, we have to state a few other noteworthy points respecting Caxton's use of the partitive genitive.

(a) There are numerous instances of the *independent*, or, as it is sometimes called, the elliptic genitive partitive, which is so often met with in Chaucer; cf. 'Of smale houndes hadde sche, that she fedde,' II. 5. Before Chaucer the instances are rare. Perhaps the following passages may be looked upon as approaching that use:—

'hwa se euer wule habbe lot wið þe of þi blisse: he mot dea'e wið þe of þine pine on eorþe.'—*O. E. Hom.* I. 187. 'man eggeð his negebure to done oðer to speken him harm, oðer s(c)ame, and haueð nið eleh wið oðer, and makeð him to forlese his aihte, oðer of his rihte.'—*O. E. Hom.* II. 13. 'þe priue pyeues byeþ þo þet ue steleð nazt of oncoupe ac of priueþ. And of zuichen þer byeð of greate and of smale. þe greate byeð of þe kneade and þe ontrewen reuen.' . . —*Ayenbite*, 37.

Caxton has several instances of this use:—

'(She) tolde hym that she was right wel content of his seruyce, and wolde reteyne hym in wages, and gyue hym of her goodes, for he was worthy therof.'—*Blanchardyn*, 75/5. 'wherof the kyng was right wele content, and reseued hym of his hous.'—*ibid.* 99/21; = as one of his house, or court. (Cf. *Huon*, I. 13/20: 'the two sonnes

of Duke Seunyn of burdeux shal come to the courte, and, as I haue harde say, the kynge hath sayde that, at there comynge, they shal be made *of hys* pryuey counsell.') 'And wyte, that Guynon hadde wyth hym of the beste knyghtes of Charlemagne.'—*Aymon*, 91/18. 'and therefore lete us set upon hym or day, and we shalle slee doune *of his* knyghtes: ther shal none escape.'—*Morte Darthur*, 121/10. '(He) charged hym that he shold gyue hym *of al* maner of metes.'—*ibid.* 214/20. (Cf. *Gesta Romanorum*, 197: 'þe knyghte of baldak sent to the knite of lumbardye *of al* maner thinges.')

This use too was continued in the time of Henry VIII.:—

'I wyll ye take *of* your best frendys.'—*Huon*, 5/25. 'this that I haue shewid you is of truth.'—*ibid.* 61/26. 'I requyre you, shewe me *of* your newes and adventures that ye haue had.'—*ibid.* 566/12. 'Englysh marchauntes do fetch *of* the erth of Irlonde to caste in their gardens.'—*Andrew Borde*, p. 133; cf. p. 170.

From an alteration of the 1601 edition of *Huon* we may perhaps conclude that the English of that time did not relish this use in prose. The original edition has: 'for incontinent they wyll sende *of* theyr shyppes, and take thys shyp,' 212/29; the edition of 1601 alters *of* into 'some *of*.'

(b) Here and there indefinite pronouns like 'much, many (other)' are followed by *of* + *noun*: 'for he hath doon to us this day so moche *of* enyl.'—*Blanchardyn*, 169/22. 'wherof soo many *of* children (were) faderles, and soo many churches wasted.'—*Aymon*, 27/19. 'a grete many *of* prysoners.'—*ibid.* 87/4. But, as a rule, the modern use prevails.

(c) There is another sort of Genitive, which we may, perhaps, not improperly term *pseudo-partitive*, viz. that which appears in sentences like 'a castle of hers, a knight of Arthur's.' It is true, that in many cases we might translate these phrases by 'one of her castles, one of Arthur's knights'; but there are many examples in Middle English which do not admit of such an explanation, and the Modern English use ('that beautiful face of hers!') proves that no idea of partition is included in such expressions. After a close examination of the oldest instances as met with in the 14th century (second half?), we see that they are brought into existence by another necessity.

In Old English the possessive pronoun, or, as the French say, 'pronominal adjective,' expresses only the conception of belonging

and possession; it is a real adjective, and does not convey, as at present, the idea of determination. If, therefore, Old English authors want to make such nouns determinative, they add the definite article:

hæleð mín se leofa, *Elene*, 511; þú eart dóhtor mín seo dýreste, *Juliana*, 166; þæt tæcneð Leoniða on his þæm niðstan gefeolite and Persa, *Orosius*, 84/31; Mammea his sio gode modor, *ibid.* 270/26; mid hire þære yfelan scéonnesse, *Blickling Homilies*, 5/1; openige nu þin se fægresta fæþm, *ibid.* 7/24; þonne bið drihten ure se trumesta staðol, *ibid.* 13/10; hé wolde oferswiðan úrne ðone écan deað, *Ælfric's Homilies*, I. 168/1; úre se ælnihtiga scyppend, *ibid.* I. 192/6; purh his þæs mæran forryneles and fulluhteres ðingunge, *ibid.* I. 364/5. The article preceding the possessive pronoun: se heora cyning, *Orosius*, 56/31; seo heora iugoð, *Blickling Homilies*, 163/3; seo hire gebyrd, 163/9, etc.

In Middle English the possessive pronoun apparently has a *determinative meaning* (as in Modern English, Modern German, and Modern French); therefore its connection with the definite article is made superfluous, while the indefinite article is *quite impossible*. Hence arises a certain embarrassment with regard to one case which the language cannot do without. Suppose we want to say 'she is in a castle belonging to her,' where it is of no importance whatever, either to the speaker or hearer, to know whether 'she' has got more than one castle—how could the English of the Middle period put it? The French of the same age said still 'un sien castel'; but that was no longer possible in English. There's only one instance of indefinite article + possessive pronoun that has come to my knowledge, and that is of the early period of Middle English: *Sawles Warde* (*O. E. H.*, I. p. 265): 'for each an is al mihti to don al þat he wule, 3e, makie to cwakien heouene ba ant eorþe wið *his an finger*' (for one is mighty enough to do all that he desires, yea, to make heaven and earth quake with *one of his fingers*. Translation by R. Morris).¹

We should expect the genitive of the personal pronoun (of me, etc., as in Modern German),—and there may have been a time when this use prevailed,—but, so far as I know, the language decided in

¹ Other instances, however, may have escaped my notice, and it is worth while to search Middle English literature for evidence on this hitherto puzzling point.

favour of the more complicated and rather absurd construction 'of mine, of thine,' etc.

This was, in all probability, brought about by the analogy of the very numerous cases in which the indeterminative noun connected with *mine*, etc., had a really partitive sense (cf. the examples below), and, moreover, by the remembrance of the old construction with the possessive pronoun.

There is a good deal of guesswork in this explanation, of course; but one thing is sure—it was the impossibility of connecting the indefinite article with the possessive pronoun which suggested the new construction. This is proved by indisputable chronological facts.

I. First, we find the indefinite article (or the equally indefinite words *any, every, no*) in connection with *of mine, of thine*, etc. This construction is met with in the 14th century.

II. Next, analogy introduces the indefinite article in connection with the double genitive of a noun, 'a knyght of king Arthur's.'

III. Last, we come across definite pronouns (*this, that*) in connection with *of mine*; and exceptionally the definite article occurs there also in connection with the double genitive of a noun (the knight of kyng Arthur's).

CHAUCER: A friend of his, IV. 130, IV. 257, IV. 356; an hors of his, II. 271; an old felaw of youres, III. 97; eny neghebour of myne, III. 198; every knight of his, II. 239; no maner lym of his, V. 170.—Cf. that ilke proverbe of Ecclesiaste, II. 226; *this my* sentence heere, III. 40; oure wreche is this, oure owen wo to drynke, IV. 184 (*Einenkel*, pp. 86, 87).

Early E. Wills: I will that William . . . be paied of their billes for making off *a livery of myn*, 53/20; 3if any servaunt *of myn* haue labord for me . . . 53/23 (both instances ab. 1420 A.D.); I will that Chace haue a habirion *of myne*, 54/7; he may haue such a good honest booke of his owne, 59/9; every child *of hires* lyuyngē at the day of my decesse haue xx li to their mariage, 107/1.

Bury Wills (A.D. 1434): and more stuff I haue not occupied *of hers*, p. 23; such goodes *of myn* as shall be sold, 24; such tyme as money may be reysid of goodes as shal be sold *of myn*, 36.

In neither of these 'Wills' volumes is there any instance of the second or third stage of the developement of our construction. Cf. *E. E. Wills*: this my present testament, 49/4; similar cases are in 51/5, 79/26, 119/15.

Gesta Romanorum offers instances of II, but not of III: I am forrester of the Emperours, 206; a noþere knyzt of the Emperours, 241.

In CAXTON the *I. group* is represented by numerous instances: And for this cause departeth now my sayd lady from *a castell of hers*, *Blanchardyn* 38/6. (Original: dun sien chastel.) He toke also a grete spere from the hande of *a knyght of his*, *ibid.* 107/32; for the kyng Alymodes hath a daughter of his owne . . . *ibid.* 125/4; a yeoman of his owne, *ibid.* 201/18; a town of his, *Aymon* 69/15; a gentylman of his, 412/29; a neuewe of his, 527/22. Cf. Malory's *Morte Darthur*, 35/35, 38/28, 365/12, 366/2, 369/17, etc.

Group II. is often met with in the *Morte Darthur*: a knyghte of the dukes, 37/7, 9; Syre gawayne, knyghte of kyng Arthurs, 146/30; I am a knyghte of kyng Arthurs, 153/32, 263/31, 263/34, 330/22, 331/19; a trusty frende of Sir Tristrams, 363/8; and ryght so cam in knyghtes of kyng Arthurs, 386/29; and he had gotten hym ten good knyghtes of Arthurs, 459/33; and therewith foure knyghtes of kyng Markes drewe their swerdes to slee syre Sadok, 469/30, 521/24, 522/12, 635/21.—In two instances *s* is omitted: Thenne came forth a knyght, his name was lambegus, and he was a knyght of syr Trystrem, 318/16; there was a knyghte of kyng Arthur, 331/17.

The frequent occurrence of this genitive in connection with Arthur and his knights has often (in English Grammars, &c.) suggested the supposition that there is a sort of ellipsis in this construction: a knyghte of kyng Arthurs = a knyghte of kyng Arthurs *court*.¹ But first of all, such instances as 'a trusty frende of syr Tristrams,' 'I am forester of the Emperors,' do not admit of such an explanation—unless we say 'among Sir T.'s friends,' 'among the Emperor's foresters';—and secondly, there are no other examples of this elliptic construction in Caxton or Malory.

Of Group III., there are *two* instances in *Blanchardyn* with *that*, and a few with the definite article in *Morte Darthur*:

'as for to wene to haue her, thou haste *that berde of thyne* ouer whyte therto; thy face is so mykel wonne, and *that olde skynne of thyne* ys ouer mykel shronken togyder,' 186/22-25. Original: 'vous auez la barbe trop grise, la face trop usee, et le cuir trop retrait.'

Elsewhere Caxton is not afraid of using *this* in connection with the possessive pronoun. Cf. *this my towne*, *Blanch.* 73/18; *this her werre*, 90/1.

¹ Cf. two knyghtes of kyng Arthurs Courte, 297/1, 6, 16, 298/33, etc.

There are two passages in *Morte Darthur* belonging to this group: 'Alle the knyghtes of kynge Arthurs,' 330/9; 'he sholde haue her and her landes of her faders that sholde falle to her,' 488/14;—in both instances the partitive genitive is wholly excluded.

B. The Genitive governed by adjectives and verbs is, on the whole, the same as in Modern English. But it is worth noting that the ideas of *reference* and *cause* are still expressed in Caxton by *of*, while, in Modern English other prepositions (*in, as to, with &c.*) are preferred.

(a) Reference :—

The childe grewe and amended sore of the grete beaulte . . . *Blanchardyn*, 13/6; of the tables and ches playing, and of gracious and honeste talkynge, he passed them that were his elder in age, 13/9; demaunding of the batailles of Troy, 14/13, 15/8; sore troubled of wyttis, 45/8; nought dominaged of nothing, 48/31; there was no man that of prowes and worthynes coude go beyonde hym, 65/21; wele shapen of alle membres, 99/14; sore chaunged of face, 145/30; what wyl you do of me?, 146/16. Cf. 150/25, 178/21, 184/6, 193/14;—*Aymon*, 54/25, 64/5, 290/32;—*Morte Darthur*, *passim*.

(b) Cause :—

(They) judged hem self right happy of a successoure legytyme, 12/17; (the kyng) that of this adventure was ful sory and dolaunt, 21/4; *Blanchardyn* sore angry and euyll apaid of that he sawe . . . 28/13; sore passioned of one accident, 68/20;—*thank of*, 49/33, 60/25; pardon of, 50/9, 10.

Of is sometimes replaced by *ouer*: Right enamored they were ouer hym, 66/25; auenged ouer hym, 86/30. Once *for of* occurs: and also *for of* the grete dysplesure that he had . . . 111/34.

(c) For the Genitive used adverbially, see *Adverb*, p. lxxvii.

§ 6. *The Dative Case.*

After the decay of the Old English inflection there was a tendency to make up for it by the preposition *to*. But from the time in which the *Old English Homilies* were composed, down to our own days, *to* never became the rule.

In CAXTON *to* is often used after verbs, where we omit it, especially after *tell*:—

Now anon brynge *to me* myn armes, *Charles the Grete* 48/15; but on the same page: he shold brynge hym hys armes, l. 4; after

brought he hym hys hors, l. 22. I assure *to* you by my faith that I shall do it . . . *ibid.* 49/30; I graunte *to* you alle my goodes, *ibid.* 50/3; I do *to* the grete amytte, *ibid.* 55/34. Cf. *Blanchardyn*, 20/17; *Aymon*, 362/31, 367/9.

Tell. and whan thou hast told *to* me thy name . . . *Charles the Grete*, 53/16; I telle *to* the, *ibid.* 54/17. Cf. 55/2, 57/23, 61/3, 86/5, etc.

Demand is usually followed by *of*; but there is an exception, perhaps brought about by French influence: 'Thenne cam kyng Alymodes forthe, and demaunded *to* the stywarde' . . . *Blanchardyn*, 283/23. *Require*, also, occurs with *to*: *Blanchardyn*, 168/3; *Aymon*, 34/20. *Ask*, followed by two objects, occurs: *Aymon*, 362/31; (he) asked for hym *to* two of his men.

There is one instance of *offend* + *to*: 'Yf there be ony man here that I haue offended *unto*,' *Morte Darthur*, 292/19.

The *Ethic Dative* is not frequent in Caxton:

'A right grete and impetuousse tempeste rose, that lasted *us* thre dayes,' *Blanchardyn*, 100/9; their sorrowe redoubled *them* full sore, *ibid.* 119/34; the bloode ranne *me* doune, *Aymon*, 88/19. (But ye withdrawn *me* þis man.—Chaucer, *Boethius*, ed. Morris, p. 7. Caxton has: fro me.)

§ 7. *The Accusative Case*.

A. The Accusative Case, as governed by transitive verbs, sometimes differs in *Caxton* from the modern use.

Besides such verbs as 'demand, require, serve, tell,' quoted above, *behold* is followed by *of*, e. g. *Aymon*, 391/26; and especially noteworthy is the construction of *swear*. In Middle English this verb is followed by *on*. Cf. *Chaucer*, IV. 363: and this *on* every God celestial I swere it yow, V. 222. Caxton uses 'swear' as a transitive verb, and makes the accusative case follow it: he sware his Godes, *Blanchardyn*, 92/25, 107/22; swore God, *Aymon*, 38/4, 73/14, 87/10, 185/4, 201/33, 459/11, 471/7, 515/7, 526/17. In *Aymon* are only three examples of 'swear' followed by a preposition: (he) sware *by* God, *Aymon*, 61/29; he sware *by* saint Denys, *ibid.* 411/11; I swere *upon* all sayntes, *ibid.* 85/4.

From one passage of the *Ayenbite*, and another in *Blanchardyn*, we may safely infer that this use is due to French influence.

Ayenbite, p. 6: *huo þet zuereþ wiþ-oute skele þane name of oure lhorde . . . he him uorzuereþ*, *Blanchardyn*, 107/22; The kyng of polonye . . . sware his goode goddes, that he sholde neuer haue loye at his herte. Original: 'jura ses bons dieux.'

Dan Michel always translates literally; and Caxton too, in this case, introduced the French construction.

The *Cognate Object* occurs several times:

And there she had not been no longe whyle, when she had *perceyued* the playn *choys* and *syght* of a right grete and myghty nauye, *Blanchardyn*, 56/2; (*choys* = *syght*). deye a shamefull dethe, *ibid.* 190/4, and very often in the other works of Caxton. I rebuke hym neuer for no hate that I hated hym, *Morte Darthur*, 349/4; the good loue that I haue loued you . . . *ibid.* 364/4.

B. The *Accusative absolute* is used with great freedom by Caxton and Malory, and even by Berners. Instances abound. I quote only a few to illustrate my statement:—

He fonde hym *the terres* (= *tears*) *at the eyes of him* makynge his full pituouse complayntes, *Blanchardyn* 123/24; (there) he toke a bote, prest and garnysshed wyth eight goode felawes, eche of them an ore in his hande . . . *ibid.* 154/7; The good erle, then, the prouost, and the knyghte of the fery, their swerdes in their handes naked, toke and seysyd her by force, *ibid.* 180/19; Thenne came syluayn, his felawes wyth hym, and ascryed the two barons to dethe, *ibid.* 205/19. Original: 'siluain auant avec ses compaignons.'

C. For the Accusative with Infinitive, *see Infinitive*, p. lxx.

D. The *Adverbial Object* exhibits some peculiarities worth stating.

(a) Time. *Never the days of her lyff* she sholde wedde paynem nor no man infidele, *Blanchardyn*, 65/15. Malory has: *neuer his lif*, 127/23; cf. Chaucer. Imeneus, that god of weddyng is, Seigh neuer his lif so mery a weddid man, II. 333; many a wighte hath loued thyng he neuer saugh his lyue, V. 8 (cf. *Einenkel*, p. 52; Zupitza, note to *Guy of Warwick*, ll. 1747-8); (he) wend neuer to haue come *tyme enough*, *Blanchardyn*, 158/4. Original: 'a tans (temps).' Cf. 170/5; *Aymon*, 265/19, 343/5; *Morte Darthur*, 228/24; *Huon*, 332/8, 334/10.

That tyme, in *Morte Darthur*, 48/8, is equivalent to 'at that tyme,' *ibid.* 49/16. Cf. the same tyme, *Blanchardyn*, 127/13, 128/8, 143/29; and at that same houre, 139/8; at the tyme, 194/32; *Morte Darthur*, 363/35; and the instructive example, *Morte Darthur*, 356/7, 8: *sometyme* he was putte to the werse by male fortune, and *at sometyme* the wers knyghte putte the better knyghte to a rebuke.

(b) *Manner.*

Seeyng that noon *otherwyse* he myghte doo, *Blanchardyn*, 30/26; and noon *otherwyse* wyll I doo, *ibid.* 93/25; the best wyse that he myght or coude, he ordeyned his bataylles, 162/27, 171/32;—but we find too: *in* like wise, 98/23; *in* the best wyse, 125/24, 166/2.

Chaucer never uses *other wyse*; only *other weye*, *other weyes*. Cf. *Einenkel*, p. 66.

§ 8. *The Article.*

There are several remarkable peculiarities about Caxton's use of the Article.

(a) Nouns in the Vocative case are preceded by the definite article instead of O:—

'Sith that we haue lost thee, farewell *the ioye* of this world!' *Aymon*, 574/30; 'Then syr Launcelot cryed: *the knyght* wyth the blak shelde, make the redy to Iuste wyth me!' *Morte Darthur*, 392/16.

(b) Possessive Pronouns used substantively are sometimes preceded by the definite Article:—

'Thenne toke the pronost his spere, and so dyde Blanchardyn *the his*,' *Blanchardyn*, 48/20 (Original: *la sienne*); I praye you that euery man force hymself to do worthily hys deuoyr, that your worship and *the oures* be kepte, *Aymon*, 72/21; In whiche he hath not rendred the reason or made any decision, to approve better *the his* than that other, *Eneydos*, 23/19.

(c) Numerals denoting part of a whole are sometimes preceded by the definite Article:—

'And yf peraventure one of them dare not come allone hardyly, late come *the two* or thre or foure of the moost valyauntest' . . . *Charles the Grete*, 41/27; and yf *the foure* dare not come, late come fyue, *ibid.* 29. Cf. *Morte Darthur*, 355/5: wete thou wel, said sir Tristram, *the one* of us shalle dye or we departe.

In all these three groups Caxton copied only too faithfully his French originals. I do not know of any other Middle English instance of 'the his'; but as for 'the two,' there is the authority of Chaucer and the unknown translator of the *Romaunt of the Rose*, if not to sanction it as a good Middle English expression, at least to excuse it:

And sins he ran . . . And borwed him large boteles thre; and in *the two* his poysoun poured he; The thrid he keped clene for his

drynke, *Cant. T.* III. 103; And if thou maist so fer forth wyne, That thou resoun derst byginne, And woldist seyn thre thingis or mo, Thou shalt fulle scarsly seyn *the two*.—*Romaunt of the Rose*, V. 77/8.

Perhaps the following expressions too may be attributed to French influence:—

The captayne gaff *the* goode nyght to the damoyselle, *Blanchardyn*, 51/27 (Original: *la bonne nuit*); and gaff hym *the* goode nyght, *ibid.* 74/26; onely the captayne of Tormaday, that cam for to make unto her *the* reuerence, *ibid.* 51/17. Cf. 77/2, 158/16: *Blanchardyn* coude not kepe hymself, but that *the* grete teerys dropped fast out of his eyen, *ibid.* 145/33.

(d) Before two adjectives qualifying one noun, the Article is often repeated:—

He sawe there under in a playn a moche ample and *a* grete medowe, *Blanchardyn*, 32/2; the prouoste of the towne dyde ordeyne a stronge and *a* bygge warde, 58/20; ye be enamored of a hyghe and *a* ryche prynesse, 75/7; he was a ryght valyaunt and *a* hardy prynce, 113/20; makynge *a* grete and *a* solempne oath, 177/16.—There are, in *Blanchardyn*, but two exceptions¹: A noble and victorious prynce, 1/26; the rude and comyn englysshe, 2/9.

(e) The definite article is repeated where one of the two adjectives is in close connection with the noun. Thus in *Blanchardyn* 'proude' and 'pucelle' are looked upon as one noun, hence the following expressions:—

The right gracious and fayre, *the* proude pucelle in amours, 76/30; the fayer, *the* proude pucell, 83/12; the right desolate, *the* proude pucelle, 89/29; cf. 94/9, 96/7, 127/10, 129/29. There are two exceptions: the fayr pucelle and proude in amours, 128/8; the fayr proude mayden, 131/10.

(f) There are three instances (in *Blanchardyn*) of the indefinite article used in analogy to *such* + *adjective* + *a*:—

It nedeth not to be doubted that he is come to his extremyte of prowes and valyantes, wythout that amours hathe be the cause in the persone of *some hyghe a* prynesse, 72/20; hy gaf to hym-self grete merueylle, and was wel abashed of *that soudayne a* wyll that was come to hym, 126/9; which is the most fayr, and the most

¹ These are where Caxton is writing his own English, not englishing another man's French. I wish all his Prologues and Epilogues, as collected in Blades's quarto, could be examined for other contrasts of his phrasology.—F. J. F.

noble, and the most complete a lady, and most pleasaunt of all the remnaunt of the world, 156/13.

§ 9. *The Adjective.*

For adjectives used substantively see § 1, p. vi. For the arrangement of noun and adjective see the chapter below, on 'The Arrangement of Words.' The tautology in the formation of the comparative and superlative degree (more better, most best) so well known from Shakspeare, occurs here and there in Caxton, and is extremely frequent in *Morte Darthur* :—

more werse, *Blanch.* 23/33; more better, *ibid.* 91/35; the most valyauntest, *Charles the Grete*, 41/27; more sonner, *ibid.* 44/18; most next, *ibid.* 44/17; more gretter, *Curial*, 5/13. *Morte Darthur*, 74/37, 142/8, 144/29, 35; 148/5, 215/29, 218/3, etc.

Adjectives referring to preceding nouns are *not* yet followed by *one* :—

So grete a stroke and so *heny* he gaffe hym, *Blanch.* 62/22; god hath well kept hym from so moche an hap and so hyghe, 75/24; a trusty man and secret, 81/23, 86/17, 97/20, 110/2, 156/14, 163/4, 169/17, 178/2, 179/5, 200/29. *Aymon*, 392/9, 504/20. *Morte Darthur* constantly.

But the Middle English use of 'one' following a noun is met with in Malory several times :—

There lyueth not a bygger knyght than he is *one*, 72/22; (it) was grete pite that so worthy a knyght as he was *one* shold be ouermatched, 87/35; such yong knyghtes as he is *one* . . . ben neuer abydyng in no place, 251/25. Cf. Chaucer: For in my tyme a seruaunt was I *on*, II. 56, V. 112. The oldest instance quoted by Mätzner, *Glossar*, is from *Robert of Gloucester*, p. 17: 'a wonder maister was he *on*;' but without the preceding article, the use goes as far back as the *Ormulum* :—

þatt 3ho wass adi3 wimmann *an*
All wimman kinn bitwenen. 2333.

So far as I know, but one instance occurs in Caxton of *one* following an adjective :—

And after whan thou shalt haue employed thy body, thy tyme and thy goodes for to deffende the, another *neue one* cometh to the courte, and shall supplante thy benediction.—*Curial*, 12/13.

The syntax of the numerals is that of our own day.

THE PRONOUNS.

§ 10. Personal Pronouns.

(a) Cases interchanged. See § 4, p. xi.

(b) Use of *thou* and *ye*.

Thou is used from superiors to inferiors, or from equals to equals as a sign of contempt or defiance:—

Lohier, the son of Charlemagne, delivering his message to the duke Benes of Aygremonthe, addresses him with '*thou*,' *Aymon*, pp. 24, 25; and so do all the knights challenging each other to fight. Instances abound.

In many cases *thou* and *ye* are used in the same speech:—

Blanchardyn. Eglantyne always addresses her lover with '*ye*'; but on p. 109 the following passage occurs: 'Ha, my right trusty frend . . . that hath ben the pyler, susteynyng under *thy* swerde bothe myself and all my royaulme, I am not a power to rewarde *the* after the meryte that *ye* deserued to haue of me. Well *ye* haue shewed . . . the excellent vertu of humylite that is in *you*,' etc., ll. 9 ff. Again, Beatrice addressing her father Alymodes with contempt, says: 'medel *thou* nomore wyth loue, leue thys thoughte, and make no more *thyne* accomptes for to entre wythin thir cite; for yf *ye* haue taken and bounde my husband . . .' 186/28 ff.

Aymon. Ogier the Dane addressing his sword Cortyne: 'Ha, Cortyne that so moch I haue loued *the*, and, certes, it is wel rayson, for *ye* be a good swerde, and in many places *ye* haue wel holpen me,' 268/1 ff.

—Charlemagne asks Rypus to hang Richard: 'Rypus, yf *ye* wyll do soo moche for me that *ye* wyll go hange Rychard, I shall make *the* lord of grete londes,' 333/6—8.

—Mawgis blaming Rypus: 'Ha, rypus, *thou* traytour, euyll man, *ye* haue always be redy for to doo some euyll against us, but sith that I haue found *you* here I shall not seke *you* nowhere else,' 339/17 ff. Cf. 435/10 ff., 468/8 ff.

Morte Darthur. The lady's thanking Sir Lancelot for his killing the giant: 'For *thou* hast done the most worship that euer dyd knyght in this world, that wyll we bere recorde, and we all pray *you* to tell us *your* name,' 199/15 ff.

—Sir Raynold addressing Lancelot: '*thou* art a strong man, and I suppose *thou* hast slayn my two brethren . . . I wolde not haue a doo wyth *you*,' 202/35 ff. Cf. 209/14, 211/8, 214/13, 224/20, 226/5, 227/14, 234/14, etc.

This change of the pronoun in the address may be observed even in good Elizabethan prose :—

‘Young gentleman, althoug[h] my acquaintaunce be small to intreate *you*, and my authoritie lesse to commaund *you*, yet my good will in giuing *you* good counsaile should induce you to beleue me, and my hoarie haire (ambassadors of experience) enforce *you* to follow me, for by howe much the more I am a straunger to *you*, by so much the more *you* are beholdinge to mee, hauing therefore opportunitie to vtter my minde, I meane to be importunate with *you* to followe my meaninge. As *thy* birth doth shewe the expresse and liuely Image of gentle bloude, so *thy* bringing vp seemeth to mee to bee a greate blotte to the linage of so noble a boutē, so that I am enforced to thincke, that either *thou* dyddest want one to giue *thee* good instructions, or that *thy* parentes made *thee* a wanton wyth too much cockeringe; either they were too foolishe in vsinge no discipline, or *thou* too frowarde in reiecting their doctrine, eyther they willinge to haue *thee* idle, or *thou* wylfull to be ill employed.’—Lyly, *Euphues*, p. 2, ed. Landmann.

Philautus answering to Euphues: ‘friend Euphues (for so *your* talke warranteth me to terme *you*), I dare neither vse a long processe, neither louing speach, least vnwittingly I should cause *you* to conuince me of those thinges which *you* have already condemned. And verily I am bolde to presume vpon *your* curtesie, since *you yourself* haue vsed so little curiositie, perswading my selfe that my short answer wil worke as great en effect in *you*, as *your* few words did in me. Try all shall proue trust; heere is my hand, my heart, my lands and my lyfe at *thy* commaundement: *Thou* maist well perceiue that I did beleue *thee*; and I hope *thou* wilt the rather loue me, in that I did beleue *thee*.’

Lucilla, declaring her love to Euphues, uses both *thou* and *you*.—*Ibid.* p. 50.

Cf. *New Custom* (Dodsley’s Collection, ed. Hazlitt, Vol. IV.), p. 18; *Trial of Treasure* (*ibid.*), p. 264; Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, l. 189 ff.; Greene, *A Looking-Glass for London and England*; for Shakspeare, see Abbott, § 231.

(c) Personal pronouns are emphasized by a preceding *it is*. It is he . . . *Aymon*, 33/9, 251/18; it is she, *Blades*, p. 166; it was I, *Morte Darthur*, 38/21, 83/25. In *Malory* the older expression occurs several times: I am he, 36/18; I was he, 67/7.—‘It is *me*’ was never used by Caxton, though he had the strong temptation of the French.

(d) Pleonastic use of the personal pronoun. If the predicate is separated from the subject by any adverbial, participial, or adjectival (relative) clause, a personal pronoun is pleonastically inserted to mark the subject:—

The proude pucelle in amours, with what payne and grief that it was, atte thynstaunce and requeste of her sayd maystresse, *she* mounted anon upon her whyte palfray, *Blanch.* 45/4; The kyng thenne, after the knyght had thus spoken to hym, *he* gaff commandment . . . *ibid.* 102/16; How Gryffon of Haultefelle and Guenelon, after that they hadde slayne the Duke Benes of Aygremonte, *they* retorned to Paris, *Aymon*, 58/13; whiche, whan he sawe that Guycharde was entred into the castell, *he* retorned ayen, *ibid.* 73/6; the whiche whan he founde not his master in the chirche, *he* was al abasshed, *ibid.* 573/16; the damoyssel that came from la Beale Isoud unto syr Tristram alle the whyle the tournaiment was advoynge *she* was with Quene Guenever, *Morte Darthur*, 389/8; thenne Kyng Arthur with a grete egre herte *he* gate a spere in his hand . . . *ibid.* 391/18, 395/37.

This pleonasm is very frequent after participle clauses:—

Thenne one of the daughters of the provost, *knowyng* that Blanchardyn was armed and redy to goo out wyth her fader, *she* cam and brought with her a fayre whyte coueryng . . . *Blanch.* 61/5; the Kyng Almodes, *seeynge* the grete prowes that was in Blanchardyn, and that non so hardy durste approche hym, *he* began to crye aloude . . . *ibid.* 88/18; cf. 126/17, 128/28, 129/27, 138/9, 144/14, 150/19, 152/33, 167/12, 170/2, 173/24, 181/15.

But the pronoun was not the rule. The number of the passages quoted above is 13; but there are 16 (in *Blanchardyn*) where the pronoun is omitted, 22/20, 26/17, 27/23, 33/3, 41/27, 48/1, 50/1, 53/2, 56/12, 57/24, 93/11, 118/10, 148/22, 152/9, 166/30, 169/16. This use crops up very often in the *Gesta Romanorum*, pp. 3, 5, 45, 171, 209, 210, 221, 233, 235, 276, 316, 335.

After adjectival or relative clauses this use may be traced back to the earliest periods of the English language. A few instances will suffice for the present occasion:—

Ælfred's Orosius. Ac þa lond on east healfe Danais þe þær nihst sindon, Albani *hi* sind genemne, 14/23; and he Ninus Soroastrem Bactriana cyning, se cuðe manna ærest dry cræftas, *he hine* oferwinnand ofslöh, 30/10; cf. *ibid.* 12/16, 26/20, 72/13, 98/2, 124/16, 188/26, 204/6.

Cura Pastoralis. Ure ældren, þa þe þas stowa ær hioldon, *hie* lufedon wisdom, p. 4; cf. 22.

Blickling Homilies. Lazarus, þe Crist awehte þy feorpan dæge pæs þe he on byrgenne wæs ful wunigende, *he* getaenað þysne mid-dangeard, 75/4; cf. 85/25, 147/2.

Ancren Riwele. þeo ilke þet he bledde vore ne brouhten heo him to presente ne win et. 114.

O. E. Hom. I. pp. 3, 7, 9, 253; II. pp. 15, 19, 41, etc. *Old English Miscellany*, pp. 17, 18, 40. *Story of Gen. and Exodus*, ll. 1003-4, 1065, 3839. *Cursor Mundi*, ll. 283, 285, 7184, 8940, 9014, etc., etc.

Caxton exhibits several instances of this pleonasm:—

He that wyll bee enhaunced in price, *he* oughte not to looke so nyghe, *Aymon*, 354/23; *he that* beginneth a game, *he* oughte to see an ende of it to hys proffyte, 355/6; and again the Frenshemen *that* sawe their kynge come agen, *they* were ryght glad, 413/19; for he that had ony mete, *he* hyd it incontynent, 422/2; and Charlemagne, that sawe aymon goo thus quyte, and that he had garnyssed mountalban of vytayllis, *he* was full angry for it, 436/14; this mornynge, thenne, reynawde *that* was wythin ardein, after that he had herde his masse, *he* called his thre bredren, 476/10; and thenne therle Faffras that was a worthy knyghte and a wyse, *he* wente to the gate of saynt stevyn, and kepte hym there, 504/21; for he that shall deye in the sawtyng of the holy cite, *he* shall be saved wythout doubte, 512/8.

There are many instances of the pleonastic personal pronoun after the compound relative *who that* or simple *who* = whosoever.

And who had seen him at that tyme, *he* wolde not haue trowed that he had be a man . . . *Blanch.* 194/21; who soever rekeneth wythoute his hoste, *he* rekeneth twys, *ibid.* 202/6; *who that* beleueth ouermoche in dremes, *he* doth agenste the commaundemente of god, *Aymon*, 222/12; *who that* doth you goode, *he* leseth well hys tyme, 269/18, 363/5, 368/5, 420/28, 453/3, 514/15, 590/24.

For the apparently pleonastic use of personal pronouns in the oblique case, see 'Relative Pronouns,' p. xlii.

(e) *Personal Pronoun omitted.*

A. As subject.

This omission is a remnant of the oldest stage of the language, when the personal endings of the verb made any pronoun (as a subject) superfluous, as in Greek and Latin. It is common to Old English, Middle English, and Old French:—

Old English. Her com Eomer from Cwichelme West Seaxna cininge. þohte þæt he wolde ofstingan Eadwine cininge, *Chronicle*, ab. 626; cf. 656 (Laud MS.) þæs on þæm afterran geare Hannibal sende sciþhere on Rome, and þær ungemetlice geher gedon (*scil.* hie, namely the army), *Orosius*, 180/3; cf. 68/27, 134/6.

Middle English. and ȝif he hit naueð, aȝefe (*scil.* he) swa muchel swa he mai, *O. E. Hom.*, I. 29; þa he iseh Martham and Mariam Magdalene þe sustren wepe for hore broðer deð, and ure drihten ȝurh rouðe þet he hefde of hom, schedde of his halie eȝene late teres, and hore broðer arerde, and (*scil.* heo, they) weren stille of hore woþe, *ibid.* 157; þu seist þat on gode bileuest (*scil.* thou), *ibid.* II. 25, l. 2; after þe forme word of þe salme abugest gode (*scil.* thou), *ibid.* l. 4. Cf. 71, 89, 93, 97, 101, 111, 119, 123, 197, 199, 215. *Gen. and Exodus*, ll. 1183, 1729, 1732, etc., etc.

Caxton is extremely free in omitting the pronoun. The instances occurring may be divided into the following groups:—

1. When the subject is the same in two co-ordinate sentences, it is omitted in the second. The omission is striking, whenever there is a clause inserted between the two principal sentences:—

So ranne the vasselles to gyder, and roughete eche other by suche a force upon the sheldes, that they were brusen and broken all to peces; theire speres (that sore bygge and stronge were) broke also all to peces. And thenne toke theire swerdes (*scil.* they). . . *Blanch.* 28/11; A lytyl shal here cease oure matere to speke of hym, unto tyme and oure shal be for to retorne to the same. And shall shewe the sorowes and the complayntes of the proude pucelle in amours (*scil.* it, namely, oure matere), *ibid.* 43/5; [the provost is introduced making a long speech; then the author continues:] and thenne (that is, after the speech) wythout taryeng drewe his swerde (namely, the provost), 49/29. On p. 52 the subject for the first sentence of the 16th chapter must be supplied from the preceding chapter:—whan the proude lady in amours understode the squyer speke thus, the bloode ranne up at her face, and [she] wexed red as a rose, 64/16; wherof the provost was not lesse reioysshed than blanchardyn was. The dynere was redy, and [they] made an ende of their proces tyl another tyme, 81/26; cf. 14/21, 16/10, 22/15, 30/27, 32/7, 33/18, 41/19, 41/24, 42/8, 43/1, 52/17, 58/23, 64/16, 64/20, 66/17, 66/21, 67/4, 68/4, 69/1, 85/27, 85/32, 88/11, 99/32, 100/21, 106/8, 108/19, 127/4, 146/9, 157/3, 170/29, 174/20, 195/22, 203/29.

2. When the subject is the same in a principal and a subordinate sentence, the pronoun is omitted in one of them.

(a) Pronoun omitted in the subordinate sentence:—

BLANCHARDYN.

d

Blanchardyn emonge other passetymes, delyted hymself in hawkynge and huntyng, wheras right moderately and manerly [he] mayntened hymself, 13/18; cf. 21/2, 22/11, 25/8, 39/25, 97/32, 152/28, 169/13.

(b) Pronoun omitted in the principal sentence:—

And for tabredge, after the rewthes, syghes and wepynges that so moche incessantly or wythout ceasse made the noble pucelle, [she] fell doune sterk ded upon the stomak of her most dere louere, 30/13; cf. 30/20, 49/11, 52/21, 53/24, 54/6, 65/3, 127/16.

3. When the subject of a subordinate sentence is not the same as that of the principal one, and is yet omitted, it must be supplied from the context.

How be it I knowe right wel, and make no doubt at all, but that first of all hit shall tourne for pryde of her, tyl a grete displeasure unto her, and [she] shal be therof wors apayed more than reason requyreth, *Blanch.* 39/15; certaynly I shal doo folow hym; and byleue for certayn that *his* laste daye is comen, and [he] shal deye, 44/12; cf. 45/16, 45/21, 87/10, 97/3, 133/33, 146/13, 150/23, 167/16.

4. *It* preceding impersonal verbs is omitted.

There are but two instances of this omission in *Blanchardyn*:—

But [it] seemed that she sholde slee herself to be more hastily venged, 43/26; so [it] taryed not long after thys was doon that the tempeste ceassed, 137/29.

Other instances: *Charles the Grete*, 41/6, 47/28, 49/11, 50/7, 63/11, 77/14, 83/9, 83/24, 85/7, etc. *Morte Darthur*, 136/7, 145/34, 163/35, 217/4, 241/34, 266/5, 278/20, 318/9, 354/29, etc. *Aymon*, 24/15, 27/26, 31/32, 39/29, 43/26, 45/3, 47/3, 48/24, etc.

B. A pronoun as object is very rarely omitted.

'But the knyght that was ryght courteys, guyded hym and *conduyted* a whyle,' *Blanch.* 39/30, is scarcely to be called an omission (see 'Arrangement of Words,' p. ci); but the pronoun is certainly wanting in the following passage: 'For as to his fadir, he wolde not touche,' *Aymon*, 85/29. Cf. Starkey, *England in the Reign of Henry VII*, 71/66: as for thys matter we shal ryght wel avoyd.

(f) The Emphatic Pronoun (himself, etc.) is used either in apposition (he himself), or independently (himself):—

For yf I sholde doo it, he hymself sholde blame me for it, *Aymon*, 189/33; and he hymselfe is delybered for to take the habyte and to become a monke, *ibid.* 280/23. By my faith, said Charlemagn, myself shall it be, *ibid.* 387/19; he thrested his swerde in one of his flankes wel depe, and hys swerde, hymself, and the place was all bybled of the blood, *Charles the Grete*, 77/12; wherin hym self is buryed, *ibid.* 37/24. There are not instances enough to decide which use prevails.

Own is sometimes inserted: 'I shall hang you my owne self.' *Aymon*, 339/13.

§ 11. *The Reflexive Pronoun*.

Both the simple and the compound forms occur, but the latter are apparently the rule. Of thirty instances occurring on the first forty-two pages of *Blanchardyn*, only three are simple, namely, 1/22, 2/10, 41/21.

§ 12. *The Possessive Pronoun*.

(a) *My*, *thy*, are used before consonants; *mine*, *thine*, before vowels. *Its* never occurs; in its place we find *his*, as in Old and Middle English. For the possessive pronouns used substantively, 'mine, thine, ours, yours' is the rule; 'our, your' occur, but quite exceptionally:—

I haue herde that ye haue called me and my broder the sones of a traytour, and that the kyng knoweth well that our fader slewe yours by trayson, wherof I wylle ye wyte that ye lie falsely, but your fader dyde assaylle *our* by trayson, *Aymon*, 545/10; Ye wolle enforce yourselfe to rescue oute of daunger of deth, my lorde and *youre*, my good husband Sadoyne, *Blanchardyn*, 189/25. *his* is sometimes preceded by the definite article. See 'Article,' p. xxvi.

The possessive pronouns are sometimes preceded by *this*: 'This their message,' *Morte Darthur*, 160/30. Cf. above, § 5, on the Genitive Case, p. xv.

(b) The possessive pronoun *my* is used as a term of courtesy. It occurs very frequently in connection with *lady*, so as to form almost *one word*. This is made evident by the repetition of *my* in the following instances:—

Unto the right noble puyssaunt and excellent pryncesse, *my* redoubted lady, *my* lady Margarete, duchesse of Somercete, etc., *Blanchardyn* (Dedication), 1/2; I haue told you her byfore, that the paynem kynge Alynodes apparreylleth hymself to make werre

to *my* lady, *my* maystresse, the proude pucelle in amours, *ibid.* 38/3; *my* lady *my* susters name is dame Lyonesse, *Morte Darthur*, 232/13; I byleue certeynly that he shall doo soo, for the kindness that *my* lorde *my* fader dyde shewe unto Charlemagne, *Aymon*, 427/33; I praye you ryde unto *my* lorde *my* unkel kyng Arthur, *Morte Darthur*, 267/32. I met with only one exception: At yonder wyndowe is *my* lady *syster* dame Lyones, *ibid.* 237/3.

Instead of 'my lady his moder,' Caxton says several times *his lady moder*: *Aymon*, 57/34, 62/20, 81/13.

(c) The possessive pronoun is often replaced by the genitive of the personal pronoun: the head of him = his head. See 'Genitive.'

(d) *his* instead of the genitival inflexion 's is very rare:—

And with that renne, blanchardyn *his* courser ran ouer þe provost that he tradd upon one of his armes, *Blanchardyn*, 48/35; to what thyng Charles *hys* sone and *hys* doughters were instructe and taughte to doo, *Charles the Grete*, 28/1; this lord of this castel, *his* name is syr Damas, *Morte Darthur*, 126/17 (not exactly equal to a genitive); the fyrste knyghte *hys* hors stumbled, *ibid.* 220/30.

(e) *mine* is sometimes equivalent to *of me* used in an objective sense. It occurs in connection with the gerund, and translates the French *mon*, etc. 'Thou knowest well, that I dyde was *in my* deffendynge,' *Aymon*, 88/26; 'it was I that slewe this knyght *in my* deffend-aunt,' *Morte Darthur*, 83/25. This is false analogy to the other gerundial constructions, like 'in my talking,' etc., formed out of the intransitive or transitive verbs. There is a parallel passage in Chaucer:—'Another homieidy is doon for necessite, as whan a man sleth another *in his* defendaunt,' III. 312. One MS., however, has *him* defendaunt.¹

§ 13. *The Demonstrative Pronouns.*

With the exeception of one remnant of Middle English use, the syntax of the demonstrative pronouns is really the same in Caxton as in our own time. *That* is sometimes used in connection with *one* and *other*:—

¹ Perhaps the following passage cannot be explained in the same way:—'Syre, ye be a right fayre Ioucell . . . and *to my* seming right wel worthy to haue the grace and fauour of the right gentyll damoysele,' *Blanchardyn*, 37/22. Probably 'seem' is here 'think'; 'to my thinking' is still in use. Cf. the chapter on the Impersonal Verb.

That one looked upon *that other* for to see who wold sette fyrst honde upon hym, *Charles the Grete*, 44/26; *that* one was named babtysme, and *that other* grabam, *ibid.* 59/17-18. Cf. *ibid.* 59/24-5, 62/19, 70/21.

The same is often used as a mere equivalent of the simple personal pronoun:—‘Where by experience he shuld lerne to bere armes, and shuld exereyce and take payne and dyligence upon hymself to knowe the ways of *the same* = of them’ (*scil.* armes), *Blanchardyn* 16/6; cf. 19/16, 22/1, 38/9, etc. It crops up very often in Elizabethan times: Marlowe, *Tamb.* 1. 2; *Edward II.* 1. 1439; Greene, *Looking Glass*, 135 a, 142 a; Greene, *Alphonsus*, 228 a, 228 b, 229 a; *Gorboduc*, 18, 23; Spenser, *View of the State of Ireland*, p. 609 a, 624 a. For Shakspeare, see Schmidt, *Lexicon*, s. v.

§ 14. With regard to *Interrogative Pronouns* it is noteworthy that *what* often refers to persons:—

She loked bakward for to se *what* he was that so hastily rode after her, *Blanchardyn*, 41/30; moche grete desyre I haue to wyte and knowe *what* he may be, 64/1; (he) asked of him *what* he was,¹ of what lande and of what lynage, 99/35. Cf. 43/13, 128/17, 154/11, 183/20, 194/3. Very often in *Morte Darthur*, and also in Berners’s *Huon*, we find ‘*what* he was and *who* was his father,’ 17/22. Cf. 23/12, 29/11, 30/3, 30/13, 54/7, 104/11, etc.

§ 15. *The Relative Pronoun.*

(A.) The relative clause either follows its antecedent, or rather *correlative*, or precedes it. Accordingly we find two sorts of relative pronouns in Caxton:—

I. That, which, the which, whom, where, as.

II. Who, who that, whosoever (whomsoever).

(I.) *That* is used of persons and things, *especially after pronouns* (he, that), but is restricted to the nominative and accusative case, when used alone, and is never preceded by a preposition. Of all the relative pronouns it is by far the most frequent.

‘*That*’ conveys a vague idea of reference; this is its function compared with the other relative pronouns. It answers thus to

¹ Though we say still ‘*What* are you? an engineer or a teacher?’ meaning ‘of what profession or business are you?’ the first quotation above shows that *what* in it means *who*.

Old English *þe*, to the German *was*, used by illiterate people, and to the Hebrew *ascher*.

Dr. Abbott's rule with regard to the Elizabethan use of *that* does not apply to Caxton. *That* is not only used (*a*) after a noun preceded by the article, (*b*) after nouns used vocatively, in order to complete the description of the antecedent by adding some essential characteristics of it. Cf. the following passages:—

That used of persons: *Blanchardyn*, 1/9 (theym that); 12/17 (people of the lande that Iudged himself right happy); 14/5 (theym that); 15/2 (*Blanchardyn* that); 15/22 (knyghtes that); 19/16 (dyuers there were that); 19/19 (*blanchardyn* that); 19/21 (no tonge humayn that); 19/23, 24; 20/1, 21/11, 22/2, 4, 17; 23/2, 7, 13, 17, 19, 24; 25/15, 16, 22, 24; 26/16, 27/11, 28/6, 31/2, 9; 32/13, 22, 25; 33/4, 5; 38/8, 39/29, etc.

That used of things: 12/5, 19; 15/6, 16, 21; 16/7, 17, 19; 17/10, 14; 18/10, 22; 19/1, 14, 15, 25, 26; 20/19, 22/9, 11; 23/6, 24/9, 26/1, 7, 19, 25; 27/4, 16, etc.

Next in frequency comes *which*. It refers to persons and things, but differs from *that* in three points.

1. It not only follows an immediate antecedent, but may be separated from it by other nouns:—

he found the foot of the hors of hym for whom he wente in enqueste, *whiche* (*sic.* the foot) he folowed ryght quykly, *Blanchardyn*, 25/19; at thynstaunce and requeste of my sayd lady, *whiche* I repute as a commaundemente, I haue reduced, 1/23; he gate a ryght goode and riche swerde, that longed unto the kyng his fader, *whiche* afterward was to hym wel syttyng, 17/15; where he fonde the leest courser of the kinge his fader, *whiche* was the fairest and the best that coude haue ben founde in ony contreye at that tyme, 18/1; cf. 19/10. There is a very instructive instance in *Morte Darthur*: 'when syr Gaherys sawe hys tyme, he cam to their beddes syde, alle armed, with his swerd naked and soddenly gat *his moder* by the here and strake of her hede; whenne syr Lamorak sawe the blood dasshe upon hym all hote, *the whiche* he lefte passyng wel (*i. e.* his moder), wete ye wel he was sore abasshed,' 452/27.

2. *Which* is used in connection with prepositions. Upon *whiche*, *Blanchardyn*, 18/7; in *whiche*, 22/2, 28/17, 31/16; through *whiche*, 32/3, 62/2.

3. It replaces a personal or demonstrative pronoun, in order to bring about a closer connection between the two *logically co-ordinate* sentences:—

I, wylliam Caxton . . . presente this lytyl book unto the noble grace of my sayd lady: *whiche boke* I late receyued in frenshe from her sayd grace, etc., *Blanchardyn*, 1/7; I haue reduced this sayd boke out of frenshe into our englyshe: *whyche boke* specyfyeth of the noble actes and fayttes of warre . . . *ibid.* 1/25 (= and it); cf. 33/6; the noble mayden behelde hym moche humbly, *whyche* toke a ryght grete pleasure to see his gracyouse and assured behauyng, 77/7 (= and she); but this function is shared also by *the whiche* and *whom*. Cf. Of *whom* and of *their* behauynge I shal make mencion after, *Charles*, 38/22.

The whiche (answering to the French *liquels*) is used most of persons in the same function as *which*, *Blanchardyn*, 13/3, 18/16, 22/18, 26/10, 27/8, 29/7, 32/14, etc.

Whom, so far as I am aware, is used of persons, and in connection with prepositions. Of *whom*, 15/15; for *whom*, 25/18; to *whom*, 37/7. Cf. 82/12, 90/19, 94/22, 98/31, 99/3, 104/5, 105/11, etc.

Where, followed by *of* or *by*, refers to persons and things, and whole sentences, and is equivalent to *which* and *whom*.

The childe grewe and amended sore of the grete beaulte, *wherof* he was garnysed, *Blanchardyn*, 13/6 (French *dout*); and (that) gaff hym a wylle for to be lyke unto those noble and worthy knyghtes, *wherof* he sawe the remembraunces, 15/19; thurgh the cite were herde the voyces, *wherby* they were soone aduertysed, 20/4; (he) wrapped his wounde, *wherof* he so sore sorowed, 23/11; and thenne toke their swerdes, *wherof* they gaafe many a grete stroke, 28/11; cf. 28/16; he sholde vaunce hymself for to kysse suche a pryncesse that neuer he had seen before, and *wherof* thacquentaunce was so daungerous, 40/25; the rayson *wherby* I so saye I shall show it unto you, 53/9, etc.

Referring to sentences: but trowed all they that were present that they had be bothe ded, *wherof* the pyteous cryes, wepyng and lamentacyons began to be more grete . . . 20/2, 20/5.

As is used after *such* as in Modern English; cf. 1/20, 2/11, etc., but *such* is also often followed by *that*:—

It shall not be taken so lightly as men wene, for suche folke doo kepe it, *that* well and worthily shall deffende it, *Aymon*, 73/11; ye aske counseyll of *such that* cannot counseyll theymyselve, *ibid.* 208/14; I requyre and byseche alle *suche that* fynde faulte or error . . . Blades, *Caxton*, 170. Cf. Chaucer, *Boeth.* (ed. Morris): such a place that men clepen theatre. On the first forty pages of *Blanchardyn*, the share of these pronouns expressed in figures is:—

	Persons.	Things.		Persons.	Things.
That	39	51	Whom	3	—
Whiche	6	17	Where	2	7
The whiche	7	1	As	1	1

(II.) *Who* as a relative preceding the correlative is met with in Old English in connection with *sua*, and becomes in Middle English *whose*, later *whoso*.

Who that is declared by the grammarians not to appear before the second half of the 14th century; cf. Koch II.², p. 282. But there are instances of an earlier date:—

þenne azaines kinde Gað hwa ðat swuche kinsemon ne luueð and leueð (then against nature goes each man who loveth such a kinsman and leaveth, *Morris*). *þe wohunge of ure Lauerd* (*O. E. Hom.* I. p. 275).

to *quat* contre sum *þat þu wend*, *Cursor Mundi*, 1149. Cf. 1151; *qua þat*, *ibid.* 1969.

huo þet yelpp; he is aperteliche godes *þyef*, *Ayenbite*, 59; *huo þet godeleð* his encristen, he is accorsed of god, *ibid.* 66; cf. 70, 75, 80, 81, 89, 93, 94, etc.

For Chaucer, see Koch, *loc. cit.*

Caxton has both *who* and *who that* equivalently: for *who that* was that tyme yrought of hym, his dayes were fynysched, *Blanchardyn*, 169/4; *who* had seen hym at that tyme, he wold not haue trowed, that he had be a man mortal, *ibid.* 194/20; for *who that* believes ouer moche in dremes, he dooth againste the commaundement of god, *Aymon*, 222/12; *who that* dooth you goode, he leseth wel hys tyme, *ibid.* 269/17; *who* had seen the grete mone that alarde . . . made for their cosyn, he wolde haue grete pyte for to see them, 363/3. Cf. 368/5 (*who that*), 420/28 (*who*), 453/3 (*who that*), 514/13 (*who*), 590/24 (*who*). Cf. *Morte Darthur*, 43/29, 45/23, 176/35, 264/23, 378/23, etc.

(B.) Relative pronouns in the sentence.¹

The structure of the relative clauses in Caxton is far from being the same as in Modern English. There are three principal types of relative constructions:—

(I.) The antecedent or correlative is a noun in a complete sentence, which is followed by a many-worded adjective or relative clause:—

‘She conceyued a ryght faire sone, whiche was named Blanchardyn.’—*Blanchardyn*, 12/12.

(a) If the relative pronoun is in the nominative case, the construction, as a rule, is the same as in Modern English. There are only a few exceptions:—

¹ For convenience’ sake I prefer to discuss this important point in this place, instead of in the *Syntax of the Sentence*, as the system requires.

Inc þise zenȝeþ moche uolk : iue uele maneres . ase þise fole wyf-men . þet uor a lite wynnyng, *hy* yueþ ham to zenne, *Ayenbite*, 45.

A knight ther was and that a worthy man, *That* fro the time that he firste began To riden out, *he* louede chevalrie.—Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales* (quoted by Zupitza in a note to Koch II². p. 278).

I have not come across any such instance in Caxton, but have found two in Malory's *Morte Darthur*:—

Now tourne we unto sire Lamorak *that* upon a daye *he* took a lytel Barget and his wyf . . . 330/24 ; here is a worshipfull knyght sir Lamorak *that* for me *he* shal be lord of this countreye, 334/2 ; sir Trystrain *that* by adventure *he* cam . . . *ibid.* 407/21.

(b) The relative is an oblique case. Then, as a rule, the relatives enumerated above are used in connection with the corresponding preposition : 'Of whom, to whom, whom or which,' etc. But there are exceptions in this case too. Instead of the simple relatives, there occur

In the genitive : relative + his (her), their.

In the dative } relative + him (her, it), them.
and accusative }

Old English. Hwæt se god wære, þe þis *his* beâcen was, *Elene*, 162 ; se mon ne wât, þe *him* on foldan fægност limneð, *Cod. Ex.* 306/25 (quoted by Koch, p. 277).

Middle English. þe pope Gregorie þpat þe fende *him* hadde wel neiȝ icaȝt, *Greg.* ed. Schulz, 16 a ; a doughter þpat wiþ hire was hire moder ded, *ibid.* 32 a ; It was hire owen child, þat in *his* armes aniȝt she went, *ibid.* 748 ; there were maydenes thretty, that for hys seruyse in the halle there there loue on hym can falle, *Guy of Warwick*, ed. Zupitza, l. 180, see note (Koch, p. 278, note by Zupitza).

There are a few instances in Caxton and Malory :—

Thenne answered Rubyon to Blanchardyn, that the daughter of the myghty kynge Alymodes, the euen before had gyuen unto hym her sleue, *the whiche* in presence of her father she had taken *it* from her ryght arme, *Blanchardyn*, 84/12, 13 ; he fonde hym, the terres at the eyes of hym, makynge his full pituouse complayntes, *the whiche* sadoyne had herde part of *hem*, 123/25 ; Syre, I say the same for the knyght, that is the most parfyte in all beaulte and condicyons *that*¹ *his* lyke can not be founde, 155/8 ; *the whiche* thenne, by old age and lyuyng many yeres, *his* blood was wexen colde, *Eneydos*, 14/21 ; of *whom* may not wel be recounted the valyaunce of *hym*, *Charles*, 38/20 ;

¹ Perhaps 'that' is here = so that?

for he had lost moche of his blode by his foure mortal woundes, *of whyche* the leste *of them* was suffysaunt for hym to haue deyed, *ibid.* 235/10; A, syr, ye are the same knyghte *that* I lodged ones in *your* castel, *Morte Darthur*, 266/15; so leue we sire Trystram in Bretayne, and speke we of sire Lamerak de galys, *that* as he sayled, *his* shyp felle on a rok, and perysshed all, 330/2; and that was she *that* Breunys saunce pyte took *that* shelde *from her*, 345/11, 12.

This use continued in the 16th century:—

I know no man lyuyng *that* I or my brother haue done *to hym* any dyspleasure, Berners, *Huon*, 19/24; *the whiche* treasure I gaf part *therof* to the kyng, 263/9; I pray thee, show me what be yonder two prynees *that* goth up the stayres, and *that* so moch honour is done *to them*, 286/9.

Very rarely is a relative in the oblique case followed by a redundant personal pronoun:—

(they) were all murderers, *wherof* the pryncypall and the mayster *of them* all was named syluayne, *Blanchardyn*, 204/8; It is by cause ther is come in to thy court he *that* hath slayne my brother *whom* incontynente thou oughtest to haue slayne *hym* quyke, *Huon*, 141/24.

The edition of 1601 omits *hym*. There is perhaps a change of the construction in *Blanchardyn*, 192/29: 'they recountred a peynem, *which* they toke, and broughte *hym* before Blanchardyn.'

(II.) The correlative sentence is divided into two parts by the relative clause:—

'He *that* wyll be enhaunced in price, he oughte not to loke soo nyghe.'—*Aymon*, 354/23.

In Old and Middle English this type is nearly always a sort of anacoluthon to our modern eyes and ears, and perhaps it was such indeed. The essential point in which this construction differs from the modern use is, that *the correlative always appears in the nominative case*, without regard to its place in the sentence; it is only the redundant pronoun, personal or possessive, in the second part, which marks the subjective or objective case of the correlative, *e. g.*, in Modern English we might say:—'*To her who* was not skilled in receiuing such guests, his acquaintance was hard to make,' but Caxton has:—'and *she* *that* was not lerned to receyue suche geestes, sore harde was his acquaintance *to her*.'—*Blanchardyn*, 67/29, 30.

Accordingly I distinguish two groups of type II.

(a) The correlative is the subject of the sentence. Then the redundant *personal* pronoun appears in the nominative case.

This pronoun is, as said above (see 'Personal Pronoun'), very frequent in Old English and Middle English. Perhaps we might say that this is the rule; at least the *Old English Homilies* seem to suggest such a supposition. There are in the Second Series twenty-three instances of the redundant pronoun, namely, p. 15, l. 4 from top; p. 15, l. 4 from foot; p. 19, l. 9 from top; p. 43, l. 3 from top; p. 45, l. 16 from foot, and on pages 69 (twice), 73, 75, 99, 115 (twice), 133 (twice), 143, 153 (three times), 155, 159, 201, 203, 207; while only six passages omit it, namely, on pages 11, 17, 19, 73, 111, 151.

In Caxton this is no longer the case. There is not one instance of the group (a) in *Blanchardyn*; and in *Aymon* they are not very numerous. See 'Personal Pronoun.'

(b) The correlative is the object (direct or indirect) of the sentence; then, as a rule, it is in the nominative case, and the redundant personal pronoun is either in the genitive (his, her, their) or dative (accusative) case:—

Alle synfulle men þe heued-synnes don habbeð, and nel'eð þerof no shrift nimen he bihat hem eche fur on helle, O. E. Hom. II. 41; alle þo þe here synnen forleteð and beteð he heleð here synwunden mid fulnege, ibid.; þat (Harleian MS. þei þat) etys me ȝitt hungres thayn, and þey þat drinkes me ȝitt þristes thayn. Hampole, Prose Treatises, p. 3.

In Caxton, (b) is apparently the rule:—

The rayson wherby I so say, I shall show *it* unto you, *Blanchardyn*, 53/9, 67/30 (quoted above); but this that I haue tofore wryton, I haue taken *it* oute of an autentyke book, *Charles*, 38/24; he perceyued a right myghty nauye, wherof *they* that were come upon laude, he sawe *hem* in grete nombre, *ibid.* 162/3; that whiche I haue done in this behalue, I haue donn *it* for the beste, 185/19; *they* that were about hym rebell, he dompted and subdewed *them*, 196/15; very instructive instances, *ibid.* 215; *he* that deyeth in fleyinge, *his* soule shall neuer be saued, *Aymon*, 232/26; but the sorow that the kyng made for his quene, *that* myghte no man telle.—Malory, *Morte Darthur*, 274/34.

I found but a few instances of modern construction:—

And *them that* ben poure and caste down, maketh she oftymes to ryse and mounte from certaynte to Incertaynte, *Curial*, 6/13; and *them that* were hurte, he lete the surgyens doo heale their woundes, Malory, *Morte Darthur*, 174/13.

There is one instance in Malory in which—if Caxton or his compositor did not introduce a first *gaf* not in the author's copy—both the old and modern uses are mixed in one: 'Thenne the kyng stablysshed all his knyghtes and [*gaf*] *them* that were of londes not ryche, *he gaf them londes* . . .' *Morte Darthur*, 118/13. Malory (if the first *gaf* was his) began with the modern construction: 'and gaf *them* that were of londes not ryche (londes),' but in the second half of the sentence he found it would be quite confusing and impossible to add 'londes' only to his long adjective 'that were of londes not ryche,' and he therefore repeated the words which governed 'londes,' the old use suggesting itself to his memory as a justification for his cumbrousness. This use occurs very often in Berners:—

The londe *that* they hold, gyue *it* to Charlot your sone, *Huon*, 5/13; with my sworde I so defendyd me, that *he* that thought to haue slayne me, I haue slayne *hym*, 27/5, 6; he that lieth there deed before you, I slew him in my defence, 34/11; *all the mete that* he could get in the towne, he shuld by *it*, 84/33.

(III.) *The relative sentence precedes its correlative.*

'*who* had seen hym at that tyme, *he* wold not haue trowed that he had be a man mortal,' *Blanchardyn*, 194/21. The use of the personal pronoun in the correlative is the same as in type II.

In the *Ayenbite* the pronoun is the rule, just as in the French Original (*qui-il*, *quiconque-il*); quite exceptionally it is omitted, *e. g.* 'huo þet wyle lede guod lif; zeche þet he habbe þet zoþe guod,' p. 94 (omitted also in the Original). In the *Gesta Romanorum*, too, it is always to be met with:—

who that euer comith thedir, *he* shall fare wele, p. 15; who so euer wold come to that feste, *he* sholde haue his doughter, p. 87; who so euer gotte therby to the holy londe, *he* shall in pes go, p. 106; who so euer wolde rin with his dowter, *he* shulde wed her, p. 122; who so euer gothe with her to bedde, *he* shall anon falle in to a dede sleep, p. 160; who so euer bere it upon him, *he* shal haue loue of al men, p. 180; whosoeuer haue hit, *he* shall euermore joy, p. 286.

CAXTON. *Blanchardyn*, 194/21 (quoted above); whosoeuer rekeneth withoute his hoste, *he* rekeneth twys for ones, 202/6; who that was that day yrought of hym, *his* dayes were fynished, 169/4;—*Aymon*, 222/12, 269/18. See above, p. xl.

Malory, *Morte Darthur*. *Who that* holdeth against it, we wylle slee *him*, 43/29, 30; *who* saith nay, *he* shal be kyng, 45/23; whosomeur is hurte with this blade, *he* shalle neuer be staunched, 176/35; who that may first mete any of these two knyghtes, *they* sholde torne hem unto Morgan le fays castel, 378/23.

The same use occurs in the 16th century as well:—

Whosoeuer that hath not seene the noble citie of Venis, *he* hath not seene the bewyte and ryches of thys worlde, *Andrew Boorde*, p. 181; whosoeuer wil buylde a mancyon place or a house, *he* must cytuate . . . p. 233. Cf. pp. 236, 238, 242.

Shakspere has often *what—it*:—

What our contempt doth often hurl from us, We wish *it* ours again, *Antony*, I. ii. 127; *what* you have spoke, *it* may be so perchance, *Macbeth*, IV. iii. 11.

(C.) *Attraction* is to be observed in *that* = that which:—

Paynem, upon *that* thou me demaundest, I telle to thee . . . *Charles the Grete*, 54/17; Olyuer answered that he wold not, and *that* he sayd was folye, *ibid.* 56/35. Cf. *Blanchardyn*, 74/12, 91/7; *Morte Darthur*, 257/31.

Stronger attractions occur in *Blanchardyn*:—

Blanchardyn, sore angry and euyl apayde of *that* he sawe the untrew knyghte to endure so longe . . . = 'of that which,' 28/13; and wyth theym was the kyng of frysc, that of new had cast doune to the grounde [him] *that* bare the chief standarde of kyng Alymodes, 195/8. *that* = him who.

(D.) Omission of the Relative.

The omission of the relative is very common in the 15th and 16th centuries, after *there is*, *there is not* (no):—

There is no man in the world can compare to him, *Charles*, 54/19; yet there were some of the grete lordes had indignation that Arthur shold be kyng, *Morte Darthur*, 43/14; there was none dyd so wel as he that day, *ibid.* 50/12; there was so fewe a felaschip dyd suche dedes, 53/33; there was no man myghte passe them, 59/20. Cf. 59/28, 61/17, 68/24, 146/38, 212/4, 222/33, 238/28, etc.

There are many instances of this omission in Berners and in Elizabethan writers:—

Here be two of my nephese shall be pledge for me, *Huon*, 37/21; among them there was one was not content, *ibid.* 73/16; there is no man shall let me, 97/7. Cf. 113/25, 115/32, 122/17, 146/1, 238/30, 249/28, 296/16, 299/8, 440/16. For Shakspeare, see Abbott, § 244; and *Anglia*, III., p. 115 ff.

Beside the omission after *there is*, several striking instances occur in *Blanchardyn* and *Morte Darthur*. It is impossible to account for this use without entering into a discussion of the whole matter; so I beg the reader to be satisfied for the time with a simple report of the facts:—

Whan blanchardyn understode [that] the knyght thus went thretenyng hym, and that [he] so moche inhumaynly entreated the gentyll pucelle, [he] sayde unto hym, 27/10. Cf. [he] sawe syr Alysander was assoted upon his lady,¹ *Morte Darthur*, 477/12; thou suffrest now thyn ennyes to sette thy land al on a fyre, and wymmen and children to be slayn of them, [that] are comen ferre wythin thy royaume, *Blanchardyn*, 101/27; haue pyte and compassyon upon thys pore chylde, whiche is now al alone amonge wolves famyshed, [that] be redy to devour me, *ibid.* 180/22.

In a chirche they found one was fair and riche, *Morte Darthur*, 84/5; I shall sende hym a gyfte shalle please hym moche more, 101/2; where is the lady shold mete us here? 146/15; he mette with a man was lyke a foster, 184/29; and thenne was he ware of a faucon came fleyng over his hede, 208/11; but thou shalt see a syght shal make the torne ageyne, 219/35; ryght soone ther shal mete a knyght shal paye the alle thy wages, 228/11; by the feythe we owe unto god, 233/8; I wil wel with this he make her amendys of al the trespas he hath done ageynst her, 240/29; for the good lordship ye shewed me, 305/14; that is the grettest payne a prysoner may haue, 400/4.

§ 16. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

The modern English *one* = people = French *on*, German *man*, does not occur in Caxton. Its place is still occupied by *men*.

And that by his behauoure and contenance, *men* might well knowe that he was departed and come of noble extraction, *Blanchardyn*, 50/16; *men* see atte ey his beaulte, 54/33; (she) cam toward a wyndowe, out of whiche *men* sawe right ferre into the see, 55/32. Cf. 57/7, 68/24, 76/28, 80/7, 99/1, 116/11, 129/7.

From the passages 54/33, and 129/7, we see that 'men' was followed by a predicate in the plural. Cf. 'men make often a rodde for theym selfe,' *Aymon*, 97/11. There is one instance of 'man':—

¹ The omission of the relative here is still good English.

A man told me in the castel of four stōnes, that ye were delyuered, and that *man* had sene you in the court of kynge Arthur, *Morte Darthur*, 83/4.

Everiche is equivalent to the modern 'everybody':—

Eueryche (went) in to his owne countrey, *Aymon*, 186/16; to do *eueryche* Iustice and reson, *Charles*, 30/15; there came a byrde to his ere in the presence of *everiche* that *were* aboute hym, *ibid.* 34/3; in a plural sense = all.

THE VERB.

§ 17. Impersonal Verbs.

(A.) The Impersonal Verbs denoting natural or else external events, as raining, thundering, freezing, etc., have remained the same, with regard to their syntactical use, from Old English down to modern times. We say still: it rains (O. E. hit rinð), it thunders (O. E. hit þunrað), it freezes (O. E. hit freoðeð), it¹ happens that, &c. (O. E. hit gelimpeð), etc.

But those Verbs which express states or actions of the human mind have undergone an important change. As stated above (*see* p. xi, 'Nominative Case'), many once Impersonal Verbs became personal, and we have now but a few instances of such verbs as 'it¹ seems to me, it¹ pleases me.'

In Caxton we see this tendency at work, but the change from impersonal to personal verbs is far from being complete. Here is an alphabetical list of the impersonal verbs in Caxton and Malory; those used personally, too, are marked with * :—

**ail*, Middle English *eilen*, impersonal, and so it is in Caxton. 'Ha broder, what yelleth you?' *Aymon*, 226/26; what eyleth you, fayr cosyns, that ye make so euyl chere? *ibid.* 322/1.

Once personal. And when the duchesse sawe him, she began to wepe full sore; and the duke knewe wel what *she eykede* (Original: *yeekde*), *Aymon*, 66/2.

**be better*. 'Me were better' is the rule, but there is an instance of the personal use. 'A, foole, said she, *thou* were better flee by tymes,' *Morte Darthur*, 228/33.

forthynke (cf. *rewe*, *repent*), to repent. Middle English only impersonal, *see* Stratmann, *s. v.* There are exceptions in the *Ayenbite* (pp. 5, 29), but there Dan Michel apparently copied too faithfully his French original.

¹ This *it* is a false subject, to throw the true subject after the verb.

Caxton does not use the word, which he replaces by 'rewe' and 'repent'; but there are several instances in *Morte Darthur*: 'Me forthynketh of your displeasyr,' 97/32; 'that me forthynketh,' 82/2. Cf. 324/17.

**hap* = *happen*, generally impersonal as in Middle English. Once personal in *Morte Darthur*: 'And so he happed upon a daye he came to the herd men' . . . 369/20. Einkenel quotes an earlier instance from the Life of saynt Elisabeth, Wülcker's *Lesebuch*, II., p. 15: 'For who . . . In that holy iurne happe for to deye . . . he goth a siker weye To heuenwarde.'

**be leuer*, generally impersonal (Caxton, however, prefers 'have leuer.' Cf. *Aymon*, 37/17, 148/12); but there is apparently the beginning of the personal construction in the following mixed expression: 'Ha, false and renyed strompet, *I were me leuer ded*, than that I sholde byleue nor doo thi cursed counseyll,' *Blanchardyn*, 185/32. It is composed out of the two constructions struggling one with another in the author's mind. Similar absurdities occur in *Chaucer*: *Him hadde wel leever* . . . That she hadde a ship, II. 109; Him lever had himselfe to mordre and dye, V. 323. See *Einkenel*, p. 112; Zupitza, note to *Guy*, l. 5077.

Like is still impersonal. (Caxton prefers *please*.) 'Sir, like it you (may it like, that is, please you) that we have doon,' *Aymon*, 568/25; me lyketh better the swerd, sayd Arthur: Malory, *Morte Darthur*, 74/3; I assente, sayd the kyng, lyke as ye haue denysed, and at crystmas there to be crowned, and to holde my round table with my knyghtes *as me lyketh*, *ibid.* 182/10. Cf. 222/10, 230/8. I don't notice any instance of personal use in Caxton; but there is one as early as 1440: 'Here me, and pou shalt like it for euer,' *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 281.

Like is used impersonally (and intransitively) in Elizabethan authors:

'Therefore 'tis best, if so *it like* you all,
To send my thousand horse incontinent.'

Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, l. 51.

'And I'll dispose them as *it likes* me best.' *ibid.* 3839.

Cf. Greene, *Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay*, p. 159, *a.*; Greene, *James IV.*, p. 202, *a.*; George-a-Greene, p. 260, *a.*

**list*, used both personally and impersonally.

Impersonal. Whan the kyng hath dyned, who that wyl may goo playe *where hym lyst*,—*Charles the Grete*, 118/11; Breuse was so wel horsed, that *whan hym lyst* to flee, he myght wel flee, and also abyde *whan hym lyst*,—*Morte Darthur*, 398/8, 9. Cf. 245/8, 256/4.

Personal. Ye shall now here and understande from the hens-fourthon a terryble and a pyteous songe, yf *ye* therafter *liste* to herken, *Aymon*, 59/7; ye shall understonde, yf ye *liste* to herken, *ibid.* 90/21.

There are two instances of the personal use in *Chaucer*. For he to vertu listeth not entende, III. 1; As doon this foolles that hire sorw eche with sorowe . . . and listen nought to seche hem oother cure, IV. 136.

**ben loth*. Impersonal. I wold well kepe me, and *be loth* for to denounce thyng unto you that shulde tourne you to a displeasure, *Blanchardyn*, 76/17; that *is me loth*, said the knyght, *Morte Darthur*, 69/24.

Personal. I knowe thou arte a good knyghte, and loth I were to slee thee, *Morte Darthur*, 203/17; therfor only of hem will be loth to haue adoo with other . . . *ibid.* 279/2; I am ful loth to haue adoo with that knyght, *ibid.* 383/22.

There is an instance of the personal use in *Chaucer*. 'My soverayn lady . . . Whom I most drede and love, as I best can, and lothest were of all this world displese,' 111/19. But perhaps this use may be traced back to as early as the *Cursor Mundi*. One line shows the state of transition between the impersonal and personal. 'Of chastite *has* lichour leth' (loath), l. 31, Cotton MS. The Fairfax MS. reads: 'of chastite *ys* licchour loþ.' Göttingen and Trinity MSS. read: 'of chastite has leechour lite.'

In another line, *loth* seems to be used quite personally: (these names) *þat lath er* for to lie in rim, 9240, MSS. C. F. T.

**myster* = need, be in need of; avail.

Impersonal. lady moder, gramercy of so fayre a yefte as here is, For *it mystreth me* wel, *Aymon*, 129/14; borgons, thys worde mystre not to you for to saye, for ye must nedes defende yourselfe, *ibid.* 141/5; what mystreth hym (to Aeneas) to edifie cartage, and enhabyte emonge his ennies . . . *Eneydos*, 62/13.

Personal. Wherefore I mystered gretly of thayde and socours of you and of other, *Blanchardyn*, 77/33. (Of your helpe I had grete myster, *Morte Darthur*, 224/34. Cf. 59/5.)

need seems to be used only impersonally by Caxton and Malory. It needeth not to be doubted that he is come to his extremite of prowes and valyauntnes, *Blanchardyn*, 72/17; it nedeth not to be asked, yf he was therof gladde, *ibid.* 101/4; it nede not to you to make eny sorowe, *ibid.* 278/15. Cf. *Aymon*, 167/7, 490/6; *Morte Darthur*, 278/15. Often used so by Spenser:

Now needeth him no lenger labour spend, His foes have slain themselves.—*Fuerie Queene*, I. i. 26; Him needed not long call, *ibid.* II. vi. 19; Me little needed from my right way to have strayed, II. vi. 22. Also by Shakspeare, 3 *Henry VI.*, I. iv. 125; *Venus*, 250.

owe = behave. Alas, said sir Lamorak, ful wel *me ought* to knowe you, for ye are the man that most haue done for me, *Morte Darthur*, 337/24. Cf. *Chaucer*, II. 313: and ther she was honoured as hir oughte; *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 215: (she) mette him as hir owte to do.

please only impersonal. It playse me wel, *Aymon*, 75/8. Cf. 29/25, 159/28, 226/22, etc.; *Morte Darthur*, 198/3, etc.

**repent*.

Impersonal. Yf ye abide here any lenger, it shall repente you full sore, *Aymon*, 472/30; Me sore repenteth it, said sir gauayn, *Morte Darthur*, 107/27; that me repenteth, sayd syr Turquyne, *ibid.* 185/25.

Personal. Wherof I me repente sore, *Aymon*, 38/21; I truste in god myn eure is not suche but some neuer of them may sore repente thys, *Morte Darthur*, 59/7; I repente me, *ibid.* 469/23.

rew, impersonal. That rewyth me, sayd the provost, *Blanchardyn*, 156/10.

**seem* not only means 'appear,' but also 'think, believe,' as in Old English, when used personally. There are two passages in *Blanchardyn* which can be interpreted in this way: '*To my seming* ye sholde forelose and take awaye out of your herte all inutyle sorowfulnesse,' 53/5; 'I am sure that he hath in his house a rote that, as to my semyng shal gyf me help,' 70/17; *Me semeth* him a servaunt nothing able, *Courtesye*, l. 455.

There are two passages in the *E. E. Wills* which sanction this interpretation: 'like as mine executours seme best,' 79/21; and still more indisputable: 'as *they seme* that gode ys,' 111/26.

shame, only impersonal.

'Me shamed at that tyme to haue more adoo wyth you,' *Morte Darthur*, 332/5; 'for me shameth of that I haue done,' 324/6.

In Middle English it is impersonal and personal; cf. Trevisa's translation of Higden's *Polychronicon*: '*I knewe* myn own pouert, and *schamede* and *dradde*,' I., p. 11. Cf. I., p. 9: '*me schamed* and *dradde* to fynde so grete and so gostliche a bone to graunte.'

thynken = seem, always impersonal. *Charles*, 55/11; *Aymon*, 410/30; *Morte Darthur*, 65/9, etc.

(B.) There is another sort of Impersonal Verbs, which denote neither external events nor actions of the mind. These are the verbs *reherce*, *show*, *tell*, occurring in Malory, as in Middle English, without any subject. The context proves that we have to supply 'the author,' 'the book,' though sometimes we find 'in the booke':—

After they were wedded, as it telleth in the booke, *Morte Darthur*, 63/18; as it telleth after, 63/35; as it telleth in the book of adventures folowyng, 64/31; as *it reherceth* after in the book of Balyn le sauage, that foloweth next after, 75/17; as it telleth after in the sangraylle, 91/27; as it reherceth afore, 105/11. I found only one instance in Caxton. The heading of chapter xvii. of *Aymon* runs as follows:—*Here sheweth* how reynawde faught ageunst rowland, the whiche he conquered by the wyll of God, etc., 389/12.

This is an old Middle English use:—

Ase *hit seið* þer = as is said there, *i. e.* in the salutations, *Ancren Ricle*, p. 34; hi scule habben þat brad þe *seið* iþe godspel (which is spoken of in the gospel), *O. E. Hom.*, I. 241; so it her telleð, *Bestiary* (in *O. E. Miscellany*), l. 257. Cf. l. 630. (There is another explanation in Grimm, IV. 53.)

(C.) There is often a striking want of inflexion in the Impersonal Verbs, especially in *thynk* = seem:—

Bote ne *þinche* ham nawt ȝet þat he is ful pinet (but it seems to them that he is not yet fully tormented).—þe wohunge of ure Lauerd, *O. E. Hom.*, I. p. 283. In the *Cursor Mundi*, *me thinc* is the rule! Cf. 225, 248, 2224, 2941, 3030, 5192, 5863, 6670, etc.; otherwise as *hein thenke*, *E. E. Wills*, 124/10; as it *please* the seid Denys, *Bury Wills*, p. 46; as them best *seme* to doon, *E. E. Wills*, 86/4. In *Caxton*—Me *thynke* that ye ought to take that the erle profereth to you, *Aymon*, 410/30; It *playse* me well, sayd the kyng, *ibid.* 75/8; thys worde mystre not for you to saye, *ibid.* 141/5. *Lyst* is nearly always without *s*. See above.

I suppose that this want of inflection is due to the analogy of the frequent *me lyst*, which is the regular Old English form. Cf. *fæst* (inf. *fæstan*), *grét* (inf. *grétan*). Sievers, *A. S. Grammar*, § 359/3.

§ 18. Intransitive, transitive, and reflexive verbs.

It is an unparalleled freedom of the English language to use the same verb in an intransitive, transitive, or causative, and reflexive sense, *e. g.* change, mend. Many causes have concurred in bringing about this remarkable and most valuable peculiarity. There is a faint germ of it in Old English, *e. g.* *bídan*, to abide (dwell and wait for), intransitive and transitive; *féran*, go and carry; *gesamnian*, to gather, reflexive and causative. It grows in Modern English, *e. g.* *drive*, used intransitively, *O. E. Miscellany*, pp. 1, 15; *fill*(eu), Intr. *O. E. Hom.*, II. 37; *sink*(en), causative, *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, 1108; *leren* = to learn, *ibid.* 354, 1383, 3486; *O. E. Miscellany*, pp. 4, 11; *understand* = to teach, *ibid.* p. 52; *kelen* = to become cold.—Trevisa, *Polychr.* I. 177, etc.

It becomes ripe in the Elizabethan time, when nearly every verb is used in all the three senses.

Caxton exhibits several instances, which show that the development towards the Modern use was nearly complete:—

Cease, used as a causative. Soo pray I you that ye wyl *cesse* your grete sorowe, *Blanchardyn*, 44/2; (I beseeche you) that ye wyll *ceasse* your sorowe, *ibid.* 53/27.

Learn = teach. She was not *lernyd* to receyue suche geestes, *Blanchardyn*, 67/29. Cf. 141/4.

Malory, too, has several instances of this use:—

I shalle be your rescowe, and *lerne* hym to be ruled as a knyghte, *Morte Darthur*, 197/10; who dyde *lerne* the to dystresse ladyes and gentylwymmen, *ibid.* 197/17. Cf. 285/33, 333/23. Shakspeare, *Othello*, I. iii. 183: My life and education both do *learn* me How to respect you.

LOSE, causative = ruin. But through fortune chaungeable, my lande hath he wasted and *lost* by darius, *Blanchardyn*, 146/5; *Morte Darthur*, 82/21.

Possess, causative. When he had gyuen to me my lande, and *possessed* me in my contrey, I wold not accept it, *Charles*, 147/16.

Succombe, causative = subdue. In their folysshe pryde I shal *succombe* and brynge a lowe their corage, *Blanchardyn*, 104/30. The original has: 'Et de la folle entre prinse qu ilz ont faicte pour l'orgueil et oultrage qui les ensuient contre vous vouldroy *abaissier* leur couraige follastre.'

Sit. There is a passage in *Aymon* where *sit* is used as a causative = set; but there seems to be only one instance of this use, and that makes me suspect a misprint. And he *sat* al his folk in a bushment within a grete wode, 136/18. I never came across this use of *sit* in older English, but several passages in *Melusine*, and the free modern *sit*, as a reflexive or causal, come very near to it. And she thanne wepyng *satte* herself by hym, *Melusine*, 157/2; [they] *sate* themself at dyner, *ibid.* 157/20; 'Whatever he did, he was constantly *sitting himself* down in his chair, and never stopping in it.'—Dickens, *Chimes*, 66; '*sitting himself* down on the very edge of the chair,' *Pickwick*, II. 356. See Storm, *English Philology, Colloquial English*.

Tarry is used as an intransitive, reflexive, and causative verb.

(a) but not long *hit taryed*, when tolde and recounted was . . . *Blanchardyn*, 19/17.

(b) the knyght there alone *taryed himself*,—*Blanchardyn*, 22/20. Cf. 88/3.

(c) other Infynyte thynges that are wont to *tarye* the corages of some enterpryses, *Blanchardyn*, 17/11; here we shal *tarye* tyl oure penne, *ibid.* 182/11.

Walop, causatively. But Blanchardyn wyth a glad chere *waloped* his courser as bruyauntly as he coude . . . = made to gallop, *Blanchardyn*, 42/5. Cf. *Morte Darthur*, 176/5: and anon he was ware of a man armed *walkynge* his horse easily by a wodes syde. (Both as in Modern English.)

There are a few verbs used reflexively, which seem to be mere translations of the French.

The whiche, when he sawe Blanchardyn, anone *escryed hymself* hyghe . . . *Blanchardyn*, 32/15; I haue not *perceyued me* of this that ye telle me, *ibid.* 17/15 (Original: *je ne me suis pas perceu de . . .*); I *perceyue me* well, *Aymon*, 229/15; after this he *toke hym self* to syghe full sore = he began, *Blanchardyn*, 23/16; yet sholde I neuer *consent me* to noo peas, *Aymon*, 409/23; I *assente me*, said Arthur, *Morte Darthur*, 71/13; I assente me therto, *ibid.* 340/6.

At last, it is worth noting that a passive construction is sometimes used with the meaning of a reflexive (or intransitive):—

Here we shal leue to speke of her, and shal retourne to speke of Blanchardyn, that in the provostis house *was sette* atte dyner, *Blanchardyn*, 82/22; they wysshe their handes, ant *were sette* at dyner, *Aymon*, 38/8; now *was set* Berthelot and the worthi reynawde for to playe at the ches, *ibid.* 61/21; I pray you that ye wyl telle me in what region and what marche it (*i. e.* the city) *is sette* = lies, *Blanchardyn*, 128/25. Cf. *Huon*, 117/32. This too seems to be due to the French.

§ 19. Auxiliary Verbs.

(a) The verbs *can*, *may*, *will* are still complete.

1. be able to: How shall I *conne* doo soo moche, that I maye avenge myselfe of Charlemagne, *Aymon*, 61/9; full fayne [she] wolde haue putte therunto a remedy yf by any meanes she *had conde*,—*Blanchardyn*, 97/4.

2. with the meaning = to learn: 'Syre monke, in the deuylls name, *conne* ye well your lesson,' *ibid.* 282/23.

3. The phrase 'I *conne* you thanke' (French: *savoir gré*): I *conne* you grete thanke of the offre that now ye haue doon to me, *Aymon*, 30/34, and 70/32.

The infinitive of *may* is *may*, or the more frequent and correct *mowe* (Old English, *múgan*). In *Blanchardyn* there is only 1 *may* against 12 *mowe*.

I pray you that ye wyl doo the beste that ye *shal may* toward the kynge, 91/10; As ye shall *mowe* here hereafter, 14/8; by what manere he sholde *mowe* passe it over, 32/7, 38/14, 43/14, 46/31, 54/28, 68/5, 73/25, 78/2, 101/34, 151/6, 173/33.

Mowe occurs twice as a past participle in *Blanchardyn*. And wherby ye *haue mowe* knowen by the relacion of your captayne . . .

53/13; by all the seruyces and pleasures that I *have mowe* doon unto you, 53/23.

It is to be thought that he *shall wyl* giue hym one of his doughters in mariage, *Blanchardyn*, 64/25.

Will. I am at a loss how to explain *wold* = be willing,¹ in the following passage: 'from þe owr that ye shal *wold* gyue your loue unto kyng Aymodes, the right happy weal of peas shall be publysshed through alle cuntreie,' *Blanchardyn*, 69/19. Well he *had wold*² that they myght be met wythall, *ibid.* 121/17.

Perhaps the past participle has influenced the infinitive, as in the verbs of Latin origin, like 'mitigate, participate,' etc.

(b) *Have* often means = lead, take, bring. (The ladyes) toke her up anone, and *had* her to bedde, *Blanchardyn*, 96/20; (Subyon) toke her by the hande, and *had* her up fro the grounde, *ibid.* 177/32, 181/17, 183/2, 189/30; *Aymon*, 92/14, 525/9, 536/10, etc.; *Morte Darthur*, 486/17.

(c) *May* is equivalent to *can*; they are sometimes used together tautologically. 'The gretest honoure that man *can or may* do to a knyght.'—*Blanchardyn*, 66/10.

(d) *do* is used to give the verb which it precedes a causative meaning. I shal *doo passe* this same spyere throughe the myddes of thy body, *Blanchardyn*, 27/17; I shal *doo folow* hym = I shall cause him to be followed, *ibid.* 44/10 (Original: 'Ie le ferai Sieuir'), 112/7, 120/25, 126/28, 137/21, 148/3, 157/12, 186/4, 187/23, 190/3, 200/31. So in *Malory*. Compare 'make' in § 25 below.

(e) *do* used redundantly, as *can or gan* in Middle English. I tried in vain to find out a rule in Caxton for using or omitting this troublesome 'auxiliary.' There are 95 instances of this *do* in *Blanchardyn*.

(f) *Come* is once used as an auxiliary, as in French, and probably in obedience to it: 'She called hym nyghe her, and shewed hym the ryght myghty nauye that *cam* to arryue there' = which had just arrived (venoit d'arriver), *Blanchardyn*, 153/35.

(g) For *owe*, see 'Impersonal Verbs.'

(h) For the use of *shall* and *will*, in order to mark tense and mood, see 'Tense' and 'Mood.'

§ 20. Voice.

The peculiarity of forming the passive voice from intransitive verbs, which is characteristic of the English language, or rather the

¹ Dr. Furnivall says it is the past participle 'have been willing to,' 'have consented to.'

² Past part. wisht, been willing.

conversion of what is the object of a verb into the subject (he was given a book), is, so far as I am aware, not to be met with in Caxton, and I found only one instance in Malory. Cf. the following instances:—

As was tolde hym by the knyght, *Blanchardyn*, 43/1; all that was told hym, *ibid.* 196/20; and whan it was told the kynges that there were come messagers, *Morte Darthur*, 48/27; whan hit was told hym that she asked his hede, *ibid.* 79/25, 327/35;—he departed and came to his lord and told hym how *he was answerd* of sir Trystram, *ibid.* 463/5.

This rigid observation of the difference between transitive and intransitive verbs, with regard to the passive voice, is very strange at the end of the 15th century, as there are instances of the modern freedom as early as the beginning of the 13th century.

Koch quotes one instance from *Layamon*: ‘*þat we beon iquemed,*’ 1/40; and another from *Robert of Gloucestre*: ‘*yham ytold,*’ 5514.

But I find the passive construction even with the direct and indirect object:—

‘*Nes among al moncun oni holi dole ifunden þet muhte beon ileten blod,*’ *Ancren Riwe*, 112; *þet* is scarcely the dative; nor is *Ure Lauerd* in ‘*Ure Lauerd beo iðonked,*’ *ibid.* 8, where MS. C has: ‘*beo hit þonked,*’ for another passage, on p. 112, is indisputable: ‘*þe he was þus ileten blod.*’¹

CHAUCER. I may you devyse how that *I* may be *holpe*, III. 11; I am commaundid, II. 294; ye schal be payd, III. 17; Thembassatours ben answerde for fynal, IV. 306.

Chaucer offers no example of the passive with a double object, but I find one in Hampole, *Prose Treatises*, p. 5: ‘*I fand Jesus bowndene, scourgede, gyffene galle to drynke.*’

Perhaps we may see in Caxton’s apparent dislike of this construction, a sort of negative influence of the French.

§ 21. There are verbal forms which, in Old English, were indifferent with regard to voice. These were the infinitive, the verbal noun (-ung, -ing), and sometimes the participle past, when used adjectively.

¹ *Einenkel* was somewhat rash in saying, with regard to this use, that in Chaucer’s time this revolution had just began, and that we must look upon these instances as mere irregularities and licences, p. 110.

In Middle English there is a faint beginning of creating new passive constructions of the infinitive and gerund by means of the auxiliary *be*; but before the Elizabethan age the modern use of the passive infinitive and gerund is not complete.

In Caxton there is a distinct tendency towards the modern use, but still the active constructions prevail. The Infinitive, Gerund, and Participle will be dealt with in their proper place; here a few instances will suffice:—

He made *the toun sawte ofte tymes ful sore* = to be assaulted, *Blanchardyn*, 152/4; after that greuous sorowe that she hath had of my *takynge*, *ibid.* 148/32; (he) was *remembred* of it always, *ibid.* 31/7; he was ryght sore merueylled, *ibid.* 139/16.

§ 22. Tense.

(a) Sometimes the Present Tense occurs instead of the Preterite (Præsens historicum):—

And then he *taketh* him bytwene his armes, and *kisseth* hym by grete loue; and whan he *had* doon thus, he *sayd* . . . *Aymon*, 78/12; all they[m] of theyr companye arayed themselfe, and yssued oute of the castell . . . and soo *go* upon the oost of Charlemagne, *ibid.* 78/25; but Reynawde the worthy knyght *is* not abasshed, but he *taketh* all his folke, and setteth theym afore hym, and *sayd* to his brother Alarde, *ibid.* 101/12.

(b) The Present used instead of the Future is very rare:—

‘To morwe erly, whan we *see* houre and tyme goode, and alle redy, we shal do sowne oure trompetter,’ *Blanchardyn*, 157/11.

(c) The Preterite is used in the narrative; but sometimes the Perfect alternates with it, often even in the same sentence:—

Charlemain *is come* to the frensshe men, and commaunded theym for to wythdrawe theym selfe, *Aymon*, 84/7, 8; Reynawde and his bredern are goon upon the walles, and loked about theym, and sawe that the bassecourte of the castell brenned there as their wytaylles were, *ibid.* 98/1, 2; Sir Bleoberis ouerthrewe hym, and sore hath wounded hym, *Morte Darthur*, 296/32.

This use crops up pretty often in Middle English epic poetry. Cf. *Story of Genesis and Exodus*:—

‘Wið wines drinc he wenten is ðhogt,
So ðat he haueð ðe dede wrogt. 1149, 1150;
Symeon and leui it bi-speken,
And hauen here sister ðor i-wreken.’ 1855, 1856, 2043,
2101, 2312, 2609, 2622, 3746, 3798, 3956.

(d) The Preterite instead of the Past Perfect Tense is still very common in Caxton:—

(We) shall shewe the sorowes and the complayntes of the proude pucelle in amours, and the manyere that she kept after the kysses that blanchardyn toke of her, *Blanchardyn*, 43/8. And (the city) hym semed the most fayre and most riche cyte that euer he sawe, *ibid.* 45/17. Cf. 47/33, 57/29, 59/26, 66/15, 116/8, 128/34, 129/26, 145/12, 162/6, 185/6. Malory, *Morte Darthur*, 37/13, 49/2, 99/31, 150/25, 271/19, 313/14, 325/18, 337/7, 348/3.

(e) If what a person thinks, hopes, or tries does not agree with the facts, the verb containing the object of the verbs *think*, *believe*, *trou*, *fear*, *hope*, *try*, etc., appears, as a rule, in a tense anterior to that of those verbs, *e. g.*:—

The prouost and the other of the towne entred ayen in to the cyte, wenyng to them that Blanchardyn had be wyth them, but he was not, *Blanchardyn*, 88/8.

1. for they were bothe fal in swone, so that no lyf coude be perced in theire bodyes, but trowed all they that were present that they had be bothe deed, *Blanchardyn*, 20/2; as they sholde neuer haue seen echie other, they toke leue one of other, 94/5; for well he wend that he sholde neuyr haue seen ayen her, 95/30; but the prouost . . . trowed that he (Blanchardyn) had ben a sarrasyne as other were, 128/10; they were constreyned to enter into the brode see agayne, lest they sholde haue smytten himself agrounde, 136/13. (She) was in a grete feer lest he had ben drowned in the grete tempest, 152/14; she was right glad, wenyng to her that it had be Sadoyne, 183/13; and thenne sir launcelot wold haue yeuen hym alle these fortresses and these brydges, *Morte Darthur*, 352/4. Cf. *ibid.* 368/35, 369/30, 392/29, etc.

2. The infinitive of the perfect, instead of the present tense, after such verbs is (with a very few exceptions) strictly observed:—

He wende to haue tourned the brydell of his horsse, *Blanchardyn*, 140/32; the cassydonyers had not syth the powere for to haue dressyd it (the standarde) vp ayen, 141/30; (the prouost) wend neuer to haue come tyme ynouge there, 158/3; he wende to haue lost his wyttes, 186/33; he trowed certaynly to haue fynysshed hys dayes, 188/3. Cf. 107/11, 108/8, 113/22, 117/25, 136/22, 152/29, 166/8, 182/23, 184/2, 197/25, 203/9, 205/25, 205/31, 206/5; *Charles the Grete*, 133/1, 142/13, 143/15; *Aymon*, 60/2, 85/26, 101/28, 175/23, etc.; *Morte Darthur*, 35/12, 37/15, 83/1, 83/6, etc.

Exceptions:—

(Almodes) wythdrewe hym self in to his pauyllion, commaund-
yng his folke that enery man shold loke to lodge hym self, trowyng
to be in a sewrete that his enmyes as for that same day sholde not
comen nomore out of their cyte (but they yssued out), *Blanchardyn*,
59/20; she shal neuer haue no parfytte Ioye at her herte, for lone of
a knyght of whom she is enamored, whiche she weneth to be peryshed
(but he was not), 155/3. Cf. 167/25, 185/14, 186/22, 186/27, 190/33;
Aymon, 196/26, 231/11; *Morte Darthur*, 227/13, 248/3.

This use was continued in the 16th century:—

He fell to the erthe, wenyng he had been slayne, BERNERS, *Huon*,
29/25; (Huon) drew out his sword to defende hym selfe, thynkyng
the beest wold haue assayled hym, 111/11; cf. 200/31, 291/2; with
the infinitive, 11/17, 26/30, 27/3, 31/13, 40/9, 44/20, 62/15, 69/6,
90/5, 100/4, 108/4, 108/30, etc.; he was about in such familiar sort to
have spoken to her, SIDNEY, *Arcadia*, p. 27; I was about to have
told you my reason thereof, SPENSER, *Ireland*, p. 613; I hope to have
kept, *ibid.* p. 620.

‘Her scattered brood, soone as their Parent deare
They saw so rudely falling to the ground,
Groning full deadly, all with troublous feare,
Gathred themselves about her body round,
Weening their wonted entrance to have found
At her wide mouth.’ SPENSER, *Faërie Queene*, I. i. 25.

‘All cleane dismayd to see so uncouth sight,
And half enraged at her shamelesse guise,
He thought have slaine her in his fierce despight.’ *ibid.* I. i. 50³.
Cf. I. ii. 36²; I. ii. 39; I. iii. 5; I. iii. 24; I. iii. 41;
I. v. 13; I. vi. 3; I. vi. 40; I. vii. 14, etc.

(f) With regard to the agreement between the tenses in principal sentences and clauses, the strictness of our modern rules, adopted from the Latin grammar, is still unknown, and, in particular, the Preterite in the principal sentence is often followed by the Present in the clause. This is due to a sort of anacoluthon. There is, as it were, a sudden transition from indirect to direct speech, which is indeed very common in Middle English, as well as in Caxton and Malory:—

(Blanchardyn) prayed hym that he vousshessauff to helpe hym that he were doubtd knyght, *Blanchardyn*, 24/2 (Original: ‘quil le aidast a adouber de ses armes’); and whan she myght speke vnto her maystres that he that this Iniurye had doon to her what so euer he be, Yf he may come in her handes or in her power, noon shal

mowe saue hym, but he shal lese his hed for the same, 43/13; and *sayde* of a goode herte and a free wyll that he shal furnyssh Rubyon of his requeste, 83/3; Blanchardyn made grete sorowe and lamentacyon, wyshyng full often that he may yet see ones his lady, 97/17, 65/11, 69/19, 138/20, 185/7; (Charlemayne) sware god that he sholde neuer retorne in to fraunce but that Ryynawde were take; and that yf he maye haue hym, all the worlde shall not saue hym, *Aymon*, 73/16; (the kyng) badde hym be redy and stuffe hym and garnyssh hym, for within xl dayes he wold fetch hym oute of the byggest castell that he hath, *Morte Darthur*, 35/33; and there Dynadan told Palomydes all the tydynges that he herd and sawe of syre Tristram, and how he was gone with kynge Marke, and with hym he hath alle his wyll and desyre, *ibid.* 455/12.

§ 23. Mood.

Caxton's use of the Subjunctive is nearly modern; in the sentences, however, which express a wish, the *synthetic* use is remarkable. Instead of the modern '*may* god help me' there is 'so helpe me God'; instead of 'might it please God,' 'pleased God,' etc. This, however, is very common, and is continued in the poetry of even modern times. But there is another point worth noting. There are several instances of the Indicative instead of the Subjunctive Mood, which seem to suggest that the modern tendency of supplanting the Subjunctive may be traced back to Caxton's time, or still earlier.

1. Sentences expressing wish :—

I beseke and praye þe, in the worship of the goddes, that at tyme of nede, for the defense of my royalme, thou wyll uttir and shewe that which I see appiere with in þe, *Blanchardyn*, 104/22.

There are several instances of this use in *Huon* :—for I wyll thou knowyst she is the fairest mayde that is now lyuyng, 50/14; I wyll thou layest unto me good hostages, 51/9; I wyll thou knowest that ye shall all lose, 87/28; I doubte me lest he hath slayne my sone Lohyer, *Aymon*, 30/17.

Please occurs in Elizabethan authors in the Indicative, when used in principal sentences expressing wish :—

Pleaseth it you therefore to sit down to supper,—Lyly, *Euphues*, p. 28; pleaseth you walk with me down to this house—Shakspeare, *Errors*, IV. i. 12; pleaseth you ponder your Supplicant's plaint—Spenser, *Sheph. Cal.*, February.

There seems to be one instance as early as 1360, *Sir Garwayne*

and the *Green Knight*, 2439: 'bot on I wolde yow pray, displese yow neuer.'

2. Negative clauses :—

He began to ryde faste by the forest, in whiche he was bothe the daye and the nyght . . . wythout adventure to fynde that *doeth* to be recounted, *Blanchardyn*, 31/19 (original: qui a raconter *face*); wythout fyndyng of eny aduventure that *is* to be recounted, *ibid.* 127/7; it nedeth not to be doubted that he is comme to his extremite of prowes, wythout that amours *hath* ben the cause in the person of some hyghe a pryncesse, 72/19.

3. Conditional sentences :—

(a) The clause (introduced by *if*) appears sometimes in the Indicative :—

And yf thou wylt not doo it . . . *Aymon*, 25/6; always yf he *hath* trespassed ayenst you in any manere, I am ryghte sory for hit, *ibid.* 30/28; now shall it be seen yf it *is* true or not, *ibid.* 325/3.

The Subjunctive appears in *Aymon*, 25/33, 26/1, etc.

(b) Sometimes the principal sentence following a conditional clause appears in the Indicative, though the latter expresses irreality :—

For a ryght gode knyght he *was*, yf he had been a crysten man, *Blanchardyn*, 86/13; for I *was* dysherited and undoon for euer, yf they had not been, *Aymon*, 159/6.

§ 24. Imperative Mood.

1. The Imperative is very often followed by the personal pronoun. Instances abound. Cf. p. xiii.

2. Here and there the imperative seems to be represented by the Indicative, as the arrangement of words suggests :—

But wel *ye knowe* that he was not hadde sore ferre from the kynge his fadre, *Blanchardyn*, 13/1 (original: sachiez); A, fayr damoyseles, said Amand, *ye recommaunde* unto la Beale Isoude, *Morte Darthur*, 436/16.

This occurs very often in the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, as in the *Cursor Mundi* (frequent) :—

'Almigtin louerd, hegest kinge,
 ðu giue me seli timinge.'—*Story*, 31.

'Adam, ðhu knowe eue ðin wif,' *ibid.* 397. Cf. 737, 1492, 2072.

The Oriel Text of the *Book of Curtesye* has one instance :—

'As ye be commandyd, so ye do algate.' 120.

Hill and Caxton have: 'so do ye algate.'

The Infinitive.

§ 25. *Active and Passive.*

While, as mentioned above, the Infinitive in Old English—as well as in the other Teutonic languages—was indifferent with regard to voice, the later periods of Middle English develop the passive on the same principle as Latin, and are probably modelled on that. Whenever there is an action without a subject to do it, we find the passive construction in Latin—*infinitivus passivi* and *participium passivi* (or rather *gerundium*), e. g. *militem occidi iussit*; *credendum est*. So far as I am aware both these constructions are translated in Old English, as well as in Middle English of the first centuries, by the simple infinitive. Instances abound:—

þa hi þæt ne geþafodan, þa het he hi *beheafðian*,—Sweet, *Oldest English Texts*, p. 177 (Martyrology); þa heht se casere gesponnan flower wildo hors to seride, *ibid.*; Eac is to geðencanne, *Cura pastoralis*, 53; denum eallum wæs . . . to geþolianne . . . oncyð, *Beowulf*, 1418; ne bið swyle ewénlic peáw, idese to efnanne . . . þætte freoðu—webbe, *ibid.* 1941; we nu gehyrað þis halige godspel beforan us rædan, *Blickling Hom.* 15/28. Cf. 55/25, 107/26; hit is lang to areccene, *Wulfstan*, 7/12; seo menniseness is wundorlic ymbe to smeagenne, *ibid.* 15/14, 25/6, 27/1, 158/16, etc., etc.

Middle English:—

Nu ne þerf na mon his sunne mid wite abuggen but toward crist ane mid scrifte swa him his preost lered al swa his festen, þe swiðe ouer Rimet þes flesces wlongnesse and chuc (chire?) 3ong and god to donne þeruore monie and feole oðre godere werke þe nu were long eou to telle,—*O. E. Hom.* I. 9; heo wes wurse to þolien þenne efreni of alle þa oþre pine, *ibid.* I. 43; hwet is us to donne?—*ibid.* I. 91; þan alden his to warniene wið uuele ipohtas, *ibid.* I. 109; II. 117, 139; þatt (sc. floce) toclepp þatt to lofenn iss, *Ormulum*, 77; þeos (þinges) heoð alle ine freo wille to donne or to leten, *Ancren Riwe*, 8; leteð writen on one serowe hwat se 3e ne kunneð nout, *ibid.* 42.

'Ghe knew it for hire owen sune;
And quane it sulde sundred ben,
Ghe bar it teremuth for to sen.'

Story of Genesis and Exodus, 2628;

'ðe bi-leuen brennen he bead.' *ibid.* 3154.

'O spuse-brek womman
þat þe Iuus dempt to stan.' *Cursor Mundi*, 186;

‘worþie for to neuen.’ *ibid.* 4056, 4420, 5634, 5678, 6364, 6718.

‘And syn he best *to love is* and most meke.’ *Chaucer*, V. 77 ;

‘foul artow *to embrace*.’ *ibid.* III. 93.

‘But ay thay wondren what sche mighte be,
That in so pover array was for *to se*.’ *ibid.* II. 310.

‘His brest was hole withouten for *to sene*.’ *ibid.* III. 13 ; ‘it (sc. þe oost) is to dispyse (orig. spernendum est).’ *Borthius*, p. 12.

his emperour is *to undirstand* our Lord ihesu crist, *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 22 (= by this emperour is understood, etc.); I wolle haue this childe, that thi wife has brought forthe this nyght, *to norisshe* in my paly, *ibid.* p. 208 ; sone the emperoure made letters *to send* to the empresse, *ibid.* p. 213 ; thenne she brought him out of þe prison, and *gerte bathe him*, *ibid.* p. 312.

The passive construction is rarely to be met with in the earliest Middle English texts. There are, however, numerous instances in the 14th century :—

Cursor Mundi (Cotton, Göttingen, and Trinity MSS.), 4856 :

‘þair siluer he tok and gaue þam corn
And to þair inne did it *be born*.’

Cf. 5004, 5080, 9098 ; worthy to be . . . *i-preysed* (= *praeconiis attollendi*), Trevisa, *Polychronicon*, I. 3 ; suche serueþ and is good *to be knowe* of Cristen men, *ibid.* I. 17 ; that made hem gentil men *y-callid be*,—*Chaucer*, I. 240.

‘And suffrith us . . .
ful ofte *to be bete* in sondry wise.’ *ibid.* II. 314.

(Petrarch’s Original, p. 170 : et saepe nos multis ac gravibus flagellis *exerceri* sinit.)

In Caxton the old use is still very frequent, if it is not the prevailing one ; and, to conclude from several instances, the passive construction was not quite familiar to him. The proportion between the instances of active and passive construction is in *Blanchardyn* 11 to 8.

(a) Governed by adjectives and answering to the Latin Supine.

Active.

The sore of loue is ryght anguyssous and heuy *forto bere*,—*Blanchardyn*, 68/23 ; lete vs not departe from hens for this is a goode place for *to deffende*, *Aymon*, 108/10 ; but the foure sones of Aymon were good *to knowe* by thother for they had on grete mauntelles of scarlet furred with ermynes, *ibid.* 224/8.

Passive.

(Subyon) tolde them . . . that he wold wedde the proude pucelle in amours, for many causes and raysons that were to long *to be reherced*,—*Blanchardyn*, 179/18; here shall you here of the hande hewyng, and of a thyng heuy *to be recounted*,—*Aymon*, 53/12; Reynawde and his bredern are suche knyghtes that they ben not *for to be lightly ouerthrowen*, *ibid.* 104/2; ye are gretly *to be blamed*, *ibid.* 234/6.

(b) Governed by verbs, especially by *do* and *make*, answering to the Latin *Infinitivus Passivi*. Caxton very often uses a redundant *do*, so that we find such awkward expressions as, ‘he did do make.’

Active.

I shal doo *folow* hym (original: *Ie le feray sieur*), *Blanchardyn*, 44/10; he made *to drawe vp* ancre, *ibid.* 111/13; they made *to take vp* the ancre and *to hale vp* their saylles, *ibid.* 127/2; he made the toun *saute* ofte tymes, *ibid.* 152/4; Subyon domaged theym ryght sore, and their place, wyth their bombardes and other engynes of warre, that he had do *brynge* there, *ibid.* 200/31; but what so euer goode sporte and pleyasure that blanchardyn sawe ther *make* for his sake nothyng coude playse hym, *ibid.* 110/11; very striking is *ibid.* 12/22: Blanchardyn was taken in to the handes of a right noble lady of the lande *for to norysshe* and *bryngen vp* (original: *pour le nourir et esleuer*). Cf. *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 208 (quoted above, p. lxii).

There is also both the active and passive construction governed by the same verb:—

Kyng Alymodes commaunded expressely to the mareshall of his ooste, that he shold doo make and to be sette vp a gallhouse, *Blanchardyn*, 187/23: *Aymon*, 70/5, 73/30, 74/22, 78/14, 90/24, 96/21, 96/28, 129/4, 145/23, 147/21, etc.

Passive.

for he made *to be brought* vnto hym by his folke al suche armures and harneys as to hym behoued to haue, *Blanchardyn*, 47/19; (Blanchardyn) made hym *to be armed*,—*ibid.* 47/22; he made his trompetto *to be souned*, *ibid.* 119/23; *Aymon*, 65/8, 66/14, 69/34, 73/23, 73/26, 74/13, 80/1, 80/21, 84/31, 87/1, 96/24, 101/22, 167/32, etc.; *Morte Darthur*, 37/1, 367/38, etc.

(c) Governed by the verb ‘to be,’ answering to the Latin *Gerundium* or *Futurum Passivi*:—

Active.

And where vpon is *to by-leue* that blanchardyn was neuere in hys lyff half so glad, *Blanchardyn*, 80/11; syr Emperour, this paynym

nameth hym self fyerabras, whiche is moche *to redoubte* and hath done moche harme to crysten men, *Charles the Grete*, 42/26; and yf thou mayst come vnto the hye secrets whyche ben strongly *for to doubte* and *drede* in the doubtous courteynes of the most hye prynces. Thenne shalt thou be most messhaunt, *The Curial*, 5/12; ye be to blame (still kept), *Aymon*, 83/7, 99/13.

Passive.

He began to ryde faste by the forest wythout aduenture to fynde that doeth *to be recounted* (original: qui a raconter face), *Blanchardyn*, 31/19; wythout fyndyng of eny aduenture that is *to be recounted*, *ibid.* 127/7; yf Blanchardyn was ryght glad of this aduenture, it is not to be axed, 42/1, 12; it is not to be told but Blanchardyn mayntened hymself, 50/29.

Instead of the infinitive there occur two instances of the past participle:—

Thise ben the folke of themperour Charlemayn, that goeth to Ardeyn for to besege a castell that the foure sones of Aymon haue *do made* there, *Aymon*, 70/29; how the kyng Charlemayn wold haue *doon hanged* Mawgys incontyuent after that oliver had deliverde hym to hym, *ibid.* 365/5. Cf. Alle the werk . . . which I haue *do maad*,—*Bury Wills*, p. 39.

There are striking instances of group (b) in Berners's *Huon*:—

(Huon) toke the horne of Iuorey from his necke and toke it to his host *to kepe*, sayenge, 'host, I take you this *to kepe*,' 85/15. Cf. *ibid.* 233/16 (kepe, however, may be the substantive; Middle English, *kep*. See Stratmann s. v.); thyder his doughter was brought to hym *to se*, *ibid.* 313/31; how the duches Esclaramond deliuered her doughter Clariet to Barnarde *to bere* to the abbot of Cluny, *ibid.* 401/26.

For the Tense of the Infinitive, see above, p. lvii.

§ 26. The Simple Infinitive is far from being so much restricted as in Modern English. Caxton's use of it is nearly as free as Chaucer's. A few instances will do:—

How after many dysputacyons Olyuer *ayded arme* fyerabras, *Charles the Grete*, 57/4; But the valiaunt erle of rames pursned hym so nygh that he suffred hym not *goo* at his wylle, *Aymon*, 517/9. Cf. Man schal not suffre his wyf *go* roule aboute, *Chaucer*, II. 226; That wol not suffre us *duellen* here, *ibid.* II. 279.

The Infinitive governed by 'do' is nearly always simple: for instances see the preceding paragraph.

After 'make' the simple Infinitive in a passive sense is very rare.

He *made* the toun *sawte* ofte tymes ful sore, *Blanchardyn*, 152/4 ; The good lady *made* bryng lynnyn, *Aymon*, 129/7. Cf. Chaucer, *Boece*, p. 55, l. 1460 : he lete brenne þe citee of Rome and *made* *slen* þe senatours.¹

§ 27. *To* and *for to* preceding the Gerundial Infinitive.

As a rule, Caxton uses *for to*,

(a) In order to denote aim and purpose ; (b) after substantives.

The first translates the French *pour*, the latter *de*. There are, however, exceptions. On the first sixty pages of *Blanchardyn*, *to* occurs eighty-six times, and of these only two are governed by nouns, viz., 16/6, 41/20. On the other hand, out of the eighty-six passages containing *for to*, there are but three governed by verbs, viz., 18/18, 29/25, 37/13. Here and there both *to* and *for to* occur in the same sentence :—

They alle sholde mounte on horsbacke *for* tenquyre and seke after his most dere and welbeloued sone, and *to* brynge hym ayen vnto hym, *Blanchardyn*, 20/21 ; ye myght well kepe your selfe that ye com not so often to see vs and *for to* doo vs harme, *Aymon*, 83/9.

§ 28. *Functions of the Infinitive*.

(a) Caxton sometimes uses the Infinitive—as in Old and Middle English—where we use the Gerund, especially after prepositions :—

Wythout aduenture *to* fynde, *Blanchardyn*, 31/18 ; *Wythout* *to* make ony noyse, *Aymon*, 78/24 ; yf I goo there *wythoute* myn armes, nor *wythout to* be as it apperteyneth, *ibid.* 219/31 ; *wythout to* be dyshonoured, *ibid.* 470/25. Infinitive with the Gerund, *Blanchardyn*, 37/15, 16 ; he salued hym prayng that *for to* *paye* well and largely content him, he wold vouchsauf *to* take hym for his hoste, *Blanchardyn*, 46/9 ; ye knowe well the offence that your broder halde doon *to* me, *for to* *hane* slayn soo cruelly Lohier, *Aymon*, 60/2 ; but none myght compare wyth Reynawde *for to* *do* well, *Aymon*, 82/3 ; yet ye be there and wel ferre *for to* be oute, *Charles*, 93/3 ; ye are gretely *to* blame *for to* displease kyng Arthur, *Morte Darthur*, 80/12.

Remnants of this use occur still in Spenser (? as conscious archaisms) :—

¹ Dr. Furnivall suggests that this construction may explain Shakspeare's puzzle in *All's Well*, III. iv. : 'I see that men make rope's (make us to be ensnared) in such a scarre (fright) that we'll forsake ourselves.'

‘Or who shall let me know

On this vile body *for to* wreak my wrong.’

Faërie Queene, II. viii. 28/4.

‘feare nought, then saide the Palmer well aviz’d,

for these same Monsters are not these in deed,

But are into these fearefull shapes disguiz’d

By that same wicked witch, to worke in dreed,

And draw *from* on this journey *to* proceed.’

Ibid. II. xii. 26/5.

(b) The Infinitive used instead of a whole clause (as a many-worded adverb) :—

They kylled and slue and hurte sore many one, Deffendynge hem selfe soo strongly ayenste their enmyes, to theyr grete losse and damage, and *to* wythdrawe them self ayen = so that they withdrew themselves (original: ‘maint en naurent et occirent en eul defendant, tellement que leurs ennemis, a leur grant perte et dommage, sen retournerent arrieve sans gaires prouffiter, car moult en yolt de mors et de naures’), *Blanchardyn*, 187/10; he lefte not *for to* be forthwith quartered . . . but that he toke that same sarasyn by the heyre, etc., *Charles the Grete*, 132/18; *for to* renne xxx legthes he wold not be wery, *ibid.* 150/13; Here is to hard a mocke for me, and ye wyne not moche by, *for to* gabbe me of this faeyon, *Aymon*, 338/29 (conditional clause); and soo he lete conduyte the harper out of the countrey but *to* say that kyng Mark was wonderly wrothe he was (conditional clause), *Morte Darthur*, 465/12.

There are several instances of this use in Berners’s *Huon*, and here and there in Elizabethan writers :—

Syr, quod they, *to* dye in the quarell we shall ayde and socoure you (edition of 1601: were we sure to dye, etc.), *Huon*, 22/2; I thanke the of thy grace to haue gyuen me the puyssaunce to sle such a creature (ed. of 1601: that thou hast gyuen me, etc.), *ibid.* 109/21; as long as I lyue I shal neuer forgete Huon, and shal alwayes, *to* dye in the payne, kepe me for the bodely company of ony man lyuinge (ed. of 1601: and shal alwayes be redy to dye in the payne and kepe me fro, etc.), *ibid.* 195/14; yf he had knowen it *to* haue dyed in the quarel he wolde neuer haue consented to that treason, *ibid.* 284/6; Comforte your men, who hathe great desyre to defende this citey for the sauegarde of their owne bodyes and lyues, thus *to* make sorow ye can wyn nothyng therby, *ibid.* 387/30.

§ 29. *The Infinitive Absolute.*

There is a peculiar use of the Infinitive which turns up first in the second half of the 14th century :—

'I say this, be ye redy with good herte
 To al my lust, and that I frely may
 As me best liste do yow laughe or smerte,
And never ye to gruck it.'—*Chaucer*, II. 289 (*Grisilda*).

'Let hym fynde a sarasyn
And y to fynde a knyght of myn.'—*Guy of Warwick*, 3531/2.

I have tried in vain to find any trace of this use in earlier days, and can only account for it in the following way. There is an outspoken tendency in the English of the 14th century to supplant adverbial clauses of time, and express a condition by absolute constructions:—

þe same Plato lycyng, hys maistre socrates deservede victorie of unriȝtful deēp in my presence, *Chaucer's Boece*, 184 (original: 'eodemque superstitie praeceptor ejus Socrates injustae victoriam mortis me adstante promeruit'); but I withstod þat ordinaunce and overcom it, *knowyng al þis þe kyng hym self*,—*ibid.* 308; *The service doon*, they soupen al by day, *Chaucer*, II. 364; *This wordes seyde*, she on hire armes two fil gruf, *ibid.* IV. 337; *The cause iknowe*, and of his harm the roote, Anon he yaf the syke man his boote, *ibid.* II. 14.

As appears by the preceding examples, both participles serve to represent clauses in the present and past tenses. But how about the future? Why should there be no absolute construction for a clause with a future tense? The want of a proper participle did not prevent the language from completing the use of absolute constructions. *It resorted to the Infinitive.* Wycliffe tried to introduce a future participle. 'He was *to dyinge*,'—*Lucas*, I. 2 (erat moriturus); '*to doynge*,' *ibid.* 22, 23 (facturus). But this innovation was not accepted. There is, however, a similar formation in Caxton: 'Guy, hir loue and *tocoming* husband,' *Charles the Grete*, 134/27, *i. e.* that was to be; 'Our *tocomyng* souerayne lorde,' *Blades*, 139/140; it occurs also in *Piers Plowman*. Cf. Skeat, Notes, p. 371, and Trevisa, *Polychr.* I. 267. This probably gave birth to that peculiar use which, in the course of its development, became more and more free, so that in the 15th century the Infinitive Absolute often serves to alternate with any principal sentence and clause:—

'I dar the better ask of you a space
 Of audience, to schewen oure request
And ye, my lord, to doon right as yow lest.'—*Chaucer*, II. 281.

‘Ne (he) in his desire none other fantasye brecde,
But argumentes to this conclusioun,
That sche of him wolde han compassioun
And he to ben hire man whil he may dure.’—Chaucer, IV. 127.

‘(I mene that ye wolde) agreeen that I may ben he
In trowth alway to don yow my servyse,
As to my lady right, and chief resorte
With al my wit and al my diligence,
And I to han right as yow list conforte . . .
And that ye deigne me so muchel honoure
Me to comaunden aught in any houre,
And I to ben youre veray humble trewe.’—Chaucer, IV. 230.

‘Men schold him brenne in a fuyr so reed
If he were founde, or if men myght him spye,
And we also to bere him compange.’—Chaucer, III. 38.

Item, I gene and quethe to Willm Husher III s. IV d. *and he to haue* his indentour of his prentished. *Bury Wills*, p. 16 (A.D.);
Item, I wyll that Maist. Thomas Harlowe sey the sermon at my interment, if he vouchsaft, *and he to haue* VI s. and VIII d. to prey for me, *ibid.* p. 17; *ibid.* p. 18. A striking instance occurs on p. 21: I will that the seid preest ne his successours shal not lete to ferme the seid place to no man nor woman, but *he and his successours to logge*; Also y will þat Iohn Edmund (haue) al þe led . . . *he to pay* þer for as it ys worthy, *Earliest English Wills*, 2/13 (A.D. 1387); I yeue hem halli unto Maude my wyf, *scho for to doo* with them hir owne fre wyll, *ibid.* 95/16 (A.D. 1433); *ibid.* 123/18 ff (A.D. 1439); If all thre sonnes die withoute heires of their bodies, theire moder than luyng, then *she for to haue* all the same maners, *ibid.* 124/25, 127/14, 15 (A.D. 1439):—

‘frollo þat worthy knyght
Proferyd wyth arthour for to fyght
Vnder þis wyse and condicioun.—
Ho hadde þe Maystrie haue þe crown;
And no mo men but þey twa.’

Arthur, ed. Furnivall, l. 76.

Caxton seems to have disliked this use; the following passages are the only instances I have found of an Infinitive Absolute occurring in his works:—

And with the remenaunte he shold make men ryche, and *to sette* them in good poynte, *Charles the Grete*, 126/3; yf I retorne wythoute to auenge my barons, I shall do pourely, sythe they haue susteyned and borne up the crowne Imperial and my wyll, and I now *to retorne* wythoute to auenge them. He that gaf me suche counceyll, loueth me but lytel, I se wel, *ibid.* 16/14.

But Malory's *Morte Darthur* makes a very large use of it; instances abound; and it is probably due to the influence of this great favourite of the 16th century that the absolute infinitive is very frequent in Berners, and occurs even in Elizabethan times:—

This is my counceill . . . that we lete puruey X knyghtes, men of good fame and *they to kepe* this swerd, *Morte Darthur*, 40/37; for hym thought no worship to haue a knyght at suche auaille *he to be* on horsbak and he on foot, *ibid.* 71/23; hit was neuer the custome of no place of worship that euer I came in whan a knyghte and a lady asked herborugh and *they to receyue* hem and after *to destroye* them, *ibid.* 310/23; and soo they rode vnto the keepers of beestes and alle *to bete* them, *ibid.* 367/38; The custom was suche amonge them, that none of the kynges wold helpe other, but alle the felan-ship of euery standard *to helpe* other, *ibid.* 533/18. Cf. 461/27, 590/35.

In the following instances the Infinitive Absolute is used without a subject:—

I wylle that ye gyue vnto your broder alle the hole manoir with the appertenaunce, vnder thys forme, that sir Ontzelake hold the manoir of yow, and yerely *to gyue* yow a palfrey, *Morte Darthur*, 134/18; I wyl foryene the the dethe of my broder, and for euer *to become* thy man, *ibid.* 224/19; thou shalt neuer escape this castel, but euer here *to be* prys mer, *ibid.* 244/14; I will do to yow homage and feaute, with an C knyghtes with me, and alle the dayes of my lyf *to doo* you seruyse, *ibid.* 266/31; he shold fyghte body for body, or els *to fynde* another knyght for hym, *ibid.* 303/14; there is non other waye but thou must yelde the to me, outhur els *to dye*, *ibid.* 314/3. Cf. 324/14, 408/8, 496/9, 527/25, 633/14, 646/32.

Berners goes a step beyond Malory in his free use of the Infinitive Absolute:—

Yf it fortunyd that the vanquisser sle his enemye in the feld, or he confesse the treason for the deth of his sonne, that than the vanquyssher *to lese* all his londys, *Huon*, 40/26; it shall be sayde that you who hath lyuyd in so grete tryumphe all the dayes of your lyfe, and now in your latter dayes *to become* a chylde, *ibid.* 47/6; whan thou seest hym sytte at the table, than *thou to be armyde* wyth thy sworde, *ibid.* 50/7; And also thou *to brynge* me thy handfull of the hereof hys herde, *ibid.* 50/20. Cf. 107/5, 116/32, 169/14, 169/20, 185/11, 256/21, 287/20, 303/26, 304/15, etc.

In all these instances the Infinitive Absolute is more or less governed by, or at least in connection with, the finite verb of the

principal sentence; but there are some instances where the Infinitive is used entirely apart from the preceding sentence:—

By God, quod he, I hope alway byhynde! And *she to laugh*, *Chaucer*, IV. 198. Cf. IV. 185, V. 295.

‘Most sencelesse man he, that himselfe doth hate,
To love another; Lo! then, for thine ayd,
Here take thy lovers token on thy pate
So they to fight,’—*Spenser, Faërie Queene*, I. vi. 47/8.

Mr. Kitchin, in his Clarendon Press edition, explains this expression by ‘and they go to fight’; but I am rather inclined to see in it a remnant of the Infinitive Absolute, if not an imitation of the older French use. See Littré, *Dictionnaire*, s. v. *de*, 20°.

§ 30. The Infinitive in connection with the Accusative (or Nominative) case, where we now put *for* or *for . . to*.¹ As in Chaucer, the Infinitive with the Accusative occurs governed by substantives, adjectives, and impersonal verbs:—

No wondur is a lewid man *to ruste*,—*Chaucer*, II. 16; now were it tyme a lady *to gette* henne, *ibid.* IV. 250; but it is good a man *be* at his large, *ibid.* II. 71; (his folke) putte hem self vpon their enmyes, so that it was force the polonyens *to recule* alak, *Blanchardyn*, 107/18; it is better a man wysely to be stille than folyssly to speke, *Charles the Grete*, 93/5; for it is gods wyll youre body *to be punysshed* for your fowle dedes, *Morte Darthur*, 67/10; for it semeth not yow *to spede* there as other haue failled, *ibid.* 77/34.

In Malory, and even in Shakspeare, we sometimes find the Infinitive in connection with the nominative case instead of the expected accusative, after substantives, adjectives, and impersonal verbs:—

Thow *to lye* by our moder is to muche shame for vs to suffre, *Morte Darthur*, 453/4; hit was neuer the custome of no place of worship that euer I came in, whan a knyghte and a lady asked herberough, *and they to receyue* hem, and after to destroye them, *ibid.* 310/23; a heauier task could not haue been imposed than *I to speak* my griefs unspeakable,—*Shakspeare, Err.* I. i. 33; what he is indeed, more suits you to conceive than *I to speak of*,—*As You Like It*, I. ii. 279; thou this *to hazard* needs must intimate skill infinite or monstrous desperate,—*All’s Well*, II. i. 186; *I to bear* this . . . is some burden,—*Timon*, IV. iii. 266.

¹ John Fisher has the modern construction: ‘It is better *for* a synner to suffre trybulacyon.’—*English Works of John Fisher*, ed. Mayor (E. E. T. S.), p. 41, l. 9.

§ 31. Sometimes the Infinitive is omitted, and its function is included in the preceding auxiliary verb. This is especially the case where we now use verbs like 'go,' 'move,' etc.

This omission is rather frequent in Old English :—

Swa swa oferdruncan man wat þæt he sceolde to his huse and his reste, *Boethius*, 132; Ðat hie forgieten hwider hie seylen, *Cura Pastoralis*, 387/14; for oft Ðonne hy witodlice geseoþ þæt hy sceolon to reste, *Beda*, 283; þæt he nyste, hwær ut sceolde, *Orosius*, 286/20; Ic him æfter sceal, *Beowulf*, 2817; þonne he forÐ scile, *ibid.* 3178; þonne Ðu forÐ seyle metod-sceaft seon! *ibid.* 1179; Ac hie to helle seulon on þone sweartan siÐ, *Genesis*, 732; Min sceal of lice sawul on siÐ fæt, *Iuliana*, 699; Heo wæs on ofste, wolde ut þanon feore beorgan, þa heo onfunden wæs, *Beowulf*, 1293; ær he in wille, *ibid.* 1371; Ic to sæ wille, *ibid.* 318; nu wille ic eft þam lige near, *Genesis*, 760; Ða he him from wolde Ða gefeng he hine, *Cura Pastoralis*, 35/19; þa mid þam þæ hi hie getrymed hæfdon and togædere woldon, þa wearÐ eorþbeofung, *Orosius*, 160/28; ac þa hie togædere wolden þa com swa ungemetlic ren, *ibid.* 194/17.

Middle English :—

'Bot I wyl to þe chapel, for chaunce þat may falle.'

Sir Gawayne, 2132.

'I frayned hym . . . whider þat he þouȝte.'

Langland, *Piers Plowman* (B), 16/174.

I could not find this use in Caxton, but there are instances in Malory :—

But the brachet wold not from hym, *Morte Darthur*, 37/24; I wyll to morowe to the courte of kyng Arthur, *ibid.* 446/1; whether wylt thou? *ibid.* 560/32; that wold the none harme, *ibid.* 390/4.

§ 32. *The Present Participle* ending in -yng, -ynge (scarcely in -ing), has the same functions as in Modern English; for *tocoming*, see above, § 29, p. lxvii.

With regard to voice, there are but few exceptions to its active meaning. *Desplesaunt* = displeasing occurs in *Blanchardyn*, 27/19; 'thy lyffe is to me so gretly *displeasaunte*.' But several times it has the passive sense = displeased :—

Byfore whiche cyte was yet Kyng Almodes at siege wyth his oost, wherof the fayr the proude pucell in amours was sore *display-saunt*, *Blanchardyn*, 127/11; but on thys day . . . so *desplay-saunt* ne sory was he neuer as I shal make hym for the, *Charles the Grete*, 62/3; the noble flory pes was moche *dysplaysaunte* for the

necessyte of the frensshe men, *ibid.* 124/26; wher fore thadmyral was so *dysplaysaunt* and angry that he wende to haue dyed, *ibid.* 143/14. The verb *displease* occurs also several times in the phrase: *dysplayse* you not, *ibid.* 113/20, 146/34; and in the past participle *dysplaysed*, *Aymon*, 464/19, 510/8.

Malory has *beholdyng* = beholden:—

Ye are the man in the world that I am most *beholdyng* to, *Morte Darthur*, 42/24; I am moche *beholdyng* vnto hym, *ibid.* 86/22; me semeth ye ar moche *beholdyng* to this mayden, *ibid.* 476/32; therfor ye are the more *beholdyng* vnto god than any other man to loue hym and drede hym, *ibid.* 640/11; *beholden* occurs, *ibid.* 86/11, 89/5. Cf. Skeat, *Notes to Langland*, p. 161. Instead of *holden* [B, A], we find in [c] the form *holdinge*.

This represents a common corruption, which appears also in *beholding*, as used for *beholden* by Shakspeare and others, see *Richard III.*, II. i. 129; *Julius Cæsar*, III. ii. 70; and Abbott, *Shakspeare Grammar*, 3rd ed., sect. 372.

§ 33. *The Past Participle* exhibits far more irregularities with regard to voice. Past Participles of transitive verbs used in an active sense, or at least indifferent as to voice, turn up in all the periods of the language.

Old English. Ond ic bebiode on godes naman, þæt nán mon þone æstel from þære béc ne dó, ne pá béc from þæm mynstre: *uncūþ* hú longe þær swá gelærede biscepas sien, *Cura Pastoralis*, Preface.

Uncūþ may very likely be an absolute participle = ‘it being unknown,’ but I am rather inclined to take it in an active sense = ‘not knowing,’ referring to *ic*. The Middle English use of the word seems to justify this interpretation:—

His muð is get wel *uncuð* with pater noster and crede, *O. E. Miscellany*, p. 4, 112; of his swike he arn *uncuð*, *ibid.* p. 16, 512;

‘Here dede is al *uncuð*

Wið ðat spekeð here muð.’ *O. E. Miscellany*, p. 19, 594.

Eftsonē we þe beð *uncuðe* þe heuenliche kinge, for þat ure li flode him swiðe mislikeð, also he wile noht enowe bute þat þe him beð queme (we that do not know the heavenly king . . . he also will not acknowledge us), *O. E. Homilies*, II. p. 45. Cf. *unwiste*.

There is a parallel to this use in Old Norse. *Kunnr* = Old English *cúð*, is used in an active sense:—

Atli sendi

ár til Gunnars

kunnan segg . . . (Attila sent once to Gunther, a knowing, *i. e.* clever man), Edda, *Atlakviða*, 1/3; *Geðrówod* under ðám pontiscan Pilate,—Ælfrie, *Homilies*, II. 596/14; hwæt getáenode sé gebrædda fise, búton ðone *geðrówodan* crist? *ibid.* II. 292/13; and his bróðer sunu Irtacus, yfele *geworht* man, féng tó his rice, *ibid.* II. 476/17; ond hie þa wurdan hraþe *gelyfde* Crist him sealde gesihþe, *Blickling Homilies*, p. 155/5; *gelyfed* = believing, also Ælfrie, *Homilies*, II. 26/32; *Lives of Saints*, II. 302; and æt nyhstan þæt fole ða weard swa wið god *forworht*, þæt he let faran hæþenne here and forhergian eall þæt land, *Wulfstan*, 14/2. Cf. *ibid.* 155/11; niniuéte wæron forsyngode swyðe, ac hy dydan, swa heam þearf wæs, *ibid.* 170/11.

Middle English. The *Old English Homilies* exhibit the same participles as those quoted above:—

And þa welle bi-wisten XII. meister deoffen swile ha weren kinges to pinen þer wiðinnen þa earmung saulen þe *for-gult* weren, *O. E. Homilies*, p. 41; nu leofe breðre 3e habbeð iherð hwa erest biwon reste þam *for-gulte* saule, *ibid.* p. 45; he demað stiðne dom þam *forsunegede* on his efter to-come þet is on domes deie, *ibid.* 95; on hwan mei þe mon modegian þen he beo wel *ipozen* and *ipungen*, for he mei findan fele þe beoð bet *ipozen* and *istozen* þene he, *ibid.* 107; heo setten heore honden ofer *ilefde* men, and heo underfengen þene halian gast, *ibid.* p. 91. Cf. *unbilefde* men, *ibid.* II. p. 81, 171, 195; he scal beon swa *iweorht* þet him mon mote wið speken and his neode menan, *ibid.* II. 111.

There are very numerous instances of participles of compound verbs, the first part of which is *for*:—

All folle wass *forrgillt*,—*Ormulum*, 25, 26; 3iff þatt tu *forrlanged* arrt, Tu cumen upp till Criste, *ibid.* 1280; hwet sculen norlinges do, þe swikere, þe *forsworene*,—*Poema Morale*, 103. Cf. Alle he weeron *forsworen* and here treothes forloren,—*Chronicle*, ab anno 1137. *O. E. Homilies*, I. 143.

‘And it sal ben ðe laste tid,
Quan al man-kinde, on werlde wid,
Sal ben fro dede to liue brogt,
And seli sad fro ðe *forwrogt*.’

(And the righteous separated from the wicked.) *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, 266; *forswonken*,—*Cursor Mundi*, 2017; *forliuen* (Cotton, Göttingen, Trinity), *forliued* (Fairfax), *ibid.* 5315; *forwalked* = tired out with walking,—Skeat, *Notes to Langland*, p. 312; *forwanded* = tired out with wandering, *ibid.*

Chaucer, too, has several instances of this use:—

Now hadde Calkas left, in this mischaunce, Alle *unwiste* of this fals and wikked dede, His doughter, IV. 111, 112. (*Unwiste* = not knowing, ignorant;) þou and god . . . ben *known wiþ me* þat no þing brouȝt me to maistrie or dignite; but þe comune studie of al goodenes, *ibid.*; Boece, *Consolation*, 14 (original: ‘tu mihi et . . . deus *consci* nullum me ad magistratum nisi commune bonnorum omnium studium detulisse’).

‘O olde, unholsom, and *myslyved* man!’ *ibid.* IV. 313 = man of ill living. Cf. Modern English, *long-lived*, though that is probably an adj. in *-el* from the compound noun *long-life*: its *i* is long.

Caxton’s use of the past participle is pretty regular; there are, however, several instances at variance with modern use. In his reprint of Chaucer’s *Boece* or *Consolation*, Caxton alters the ‘known’ of the passage quoted above, into *knowing*:—

(Blanchardyn) was *remembred* of it allewayes, *Blanchardyn*, 31/6; and the prouost asced hym yf he was *counseyllled* for to fulfyll the construction of that texte, *ibid.* 47/12, 178/2; the lady . . . is well *trusted* wyth me, *ibid.* 79/1; wherof he was right sore *merueylled*,—*ibid.* 139/16, 162/7. Cf. I was *wondyrde* (Harleian MS., I wondered), Hampole, *Prose Treatises*, p. 6; ha false and *renyed* strompet = renegade, *Blanchardyn*, 185/31; I meruaylle me moche how thou, that art prudent and wyse of goodes art so *ouerseen* and fro thy self, for to dar expose thy self to so many perillis = mistaken (Furnivall, *Glossary*), *Curial*, 3/13; whan charlemagne sawe hym *seased* of mawgys, he called rowlande, *Aymon*, 365/26. Cf. *Huon*, 94/8; whan Huon sawe that he was *sessyd* of his horne (ed. of 1601: possessed).

Malory is, in this respect as in many others, nearer the Middle English use:—

They are very and *forfoughten*,—*Morte Darthur*, 87/25, 105/35; I pray you in no wyse be ye *aknowen* where I am, *ibid.* 254/21; thenne he told the kyng alle that batail, And how sir Palomydes was more weyker and more hurte and more *lost* of his blood, *ibid.* 447/13.

§ 34. The Verbal Noun.

The verbal noun in Caxton, with its functions of noun and verb, may be traced back to two different sources.

(A.) When used as a noun, it derives from the Old English verbal noun in *-ung*, *-ing*. Instances of it are very common in Caxton, as

in modern times. It is only worth noting when it forms part of a compound:—

Muste I nedes deye thus shamefully, wythoute *deffence makynge*? *Blanchardyn*, 188/31; the barons and knyghtes thenne of a right gode wyll, wythout answer nor *replye makynge*, in grete haste . . . went and armed hem self, *ibid.* 189/32; in thes *wordes talkynge*¹ togyder, dyd arryue there foure of their men, *ibid.* 192/25: Reynawde toke therof vengeaunce vpon Berthelot by good rayson and that more is, it was his *body deffendynge*,—*Aymon*, 207/29, 566/26; and for that *honour doynge* to Sir Tristram he was at that tyme more preysed, *Morte Darthur*, 394/19.

These compounds are common in Old and Middle English:—

Sige forgeaf Constantino cyniŋ ælmihtig, *dómweorðunga*,—*Elene*, 144; sineweorðung, *ibid.* 1218; dægweorðung, *ibid.* 1233; dustsceawung, *Blickling Hom.*, 113/29; unriht gitsung, *ibid.* 53/21; bi his clōðes wrixlunge, *O. E. Hom.*, I. 207; by his side openunge, *ibid.*; in his blod swetunge, *ibid.*; þere is . . . fallyng in blode shedyng, *Piers Plowman* (Text C), 12/282; in housiŋ, in haterynge and in to hiegh clergie shewynge, *ibid.* 15/76; late usage be ȝowre solace of seyntes lyues redynge, *ibid.* 7/87; þorugh ‘ibeatus virres’ techynge, *ibid.* 10/321; þorw bedes byddynge, *ibid.* 19/373; with herte or syȝte shewynge, *ibid.* 13/279; without any money payenge, *E. E. Wills*, 107/20 (A.D. 1436).

The more modern phrase ‘the house is building’² is not met with in Caxton; he has still *a* (or *in*) preceding the verbal noun:—

(He) herde the feste and the noyse that was *adoynge* in the pronostis house, *Blanchardyn*, 67/5; she wyst not what she sholde saye or thynke therof, whether she was *a* wakyng or a slepe, *ibid.* 152/34; and as the feste was *a* doynge, there came a messenger . . . *Aymon*, 163/7; he founde the chirche of saynte peter *a* makynge, *ibid.* 576/8; atte the same oure that this Ioye and feste was *in making* (original: ‘se faisoit’), *Blanchardyn*, 67/1; *Morte Darthur*, 84/12, 389/7.

(B.) The verbal noun is used as a verb: then it derives from the present participle.

1. Governed by the preposition *in*.

We now use *in* in connection with the verbal noun, where, in Old English, the simple participle was preferred, *e. g.* ‘ealo drincende oðer sædou’ = others said *in* drinking ale, *Beowulf*, 1946. I

¹ ? pres. part. absolute ‘they talking.’—F. J. F.

² It is a pity that ‘is being built,’ &c., tend to displace this construction.

suppose that *in*, imitated from the French, was grafted upon the old participle, so that it kept its verbal function. Therefore it was not followed by *of*, even in the earliest periods of its use :—

And thei seye, that we synne dedly, *in scharynge oure Berdes*,—*Maundeville*, p. 19 ; he was a dedly Creature, suche as God hadde formed, and duelled in the Desertes, *in purchasyng his Sustynance*, *ibid.* p. 47 ; and *in bryngynge hire Serryse*, thei syngen a Song, *ibid.* p. 310.

Caxton very often drops *in*, as in *Blanchardyn*, 14/20, 16/8, 18/8, 33/12, etc. But even when it precedes the verbal noun, it is not followed by *of* :—

I am come to serue her *in kepyng my worship*,—*Blanchardyn*, 76/11 ; and *in tornynge hemself* ayen, [they] layde hande on their swerdes, *ibid.* 84/27 ; enery man cam forth to doo his deuoyre, eche of hem in his rowme *in defendynge the place*,—*ibid.* 113/4, 123/17 ; *Charles the Grete*, 26/34, 52/11, 66/34, 85/23, 163/19, etc.

2. There are a few passages in Caxton, which, in my opinion, throw a most interesting light on the use of the verbal noun, both in Middle English and in modern times. ‘Most humblic beseekyng my . . . lord to pardon *me* so presumyng,’ *Blades*, 140 ; ‘take no displaysir on *me* so presuming,’ *ibid.* 148. Cf. 165. I see in this construction a mode of expression which was the only one used in old times, and which still remains in vulgar English : ‘don’t mind *me* sitting down.’

In Old English, as well as in Latin, Greek, and the old Teutonic languages, it is not the action or state as an abstract, but the person or thing acting, which is the subject of perception, feeling, or thought. ‘*hac literae recitatae magnum luctum fecerunt*’ = the reading of this letter, *Livius*, 27, 29 ; ‘*poena violatae religionis iustam recusationem non habet*’ = for the violation of religion,—*Cicero, De Leg.*, 2, 15.

To this principle are due many of the so-called absolute constructions in the Old Teutonic dialects. See *Grimm*, IV. 873, ff.

It appears also in the noun-clauses in Old and Middle English. Instead of the modern abstract sentence, e. g. ‘you see that he’s going away,’ the old construction is, ‘you see *him* that he goes away.’ So *Old English Hom.*, I. 17 ; ‘*3if þu hine isez þet he wulle assottie to*

þes deofles.' See below, 'Noun Clauses.' The same principle appears also in the following instances illustrating the older use:—

Be þe lifigendum (during thy life time), *Beowulf*, 2666; be þæm lifigendum, *Beda*, 2, 5; To-janes þo sunne risindde = at the time of sunrise, *Old English Miscellany*, 26.

'Alle waters als þai sall rynne
And þat sal last fra þe son rysyng
Til þe tyme of þe son doun gangyng.'

Pricke of Conscience, 4777 f.

'After the sunne goyng down.'—*Genesis*, 28, 11.

In later times this use began to decay, as indeed in every respect abstraction supplanted intuition, and the verbal noun took the place of the old present participle. Thus *Purvey* alters the instance quoted above to 'aftir the goyng down of the sunne.' Cf. *Exod.* xxii. 26, *Deuteronomy* xi. 30. Perhaps we may see the state of transition in the following passages of the *Ayenbite*. The old participle is kept in its outward form, but the new use, *i. e.* the verbal noun, throws its shade on the construction. Thus we have: 'ʒef he zuereþ fals *be his wytinde*,' p. 6. 'Be *him* wytinde' would answer to the Old English 'lifigendum'; 'be his wytinge' would be quite modern (as it really occurs, see below); the connection of both gives 'be *his* wytinde.' Cf. pp. 8, 28, 37, 40, 47, 94, etc. The French has: 'à son (leur) escient.'

Both the mixed and the modern construction occur on p. 73, *Ayenb.*: 'guo into helle ine pine libbinde: þet þou ne guo ine pine steruinge' (original: 'en ton vivant, en ton morant').

The extremely free use of the verbal noun as an adjective to substantives, which is characteristic of Elizabethan English ('undeserving praise,' 'unrecalling crime' in Shakspeare) is not met with in Caxton. Perhaps these are worth noting: 'fallyng sekeness,' *Charles the Grete*, 37/28; 'weepyng teerys,' *Morte Darthur*, 338/9. Cf. *Huon*, 219/25; *Lucrece*, 1375; *Complaint*, 304.

§ 35. *The Adverb.*

I. Derived from Nouns.

(a) In the Genitive Case.

Alonge = of longe = fully, at length. As *alonge* by the grace of god it shall be shewed in thistorye of this present book, *Blanch-*

ardyn, 2/6; (Blanchardyn) entred in to a chambre, hanged wyth right fayre and riche tapysserie of the destruction of Troye, well and *alonge* figured, *ibid.* 15/2; his mayster . . . well and *alonge* dide aduertise the chyldc, *ibid.* 15/22; he dyde reherce unto blanchardyn al *alonge*, how the royalme of tourmaday was come to a doughter full fayre, *ibid.* 128/29.

Of lighte = lightly. A man that is well gárnysshed is not of *lighte* overthrowe, *Aymon*, 106/6.

Of a freshe (a apparently mistaken for the article) = anew. After . . . began the batayll *of a freshe*, sore harde and fell, *Aymon*, 110/23.

(b) Old Instrumental, now the Accusative case.

Other while (Old English hwilum) = sometimes. It is as requesyte *other whyle* to rede in Auncyent hystories, *Blanchardyn*, 1/13.

Wonder grete (Old English wundrum). Syr Sadok . . . gaf hym a *wonder grete* falle, *Morte Darthur*, 532/19; soo they hurtled togyders *wonder sore*,—*Morte Darthur*, 433/15; he merueylled *wonder* gretely, *ibid.* 459/35.

Caxton has *wonderfull*. Wherof the good lady Margerye was *wonderfull* wroth and sory, *Aymon*, 36/23. Cf. pat felt was *wunder strong*,—*Layamon*, 1744; it fresethe *wonder faste*,—*Maunde ville*, 11; singe *wondir swetly*,—*Gesta Romanorum*, 334; *wondyr hevyr*,—*ibid.*

The old instrumental case is contained also in the following adverbial phrases:—

She rydeth *the lytyl paas* (orig.: a petit pas), *Blanchardyn*, 38/22 (Blanchardyn bygan to ryde on a *good paas*,—*ibid.* 40/10); accordyng to my promyse, I haue holpen you *the beste* that I coude, *ibid.* 149/25; but *the beste* that to hym was possyble he dyde recomforte her, *ibid.* 172/21; whiche came rennyng *all his myght* towarde Subyon, *ibid.* 201/20.

Perhaps the following phrases are formed after the same principle, if not in analogy to the cognate accusative:—

Dynadas was ouerthrowen hors and man *a grete falle*,—*Morte Darthur*, 401/22; there was Kyng Arthur wounded in the lyfte syde *a grete wounde* and a peryllous, *ibid.* 412/25; the spere wente in to his syde *a grete wounde* and a peryllous, *ibid.* 442/20.

II. Derived from Adjectives.

Though the final *e* was scarcely more than a mere ‘monumentum scriptionis,’ yet there are very numerous instances of adjectives used as adverbs by means of (or without) the old *-e*.

1. Before adjectives.

Clene.

Ye cam lyke a madde man *clene* oute of your wytte, *Morte Darthur*, 599/16.

Close.

He lyght ful quykly the shyld alonge the breast and the helmet wel *clos* laced, *Blanchardyn*, 24/16.

Exceeding.

Whan the admirall saw her so *exceeding* fayre he was taken in loue, *Huon*, 162/8.

Hard.

Sire Lamorak was *hard* byge for hym, *Morte Darthur*, 358/2.

Marvellous.

Thys is a man *meruayllous* ryche, *Charles the Grete*, 42/15.

New.

Now be the thre brethern *newe* horsed, *Aymon*, 63/29; there was a chylde *newe* dede, *Charles the Grete*, 37/18; but they knewe hym not for he was *newe* desguysed, *Morte Darthur*, 636/24; when he sawe that he was *new* horsed agayne he was ioyfull, *Huon*, 291/24.

Wonderful.

The dukes Beues had slayne Lohier, the sone of the kynge Charlemayn, wherof the goode lady Margerye was *wonderfull* wroth and sory, *Aymon*, 36/23.

Wood wrothe.

Whan he sawe a knyght with his lady he was *wood wrothe*,—*Morte Arthur*, 407/12; thenne was kynge Marke *wode wrothe* oute of mesure, *ibid.* 470/15, 487/7, 488/19, 610/13, 647/26; (Launcelot) ranne *wylde wod* from place to place, *ibid.* 593/4.

2. Attached to verbs.

Clene.

They made hym to be wasshed *clene*,—*Blanchardyn*, 148/18; all the estates were set and Iuges armed *clene*,—*Morte Darthur*, 491/33; thenne was sir Palamydes *clene* forgeten, *ibid.* 553/25; I counceyle yow said the kynge to be confessid *clene*,—*ibid.* 577/28, 601/8, 611/10, 638/35, 647/9, 672/11; he saw within the shyppe but one man *clene* aruyd, *Huon*, 447/3.

Clere.

(An hand) helde within the fyst a grete candel whiche brenned ryght *clere*,—*Morte Darthur*, 666/24.

Dear.

Neuer deeth was so sore solde ne so *dere* boughte as this shall be, *Aymon*, 38/26.

Fayre.

Nature had *fayre* appareylled the gardyne, *Blanchardyne*, 122/28; (Reynawd) wente *fayr* vpon the folke of charlemagne, *Aymon*, 449/12; soo they did sauntly and *fayre*,—*Morte Darthur*, 370/17; he salewed hym not *fayre*,—*ibid.* 659/18, 666/35. Cf. *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 3, and *passim*; and *fayre* endyd his lyfe.

Foul.

Gerarde of Roussyllon weneth for to fare *fowll* wyth vs, *Aymon*, 42/2; thou hast borne the *foule* this day ageynst me, *Charles the Grete*, 69/31; my fader is kyng Bagdemagus that was *foule* rebuked at the last turnement, *Morte Darthur*, 188/8; *foule* haue ye mocked me, *ibid.* 511/31; haue done *foule* to yow, *ibid.* 599/35.

Incontynent.

She called to her them that were in her chambre to whiche *incontynent* she commaunded that they sholde goo, *Blanchardyn*, 56/16; he shold late hym haue it *in-contynuent*,—*ibid.* 60/4; the maystres dyd perceyue *incontynent* by her wordes . . . *ibid.* 64/30, 187/1, 194/7, etc.; than duke Naymes departyd, and *incontenent* he incounteryd Charlot, *Huon*, 32/14; but Huon releuyd hym *incontynent*,—*ibid.* 56/24, etc. Cf. Marlowe, *Tymburlain*, 52; Spenser, *Fuërie Queene*, I. vi. 8/5; *ibid.* II. ix. 1/7; Peele, *Alphonsus*, 229 a.

Late.

Now haste you thi rewarde, for my lorde Lohyers deeth that thou *late* slew, *Aymon*, 56/18; he was but *late* made knyghte, *Morte Darthur*, 471/15; cf. *Blades*, p. 172. Cf. That likewise *late* had lost her dearest love,—Spenser, *Fuërie Queene*, IV. viii. 3/4; *ibid.* I. ii. 11/2.

Loude.

He smote his hors wyth the spore . . . escryeng as *loude* as he myght, *Blanchardyn*, 170/13.

Nere.

I am myself *nere* goon, *Aymon*, 565/23; the knyghtes name was called Accolor that after had *nere* slayne kyng arthur, *Morte Darthur*, 89/15.

New.

Thou *newe* made knyght thow hast shamed thy knyghthode, *Morte Darthur*, 108/7; there was a *fayre* medowe that semed *nene* mowen, *ibid.* 228/17; A. M. horses let to be *new* shode, *Huon*, 113/10; let her be bayngned and wesshyde and *new* arayed, *ibid.* 536/25.

Cf. And streems of purple blood *new* die the verdant fields,—Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, I. ii. 17.

Nyghe.

How *nyghe* was I lost, *Morte Darthur*, 654/27.

Passyng.

Sir Palamydes dyd *passyng* wel and myghtely, *Morte Darthur*, 557/21 (there is also *passyngly*,—*ibid.* 543/13, 544/33). Cf. And all the wyles of wemens wits (she) knew *passing* well,—Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, III. viii. 8/9.

Kyd, *Spanish Tragedy*, 107.

Playne.

I ware yow *playne*,—*Morte Darthur*, 621/34. Cf. By which he saw the ugly Monster *playne*, Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, I. i. 14/6.

Scarce.

For they be not vytaylled *scars* for foure dayes, *Charles the Grete*, 122/3. Cf. *Scarce* them bad arise,—Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, I. iv. 14/14, 22/8.

Softe.

He salued hym full *softe*,—*Aymon*, 33/27.

Stronge.

Soo *stronge* he spored his horse, that he wente ayenste Reynawle, *Aymon*, 86/23.

The common *adverb of negation* is not used as in Modern English.

Ne = not (preceding the verb) occurs but quite exceptionally: in *Blanchardyn* only *nys* = ne is:—

There *nys* no tonge humayn that coude to yow recounte ne saye the grete sorow, *Blanchardyn*, 19/22; ther *nys* so grete sorowe, but that it may be forgotten at the laste, *ibid.* 133/4; ther *nys* no tonge of no creature mortall, that vnto you coude telle . . . the grete Ioye, *ibid.* 148/2; there *nys* noo man so oolde but he sholde soone gete hete there, *Aymon*, 452/12.

Here and there *ne* turns up also before other verbs:—

Charlemagn *ne* shall see the beste torne of the worlde, *Aymon*, 168/18; I *ne* entende but onely to reduce thauncyent ryme in to prose. *Charles the Grete*, 39/6; he *ne* preyssett kyng ne erle, *ibid.* 42/17; *ne* doubte ye not for I shal rendre you anone al hole, *ibid.* 95/11.

Ne = nor.

I holde nother castelle *ne* fortresse of hym, *Aymon*, 25/22.

Double negatives are very common :—

He *neuere* had borne *noon* armes, nor herde speke therof, *Blanchardyn*, 13/24; nor also had *not* seen the manere and thusage of Ioustynge, *ibid.* 14/1; (*Blanchardyn*) *neuere* had taken theratte *noo* hede, *ibid.* 15/2, etc. etc. There is an instance of four negatives in one and the same sentence. For *neuer* daye *nor* owre the childe *Blanchardyn* toke *noo* fode of *none* others brestis, *ibid.* 13/3.

§ 36. Prepositions.

A = in or on.

(He) herde the feste and the noyse that was adoyng in the pronostis house, *Blanchardyn*, 67/5. For other instances of this kind, see Gerund. The pronoste descended *a lande* (= on land), *Blanchardyn*, 198/30, 199/25; *Aymon*, 145/30, 525/7, 529/4. They lepte *a horsbak* (= on horsbak), *ibid.* 180/27, 183/16; *Aymon*, 26/28; the kynge aseryed hym self *a hyghe* (= on high), *ibid.* 20/12; he descended from his hors *a foote*, *Aymon*, 35/10, 186/5, 232/29, 490/20; they wende that the cyte had be sette a fyre (= on fire), *ibid.* 511/30, 583/9; he thus founde hymselfe *a grounde* (on grounde), *ibid.* 45/1, 232/10, 564/14.

A is often = of.

(He) cut his helmet and the coyffe of stele in suche manere *awyse* (= of wyse) that the goode swerde entred in to the brayne, *Blanchardyn*, 28/20. Cf. above, Genitive.

Against = upon, towards.

Hym happend *ageynst* a nyghte to come to a fayr courtelage, *Morte Darthur*, 200/3; (*Launcelot*) *ageynst* nygyt rode vnto that castel, *ibid.* 574/6.

At = to.

He myght not brynge his entrepryse *at* an ende, *Blanchardyn*, 41/14; the bloode ran vp *at* her face, *ibid.* 64/16, 84/36, 176/26, 177/7, 177/21, 188/1. (He) wente wyth all hys oost *at* Mountlyon, *Aymon*, 69/14, 66/27, 79/21, 349/5, 408/1, 430/9, 496/8.

At = on.

Reynawde toke the kynge and drewe hym a lityll *atte* oo side, *Aymon*, 146/7, 453/7.

By = from, out of.

(He) laughe at them *by* grete love, *Aymon*, 230/25, 298/3, 303/30.

By = in.

(He) smote a knyghte *by* suche a wyse, that he putte his spere thorughe the body of hym, *Aymon*, 42/15, 61/24, 304/5, 453/1.

By = on.

They dyd soo moche *by* their iourneys that they cam to saynt Iames, *Aymon*, 156/19, 235/20, 239/32.

By = with.

(He) smote a knyghte *by* suche a strengthe that he ouerthrewe hym, *Aymon*, 43/12.

By is used alternately with *of* and *with* in passive constructions; but *of* prevails. Cf. *Blanchardyn*, 1/15, 2/12, 11/11, 18/10, 19/3, 42/13, 66/8, 97/35, 98/27, 101/27, 109/32, 113/34; *by*, 1/26, 124/16, 169/21; *with*, 91/19, 124/14; *Aymon*, 52/34, 53/1.

For = in spite of, is rare in Caxton, but occurs several times in Malory:—

This child wylle not laboure for me *for* any thyng that my wyf or I may do, *Morte Darthur*, 102/22; I wyll accomplysshe my message *for* al your ferdful wordes, *ibid.* 167/31, etc. This use is very common in Elizabethan writers. Marlowe, *Massacre*, 2114; Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, 1, 3, 24/5; Peele, *Old Wives' Tale*, 453, b; Kyd, *Spanish Tragedy*, 17; Shakspeare; see Schmidt, *s. v.*

For = from.

After she asked whi they were departed *for*¹ the kynges courte, *Aymon*, 36/19.

In = into, is still very frequent.

Yf he may come *in* her handes or *in* her power, noon shal mowe saue hym, *Blanchardyn*, 43/14; the prouost came ayen *in* the sayd place, *ibid.* 81/16, 96/29, 105/5, 109/14, 109/24, 116/24, etc.; *Aymon*, 63/1, 159/20, 210/20; *Morte Darthur*, 252/13.

Here and there also in the 16th century:—

By rise of virtue, vice shall grow *in* hate, *Gorboduc*, 180; how canst thou *in* this condition; Bunyan, *Pilgrim's Progress*, p. 35.

In = on, is rare.

That . . . *in* the crosse suffred deth and rassyon, *Aymon*, 24/20; ye ascended in to heuen and lefte for your liyeutenant saynt Peter thappostle *in* erthe, *Charles the Grete*, 71/27; Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, 760.

'I think the pleasure they enjoy in heaven
Cannot compare with kingly joys *in* earth.'

¹ Misprint for *fro*.

Cf. Lord's Prayer: Thy will be done *in* earth. And *in* the honour of a kyng he sweares,—Marlowe, *Edward II.*, 1216. He is *in* England's ground, *ibid.* 1705; Shakspeare, *Venus*, 118; *Midsommer Night's Dream*, II. i. 185; *Troilus*, V. ii. 169.

Maugre = in spite of.

(They) ledde the lady by force to castel forde, *maulgre* Subyon, *Blanchardyn*, 8/25, 9/1, 179/24, 180/29, 180/34, 189/9; *Aymon*, 86/14, 229/1; very often in Malory, and still in Shakspeare.

Mangre occurs also as a substantive:—

They myghte no lenger endure the grete *magre* that Reynawde bare to theym (original: 'dommaige'), *Aymon*, 86/16; I haue herd moche of your *maugre* ageynst me, *Morte Darthur*, 405/28. So twice in Spenser:—

'Ne deeme thy force by fortunes doome unjust,
That hath (*maugre*¹ her spight) thus low me laid in dust.'

Faerie Queene, II. v. 12/9; III. iv. 39/8.

(= a curse upon? Morris, Glossary to Spenser's Works, Globe edition).

Of differs in its functions from the modern use in several essential points.

1. It denotes reference, *as to*:—

Pardoune me *of* the rude and comyn englyshe, *Blanchardyn*, 2/9; the childe grewe and amended sore *of* the grete beaulte, *ibid.* 13/6; *of* the tables and ches playinge and *of* grayeous and honeste talkynge, he passed them that were his elder in age, *ibid.* 13/19, 20; demaundyng *of* the bataylles of Troye (= about), *ibid.* 14/13; the same, 15/8; wel shapen *of* alle membres, *ibid.* 37/21; sore troubled *of* wyttis, *ibid.* 45/8, 48/31, 65/21, 97/10, 99/14, 145/30, etc.; *Aymon*, 54/25, 64/5, 290/32, etc.

2. It denotes cause, *in consequence of*:—

(They) iudged hem self right happy *of* a successoure legytyme, *Blanchardyn*, 12/17; sory *of*, *ibid.* 21/4; euyl apayde *of* (original: maltalentif), *ibid.* 28/13; *of* a custome (= in consequence, according), *ibid.* 112/32, 130/8; he ought *of* rayson to be well rewarded, *ibid.* 126/6, 133/10.

3. *Of* = by in passive constructions. See *by*.

4. It seems to be mistaken for *on*, *upon*:—

(Kyng Charles) beyng in his dormytorye, trustyng *of* the syde of our lord in grete deuocyon began to say the psalter, *Charles the Grete*, 33/32.

¹ ? by the ill will of.—F.

This mistake, probably brought about by *a* being equivalent to *of* and *on*, is common in the 16th century :—

They began to slee alle suche as wolde not beleue *of* Ihesu Cryst (ed. of 1601 *on*), *Huon*, 152/24; the same, *ibid.* 417/30, 462/12, 464/28; I wyll send thee *of* my errand, *Sir Clyomon and Sir Clamydes*, 494 a; my master riding behind my mistress; both *of* one horse, *Taming Shrew*, IV. i. 71; as when thou shouldst be prancing *of* thy steed, Greene, *Alphonsus*, 235 b.

On mistaken for *of* :—

On hym is no care, *Aymon*, 62/27; she began to thynke *on* that poure man, *Charles the Grete*, 13/33. Probably also the phrase: *on* lyue = *alyue*, *Aymon*, 64/18. See Genitive: he seith not ryght *on* me, *Morte Darthur*, 138/25—16th century :—

‘I tell you true, my heart is swoln with wrath
On this same thievish villain Tamburlaine.’

Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, 520.

‘And tyme may yield us an occasion
Which *on* the sudden cannot serve the turn.’

Marlowe, *Jew of Malta*, 473, 1078, 2338, 4690.

The middle *on*’s face, *Lear*, IV. v. 20; my profit *on*’t, *Tempest*, I. ii. 365, 456; I’m glad *on* ’t, *Jul. Cæs.*, I. iii. 137.

Ouer = *of* :—

Kynge alymodes knyghtes had grete enuye *ouer* hym, *Blanchardyn*, 65/22; right enamored they were *ouer* hym, *ibid.* 66/25; to thende he myght be auenged *ouer* hym, *ibid.* 86/30; Blanchardyn, that grete slawghter dyde make *ouer* his men, *ibid.* 107/27.

To = up to, equal to :—

Suche a worship apparteyneth not to be doon to me, for I am not *to* the value therof, *Blanchardyn*, 109/20.

Tofore = before :—

(He) presented hym selfe *tofore* the kynge, *Aymon*, 186/24.

It is a remarkable custom in Caxton and other writers of the 15th century to use, for variety’s sake, two different prepositions for the same purpose :—

O thou free knyght, replenysshed *wyth* prowesse and *of* grete wordynesse, *Blanchardyn*, 49/15; she cam and brought *wyth* her a fayre whyte coueryng of damaske clothe, wherof she made the hors of blanchardyn to be couered *wyth*,—*ibid.* 61/7, 8; loue serued her *wyth* a messe sharp and sowre ynoughe tyl her tast that is to wyte *of* a louely care, *ibid.* 67/17, 18; (Blanchardyn) cam ridyng through the toun accompaned *wyth* the prouoste and *of* many other knyghtes,

ibid. 83/23; the knyght of whom my sayde lady is so sore enamoured *vpon*, hath to his name blanchardyn, *ibid.* 130/17; Sadoyne sawe their shyppes redy and well stored *wyth* vytaylles and *of* other thynges, *ibid.* 150/28; they all were eten *wyth* bores and *of* lions, *Aymon*, 52/34, 53/1; Charlemayne apoynted not *wyth* the foure sones of Aymon, nor *to* Mawgys, *ibid.* 58/24, 25; I shall shew you whether I can do any thyng *wyth* the spere and *of* the swerde, *ibid.* 83/28; I am not a chyld wherof men oughte to mocke *wyth*, *ibid.* 360/12. (He) toke it and robbed *wythall* the nose, the mouth, and the eyen *of* rowlande, and in like wyse to all thother xii peres of fraunce, *ibid.* 371/21, 22; wysdom desyreth you *to* be hys wyf, and *for to* be quene, *Charles the Grete*, 14/8,9; it is the same *of* whyche your god was eubawmed *wyth*,—*ibid.* 56/29, 30; O fayre Quene of Orkeney, Kynge Lot's wyf and moder *of* sir Gawayne and *to* sire Gaheris, and modir to many other, for thy loue I am in grete paynes, *Morte Darthur*, 425/12; and the begynnyng of the kynges letters spak wonderly short vnto Kynge Arthur, and badde hym entermate *with* hym self and *with* his wyf and *of* his knyghtes, *ibid.* 456/32, 33; thenne *by* his aduys and *of* sire Sadoks he lete stuffe alle the townes and castels, *ibid.* 495/19.

§ 37. Conjunctions.

And used redundantly (compared with the Old English and the present use), turns up pretty often in Caxton, as in other writers of the 15th century, and is not unfrequent in Elizabethan times:—

And the thyrd tyme with a full grete herte she revyled hym, *and* sayng to hym that he was lyke an hounde, *Trivet*, p. 233; yf thou wolt telle me, *and* I shalle gete the on fallyng to thin estate, *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 173; the vertu of the broche is this, that who so euer ber hit vpon his brest late him thinke what he wolle, *and* he shalle mete perwith at his likinge, *ibid.* p. 181; forsothe, sir, quod he, *and* I shall tell you, *ibid.* 202; sir, quod he, *and* I shall tell you not, *ibid.* 322; whiche boke I late receyued in frenshe . . . for to reduce and translate it in to our maternal *and* englysh tonge, *Blunchardyn*, 1/9; by my feyth, sayd Reynawde, *and* we shall deffende ourselfe also to our power, *Aymon*, 235/11; O, brother Reynawd, *and* what doo you here, *ibid.* 244/26; cosin Reynawd, sayd Ogier, *and* we shall kepe vs fro you, *ibid.* 263/11; alas, *and* that I dyde grete harme, *ibid.* 283/4; for the more that ye praye him, *and* the worse shall he doo, *ibid.* 330/27; syre, sayd Richarde, *and* ye shall see me anone, *ibid.* 343/22; sir, sayd mawgis, *and* I yelde me to you, *ibid.* 357/5; I praye you lete hym come here *and* that he awake myn vncler Charlemagne oute of his slepe, *ibid.* 405/12; whan he herde the duke naymes speke so, *and* it moved his blade full sore, *ibid.* 419/6; I neuer put man to the erthe *and* thys hors present, *Charles the Grete*,

70/10; I requyre the that it may playse the to take the payne for to rescowe and socoure my loue guye, *and* ellis I am a loste woman, *ibid.* 135/3; alle the barons cam thyder *and* to assay to take the swerd, *Morte Darthur*, 42/35: syre knyght, sayd the other, whoos name was Hontzlake of wentland, *and* this lady I gat by my prowesse of armes this day, *ibid.* 114/23; wyll ye, sayd syre Gawayne, promyse me to doo alle that ye maye . . . to gete me the loue of my lady. Ye syre, sayd she, *and* that I promyse you, *ibid.* 150/11; whanne Elyzabeth, Kyng Melyodas, myst her lord, *and* she was nyghe out of her wytte, *ibid.* 273/27; a mercy my lord, sayd she, *and* I shalle telle you alle, *ibid.* 275/33; wel, said the Kyng Melyodas, *and* therfor shal ye haue the lawe, *ibid.* 275/35; but their horses he wold not suffre his squyers to meddle with, *and* by cause they were knyghtes erraunt, *ibid.* 442/29; telle me, said palomydes, *and* in what manere was youre lord slayne, *ibid.* 518/31; and therefore ye may be sory, said sire Tristram, of your vnkynedly dedes to so noble a kynge. *And* a thyng that is done may not be vndone, sayd Palomydes, *ibid.* 542/29; sir knyghte, said she, and ye wille ensure me by the feyth that ye owe vnto knyghthode that ye shalle doo my wyll . . . *and* I shalle brynge yow vnto that knyght, *ibid.* 652/12; syr *and* I wille doo hit, sayd sir launcelot, *ibid.* 658/9; thenne had the kynge grete joye, and dressyng hym to sytte up, *and* toke the swerde by the pomel, *Melusine*, 153/16; and penne gaf hym the swerd ayen, and thus makyng his wounde open, *and* out of it ranne blood, *ibid.* 153/22; by my feyth, said thenne Anthony, *and* I accorde therunto, *ibid.* 217/10; sens he was aduertesyd, that with kepyng his tonge fro spekyng he myght abrege hys iorney, *and* he sayde that surely he wolde that way, *Huon*, 64/24 (ed. of 1601 omits *and*); syr, quod themperour, *and* he shal derely abyte it, *ibid.* 305/27.

Gorboduc. 'Loe, this is all; now tell me your aduise.

Arostus. *And* this is much, and asketh great aduise.' *Gorboduc*, 146;

'Warre would he haue? *and* he shall haue it so.' *ibid.* 680;

Barabas. 'Haply (the Turks) come for neither, but to pass along
Towards Venice by the Adriatic sea;
With whom they have attempted many times,
But never could effect their stratagem.

Jew. *And* very wisely said. It may be so.'

Marlowe, *Jew of Malta*, 205;

'Is she so fair?

And matchless beautiful.' *ibid.* 617.

'O earth-mettled villains, and no Hebrews born!

And will you basely thus submit yourselves

To leave your goods to their arbitrament?' *ibid.* 310;

'Well, yet the old proverbe to disprove I purpose to begin,

Which always saith that cowardly hearts fair ladies never win:
Shall I not Julia win, *and* who hath a cowardlier heart?'

Sir Clymmon and Sir Clamydes, 507, a;

Kendal. 'Thou, how art thou a gentleman?

Jenkin. And such is my master.' Greene, *George-a-Greene*, 259, a ;

Hamlet. 'Will the king hear this piece of work?

Pol. And the queen too.' *Hamlet*, III. ii. 53 ;

Cass. 'This rudeness is a sauce to his good wit.

Brut. And so it is.' *Julius Cæsar*, I. ii. 307.

Also = as :—

Also nighe as I can, *Blades*, 132.

As = as if, is very common :—

Lepyng alwaye here and there, *as* hors and man had fowgthen in thayer, *Blanchardyn*, 42/7 ; her gowne that she had on was therof changed *as* grete shoure of rayne had come doune from the heuens, *ibid.* 43/17 ; after thys fortune I haue ben syn, *as* force compellyd me therto, seruauant vnto a kynge sarasyn, *as* I had ben one of theym, *ibid.* 133/31 ; he smote vpon his ennyes *as* it had be the thonder, *ibid.* 169/2 ; he hewe the sarasins *as* they had ben wythoute harneys, *Aymon*, 137/20 ; (he) kept hymself styll like *as* he had ben deed, *ibid.* 179/11.

Still frequent in Elizabethan authors :—

'And lickt her lilly hands with fawning tong,

As he her wronged innocence did weet.'

Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, I. iii. 6/3. Cf. *ibid.* I. v. 20/9 ; III. i. 6/5 ;

'I hope our credit in the custom house

Will serve as well, *as* I were present there.'

Marlowe, *Jew of Malta*, 94. For Shakspeare, see Schmidt, *s. v.*

As is used redundantly before other conjunctions and adverbs in Malory :—

I wist it were soth that ye say I shold do suche peryllous dede *as* that I wold slee my self to make the a lyar, *Morte Darthur*, 84/38 ; awaite vpon me *as* to morn secretely, *ibid.* 287/22 ; I wille be-redy *as* to morne, *ibid.* 311/4 ; for *as* that same day this lady of the lake knewe wel that kynge arthur shold be slayne, *ibid.* 361/25 ; he charged the lady of the lake not to disconer his name *as* at that tyme, *ibid.* 362/22 ; nay, said sire Palomydes, *as* att this tyme I wille not Iuste with that knyght, *ibid.* 382/23 ; for *as* to morne the grete turnement shalle be, *ibid.* 383/23 ; that shalle ye not wete *as* at this tyme, *ibid.* 408/22 ; ye shalle not wete *as* at this time, *ibid.* 412/10.

Both (postponed) = as well, also occurs in *Morte Darthur*, not only in order to connect two, but more persons and things :—

I am sore hurte and he *bothe*,—*ibid.* 134/10 ; he smote syr galahantyne on the helme that his nose braste out on blood, and

eerys and mouthe *bothe*,—*ibid.* 192/5 ; for my hors and I ben fresshe *bothe*,—*ibid.* 323/20 ; now I wil say vnto you and to hym *both*,—*ibid.* 349/3 ; fals treason hast thou wrougt and he *both*,—*ibid.* 403/31.

Eke (Old English *éac*) = also :—

eke harneys, *Blanchardyn*, 60/21 ; I shall delyuere you hors, and wherof his son and *eke* Blanchardyn came, *ibid.* 126/13.

Ne = nor, see 'Adverbs,' p. lxxvii.

Nor—*also* = nor—either :—

For not a peny he wolde take of it, *nor* his brethern *also*,—*Aymon*, 145/7.

So = if :—

Yf nedes I shal dey, I were of it all well content, soo that it were in the absence of her, *Blanchardyn*, 188/23 ; I shall now quyte you and relese vnto you all the servyse that ye owe me, to you and to your eyres for evermore, *soo* that ye will take Richard, the sone of Aymon, and see that he be langed, *Aymon*, 324/7 ; I will not take your yeldyng vnto me, But *so* that ye wylle yelde you vnto syr Kay the Seneschal, *Morte Darthur*, 200/32 ; I wille ryde with you *so* that ye wille not rebuke this knyght, *ibid.* 348/32.

This use is also frequent in Elizabethan authors :—

'So now the mighty emperor hears of you,
Your highness needs not doubt but in short time
He will . . . redeem you from this deadly servitude.'

Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, 1011 ; *ibid.* 3839 ; *Faustus*, 1364 ;
Jew of Malta, 189 ; *ibid.* 190.

Than = then = when (Old English *ðonne*) :—

Thenne Brastias saw his felawe ferd so with al, he smote the duke with a spere that hors and man fell doune, *Morte Darthur*, 54/2, than Syre Tor was redy he mounted vpon his horsbak and rode after the knyght, *ibid.* 109/20 ; thenne the duke sawe he myghte not escape the deth, he cryed to his sones and charged them to yelde them, *ibid.* 155/4 ; and *thenne* B. aumayns sawe hym soo well horsed and armed, thenne he alyghte doune and armed hym, *ibid.* 222/26.

Than = than that, than if :—

For I had leuer that ye were confused and dysmembred *than* I shold take armes or hors for to Iuste lyke as ye say, *Charles the Grete*, 43/17 ; and yf thou haue broughte Arthurs wyf, damd Gweneuer, he shall be gladder *than* thou haddest guyen to him half fraunce, *Morte Darthur*, 167/24 ; now am I better pleasyd, saye

Pryamus, *than* thou haddest gyuen to me all the prouynce and parys the ryche, *ibid.* 178/2; I had leuer to haue ben torn with wyld horses *than* any varlet had wonne such loos, *ibid.* 178/4.

That, like the Greek *ὅτι*, is often used to introduce a direct speech (*oratio recta*), so that it is equal in value to the modern colon:—

He sayd full angerly to the styward, *that* ‘to an euyll owre hath your lady ben so madde as to mary her self to a ladde, a straunger,’ *Blanchardyn*, 184/9; (Merlyn) late wryte balyns name on the tombe with letters of gold, *that* here lyeth balyn le Sauceage, *Morte Darthur*, 98/35; [*how* in the same function occurs, *ibid.* 84/7; (the kynge) wrote the names of them bothe on the tombe, *How* here lyeth launceor the kynges sone of Irlond, that at his owne requeste was slayne by the handes of balyn.]

That often replaces other conjunctions in compound clauses, especially *when*; this is a literal translation of the French ‘*que*’ in the same function:—

When they of the cyte had seen the manere and the rewle of their enmyes, and *that* all wyth leyser they had seen their puyssance and their manere of doynge, The Captayne and the pronoste of the towne dyde ordeyne a stronge and a bygge worde, *Blanchardyn*, 58/17; *when* he knewe and *that* he was aduertysed by his sone . . . he was al ynough content, *ibid.* 126/10; and *whan* she sawe that by no manere of meanes she myght not tourne ne chaunge the corage of her cruel fader, And *that* she herde hym saye blame of her god . . . she by grete wrath sayd, *ibid.* 186/9; and *whan* the nyght was passed, and *that* reynawd was vp he went here and there, *Aymon*, 434/23; and *whan* the tables were take vp and *that* everi man had eten at his ease, they wente to their warde, *ibid.* 463/27; and *whan* the morowe came and *that* mawgys had his newe sloppe and his hode he toke his palster, *ibid.* 467/9.—And *after* that the worke was ended, and *that* all their enmyes were taken or slayn, they brought hym and entred wythin the cyte, *Blanchardyn*, 195/26; *after* that Sadoyne was crowned to be kynge, and *that* he had archyened and made all his ordonnaunces . . . Blanchardyn, his felawe, dysposed him self for to retourne ayen toward Tormaday, *ibid.* 196/22.—So began he to be ful of thoughte and all annoyed of hym self *by cause* he was not armed tyl his plesure, and *that* he myght not yssue out, *ibid.* 59/30; they sholde make theim gode chere of suche goodes as god had lent hem: *by cause* they semed to be knyghtes, and *that* it was sore late to ryde eny ferther, and *that* noo housyng nor no retrayt was nyghe, *ibid.* 204/27, 28; thother laborers had so grete enoy *by cause* he dide better his deuour than thei, and *that* he was better loved than thei, *Aymon*, 575/16.

That is used tautologically:—

None can telle it you, bycause *that* it (the beaulte) was so grete, that god and nature had nothyng forgotten there, *Blanchardyn*, 13/7; it is bycause *that* he is a straunger, *ibid.* 91/20; I shall now quyte you and relesse vnto you all the servyse that ye owe me . . . for evermore, soo *that* ye wyll take Richard . . . and see that he be hanged, *Aymon*, 324/7; ye knowe how longe *that* he hath dammaged vs, *ibid.* 402/14; me thynketh that we oughte to avenge vs vpon hym, sith *that* we have hym, *ibid.* 402/16; ye wote well that I left him by cause *that* peas shold be made, *ibid.* 407/26; I am wel admeruaylled fro whens *that* cometh to the suche presumpeicon *Charles the Grete*, 53/13; for it is longe sythe *that* they haue ony thyng holpen vs, *ibid.* 140/30.

II. SYNTAX OF THE SENTENCE.

§ 38. *Concord.*

The first rule of every syntax, namely, that a finite verb agrees with its subject *in number*, is very often sinned against in the early periods of the English language.

(A.) The slightest violation of grammar is the construction of *collective nouns with predicates in the plural* (κατὰ σύνθεσιν). Of this concession made by grammar to logic, there are instances from Old English down to our own day:—

Old English: *þæt folc sæt* . . . and *aríson*, *Exodus*, xxxii. 6; se here *swór* *þæt hie woldon*, *Chronicle*, 921; *þin ofspring sceal ágan heóra feónda gata*, *Genesis*, xxii. 17. (March, *Comparative Gram.*, § 402.)

Middle English: *þat israelisshe folc* was walkende toward ierusalem on swinche, and on drede, and on wanrede, and *þo wile was* hersum godes hese. Ac efter *þan þe hie weren* wuniende in ierusalem . . . *þo hie* forleten godes lore, *O. E. Homilies*, II. 51. *Dis wírd* of engeles metten him, *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, 1790.

‘And *euerile on* *ðat* helden *wið* him,
ðo *wurðen* *nirc*, and *swart*, and *dim*.’—*ibid.* 285.

‘And als *ilkan* for sere resun
Com for to mak *þair* orisun.’—*Cursor Mundi*, 10,222.

‘That all the folk *schuln* laughen in this place.’—*Chaucer*, II. 231.

‘And saugh wel that hire folk weren al aweye.’—*ibid.* IV. 201.

‘The remenaunt were anhangen, more and lesse.’—*ibid.* III. 81.

This use is rare in Caxton. 'People, folk,' are followed by a singular verb, e. g. *Aymon*, 38/12, 100/19; the plural is an exception, e. g. *Aymon*, 70/26: 'what *are* this folke?'

(B.) Plural nouns, or several nouns joined together by a copulative conjunction, take a singular predicate. This striking irregularity crops up very early, and is very frequent in the 15th century, and in the time of Shakspeare:—

Moren and wilde (h)uni *was* his mete, *O. E. Homilies*, II. 139;

'In firme begining, of nogt

Was heuene and erðe samen wrogt.'—*Story of Gen. and Exod.*, 40;

'For *was* sundri speches risen.'—*ibid.* 668;

'ðor *was* laid adam and eua.'—*ibid.* 817;

'Alle his wundes þat he doþ, *is* þurch þene vend.'—*The Passion of Our Lord*, l. 60 (*Old English Miscellany*, 39).

'Alle his wundes þat he doþ, *is* þurch þene quede.'—*ibid.* l. 250.

(he) steaȝ into heuene þet *is* aboue alle sseppe þet *ys* ine heuene, *Ayenbite*, p. 11; þe neȝende article and þe þri laste belongeþ to þe holi gost and *is* þellich, p. 13.

Siþen þe sege and þe assaut *watz* sesed at Troye, *Sir Gawayne*, l. 1; out tak the forsayd matyns bokys that *is* bequethe to Thomas my sone, 5/14; *Early English Wills*, 5/14;—the hole goodis that *is* my owne, 92/12; þis *es* the dettis þat *es* [h]owyng to me, 39/34 (*Essex*, ab. 1417); the 80 mark þe whiche *is* in Thomas Harwodes hand, 44/12; forto dispende the goudis that *es* therin, 71/2; On the finger *was* wretyn wordis: 'percate hic,' *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 7. Cf. Zupitza, note to *Guy of Warwick*, l. 298.

CAXTON. The kyng Alymodes and alle his oost *was* right sore affrayed, *Blanchardyn*, 119/29; here *is* xxli of money, *Aymon*, 332/7; here *is* grete merveylles, *ibid.* 444/31; Such II. brethren *as is* kyng Ban and kyng bors, *Morte Darthur*, 57/38; there ben but fewe now lyuyng that *is* so myghty as he *is*, *ibid.* 241/22; he arryued up in Irland euen fast by a castel where the kynge and the quene *was*,—*ibid.* 285/9; there *was* slain that morowe tyde x M good mennys bodyes, *ibid.* 53/12.

There are many instances of this freedom in the literature of the 16th century:—

There *is* more nobler portes in England, *Andrew Boorde*, p. 120; there *is* at Bath certain waters, *ibid.*; the olde noble the Aungels and the halfe aungels, *is* fine golde, p. 121; in Cornwall *is* two speches, p. 123; in Wales *is* used these two stalticious matters, p. 127; yet in Ireland *is* stupendous thinges, p. 133; XVIII Scottish pens *is*

worthie an Englysshe grote, p. 137; the mountains *is* very baryn, p. 160; the greater *is* the fiods, p. 161; there is many great mountains, p. 165. Cf. 171, 172, 185, 191, 195, 208, 245.

There *was* many Dukes, Erles, and barons, *Huon*, I. 2/22 (ed. of 1601: were assembled); there *was* lenyng in wyndowes ladys and damesels, *ibid.* 38/28 (ed. 1601: were); there was present in the feld lordes and knyghtes, 43/4. Cf. 90/19, 115/19, 126/30, 156/6, 157/9, 167/3, 210/24, 313/25, 325/25, 371/13, 388/29, 390/6, 394/21, 413/15, 414/23, 422/11, 423/4, 471/22, 472/19, 473/31, 555/23, 29, 589/24, 605/28.

'What shooting is, how many kindes there *is* of it—is tolde.'—
Ascham, *Toxoph.* 31.

'Both the mastur and rular of the sterne *ys* wyse and experte.'—
Starkey, *England*, etc., p. 57, l. 1071.

'See, Diccon, 't was not so well washed this seven year, as ich neeen.'—
Gammer Gurton, 193.

'There *is* five trumps besides the queen.'—*ibid.* 199.

'What needs these plaints?'—*Mucedorus*, 232.

'What needs these words?'—*ibid.* 232.

'Here *is* four angels for you.'—Greene, *Looking-Glass*, 125, a.

'Here *is* twenty angels.'—*ibid.*

'Each others equall puisaunce envies,
And throug their iron sides with cruell spies
Does seke to perce.'—Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, I. ii. 17, 4/6.

'He had yet lived, whose twelve labours displays
His endless fame, and yet his honour spreads.'—*Tunered*, I. iii.

'Here's your thirty shillings.'

'Our neighbours, that were woont to quake
And tremble at the Persean Monarkes name,
Now sits and laughs our regiment to skorne.'

Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, 115.

' about their necks
Hangs massic chaines of golde'—*ibid.* 314.

'Whose fiery cyrcles beare encompassed
A heaven of heavenly bodies in their Spheares
That guides his steps and actions to the throne.'—*ibid.* 464.

'*Was* there such *brethren*, sweet Meander, say?'—*ibid.* 567.

'What *saies* my other friends?'—*ibid.* 768.

'Upon his browes was pourtraid vgly death,
And in his eies the furie of his hart,
That shine as Comets, menacing reueng,
And casts a pale complexion on his cheeks.'—*ibid.* 1054/55.

'for Wil and Shall best fitteth Tamburlain,
Whose smiling stars giues him assured hope.'—*ibid.* 1136.

'What is beauty, saith my sufferings, then?'—*ibid.* 1941.

'Now shame and duty, loue and feare presents
A thousand sorrowes to my martyred soule.'—*ibid.* 2166.

- ‘My lord, such speeches to our princely sonnes
Dismaies their mindes before they come to prooue
The wounding troubles angry war affoordes.’—*ibid.* 2646.
- ‘from Trebizon in Asia the lesse
Naturalized Turks and stout Bythinians
Came to my hands full fifty thousand more,
That, fighting, knowes not what retreat doth meane.’—*ibid.* 3538.
- ‘See now, ye slaues, my children stoops your pride
And leads your glories sheep-like to the sword!’—*ibid.* 3748/49.
- ‘Distrest Olympia, whose weeping eies
Since thy arrivall here beheld no Sun,
But closde within the compasse of a tent,
Hath stain’d thy cheekes, and made thee look like death.’—
ibid. 3883.
- ‘The Humidum and Calor, which some holde
Is not a parcell of the Elements.’—*ibid.* 4477.
- ‘Sometimes like women, so unwedded maides,
Shadowing more beautie in their ayrie brows,
Then has the white breasts of the queene of Loue.’—
Marlowe, *Faustus*, ed. Breymann, 149 (B).

For Shakspeare, see *Abbott*, § 335.

The instances with *-s*, and *-th*, however, may be also explained as remnants of Northern and Southern endings.

§ 39. *Co-ordination instead of Subordination.*

It is a well-known characteristic feature of poetical style to use sentences as co-ordinate ones, which, logically, stand in the relation of subordination. But Caxton’s prose also exhibits several striking instances of this use. Two principal sentences are asyndetically joined together, where we should expect a principal sentence and a subordinate clause:—

Whan he see Blanchardyn, that all prest was to furnyshe hys enterpryse, gaffe to hymselfe grete meruaylle, and praised hym but litell, *he asked hym of whens he was.* *Blanchardyn answerd*, that for no drede nor fere that he had of hym he shuld kepe his name from hym, *Blanchardyn*, 84/3; whan the sarrasyns saw the kyunge of the gyauntes dede they were sore frayed and gretly abashed, for in hym was alle their hope. *they fled toward their tentes as faste as they myght.* *Blanchardyn* and they of Tormaday pursned them, *ibid.* 87/14, 15; Sadoyne behelde the pucell beatrix that so gentyl was and so odly fayr, *he enbraced and kyssed her*, sayeng, *ibid.* 143/21. Cf. 33/2, 39/16, 141/25, 168/24.

In the prose of the sixteenth century I noticed this use only in Berners:—

So he went to hys lodgyng sorowfull and in grete dyspleasure, and than he imagyned and studyed on the mater, and howe to brynge about his interpryse; than he departed fro hys lodgyng, and went to Charlot the kynges sone, with whome he was ryght pryuey; he founde hym syttyng on a ryche couche with a yonge knyght, *Huon*, 13/3—9; thus they 2 bretherne departyd and kyssyd their mother, sore wepyng. Thus they toke theyr horses and theyr companys, *ibid.* 14/3, 4; Charlot came agaynst the 2 brethern; the Abbot of Cluny saw Charlot commynge al armyde, *ibid.* 19/13, 14; as they lokyd in to the see they spyed a shyppe charged with xxx paynemes, and grete ryches; then Gerames saw how the shipp was commynge to that porte, then he sayd to his company, syrs, lett vs go, *ibid.* 129/11, 12. (But, perhaps in this case *then*—*then* answers to Old English *ðonne*—*ðonne* = when, then.) Cf. 134/20, 149/6—9, 152/16, 185/3, 4, 203/1, 273/8, 297/4, 313/25, 381/24, 388/2.

§ 40. *Noun Clauses.*

(A.) The Subject Clause, which, in Modern English, is introduced by *that*, turns up very frequently in the shape of an Accusative in connection with an Infinitive. 'It is better a man wysely to be stille, than folysshly to speke,' *Charles the Grete*, 93/5. See § 30.

(B.) Much more interesting is the difference in the construction of the Object Clause. Compare the following two sentences: 'And God saw the light that it was good' (*Genesis*, i. 4); 'You see that I am composed' (*Dickens, Dombey and Son*, iii. 9).

Logically speaking, the two constructions are equivalent; but psychologically, how different is the idea which they represent! In the first case the sentence expresses an abstract result; in the second, the verb *see* has a concrete object, in which a certain attribute is perceived.

The former way of expression is the older as well as the more intuitive, and it crops up very often in Early English, though the more modern one seems to have crept in at a very early period:—

Old English: Ic *þæt* gehýre, *þæt* þis is hold wëorod, *Beowulf*, 290; We *þæt* gehýrdon þurh hálige héc, *þæt* éow dryhten geaf dóm unsýndne, *Elene*, 364. Cf. 853.

Middle English: Gif þu *hine* isceþe *þæt* he wulle asottie to þes deofles hond send to his werkes. *þæt* þu hine lettest, *Old English Homilies*, I. 17; he scal soðfeste men setten him to irefen. and for godes eie libban his lif rightliche and beon on erfeðnesse anred and edmod on stilnesse. and his *ofspringe* ne *ifauie* *þæt* hi beon unright-

wise (and shall not suffer his offspring to be unrighteous), *ibid.* I. 115;

‘ful wel þu me iseie þauh þu stille were.

Hwar ich was and hwat i dūde þauh þu me uorhere.—

On God Urcisun of ure Lefdi, 105/106;

‘He wayned me vpon þis wyse to your wynne halle,
for to assay þe *surquidre*, 3if hit soth were,
þat rennes of þe grete renoun of þe Rounde Table.’—

Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, 2457;

‘(They) louen more here folye avowis to
fulfille hem þan to fulfille goddis hestis.’—

Wyclif, *Unprinted Engl. Works*, ed. Matthew, p. 103;

‘When the emperowre harde telle
All þat ease, how hyt felle,
That Saddok was so slayne,
Therof was he nothyng fayne.’—

Guy of Warwick, ed. Zupitza, 1498;

‘When he sawe dewke Raynere
And the constabull Waldynere,
How þer men were broght to grownde
Wyth grete yre yn a stownde,
Gye beganne to crye in hye.’—*ibid.* 1967.

For other instances in the same work, see Zupitza’s note to l. 1497.

I aske þe *ien* of alle the men . . . þat þei be *pikid oute*,—*Gesta Romanorum*, p. 154; knowist thou not me, what I am?—*ibid.* 208; he weht to the sheldes where they lay, *ibid.* 235; and he had grete envie of þis childe þat þe emperour loved him so moche, *ibid.* 322.

Caxton and Malory are well acquainted with the old use. The following instances are equivalent in their structure to those quoted above:—

Syre, I knowe not *your persone, what ye be*, nor to whom I speke, *Blanchardyn*, 183/26; whan sadoyne, that was the same tyme loking out at a wyndowe wythin his castell of Cassydonye, and his wyf the fayr Beatryx by hym sawe *the two oostes that they wold Ioyne toggyder* to batayl, he gaf hymselfe gret meruayl, *ibid.* 193/29; the lady, that was shette wythin, was full sore and wroth *for her frende blanchardyn, that he was soo ferre* from her, *ibid.* 197/30; (he) went to the ryuage of the water, and byhelde *it that it ranne lyke a quarel out of a crosbowe*, *Charles the Grete*, 157/26; byholde *me how I am* obedyent to the commaundements of the chyrche, *ibid.* 238/25; (he) came to the bataille and sawe *his knyghtes how they had vaynquysshed* the bataylle, *Morte Darthur*, 171/35; and we here knowe *the wel that thou arte* syre Launcelot du laake, *ibid.* 186/

38; and therfor alle the myssayenge that ye myssayed me fordered me in my bataill, and caused me to thynke to shewe and preue *my self* at the ende *what I was*,—*ibid.* 229/35; that shalle cause me that I shall not be knowen, *ibid.* 258/1; he knewe sir Blamor de ganys that he was a noble knyght, *ibid.* 303/17; syr Danadan knewe the knyght wel that he was a noble Knyght, *ibid.* 429/4; but euer sir Dynadan thought he shold knowe hym by his shelde that it shold be sir Tor, *ibid.* 429/18; he euermore desyred her to wedde her,—*ibid.* 575/34; anon the good man knewe hym that he was one of the knyghtes erraunt, *ibid.* 671/33.

But the real meaning of this old construction seems already drawing to decay in Malory and Caxton; for in many instances *that* is no longer understood as a conjunction, but as a relative pronoun; consequently the personal pronoun is dropped, and the noun clause becomes an adjective one:—

Whan the kyng herde the *prouoste*, that soo grete offre made for to haue ageyne blanchardyn, He gaff hym self grete merueylle, *Blanchardyn*, 91/29; but ouer moche dysplaysed her to see her feyth-full frende *Blanchardyn* that wolde goo ayen out of the lande, *Blanchardyn*, 172/14; of that other part, he sawe his only doughter, that denyed and defended hym his comynge in to his cyte, *ibid.* 184/7; (Alymodes) sawe hym self bannyshed and chassel out of his towne and royalme, and also his doughter that was wedded to his mortayll enmye, *ibid.* 191/30; the kyng Alymodes, seeng his folke that fled . . . cam and yelded hym self in to the handes of blanchardyn, *ibid.* 195/16; he sawe his cheff banner ouer thrawen, and hym self enclosed of al sydes, his men that fled, and awayte non other but after the stroke of deth, *ibid.* 203/17; thenne whan Charlemagne saw his peres that were soo sore moved wyth angre agenste hym, he sayd to theym, *Aymon*, 485/21; and whan reynawd saw *maugis* that dyde so well, he was glad, *ibid.* 516/19; neuertheles, Rychard beyng on a lytel montayn, and byhelde the hoost of the paynyns came ageynst hym with grete courage, ye may wel ymagyne in what estat his hert was, *ibid.* 150/29; feragus, beyng euyl contente for hys hors that was dede, took hys swerde for to smyte Rolland, *ibid.* 222/28.

(C.) Whenever the object noun-clause is at the same time an adjectival one, Caxton uses the old construction. Take for instance this sentence, 'He saw a shield that he knew to be his brother's.' Instead of using our accusative with the infinitive, Caxton says (as we also often do now): 'He saw a shield that he knew was his brother's':—

how kyng arthur was displeasyd with hym, wherfor he sente this knyzt after me, *ibid.* 83/8, 9; (Pellinore) charged the heremyte with the corps that seruyse shold be done for the soule, and take his harneys for your payne, *ibid.* 117/15. Cf. *ibid.* 119/5, 129/26, 136/3, 146/34, 149/28, 169/13, 170/32, 178/22, 183/22, 203/5, 208/4, 227/17, 231/17, 239/10, 240/9, 242/37, 247/8, 271/20, 281/6, 282/2, 315/21 and *passim*; for yf they had not be, the paynemys had dystroyed them all, or had constrayned to be conuerted to theire fals lawe, whiche had be to vs wers and heuyer than ony deth corporall, *Melusine*, 152/5, 6.

This freedom is very frequent in Berners, and occurs as late as the second half of the 17th century:—

(Huon) embrassyd hym and sayde how often tymys he had sene Guyer, his brother the prouost, wepe for you, and whan I departyd fro Burdeux I delyueryd to hym all my londes to gouerne, *Huon*, 62/31, 32; than the admyrall answeyrd, and sayd how he wolde pardon hym on the condycyon that he shulde neuer after trespas hym, nor no man in his countre, and be syde that, to become my man, and to do me homage, *ibid.* 150/1; he founde Iuoryn, to whom he shewed . . . howe he and his company founde the sayd knyght and your nece the fayre Esclaramonde, *ibid.* 163/18; than he called all his couent, and chargyd them, in the vertue of obedyence, to reuest them selues with crosse and myter and copes, to reseuyue Huon, the ryghtfull enherytour to the countre of Burdeux though the kynges of fraunce be our founders, *ibid.* 219/11, 12; they alyghted and kneled downe before Huon, and requyred hym to haue mercy, and pyte of theym as to saue theyr lyues and put vs in pryson, *ibid.* 336/17; (Huon) commaunded him that incontynent he sholde go to the emperour, and say vnto hym that yf it be his pleasure to here spekyng of any peace, I shall condyscende therto, *ibid.* 342/10; then he sayd to kynge Arthur, 'syr, I wyll ye holde your peas, for if ye speke one worde more agaynst Huon the souerayne kynge of the fayry, that he wold condemyne hym parpetually to be a warwolfe in the se,' *ibid.* 602/21; they told him that they were poor pilgrims going to Zion, but were led out of their way by a black man, clothed in white, who bid us, said they, follow him,—Bunyan, *The Pilgrim's Progress*, 133/1.

§ 42. *Adjective Clauses.*

(A.) For the construction of adjective clauses, see 'Relative Pronoun,' § 15, B, p. xxxvii above.

(B.) Adjective clauses are sometimes used with a conditional sense (who would speak = if somebody would speak):—

Certes, who someuer brought her this sorowfull and pyteuose tydyng I doubte not but that she shold slee her self for grete displaysir, *Blanchardyn*, 155/30 ; and I promyse you, that who shall hange Richarde, I shall goo to Reynawde, and shall put myself in hys pryson, *Aymon*, 326/23 ; who that sholde speke of the bredern of reynaude and of theyr dedes, it were to longe to be recounted, *ibid.* 536/3 ; for who that might take them fro the sarasyns, none of them shuld neuer retourne foot, in sury nor in tharsy, *Melusine*, 169/32 ; ‘By my hed,’ said Anthony, ‘who that shuld punysshe you . . . ye were not puyssaunt to make amendes suffysaunt therof,’ *ibid.* 209/26 ; ‘but, fayre Cousyn, it is wel trouth, that who myght goodly tary the day of your weddyng it were your honour,’ *ibid.* 238/1 ; and who that shuld enquire of me what folke they were, I shuld say it was one of Claude of Syon bretheren that camme toward his brother at his mandement, *ibid.* 249/5.

For the so-called figures of syntax, like anacoluthon, pleonasm, see the Appendix below, on Caxton’s style, p. cix, &c.

III. ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

§ 43. Subject and Predicate (Inversion).

Compared with Early English, the inversion of the present language ranges over a very limited space. Caxton, in this respect, is very near the Modern English ; in two cases, however, he has kept the Middle English.

1. Inversion used in emphatic sentences :—

Sore troubled of wyttis, and gretly vexed wythin her mynde as ye here, *rode forthe the gentel pucelle*,—*Blanchardyn*, 45/10 ; so *smot they* hem self wythin callyng vp a hyghe crye in to þe thikkest of their enmyes, *ibid.* 59/4 ; and syth *made eche hem self* to be armed hastely whan *dressid and redy they were*, they made their coursers to be had forth out of the stable, *ibid.* 60/33 ; and after that announced *was there comyng*, men made them to entre in to the chambre of parement, *ibid.* 76/27 ; to the rescue of *blanchardyn cam also the gode prouost*,—*ibid.* 166/23.

2. Co-ordinate sentences introduced by *and* are often inverted. This use may be traced to the pre-historic time of the English language. It appears in the oldest Teutonic dialects, and is still kept in Modern German, though learned grammarians are untiring in ridiculing this time-honoured use :—

Old English : Her Aepel heard cyning forþferde *and feng* Cupræd to Westseaxna rice, *Chronicle*, a. 741 ; ac monige sindon me swiðe onlice on ungelærednesse, þeah þe hi næfre leorning enihtas næren, wilniað ðeah lareowas to beorne, and ðynceð him swiðe leoht sio byrðen pæs lareondomes, *Cura Pastoralis*, p. 24.

Modern English : Syon was sum hwile iclepet þe hehe tur of Ierusalem. And *seið syon* ase muchel on englische leodene ase heh sihðe, and *bitacneð þis tur* þe heh schipe of meidenhad, *Hali Meidenhad*, p. 5 ; and *was his* holie lichame leid in buriels in þe holie sepulere, *Old English Hom.*, II. 21 ; also hit bi þe winman and bi sheawere, hie bihalt hire sheawere. *and cumeð hire* shadewe peronne, *ibid.* 29 ; and gif hit is swo. me ðingð ne bringð no synful man quemere loc þene teares sheding for his sinnen. *and wiste* seinte peter, and Seinte Marie Magdalene, *ibid.* 65. Cf. *ibid.* 83, 127, 165, 213 ; *Saules Warde*, 249 (*Old English Hom.* I.) ;

‘ And tanne comm he sippen ut
All dumb and butenn spæche,
and toe to becnenn till þe folle,
and space he nohht wiþþ tunge.’—*Orm.* 224 ;

‘ He made an aueter on godes name,
And sacred he ðor-on, for sowles frame.’
Story of Genesis and Exodus, 626 ;

‘ ðo sente he after abram,
and bitagte he him is leman.’—*ibid.* 782 ;

‘ It semet wel ðat ge spies ben,
And into ðis lond eumen to sen,
And cume ge for nou oðer ðing
But for to spien ur lord ðe king.’—*ibid.* 2171 ;

‘ And al ðis unweder ðor atwond,
And wurð ðis weder sone all stille.’—*ibid.* 3059.

Caxton offers several instances of this use :—

Thenne dylygently he demanded his mayster of the subtylnes of the werke, of thystorye and of the personages. *And first recounted vnto hym his mayster* the puyssaunce the right grete cyrcuyte, and the noblesse of the cyte of Troyes, *Blanchardyn*, 15/9 ; the waves waxed so bygge and so grete, that they semed to be mountayns. *And was the tempeste so perelouse*, that they were constreyned to enter into the brode see agayne, *ibid.* 136/11 ; Kyng Alymodes made the towne to be assayled, *and was there made grete alarme and grete fray*,—*ibid.* 152/23 ; and within a whyle they cam to the heremytage and took lodgyng *and was there gras otys* and breed for their horses, soone it was sped *and full hard was their souper*,—*Morte Darthur*, 111/7 ; for moche he langed that he myght there be arryued for to shew hym all the tydynges. *And dured not long the scarmoushe*, *Melusine*, 127/4 ; Uryan thanne made the standarde to passe fourth rydyng in batayll moche ordynatly *and was Vryan before*, hauyng a staf on hys fyste,

ibid. 131/22; anoone camme there Vryan, whiche alyghted, toke hys speere, and so dyde hys folke moche appertly, and made hys banere to be dysployed abroad, *and were the crosboue men* on bothe sydes of hym vpon the bridge, *ibid.* 131/30; and so moche they dide that the fals paynemes might gete nothing on them, but that they lost twyes asmoche more, *and was scarmusshing* moche fyers and peryllous, *ibid.* 137/20; and thanne Vryan smote hym vpon the helmet a grete stroke with all his might, *and was the sawdan so sore charged* with that stroke that he was so astonyed and amaysed that he neyther sawe nor herde, *ibid.* 145/28; and thene Vryan and his folke lodged them self in the paynemis lodgys, *and was the sommage of the cristen sent fore*,—*ibid.* 146/18. Cf. 203/17, 214/7, 12, 215/13, 234/7, 240/6.

§ 44. The Predicative verb, especially the verb *be*, is, as a rule, placed at the end of adjective clauses, and exceptionally also in others:—

The knyght thenne beholdynge the Iouencell Blanchardyn, that right yong *was*, and sawe hym alone, Rose anone vpon his feet, *Blanchardyn*, 26/16; theire sperys (that sore bygge and stronge *were*) broke also all to pyces, *ibid.* 28/10; thenne her maystres, that sage and dyscrete *was* comforted her, *ibid.* 43/19; whan blanchardyn had wel loked and rede the verses that grauen *were* in the marbell vpon the gate, and well vnderstode theire sentence, a lytyl he bygan to smyle, *ibid.* 47/8; there beganne the trompettes, the hornes, the olyphauntes, and the busynes to blowe, that suche a noyse *made*, that the see and the erthe retentyssed wyth alle, *ibid.* 183/6. Cf. 41/29, 49/10, 51/18, 60/31, 62/20, 64/30, 88/27, 94/29, 97/6, 99/8, etc.

§ 45. *Place of the Object.*

(A.) The object, when a noun, precedes the verb: 1. in emphatic sentences; 2. in clauses, especially before past participles and infinitives:—

1. *Your loue and lady* I shal yelde vnto you this day, *Blanchardyn*, 25/2; so smot they hem self wythin callyng vp a hyghe crye in to þe thikkest of their enmyes, where they slew and detrenched many one, *And dyuerse tentes* and pauyllons they pulled doune, *ibid.* 59/6; for so helpe me god, as I loue you wyth all my veraye herte, and am so esprysed wyth your loue, that *reherce it to you* I can not, *ibid.* 9/34; he toke his way forth on, and *folke* he met ynoughe by the waye, *ibid.* 98/30; *to the rescue* of blanchardyn cam also the goode prouost, *ibid.* 166/22.

2. Thenne the proude pucelle in loue, after a lytyl musyng, vnderstode well by the wordes of the captayne, and by the cognysaunce that he tolde her of his horse, that he was that self knyght that *the*

kysse had taken of her, *Blanchardyn*, 51/26 ; I shal suffre for this nyght hym that *so grete a dysplaysure* hath don to me this day, *ibid.* 51/31 ; *Blanchardyn* thanked the messenger, and prayed hym curtaisly that he wold haue hym for humbly recomended to the goode grace of the noble pucelle, that *so fayre a present* had sent to hym, *ibid.* 82/6 ; the paynem knyght, that was full curteys, made a token to hym that *his request* he dyde graunte, *ibid.* 90/26 ; and for *thys werke* to con-
ducte and brynge to an ende, I graunte you euen now, and chose you, for to be in oure behalue Conestable and hed capayne of oure present armye, *ibid.* 100/27 ; and none of them abode there, but that he was ded or taken excepte som that fled awaye, that *this tydynge*s brought to Alymodes, *ibid.* 191/9 ; that god that created the firmamente, and made alle thynges of noughte for *the people* to susteyne . . . kepe and saue the, *Aymon*, 24/19 ; I complayne me to you of the foure sonnes of *Aymon*, that hathe *my loude* dystroyed and wasted, *ibid.* 89/13 ; they coude *no counceyl* gyue, but said they were bygge ynough, *Morte Darthur*, 47/10.

(B.) The personal pronoun as an object is not bound by this rule. In Old English its place was generally before the finite verb, as may be seen from the *Blickling Homilies*, where more than 80 per cent. of the pronouns in the oblique case precede the verb. In Middle English prose the modern arrangement carries the day, and in Caxton there are but a small number of instances exhibiting the old use ; but even in these the French influence may have been of some effect :—

I *me* recomende ryght humbly vnto your good grace, *Blanchardyn*, 133/18 ; and to the surplus, to the playsure of oure lorde, and *hym* played ye shal vnderstande by mouthe ferther of myn astate, *ibid.* 134/4 ; and yf I maye take hym, I shall not leue hym, for the duke *Aymon* that shamfully is goon from me, nor for his foure sones that I haue made knyghtes, wherof I *me* repente sore, *Aymon*, 38/21 ; the kyng gaaf hym ayen his salute, and *hym* demaunded what he was, *ibid.* 40/26 ; he called afore hym his barons, and *to theym* sayd, *ibid.* 104/18 ; yo knowe wel the grete dishonour thei have doon to me, wherof I *me* complayne vnto you, *ibid.* 183/15 ; I *you* supplye with al myn herte that now ye wyll rewarde me wyth a yefte that I shal desyre, *Charles the Grete*, 49/28 ; therof, madame, I *you* assure, *ibid.* 92/30. Cf. 127/1, 159/19, 160/15 ; God *me* spede, said Blamor de ganys, *Morte Darthur*, 306/26 ; the kyng rode euen to her, and salewed her, and said god *you* saue, *ibid.* 541/5 ; I haue none other wyлле than to endeuoyre me perto, how be it certayn that I may not acomplysshe to the regarde of the grete honour that ye haue *me* shewed, *Melusine*, 152/13 ; but it augmenteth my doulour, wherfore I *you* commande that ye cesse of this heuynes, *ibid.* 155/8 ; but the

hanoir that is departed amonges my felawes I may not *it* rendre or yeld to you, *ibid.* 211/6.

§ 46. Place of the Attribute.

(A.) One attribute.

In Old and Middle English, adjectives (as a rule) precede the noun; this before-putting, though not unfrequent in poetry, occurs rarely in prose. In Caxton, adjectives—not only of French, but also of Teutonic origin, as well as present and past participles—follow the noun, and we may safely say that this is due to French influence.

(B.) Of two adjectives belonging to the same noun, the first precedes, the second follows it. This is nearly like the French use; but Caxton was far from copying his original, he simply kept a very old good English tradition:—

Old English: Gif ænig man hæbbe *móðique sunu and rancne*,—*Deuter.* xxi. 18; to *góðum lande and wíðgillum*, *Exod.* iii. 8; *wæron on þis um felda unríne gesommunga hwítra manna and fægerra*, *Beda*, v. 13; he *gefór . . . gód man and clæne and swiðe æðele*, *Chronicle*, 1056; *þat se anweald . . . becume to góðum men and to wísum*,—*Boeth.* xvi. 1.

Middle English: *heo wulle under fon swa he; þing and swa hali swa is cristes licome*, *O. E. Hom.*, 25; *þet frumkenede childe and þet lefeste*,—*ibid.* 87; *non þe ledeð feir lif and clene*,—*ibid.* 137; *monie wundre and muchele*,—*ibid.* 139; *þat loðeliche ward, and ateliche, and grisliche*,—*ibid.* II. 5; *lomb is drih þing and milde*,—*ibid.* 49; *þe olde men þe þo weren and lif holie*, *ibid.* 51; *after summ apol man & good*,—*Orm.* 611; *Rihhtwise men and gode*,—*ibid.* 116; *full mehhti; mann and mære*,—*ibid.* 806;

‘Of hem woren ðe getenes boren,
Might men, and figti, [and] for-loren.’—

Story of Gencsis and Exodus, 564;

‘*A michel fier he sag, and an brigt.*’—*ibid.* 951;

‘*Ghe bed him gold, and agte, and fe,*
To maken him riche man and fre.’—*ibid.* 2018;

‘*Long weige and costful he ðor fond.*’—*ibid.* 3880;

Troye, þat god mon was and wys,—*Robert of Glos.*, p. 10; *a lute bal and round*,—*Wright, Pop. Treat. on Science*, p. 137; *Sire Emerde Valence, gentil knyght and free*,—*Polit. Songs*, (Camden Soc.) p. 216; *ful modi man and proud*,—*Anecd.*, p. 2; *He was hardy mon and strong*,—*Alis.*, 4402; *the foulest contree, and the most cursed, and the porest*,—*Maundeville*, p. 129; *a heze ernde and a hasty*,—*Gawayne*, 1051; *to knawe god and lonje*,—*Ayenbite*, 88; *soþe blisse and ziker*,—*ibid.* 93; *þa is guod lyf and yblyssed*, *ibid.*; *a gode zone and trewe*,—*ibid.* 101;

and namely with a *yong wif* and a *fair*,—*Chaucer*, II. 327 ; an *old man* and a *pore* with *hem mette*, *ibid.* III. 98 ; of such a *parfyte God* and a *stable*,—*ibid.* III. 6 ; in a foul *stynkynge stable* and *cold*,—*Wyclif*, 17 ; in *grete fatte hors* and *nedeles*,—*ibid.* 60 ; *gaie houses* and *costy*,—*ibid.* 61 ; *open heretiks* and *stronge*,—*ibid.* ; *new song* and *costy*,—*ibid.* 76 ; an *heuenly yieste* and *gostly*,—*ibid.* 82 ; here *worldly lif* and *cursed*,—*ibid.* 99 ; *proude men* and *delicate*,—*ibid.* 120 ; *wide clopis* and *precious*,—*ibid.* 128. Cf. *ibid.* 129, 140, 145, 156, 181, 223. I am come of *gret blode* and *riall*,—*Gesta Romanorum*, 23 ; a *strong man* and a *mighty*,—*ibid.* 42 ; a *wise man* and a *redy*,—*ibid.* 148 ; a *noble man*, and a *worthi*,—*ibid.* 172 ; *riche yiftes* and *fair*,—*ibid.* 190 ; a *worthy knyght* and a *riche*,—*ibid.* 202. Cf. *ibid.* 251, 264.

CAXTON : and so *grete a stroke* and so *heuy* he gaffe hym, *Blanchardyn*, 62/22 ; god hath well kept hym from so *moche an hap* and so *hyghe*,—*ibid.* 75/24 ; that knewe hym for a *trusty man* and *secret*,—*ibid.* 81/23 ; he lete fall vpon daryus suche a *stourdy strok*, and so *grete*,—*ibid.* 86/17 ; a *grete tempeste* roose in the see, and so *horryble*,—*ibid.* 97/20 ; that was a *fayr knyght* and *yonge*,—*ibid.* 110/2 ; ye shall doo as a *wyse woman* and *well counseyllid*,—*ibid.* 178/1 ; the *best tyme* and *most entier*,—*ibid.* 179/5 ; the *grete strokes* and the *dangerous*,—*Aymon*, 392/9 ; that was a *worthy knyghte* and a *wyse*,—*ibid.* 504/20 ; a *myghty spere* and *sharpe*,—*Charles the Grete*, 48/27 ; O *ryche emperour* and *noble*,—*ibid.* 84/16 ; I had had fyue of the *valyauntest erles* of fraunce and of the *grettest*,—*ibid.* 88/3 ; she ledde them by an *olde gate* and *secrete*,—*ibid.* 94/1 ; in spayne he had XVI *grete townes* and *stronge*,—*ibid.* 205/6 ; she was called a *fair lady* and a *passynge wyse*,—*Morte Darthur*, 35/7 ; that is a *passyng true man* and a *feythful*, *ibid.* 38/29 ; that was a *passyng good man* and a *yonge*,—*ibid.* 52/8 ; thou art a *boystous man* and an *vnlykely*,—*ibid.* 84/20 ; he was a *likely man* and a *well made*,—*ibid.* 94/27 ; the *best knyght* and the *myghtyest*,—*ibid.* 192/35 ; many in this land of *hyghe estate* and *lowe*,—*ibid.* 198/1 ; this is an *horryble dede* and a *shameful*,—*ibid.* 211/13 ; this is a *fowle custome* and a *shameful*,—*ibid.* 310/31 ; they foughte vpon foote a *noble batail* togyders and a *myghty*, *ibid.* 346/21. Cf. 353/5, 408/16, 412/25, 425/31, 432/2, 435/7, 442/20, 509/2, and *passim*.

§ 47. *Place of the Adverb.*

There is an evident tendency in Caxton to place the adverb before the verb, and very often even before the subject:—

Thenne *dylygently* he demanded his mayster of the subtylnes of the werke, *Blanchardyn*, 15/7 ; *Blanchardyn toward the stables* tourned his waye, *ibid.* 17/20 ; right thus . . . cam the yomen & grommes of þe stable makynge grete noyse and crye for þe grete courser of þe kynge, whiche *that night* was stolen fro theim, *ibid.* 19/10 ; (*Blanchardyn*)

founde a knyght that lay there on the grounde, armed of all pieces, the whiche *full pyteously* complayned, *ibid.* 22/18; for hir sake I wyl fight with you in fauoure of þe good knight her true loue, þe whiche *falsly*, as an vntrewe knyght, ye haue be trayd, *ibid.* 26/11; they founde þe knyght, that awayted after theym, that *well and curtoysly* saluted Blanchardyn, *ibid.* 33/5; of the teerys that *from her eyen* fyll doune, her gowne that she had on was therof charged, *ibid.* 43/16; Blanchardyn herkned the prouost, to whom *boldly* he answered, *ibid.* 48/15. Cf. 72/31, 85/8, 86/21, 87/21, 99/4, 101/5, 131/26, 133/17, 140/9, 145/7, 147/25, 151/7, 164/31, 169/25, 186/11, 194/12.

This is especially striking in passive constructions, where the adverbial combination, stating by whom something is done precedes:—

So was he *by the two doughters* brought in to a chambre, Blanchardyn, 50/21; of what dethe mygt I do make hym to deye for to gyue vnto hym his payment of the grete outrage *by hym* commytted in my persone, *ibid.* 52/30; and seen the battaylles and scarmysshynge that *by them of the towne and their enmyes* were made, So began he to be ful of thoughte, *ibid.* 59/27; syth he also perceyued the black sleue that *vpon his helmet* was sette fast, *ibid.* 63/27; many of the gretest of hem had ben slayn or taken, yf *by the vertue and strengthe* of blanchardyn they had not be socoured, *ibid.* 66/13; I doubte not that yf by aduenture she were out of his remembraunce, and *by hym* putte in oblyuyon, that god forbode but that sholde dey sodaynly, *ibid.* 74/1; he called blanchardyn his new Conestable and tolde hym how, *by hym and his barons*, was ordeyned to hym the charge and conduyte of his werre, *ibid.* 103/21; he sholde neuere haue Ioye at herte tyll that the deth of his brother, and the damage that he had receyued were *by hym* auenged, *ibid.* 107/24; he awoke out of his slepe thurgh the pyteouse crye that *of his men* was made, *ibid.* 113/16. Cf. *ibid.* 142/34, 143/31, 159/19, 161/11, 194/8, 9, 10, 199/4.

§ 48. Apposition.

A word in apposition to a possessive genitive is, in Middle English, and still in Caxton, put after the noun governing the genitive (Cf. Skeat, notes to *Piers Plowman*, pp. 42, 157, 307, 329; Zupitza, *Guy of Warwick*, l. 687). This arrangement is very old, though the modern one may be found exceptionally as early as the *Chronicle*, about the year 890:—

Old English: for his wed broðeres luuen Oswi, *Chronicle*, 656 (Laud MS.); for Saxulfes luuen þer abbodes, *ibid.* (very frequent); on Torevines dagum þæs ofer mōdan cyninges, *Boethius*, 16/1;

be Cnutes dæge cinges,—Hickes, *Dissert.*, ep. p. 2. (Quoted by Mætzner, *Grammar*, III., p. 355.)

Middle English: þurh daviðes muð þe prophete, *Old English Hom.*, I. 139; in august time þe Imparour, *Cursor Mundi*, 11277; ion heued, þi prisun, *ibid.* 13167; in Kynges hous Arthor, *Gawayne*, 2275; þe duches doȝter of Tyntagelle, *ibid.* 2465; for marye loue of heuene, *Piers Plowman*, B I., 157; for the lordes loue of heuene, *ibid.*, B VI., 19; the kynges metynge Pharao, *Chaucer*, V. 163; that was the kynge Priamus sone of Troye, *ibid.* IV. 108; and byd him that on alle thyng That he take up Seys body, the kynge, *ibid.* V. 159; the faire yonge Ysiphile the shene That whilom Thoas doughter was the kynge, *ibid.* V. 321; to praye for my lordes soule,—Sir Thomas West, *Early English Wills*, 7/4, 5; on þe maydenys halfe Blanchflowre,—Zupitza, *Guy of Warwick*, 687; the dewkys men Segwyne, *ibid.* 2427; my lordes sone þe emperowre, *ibid.* 2827; the erlys doghtur Rohawte, *ibid.* 4005; the erlys sone Awbrye, *ibid.* 4339, 5352, 6054, etc.; goddes sone of heuen,—Perry, *Religious Pieces*, p. 2.

CAXTON: for syn that he was departed from his fadres house, the kynge of fryse, [he] had nothre eten nor dronken, *Blanchardyn*, 31/21; but wel he tolde hym that he sholde be well lodged in the prouostys house of the towne,—*ibid.* 46/3; here foloweth the ballade that was wryton vpon the gate of the prouostis place of Tourmaday,—*ibid.* 46/21; for right moche he desyred to shewe hymself, for his ladyes loue, doughter to kyng Alymodes,—*ibid.* 83/9; the kynges sone of Ireland,—*Morte Darthur*, 80/23; I loue Gweneuer, the kynges doughter Lodegrean,—*ibid.* 100/15; his name is syr gauayne kyng Lots sone of Orkeney,—*ibid.* 108/37; I am the lordes doughter of this castel,—*ibid.* 127/30; his name is Marhaus the kynges sone of Ireland,—*ibid.* 141/4; for the kynges loue of heuen,—*ibid.* 177/32; he sawe his broders sheld syr Lyonel,—*ibid.* 185/6, etc.; of the kyngis deth of Armenye,—*Melusine*, 178/14.

There are also two instances of the modern construction:—

(They) gaff eche other soo vnmesurable strokes that the kynge of Polonye spere brake al to peeces, *Blanchardyn*, 108/1; they fonde three of þe kynge of frysys seruauantes,—*ibid.* 112/17.

§ 49. Contraction.

Instead of saying 'the father came, and the son came,' as primitive tribes still do, we use the contraction 'the father and the son came.' Caxton exhibits several interesting traces of that state of the language, which takes the middle course between the primitive repetition (anaphora), and the modern contraction.

1. Two adjectives and one noun:—

The grete strokes and the dangerous, *Aymon*, 392/2 (instead of 'the grete and dangerous strokes.' See above, § 46).

2. Two subjects and one predicate :—

(He answered) that he sholde putte peyne that his honoure sholde be kepte, and his body ayenst hym, *Blanchardyn*, 48/19; hym semed, yf he wold be baptysed and all his folk, and to byleue in our feith, that the tempeste shold breke, *ibid.* 137/18; wold subyon or not, and all his helpes, the noble lady, proude of loue, was taken oute of his power, *ibid.* 197/20.

3. One verb and two objects :—

They were in a grete daunger of Subyon, that damaged theym ryght sore, and their place, *Blanchardyn*, 200/29.

4. One object governed by two verbs :—

But the knyght, that was ryght curteys, guded hym and conduyt a whyle, *Blanchardyn*, 39/30.

To sum up :—Caxton's syntax, on the whole, is nearer Chaucer than Shakspeare; and there is a still greater kinship between his prose and that of the fourteenth century, than that of the Elizabethan age. In reading Caxton's books, the general impression resembles very much that received by reading *The Tale of Melibeus*, or even *Maundeville*; and the results of a minute analysis agrees with that impression. It is true, many peculiarities of Caxton's language turn up also in Shakspeare and Spenser; but we must keep in mind, that there is always a sort of tradition in poetry, which links together the remotest periods, while in simple prose, as in daily life, the distance of times is of great influence. There is a wide gap between the language in Spenser's *Faërie Queene*, not to speak of the *Shepherd's Calendar*, and his *View of the State of Ireland*.

Thus, the plural of abstracts is very frequent in the poem, but very rare in the prose treatise; the article is extremely often omitted in the former, while it is used in the latter, etc.

There are several points, which draw a very marked line between Caxton's syntax and that of the sixteenth century :—

1. *Ye*, not *you*, is still, with a few exceptions, the nominative of the 2nd pers. plural personal pronoun. This is quite common in Berners. See p. xiii.

2. Adjectives referring to preceding nouns are not yet followed by *one*. See p. xxviii.

3. The personal pronoun, when a subject, is still very often omitted. See p. xxxiii.

4. *Self* is still considered an adjective, as seen by the 3rd person plural: *themselfe*, never *themselves*. The latter becomes the rule about the middle of the sixteenth century.

5. *Who* (in the nominative) as a relative pronoun is still unknown.

6. The indefinite pronoun *one* is not yet used; in its stead we find *men*. See p. xlvi, § 15.

7. Constructions like 'we are banished the court' are not yet in use; there seems to be still a rigid observance of the difference between transitive and intransitive verbs, with regard to the passive voice. See p. lv.

8. Agreement between tenses (*consecutia temporum*) is not yet strictly observed. See p. lviii.

9. The infinitive absolute is still in use. See p. lxvi.

10. The arrangement of words is much more free than in later times. See pp. ci—cix.

APPENDIX.

I. CAXTON AS A TRANSLATOR. HIS STYLE.

'IN his translation of this work, Caxton shows himself piously literal. Words and phrases, both foreign and unusual, he transferred bodily to his text; nothing ever deterred him, simply because it was French; he wandered along every winding of the sentences he was rendering, and brought them over with all their sinuosities into English. In consequence, his translation is perhaps one of the most literal that has ever been produced in the English language; and though to some extent stilted and even awkward, yet it is impossible not to admire his faithfulness to his original; and the very quaintness of those peculiarities of language sometimes adds a charm to his composition.'—Octavia Richardson, in the Introduction to her edition of *The Four Sonnes of Aymon*, E. E. T. Soc., p. vii.

I don't think Caxton was such a pious slave. His translation of *Blanchardyn*, no doubt, is as 'quaint' and even as 'awkward' as that of *The Four Sonnes of Aymon*; but I cannot admit Miss Octavia Richardson's statement with regard to his 'piety.' On the other hand, I contend that he was as good and free a translator as any of the 15th century, and in his style certainly not inferior to Peacock, the greatest prosaist of his time.

What makes Caxton's style appear so awkward in the eyes of a modern reader, is his repetitions, tautologies, and anacolutha. But these irregularities are, for the most part, conscious sins, committed not only by him, but also by all the writers of his time. Read the following sentences from Malory, whose like never occurs in *Blanchardyn* or *Aymon*, and you will admit that Caxton was a very able translator, for his time:—

Well, saide Merlyn / I knowe whome thou sekest / for thou sekest Merlyn / therfore seke no ferther / for I am he, *Morte Darthur*, 36/16—18; and moche blood they bledde bothe / that al the place there as they faught was ouer bledde with blood, *ibid.* 71/26—28; but traueilynge men are ofte wery, and their horses to / but though my hors be wery / my hert is not wery, *ibid.* 96/21—23; for I haue sene many of their sheldes that I knowe on yonder tree / there is kayes shelde / & sir braundeles sheld / and syr Marhaus sheld, and syre Galyndes shelde, and syre Bryan de lystnoyse sheld, and syr Alydukes sheld with many mo, *ibid.* 195/36, 196/4; and toke his swerd redy in his hand, redy vnto bataylle / and they were al armed in black harneis redy with her sheldes, *ibid.* 206/18—20; but alweyes quene gweneuer preysed syr kay for his dedes / and sayd what lady that ye loue / and she loue yow not ageyne, she were gretely to blame, *ibid.* 122/15—17; thenne ther was a lady in that countrey that had loued kyng Melyodas longe / And by no meane she neuer coude gete his loue; therfore she lete ordeyne vpon a day as kyng Melyodas rode on huntynge / for he was a grete chacer / and there by an enchauntement she made hym chace an herte by hym self alone / til that he came to an old castel, *ibid.* 273/19—25; but as yet he may not yet sytt sure on horsbak / for he that shalle be a good horsman / hit must come of vsage and excercyse, *ibid.* 344/23—25; and as she wold haue ranne vpon the swerd, and to haue slayne herself / alle this aspyed kyng Marke / how she kneled doune and saide / swete lord Ihesu haue mercy vpon me, *ibid.* 368/34, 369/2; now maye ye saye, sayd syr launcelot vnto youre frendes, how & who hath delyuered you, *ibid.* 199/24—26; theinne syr, he sayd, my name is Garoth, and broder vnto syr Gawayn of fader and moder,

ibid. 218/21, 22; fy on you bothe, said sir Gahoryse, for a fals traitour / and fals treason hast thou wrouzt / and he both vnder the fayned chere that ye made vs, *ibid.* 403/29—31; but the Kynge of Irland whos name was Marhalt, and fader to the good knyghte sir Marhaus that sire Tristram slewe, had alle the speche that sir Tristram myghte here it, *ibid.* 529/19—22; he told he of whens he was / and sone vnto Launcelot, *ibid.* 622/3, 4.

Of course, Caxton followed the drift of the narrative in his original as closely as possible; but so far as I am aware, there is no ground whatever for supposing that he slavishly sacrificed the genius of his native language to Latin or French. It will be seen by the Introduction that Caxton's Syntax is essentially English, as much so as that of Chaucer and Gower; his arrangement of words is, in spite of his original, truly Saxon; and even in his introduction of foreign words, he only continued what the preceding centuries had begun.

There are a very few decided Frenchisms in *Blanchardyn*; but these are rather slips of the pen, than intended or conscious innovations. Such are *require*, *demand*, governing the dative case, see § 6, p. xxiii; *swear*, with the accusative, see § 7, p. xxiv, *A*; the article used in the vocative case, § 7, *a*; the *his*, § 7, *b*, p. xxvi. Cf. Dr. Furnivall, Introduction to *Eneydos*, p. xix.

As strong evidence against Miss Richardson's opinion, I quote the fact that there is not one instance of the French *moi* = *I* being translated by 'me'! See § 4, p. xi. With regard to Caxton's style, its main feature is the *tiresome tautology*, which is apparently produced by the translator's desire to make as much as he could of his work, to render it as showy as possible;¹ his whole age was affected by this fashion of intolerable verbosity: to convey an idea through the medium of as many words as possible was considered as a beauty of style.

This appears first in the choice of words. Generally, one French expression is rendered by two consecutive synonyms; sometimes the first of these is the word of the original, sometimes another; sometimes one is French, the other Saxon; sometimes one strange, the other familiar:—

¹ Compare the American girl who liked creaky shoes because they announced her coming and made folk look at her.

Regned in fryse a kynge of right *beneured* and *happy* fame (orig. de tres horeuse renomme), *Blanchardyn*, 11/10; but *privated* and *voyde* he was of the right desyred felicite, 12/1; of *lignage* or *yssue* of his bodye (orig. lignie), 12/2; I leue to telle the *bewayllynkis* and *lamentaciouns* (orig. regretz), 12/4; *by her self al alone in solytary places* (orig. en lieux solitaires), 12/6; now it is soo that atte *his byrthe* and *comyng in* to this world (orig. a laduenement duquel), 12/12; *sourded* and *rose vp* (orig. sourdy), 12/14; *prest* and *redy* (orig. preste), 23/20; by his *behauoure* and *contenance*, men myght well knowe that he was departed and come of *noble extraction* and *hyghe parentage* (orig. haulte lignee), 50/16, 18; I holde hym so courtouys and *dyscret*, or *wyse*, 54/27; for bothe of hem *loued* sore *blanchardyn*, and right *enamored* they were ouer hym, 66/24; *Amoures* or *loue* serued her wyth a messe, 67/17; she sette neuere nought by *amours* and *loue*, 75/15; *Blanchardyn sawe* and *perceyued* the noble, 77/1; mouyd wyth *grete wrath* and *gre*, 92/7; she wolde not *putte in oblyuion* nor *forgete* hym, 94/11; she myght *see* ne *chuse* the nauye, 135/28; she byganne to *chuse* and *perceyue* the saylles, 135/30; to gyue *socoure* and *helpe* vnto her, 150/16; the *grete malynolence* or *euyll wyll*, 153/21; (the pronde pucelle) mounted vp to a high toure for to *see* and *beholde* the batayl, 163/14; right *grete* was the *effrucyon* or *shedynq* of blode, 165/22; wythout *answer* nor *replye*, 189/32.

It is, however, worth noting that the original too sometimes indulges in slight tautologies:—

Pourquay ne a quelle cause, 22/20; ne le scent ne peult, 52/21, 66/10, 103/5, 122/20.

A second sort of tautology is Caxton's additions of his own, for which there is not the slightest necessity whatever. (But who of us doesn't like touching up other men's work?) Compare the following instances, to which many more can be added:—

Blanchardyn grewe in beawte, wytte, and goode maners *beyonde mesure*, and *passed all other of his age*, 13/10, 11; and recounted vnto him his mayster . . . the right *grete valyaunce* of Hector of Troylus, Parys and Deyphebus brederen, *and of Achilles*, 15/15; after, he demaunded of his mayster, the names *and blasure* of the armes, 15/23; wythout that ony body coude telle any tydynge*s* where he was becomen, 18/13; thenne Blanchardyn, moued of pyte, *alyght from his courser*, and sette fote on erthe, 23/9; to thees wordes sayde Blanchardyn to the knyght, *and prayed hym* that he vousshesauff to helpe hym, 24/1; he sholde auenge hym of his eumye, *and that he shulde yelde ayen his lady vnto hym*, 24/5; and that he shulde therfore dye shamefully *in that place*, 27/2; and yf thou auaunce, or *haste* not thy self, I shal doo passe this same spyere

thrughe the myddes of thy body, 27/17 ; O thou proude *berdles* boye (orig. garchon), 27/24 ; (Blanchardyn) syn departed, sore troubled atte herte for the pyteouse dethe of the two *true* louers, 31/1 ; (he) had nothre eten nor dronken, but onely that whyche he fonde vpon the trees growynge in the grete forest, as crabbes and other wylde frutes *that are wonte to growe in wodes*, 31/24, 25 ; (a marener) brought hym a boote goode and sure that from the knyght of the *ffery* was sent vnto hym, 32/26 ; right well it were your fayt and *welthe* for to goo rendre your personne vnto her, 38/10 ; she rydeth the lytyl paas vpon her *sweete and softe palfraye* (orig. sa haguenee), 38/23. Cf. 44/1, 4, 12, 46/18, 26, 50/10, 52/3, 55/13, 20, 56/21, 58/30, 59/11, 63/12, 64/6, 65/34, etc.

There are very few passages in which Caxton is less verbose than the original. Cf. 24/16, 44/6, 65/16.

There are also few instances in which Caxton seems to have misinterpreted the French :—

For syth that by fayre meanes thou wylt not yelde agen the pucelle, thou most nedes deffende the nowe, ayenst me, the right that thou pretendest vpon her (orig. Il te conuient contre moi deffendre le droit que tu y pretendes a auoir), 27/15, 16. Cf. 29/1.

The sudden transition from one construction to another is pretty frequent in Caxton, and seems, to a certain degree, to have been considered as a figure of speech. Compare the following passages :—

For I confesse me not lerned, ne knowynge the arte of rhetorik, ne of suche gaye termes as now be sayd in these dayes and vsed, *Blanchardyn*, 2/11 ; soo that by his dylygence taken wyth an ardaunt desyre, fonde hymself nyghe her and of her maystres wythin a short space of tyme, 41/24 ; O thou free knyght, replenysshed wyth prowesse and of grete wordynesse, haue mercy vpon our fadre, 49/15 ; (then sayd blanchardyn) that hym semed yf he wold be baptysed and all his folk, and to byleue in our feith, that the tempeste shold breke, 137/18 ; I gyue my self vnto you, prayeng that ye wol saue bothe me and my cyte, and to take vs in to your mercy, 142/14.

Against the first important principle of modern composition, the unity of sentence, Caxton often sins. Such strong *anacolutha* as the following would be impossible nowadays ; but Caxton and his contemporaries used them without any scruple.

1. A principal sentence co-ordinate with a participle clause ; a perfect tense being substituted for a participle, or having its conjunction and subject suppressed :—

The knyght thenne *beholdynge* the Iouencell Blanchardyn that right yong man was, and *sawe* hym alone, Rose anone vpon his feet, *Blanchardyn*, 26/16; and eyn at these wordes *cam* the prouost tyl his owne knowlege ageyne, and *vnderstandyn* that he had lost the felde for cause of the stourdy stroke that he had receyued of the spere of blanchardyn, And *sayde* in this maner, 49/22; Alimodes, *seeng* his enmyes cam a lande, and in so fayre ordonaunce *y-sette* of that one part, and of that other syde *he sawe* them of the cyte that cam wyth a grete puyssaunce vpon hym and his folke, It is well ynough to be byleued, that he was not well assured, 162/24; Alymodes *seeng* his folke lose grounde, and *were smytten* ded down right by the hyghe prouesse and grete worthynes of blanchardyn, desyred sore wyth al his herte to joyne hym self wyth hym, 167/20; the kyng Alymodes, *seeng* his folke that fled, his cheff standarde ouer thrawn and layng vpon the grounde, His barons all to bet adoune, and also *sawe* that Impossyble it was to hym to escape hym self quyk from the bataylle, wherfore, assone as he mygt, or euer that a more grete myscheff sholde happe vnto hym, cam and yelded hym self, 195/16.

2. Direct speech interrupting an indirect one. See Noun Clauses, § 40, p. xcv.

3. A principal sentence co-ordinate with a relative clause:—

(She) douted leest he shuld sette his loue on one of the daughters of the prouoste, *whom* she hasteli sente for *and spake to hym* [= to whom she spoke] as it foloweth, *Blanchardyn*, 69/12; and of another part she sawe a grete noubre of folke *that* retourned to the tertres, [and then she] *thoughte wel*, and also her hert Iudged and gaf it to her, that that was the worthy blanchardyn, 89/16; *how* sodayne toke leue of his fader the kyng, and [how] so *dyde* Blanchardyn, and [how both] toke the see wyth a grete naue, 125/16; he was cast in to an hauen of the see of the sayde lande, *where* he made grete wast, [where he] toke and slewe many men, and [whence] many *he dyde* brynge wyth hym prysoners, 145/15; certes, *who-someuer* brought her this sorowfull and pyteouse tydyng, I doubte not but that she shold slee her self, 155/30; he perceyued a right myghty nauey, *wherof* they that were comen vpon lande, *he sawe hem* in grete nombre, 162/3.

4. Other instances:—

(He) bygaune for to desyre the goode grace of the same proude pucelle in amours, wythout *makynge* of eny semblaunt, *nor to dyscouere* [= or discovering] it to the knyght, *Blanchardyn*, 37/15; (she) commaunded hym to presente hit hastely from her behalue vnto blanchardyn prayng hym *that* for her sake and loue, *to dye* [= he would dye] the whyt coloure in to red, 168/21; whan the proude pucelle in amours sawe her frende blanchardyn departed from her

chambre, *where* she lened vpon a wyndowe that loked vpon the see, making full pyteouse rewthes for her loue that she sawe, nor neuer thens she wolde departe as longe as she myght see the shyppes, 174/28 [*where* she = she there].

II. THE MANUSCRIPTS AND PRINTS OF THE ROMANCE.

The story of Blanchardyn and Eglantyne, not being connected with the great epic subjects of the Middle Ages, viz., Arthur and Charlemagne, has hitherto been but very little dealt with in the literary history of England and France. We therefore seem still rather in the dark about the origin and development of the story. Up to now, the following versions are known :—

I. In French verse, all in MS. :

1. Bibl. Nationale, Fr. 375.
2. Bibl. Nationale, Fr. 19,152.
3. Turin, coté $\frac{44}{158}$, I K 35.
4. British Museum, Additional, 15, 212, ff. 197—266 b.
5. Fragments, communicated by Paul Meyer, *Romania*, 1889.
6. Fragments of a Middle High-German translation, or rather rehandling, communicated by Haupt, *Germania*, xiv, p. 68 ff.

II. In prose, 2 French in MS., 3 English in print :

1. Bibliothèque Nationale, Fr. 24,371.
2. Bibliothèque Royale, Brussels.¹
3. Caxton, unique, 1489 (?) : here reprinted.
4. 1595, in two Parts, unique. At Britwell. For the full title, see p. 227.
5. 1597. Part I., unique : Public Library, Hamburg.

In 1867, H. Michelant published at Paris an edition of the French Romance, *Blancandin et L'Orgueilleuse d'Amour*, from the MS. 375 in Paris, and the Addit. MS. British Museum. The Poem had before been analyzed by Emile Littré in the *Histoire littéraire*, tome xxii (1852), pp. 765—778, and Henry Ward has described the Museum MS. in his *Catalogue of Romances* in the B. Mus. (1883), i. 727-8. He says :—

¹ Michelant prints the chapter-headings of this in the Introduction to his *Blancandin*, pp. xiii—xviii.

BLANCHANDIN ET ORGUEILLOSE D'AMORS. A poem of adventures, in about 4800 octosyllabic lines. *French.* 'Blanchandin is the son of a king of "Frise" (Phrygia?). He has been kept in ignorance of chivalry, till he sees some figures upon a tapestry. He steals away from home, and, after a few adventures, kisses Orgueilleuse d'Amors, the Princess of Tormadai (apparently in or near Syria), out of sheer bravado. Her indignation is before long changed into affection. She is besieged by another suitor. Blanchandin is taken prisoner. He is shipwrecked on the coast of India. In the end he returns to Tormadai with Indian allies under a Prince Sadoine, and they relieve Orgueilleuse d'Amors.'

M. Michelant thus sketches the contents of the earliest version of the story in the St. Germain MS. 1239, of the 13th century, which contains 4,826 lines (p. v—vii):—

'Blancandin has fled from his Father's court—where the practice of arms was forbidden him—to seek adventures abroad. On his road, a knight advises him to go and kiss, in the midst of her retinue, the beauteous *Orgueilleuse d'amour*, whose name denotes her character. This audacious deed stirs most highly the wrath of the young princess. She vows she will take astounding vengeance on the culprit, who has fled. She recognises him next day in the middle of a tourney where he carries off the prize; but the valour and good looks of the young knight make love supplant hatred in her heart; and the two lovers have just avowed their mutual feelings, when an old Saracen king (Alimodes) arrives, who besieges *l'Orgueilleuse d'amour*, to force her to marry him, in spite of her repeated refusals. Blancandin offers to defend her, and distinguishes himself in the fight; but, overpowered by numbers, is taken prisoner. In vain is the highest ransom offered to the Saracen king. He has sworn the death of his rival, and sends him captive to a King of the Indies, whose brother, Blancandin had slain in battle.

'During the voyage, a storm rises, which wrecks the vessel, and Blancandin alone escapes. He arrives safe and sound at the court of a certain King of Athens, who is besieged by a powerful enemy. Blancandin offers his services to the King, and frees him. The King, from gratitude, wishes to marry Blancandin [to his daughter?], but Blancandin, faithful to 'the Lady-proud-in-love,' refuses. He confides his secret to the King's son (Sadoine), with whom he is bound in firm friendship, and both embark to succour the still-besieged Princess. At sea, they meet some of her folk; and Blancandin, without making himself known, charges them to announce his speedy arrival, for the purpose of delivering her. But, in very sight of the harbour, a tempest drives them away, and Blancandin takes advantage of the terror of his companions, to convert and baptise them. He lands, with his friend Sadoine, in the very kingdom of the Prince

(Alimodes) who was besieging the Lady-proud-in-love, where his own father was moaning in the direst captivity. Blancandin promises to give Sadoine in marriage the daughter of King Alimodes, a young and beautiful Saraceness who, in the customary way, at first sight falls in love with the Knight (Sadoine), whom she sees out hunting. Blancandin takes the city, kills the King's son Darie, gives his sister in marriage to his friend Sadoine, and sets his own father free. Then all retake the road to Tormaday, where the Lady-proud-in-love is besieged. She sends her Provost to know who the new-comers are, and to ask them for help. The Provost—who had formerly been Blancandin's host—recognises him, and announces his arrival to the Lady-proud. She wants to prepare a brilliant reception for him, while his foe Alimodes, on his side, makes ready for battle. In the middle of the fight, the Lady-proud, to encourage Blancandin, sends him her sleeve on the point of a spear; he redoubles his efforts, and puts his rival to flight. Alimodes re-embarks in all haste. And the two lovers, united at last, after so many thwartings, celebrate their marriage; and the wedding ended, every one, says the poet in concluding, goes home,

S'en vet en sa contrée.'

The end of the text is—*Michelant*, p. 208 :—

Et quant la messe fut chantée,
Tuit s'en vont en la tor quarrée.
Mult i ot harpes et vieles,
Et tantes melodies beles :
Tuit li baron del pais né,
Iiii jors i sont séjorné.

Au quint departent lor mesniée,
En lor terre l'ont envoiée.

Le roi de Frise s'en revet,
Et en sa contrée s'en vet.
Arriere s'en revet Sadoine,
A sa moiller en Cassidoine,
Des or a Blanchandins amie,
Sage et proz sans vilenie.
Blanchandins est sires et dus :
Li romans faut ; je n'en sai plus.

Explicit de B. et de O.

This, says M. Michelant (p. vii) is the original story. But we have two other versions of it which run almost side by side, and differ from the original romance by an addition of about 1200 lines.

The second version is that in the Turin MS. coté 14^s, I K 35, a small quarto of the 13th century (copied A.D. 1331), of which the first Part may have been taken from the St. Germain MS. 1239, with a few copier's changes, while the second Part is singularly close to the 3rd version in MS. 375 (formerly 6987) in the National Library, Paris, which Michelant has printed. The Turin MS. (*Mich.* p. 210) ends thus :—

XIIII jors dura la cours.
Qant Blanchandins fu coronés,
Sadoines est arrier alés
O sa moillier de Carsidonie.

Ensi se departi Sadoine
De son compaignon Blanchandin.
Nostre chançons prant ici fin.

Explicit de Blanchandin.

The story of the later addition to the first version of the Romance is thus told by M. Michelant on pages viii, ix, of his edition :—

‘In the fight which ended in raising the siege of Tormadai, Sadoine, who had slain the brother of Alimodes, was taken prisoner by the latter, and sent to Cassidonie [Chalcedony], to be there put to death. Blancandin sets out to succour his friend, and delivers him at the moment he was to be strung up on a gallows, notwithstanding the prayers of the daughter of Alimodes, who begged in vain for pardon for her spouse. Alimodes is conquered again. But, during the absence of Blancandin, his Seneschal—in whose guard he had left the Lady-proud-in-love—gets together the chief Lords of the country, and plots with them to carry off at once both the Crown and Love of Blancandin, that he, the Seneschal, may force her to marry him. Two vassals who remain faithful, conduct Orgueilleuse to a castle, where the treacherous Seneschal besieges them. They, however, find means to warn Blancandin, who hastens to return to Tormadai to revenge himself. The traitor flees,—pursued closely by Blancandin and his friend Sadoine,—and takes refuge at a neighbouring brigand’s, where he hopes to get rid of the two knights who have isolated themselves in the ardour of their pursuit. They, though received with apparent good-will, suspect a snare; they persist in keeping their arms, in spite of the most pressing invitations to give them up; and, seizing on a favourable moment, they cut to pieces the band of robbers, and carry off their leader and the Seneschal, whom they punish with death. After this exploit, Blancandin returns to Tormadai, where he celebrates his nuptials and those of his friend Sadoine, with the greatest magnificence.’

Such, says M. Michelant, is the new ending of the poem in the MSS. of Turin and the French National Library, 375. The differences of it in these MSS. consist only in this, that in the Turin MS. the episode of the amours of Sadoine with the daughter of Alimodes, the first interview of the two lovers, and the combats which precede the taking of Cassidonie are treated at greater length, and with details which are not found in the other version.¹

The chapter-headings do not agree, word for word, with Caxton’s. They divide the Story into 3 Parts, and differ in expression, as the englishing of a few below will show :—

This present book contains 3 Treatises, of which the First speaks of the birth of Blanchendin; how he set out from the court (*ostel*) of his Father, and why; how he became a knight, and how he kissed *l’Orgueilleuse d’amours*: the which first Treatise is divided

¹ Does not this point to the Turin version being the later of the two?

into 10 Chapters, of which the First tells of the birth of Blanchendin, of the joy which sprang from it, and how he was put to study as soon as he was of fit age (*eut aage*), and how he got on (*profita*).

The 2nd Chapter tells how, on the information (*relacion*) of his Master, and also because of his own inclination, his departure is settled (l. 125 of the Verse-text). . . .

The 10th Chapter tells in what manner Blanchendin managed to kiss (*parvint au baisier de*) the Proud-Lady-of-Love, and of the displeasure that she took at it (ab. line 687 of the Verse-text).

The Second Treatise tells how Blanchendin came to Tourmaday, and how he fought his Host; how and by what means he recovered the good-will of the Proud-Lady-of-Love, and of the imprisonment of the above-named; and contains 16 Chapters, of which the First tells of the sharp grief that the Proud-Lady-of-Love made on account of the aforesaid kiss; of the arguments between her, and her mistress who comforted her (ab. line 710 of the Verse-text).

The 2nd Chapter speaks of the threats of the Lady-Proud-in-Love to Blanchendin, and how Blanchendin came to Tourmaday to lodge; of the Provost, and the verses which he found on the Provost's door (line 781 of the Verse-text). . . .

The 16th Chapter tells how Blanchendin slew the King of the Giants; how Blanchendin was captured; of the grief which the Lady-Proud-in-Love made thereat; how she sent the Provost to (*devers*) Allimodes for the ransom of Blanchendin; and of the refusal of Allimodes, and how he had Blanchendin shipt off (*fist enmener*) by sea (line 1903 of the Verse-text).

The Third Treatise tells how Blanchendin behaved himself (*se gouverna*) at Athens towards the King; of his return; of the conquest of Cassidonie; how he recognized his Father; of the victory that he won against Allimodes and against the traitor Subien; and is divided into 22¹ Chapters, of which the First says that Allimodes had Blanchendin shipt off; and how, by chance, he (Blanchendin) was saved from the dangers of the sea, and pretended to be a Saracen (line 2119 of the Verse-text).

The 2nd Chapter tells how Blanchendin was retained by the King of Athens, and brought to good end (*lui acheva*) a war that he had in hand (*auoit*). (line 2285 of the Verse-text). . . .

The 22nd Chapter tells how Subien thought to save himself; and the way he was taken, and then hanged (line 5954 of the Verse-text).

We evidently want an edition of the Brussels MS., to show its full differences from Caxton's original.

As to Blanchardyn pretending to be a Saracen, the Verse-text says (p. 75) that after escaping to land from the shipwreck,

¹ Michelant prints xii., but gives headings of xxij.

Il est en .I. tertre montés :		Diu reclama, le fil Marie,	
Devant lui vëoit tors asses		Que il li puist sauver sa vie,	2244
Hautes, qui furent Rubien,		Sarrasin dist qu'il se fera,	
Un roi du lin Octevien.	2234	Et lor langage parlera,	
Octeviens fu rois de Grece ;		Car il set bien Sarrisonois,	
Rubiens fu roi de Losgece.		Et bien Latin, et bien Grigois,	2248
Son barnage ot par grant poeste		D'une herbe son visage frie,	
Trestout ensanle à une feste ;		Lors fu plus noirs que pois boulie.	
Païens i ot et Sarrasins.		A tant s'en torne le marois.	
Lors se porpense Blancandins	2240	Devant sa tor sëoit li rois :	
Comment il pëust escaper,		Il ot la barbe et les grenous	
C'arriere se puist retorner.		Dusqu'as orelles gros et lons . . .	2254

To enable the reader to judge how Caxton's French-prose original expanded and altered the poem, the last 50 lines of M. Michelant's text are given below. The robbers arm to attack Blanchardyn and Sadoine :—

Lors sont li laron haubergié,	6080	Nel varent pas illuac ocire,	
Puis issent de la cambre hors.		Ains l'enmenront à lor empire.	
Selvains s'escrie, li plus fors :		Le matinet, à l'esclairier,	
"Signor, prendes ces .II. glotous.		Joste le fu le vont loier.	6112
Fremes les huis que les mions.		Asses li font et duel et paine ;	
Si me faites cel pont lever,	6085	Puis donent lor cevaus avaine,	
Qu'il ne s'en puissent escaper."		Et de la vitaille au larron	
Blancandins voit le traïson,		Se courrerent li baron.	6116
Et a dit à son compaignon :	6088	Asses orent, et un et el,	
"Comanis, dist il, nos sous trahi.		Et el demain wident l'ostel.	
Ce sont larron que je voi ci.		Si enmainent lor prisonier ;	
S'or ne deffent cascuns sa vie,		Tant penserent de chevaucier,	6120
Jamais ne reverra s'amie.	6092	Que repairié sont à lor gent	
Veïstes mais tele aventure ?		Qui d'aus estoient mult dolent ;	
Mult par est fols li hom qui jure		Mais deseur tot fait grant dolor	
De rien qui avenir li doie."		Ma dame Orgillense d'amor.	6124
Lors recommence li harnoie.	6096	Mais quant son dru voit revenir,	
Li larron les dansiaus requierent		A ses .II. bras le va saisir,	
Et cil as brans d'acier i fierent.		Et cil le baise, et ele lui.	
Au premier colp ocist Selvain,		Là s'entrespurent ambedui ;	6128
Blancandin le fiert de sa main ;	6100	S'es espousa .I. arehevesques.	
Après a l'autre porfendu,		Ases i ot abes et vesques,	
Et Sadoines i a feru	6102	Et menestreus et ionglëurs.	
A une hacc qu'il trova ;		.VIII. jors entiers dura la cours,	6132
.III. des ciés du bu sevrà.		Et Blancandins fu coronés,	
Que vous feroïe plus lonc conte ?		Et Sadoines s'en est r'alés	
Tous les ocient à grant honte ;	6106	O sa moillier en Cassidoine.	
N'en escapa viex ne kennus.		Blancandins se part de Sadoine.	6136
Subiïens i fu reconnus ;	6108		

CHI FINE DE BLANCANDINS.

As another sample, take the incident of the kiss, and note how the prose writer has suppress much of the Maid-of-Honours' talk, and has made Blanchardyn kiss Eglantine only once, instead of three

times. Orgilleuse's barons are talking of the uselessness of suitors courting their mistress (p. 22, l. 633) :—

Blancandins n'ot soing de lor feste,	Aportées d'estranges terres.	
Ains chevauce, pas ne s'aresté	Li poitraus fu de mult ciere œvre,	
Desor les mules Sarraïnes :	Mainte escalete d'or le cœvre.	680
Là chevauchierent les mesçines,	Toute la sele o le ceval	
Et si vont .II. et .II. ensanle.	Fu covers d'un vermel cendal.	
Li damoisiaus mult bians lor sanle	De jousté li fu sa maistresse,	
Et mult lor plaist à esgarder.	Ki n'a perdue mainte messe	684
L'une commença à parler,	Et mainte voie de moustier	
Cele estoit fille au roi d'Espagne ;	Por li et duire et castoier.	
Si le mostra à sa compaignie :	Blancandins chevauce par force	
"Ves quel dausel sor cel destrier !	Tot .I. cencin, lés une roce,	688
Com a gent cors per embracier !	Et vit Orgilleuse d'amors,	
Ki'n porroit faire ses soulas	De li baisier fu angoissous,	
A son plaisir, entre ses bras,	Et dist qu'il nel lairra por voir	
Tos tans auroit joie d'amor ;	Que il n'en face son pooir,	692
Jamais n'aroit nule paor.	Coique soit ore del falir ;	
Car plëust ore au fil Marie,	Mieux en vorroit après morir !	
Qu'il fesist de moi s'amie !	Lors point son ceval, et eslesse	
L'autre dist : "Ce seroit damage :	Entre la dame et la maistresse,	696
Trop estes de legier corage.	Jà nel tenra on por malvais.	
Si ne vous ameroit por rien ;	Cele part vint de plain eslais,	
Mais en-droit moi seroit il bien,	Entre les .II. dames se mist,	
Car il est biax, et je sui bele,	Et de l'autre tant s'entremist,	700
Virge de cors, gente pucele.	Ains qu'ele fust bien acointie,	
Si ameroit mieux mon deduit	L'ot Blancandins .III. fois baisie ;	
Que le vostre, si cum je cuît."	Puis s'en torna grant aïeure,	
L'autre pucele s'en aïre,	Plus que galos ne amblëure,	704
Par mautalent li prist à dire :	Mais tant comme cevax puet rendre,	
"Damoisele, trop estes baude,	Car il n'a soing de plus atendre,	
Et de vostre corage caude.	Mais de l'escaper, se il pot.	
Se or le voloit commencer,	Ains se porra tenir por sot,	708
Ancui le porroit assaier	Se Diex n'en pense, qui tout fist,	
Laquels feroit mix à plaisir	Car Orgilleuse-d'-amor dist	
U jou, u vous, à lui servir."	Qu'ele jamais ne sera lie	
Tant se sont entreamprounées	Desi qu'ele ne sera vengie :	712
Que andeus se fuissent mellées,	"Car il m'a faite trop grant honte.	
Mais eles n'osent ; si se timent,	S'il est fix à rois u à conte,	
Car Orgilleuse d'amor criement	Si perdra il demain la teste ;	
Cascure forment le redoute,	Jà n'en ert de si grant poeste.	716
Et ele vient après sa route,	A tant est këue pasmée	
Desor son palefroi Norois	Del ceval, sor l'erbe enversée.	
Dont li resne furent d'orfrois.	Mult en fu triste et courecie	
La testiere fu bien ouvrée,	Sa maistresse, plus ne detrié,	720
.I. fevre i mist mainte jornéc.	De pasmison le releva.	
Les clokes furent, et les serres,	Oies comment le conforta . . .	

Caxton's copy of his French original, which he sold to the Duchess of Somerset, and from which he made the present translation, was the same prose version which I have collated in Paris. In

the table of contents, in the headings of the chapters, and in the whole drift of the narrative, both texts agree; there are but very slight differences, pointed out in the footnotes, which may be either due to the MS. which Caxton had before him, or, what is much more probable, to the translator's system of touching-up his original.

The only known existing copy of Caxton's work, in the Library of Earl Spencer, is imperfect. All the text after sig. M.iiij., and one leaf after B.i., are wanting; they are now supplied from the French original. See pp. 34 and 211 ff. Blades thus describes Lord Spencer's copy:—

No. 78.—THE HISTORY OF BLANCHARDIN AND EGLANTINE. *Folio.*
Sine ullâ notâ (1489?).

COLLATION.—Imperfectly known. The introductory matter makes a 3ⁿ [ternion], signed i, ii, iii, the 6th leaf being blank. **A B C D E F G H I K L M** are 4^{ns} [quaternions], and there were probably several other additional signatures.

TYPOGRAPHICAL PARTICULARS.—Without title. The Type is all No. 6. The lines, which are all of one length, measure $4\frac{5}{8}$ inches, and there are 31 to a full page. Woodcut initials. Without folios or catchwords.

The Text begins on sig. j recto, with a prologue by Caxton . . . [and] finishes on the verso of the same leaf . . . The table follows on sig. ij, with a 2-line initial . . . and finishes on the 5th recto, which, however, in the only copy known, is unfortunately in manuscript. This appears to have been copied from the very rare reprint¹ by Wynken de Worde,² the last 4 lines being:—

‘How Blanchardin wedded his love the proude / pucelle in amours; And of the grete ioye that / was made there . and of the Kynge of Fryse deth. capl^o liij^o.’

The 6th leaf is blank. On sig. Aj recto, the 1st chapter commences . . . As to the date there are only the typographical particulars to guide us, which, however, all point to about the year 1489.

The only known EXISTING COPY is in the library of Earl Spencer. It is, unfortunately, imperfect, wanting the 5th leaf of the preliminary matter, A5, Bij, and all after Miiij. It is in a fair state, and measures $8\frac{3}{4} \times 6\frac{3}{4}$ inches.

One leaf (sig. L iij) has also been preserved among the Bagford collections in the British Museum (Harl. MS. 5919, fol. 3 b), and from this our specimen at Plate LIV has been obtained.

¹ Why not from the chapter-heading on the last page of Caxton's Text?

² An imaginary book. I can find no trace of it in Herbert's Ames, Bohn's Lowndes, Hazlitt, &c.

SALE PRICES

Year.	Sale Lot.	Seller.	Amount.			Purchaser.
			£	s.	d.	
1776	... 783 ...	J. Ratcliffe	3	6	0	G. Mason.
1799	IV, 261 ...	G. Mason	21	0	0	Duke of Roxburghe.
1812	... 6360 ...	Duke of Roxburghe	215	5	0	Earl Spencer.

Blades, *Life of Caxton*, ii. 216-7 (1863.)

Of the edition of 1595—of which Mr. Christie-Miller has the only copy—there are, in the present edition, two long specimens under Caxton's text. Part I. of ed. 1597 is at Hamburg.

The shortest, and therefore the most ancient, version of *Blanchardyn and Eglantyne* is that contained in the MS. 19,152 of the National Library at Paris. In it the poet is kind enough to marry both Blanchardyn and Sadoyne after their return from Cassidonie, where they have killed Darie, the son of Alymodes, and conquered the entire kingdom. The whole story answers to Caxton's chapters 1—42, and half of 43.

The Paris MS. 375, and that at Turin, add the taking of Sadoyne in the Castle, Blanchardyn's setting out in order to save him and the treason of Subion, as related by Caxton in chapters 43—56.

Thus far the report of M. Michelant, in his edition of *Blancanulin et L'Orgueilleuse d'Amour* (Paris, Librairie Tross, 1867), is right. But with regard to the prose versions he commits a very gross mistake. He believes the two only extant prose versions to be one and the same. After having given a description of the Brussels MS. he, referring to a short note dedicated to an unknown gentleman, says:—

‘Nous crayons qu'il est ici question du Due de Bourgogne, Philippe le Bel, qui à fait faire bon nombre de ces translations, notamment celles de Siperis, d'Hélène, d'Erie et Enite, que l'on trouve dans la même bibliothèque, bien que le second exemplaire de cette translation semble infirmer notre hypothèse. Ce dernier fait partie du fonds de Sorbonne N°. 466, petit in-folio sur papier, aux armes de Richelieu, de cent cinq feuillets à longues lignes, d'une écriture du xv^e siècle, qui paraît postérieure à l'autre MS. La table dont la première manque, contient en tout 54 chapitres sans division de livres; elle diffère de la précédente *bien que roman offre le même texte.*'

I really cannot conceive how the editor could venture to put forward such a fallacy. The prose MS. of the Brussels Library has

not the least connection with that of Paris. They are quite independent of each other, and differ not only in the Tables of Contents, but also in the text. The Brussels MS. is a brief abstract of the story,—as Michelant might have seen by the small number of leaves,—while the Paris prose version is a full rendering of the romance. Besides this, the former agrees with the poetic version as printed by M. Michelant, in every *name*, while the latter, or Paris MS., exhibits a most important alteration in the names of persons and places.

In the Brussels MS., as well as in Michelant's edition, Blanchardyn kills Rubion, the 'roy des Gaïans,' and is sent by Alymodes to Salmandrie. During a storm he escapes, and comes to the shore of *Athens*. He presents himself to the king *Ruban*, who makes him 'senechal' of his army, against his enemy *Escamor de Beaudaire*.

This is quite different in the Paris MS., in which Blanchardyn is cast on the shore of *Prussia*, and comes to Marienburg. The king of Prussia is pleased with him, and appoints him (Blanchardyn) head-captain of his army. Meanwhile a wounded knight arrives with the news that the king of *Poland* has invaded Prussia. Blanchardyn, with Sadoyne, is sent against the Poles, and Blanchardyn unhorses the king, who gives himself up as a prisoner.

What induced the author of the Paris prose version to alter Athens into Marienburg? Probably he wanted a country better known to the people of that time as a scene of constant war, and in this respect his choice was very well made. After the Crusades to the Holy Sepulchre had lost their charms, the knights of England and France very often joined their colleagues of the Teutonic order, who were in a state of constant warfare with their heathen neighbours in Lettow (Lithuania), Ruce (Russia), and elsewhere. Compare Chaucer's description of the Knight:—

'At Alisaundre he was whan it was wonne ;
Ful ofte tyme he hadde the bord bygonne,
Abouen alle naciouns in *Pruce*.
In Lettowe hadde he reysed, and in Ruce,
No cristen man so ofte of his degre.—The *Prologue*, 51—55.

Forthy who secheth loves grace,
Where that these worthy women are,
He may nought than him selve spare
Upon his travail for to serve,

* * * * *

So that by londe and eke by ship
He mot travaile for worship,
And make many hastif rodes,
Somtime in *Pruse*, somtime in Rodes,
And some tyme into Tartarie.'

Gower, *Confessio Amantis*, ii., 5 C.

I feel grateful to Lord Spencer and Mr. Christie-Miller for so kindly allowing their treasures to be used for this reproduction, and I thank Mr. Graves and the other Officers of the British Museum for the facilities they have afforded me. I am also indebted to Dr. Furnivall for adding side-notes and head-lines to the text.

Vienna, Nov. 14, 1889.

Caxton's
Blanchardyn and Eglantine.

c. 1489.

[DEDICATION.]

UNto the right noble puyssaunt & excellent pryncesse, my
 redoubted lady, my lady Margarete, duchesse of Somercete / Moder
 vnto our naturel & souerayn lord and most Crysten Kyng henry p^e
 seuenth, by the grace of god, Kyng of englonde & of ffraunce, lord 4
 of yrelonde, & *cetera*, I, wylliam caxton, his most Indygne humble
 subgette and lytil seruauant, presente this lytyl booke vnto the noble
 grace of my sayd lady. whiche boke I late receyued in frenshe
 from her good grace, and her commaundement wyth alle / for to 8
 reduce & translate it in to our maternal & englysh tonge / whiche
 boke I had longe to fore solde to my sayd lady, and knewe wel that
 the storye of hit was honeste & Ioyefull to all vertuouse yong noble
 gentylmen & wymmen for to rede therin, as for their passe tyme; for 12
 vnder correction, in my Iugement / it is as requesyte other whyle to
 rede in Auncyent hystories of noble fayttes & valiaunt actes of
 armes & warre, whiche haue ben achyued in olde tyme of many
 noble prynces, lordes, & knyghtes / as wel for to see & knowe their 16
 walyauntnes for to stande in the special grace & loue of their ladyes,
 And in lykewyse for gentyl yonge ladyes & damoysellys, for to lerne
 to be stedfaste & constaunt in their parte to theym that they ones
 haue promysed and agreed to suche as haue putte their lyues ofte in 20
 Iopardye for to playse theym to stande in grace, As it is to occupye
 theym and studye ouer moche in bokes of contemplacion; wherfore,
 at thynstaunce and requeste of my sayd lady, whiche I repute as for a
 commaundemente; I haue reduced this sayd booke out of frenshe in to 24
 our englyshe: whiche boke specyfyeth of the noble actes and fayttes
 of warre, achyued by a noble and victorious prynce named Blanch-
 ardin, sone vnto the kyng of Fryse / for the loue of a noble pryncesse

callyd Eglantyne, other wyse named in frensche 'lorguylleuse damours,'
 whiche is as moche to saye in englyshe, as the proude lady of loue,
 quene of tormaday : And of the grete aduentures, labours, anguysshes /
 4 and many other grete dyseases of theym bothe, to-fore they myghte
 atteyne for to come to the fynall conclusion of their desired loue / as
 alonge by the grace of god it shall be shewed in thistorye of thys
 present book / Byseehyng my sayd ladyes bountyuouse grace to
 8 receyue this lityll boke in gree of me, her humble seruaunt / and to
 pardoune me of the rude and comyn englyshe, where as shall be
 found faulte ; For I confesse me not lerned, ne knowynge the arte of
 rethoryk / ne of suche gaye termes as now be sayd in these dayes
 12 and vsed : But¹ I hope that it shall be vnderstonden of the redars
 and herers : And that shall suffyse. ¶ Besechyng allmyghty god
 to graunte to her moste noble goode grace, longe lyffe / and thaccom-
 plysshement of hir hihe, noble, and Ioyes desires in thys present
 16 lyff, ¶ And after this short and transytorye lyff, euer lastynge lyff
 in heuen. Amen /

¹ *Orig. Bat*

HEre begynneth the table of the victorious prynce
 Blanchardyn / sone of the noble kyng of Fryse,
 And of Eglantyne Quene of Tormaday, other wyse
 callyd lorgoylleuse damours, whiche is to saye, the 4
 proude lady in loue.

- ¶ The first chapitre conteyneth / how blanchardyn departed from his
 fader and moder wythout lycence / ca primo [p. 11]
 How to fore his departyng he deuysed wyth his mayster, enquiryng 8
 hym of the bataylles of Troye the grete cyte / whiche he sawe
 in tapysserye, the fygures of the knyghtes, and other affayres.¹
 capitulo iij^o. [p. 14]
- ¶ How blanchardyn departed wythout knowleche of the kyng his 12
 fader, and the Quene his moder, and ledde wyth hym the beste
 hors & courser that the kyng his fader hadde, and his goode
 swerde. capitulo iij^o. [p. 16]
- ¶ How the kyng of fryse sent out men for to folowe and to seche 16
 Blanchardyn his sone, and of the grete angre and displayser
 that the kyng & the quene hadde / cal^o. iiij [p. 18]
- ¶ How blanchardyn fonde in his waye a knyght wounded to the
 deth by a nother knyght whiche had taken his lady from hym / 20
 And how by the sayd blanchardyn was promysed to rescowe hir
 agayn, & how he receyued thordre of chivalrye of the wounded
 knyght / capitulo v^o. [p. 21]
- ¶ How Blanchardyn wente after the knyght soo ferre that he fonde 24
 hym, And wolde haue enforced ²p^e lady of² the hurte knyght /
 capitulo vj^o. [p. 25]

¹ *Orig. affyares*

²⁻² *Orig. p^e of lady*

- Of the bataylle that [happed] betwene blanchardyn and the knyght,
 whiche soo longe fought togyder that blanchardyn slewe hym,
 and rescowed the mayden / whom he brought agayn to her loue
 4 and frende, whome she fonde ded, wherfor the mayde deyde for
 sorowe. capitulo vij [p. 27]
- How blanchardyn fonde a knyght whiche sente to hym a bote to
 passe ouer a ryuer / and of the dyuysses that they had togyder /
 8 and of the good chier that the goode knyght dyde to blanch-
 ardyn. capitulo viij.^o [p. 31]
- Of the deuyses and fayr exhortacions that the knyght of p^e fery gaaf
 to blanchardyn / and how he conueyed hym on the waye toward
 12 Tormady curtoysly / capytulo ix.^o [p. 34]
- ¶ The x chapter conteyneth how blanchardyn departed fro the
 knyght of the ferye, and went all alone after thorguyllouse
 damours. capitulo x.^o [p. 40]
- 16 How blanchardyn rode so ferre that he ouertoke thorguyllouse
 damours, and kyssed her / For taccomplysshe his enterpryse,
 wherof she was in grete sorow / capl^o. xj.^o [p. 41]
- ¶ Of the grete anger ¹& sorowe ¹thorguyllouse damours had of the
 20 kysse that blanchardyn had receyued of her, and of the com-
 playntes that she made to hir maystresse / whiche dyde grete
 payne to appease her. capitulo xij.^o [p. 42]
- ¶ How after that Blanchardyn had kyssed thorguyllouse damours,
 24 ²[he] departed fro hir, ²and rode thynkyng all on her, tyl that
 he cam to Tourmaday, & arryued at thostell of p^e prouost, for to
 lodge there: ³where as he dyd meruayllus armes: ³Capitulo
 xiiij.^o [p. 44]
- 28 ¶ How blanchardyn Iusted wyth the prouost and ouerthrewe hym;
 and by two damyselles, doughters of the saide prouost, was
 ladde in to their hous for to be lodged ⁴honorably. ⁴capitulo xiiij
 [p. 47]
- 32 ¶ How blanchardyn was richely lodged and receyued in to the hous
 of the prouoste by his two doughters / and of the complaynte

that thorguylleuse damours made to her maystresse, of blanchardyn. capitulo xv°. [p. 50]

¶ Yet of the complayntes and grete ¹thretenynges and ¹ménaces that thorguylleuse damours made to her sayd maystresse, of 4 Blanchardyn / capitulo xvj [p. 52]

¶ How thorguylleuse damours, after many remonstraunces whiche by her maystresse were made to hir, bygan to modere² her anger and hate, whiche she hadde toward blanchardyn ³for the kysse.³ 8 Capitulo xv.ij°. [p. 53]

¶ ¶ How thorguyllouse damours⁴ made thordynaunce for þ^e defence of the cyte. And how the kyng Alymodes arryued & toke the porte nyghe vnto Tormaday, where he sette his siege. 12 Capitulo xvij°. [p. 55]

¶ How a⁵ doughter of the prouoste brought to blanchardyn a whyte couerture for his hors, and gaaf to hym one of hir sleues, prayng hym to bere it on his helme / whiche he dyde ⁶gladly⁶ / 16 Capitulo xix°. [p. 58]

¶ ¶ Of the grete bataylle whiche was to fore Tormaday, ayenst the people of kynge Alymodes / And of the grete prouesses that Blanchardyn dyde that daye. And how thorguylleuse da- 20 mours becam amoureuse of hym. And of the deuyses whiche made to her maystresse ⁸of blanchardyn, and other thynges⁸ / Capitulo xx°. [p. 61]

¶ How thorguylleuse damours, by the grete loue that she had sette 24 vpon blanchardyne / by cam moche Ialouse / & ⁹sore⁹ doubted leste he shold sette his loue in one of the doughters of the prouost / for whom she sente moche hastely, & speke to hym ¹⁰secretely¹⁰ / Capitulo xxj°. [p. 69] 28

¶ Of the deuyses that were bytwene the prouost & thorguylleuse damours, & of the grete loue that she had sette in blanchardyn / Capitulo xxij°. [p. 72]

¶ How the prouost retourned home, & recounted to blanchardyn alle 32

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French. ² et dechasser ensus delle

³⁻³ Wanting. ⁴ apres plusieurs remonstrances ⁵ la ⁶⁻⁶ Wanting.

⁷ Ay parle ^{8-8, 9-9, 10-10} Wanting. ¹¹ Ay parle

that thorguylleuse damours had sayd to hym / & how she sent
for blanchardyn to com to her / þ^e whiche cam, & of the deuyses,
& how their loues were confermed. capl^o. xxiiij^o. [p. 74]

- 4 How blanchardyn ¹retourned home wyth the¹ prouoste, and the fayr
stede or courser all white, & of the sleue of cloth of golde,
whiche his lady thorguylleuse damours sente to him / and of
the grete bataylle bytwene blanchardyn & a geaunt, whiche was
8 slayn, & of the meruelouse prouese doon by blanchardyn : and
also how he was taken. capitulo xxiiij^o. [p. 80]

- How kyng Alymodes wold haue put to deth Blanchardyn / but at
the request of his doughter fayr & good / respyted hym of hys
12 deth / and how thorguylleuse damours sent the prouost to
alymodes to offre hym raenson for his delyueraunce, whiche
wold not accepte it. Capitulo xxv^o. [p. 92]

- How daryus, by the commaundement of the kyng his fader, ledde
16 blanchardyn toward the kyng of salamandre / but the ship was
perysched, & all drowned except blanchardyn / whiche arryued
²on londe,² & cam to þ^e kyng of maryenborough, whiche reteyned
him, & made him conestable of his oost / ca. xxvj^o. [p. 94]

- 20 How a knyght wounded cam & reported tydynges to þ^e kynge of
maryenborough, that þ^e kyng of polonie, his enemye, was entred
in to hys royalme ³wyth a grete armye.³ ca. xxvij^o. [p. 100]

- How the kyng of Maryenborough delyuered his sone sadoyn wyth
24 fourty thousand men to blanchardin for to fyghte wyth his
enmyes, and chased⁴ them oute of his royalme. Capitulo xxviiij^o
[p. 102]

- How blanchardyn & sadoyn wyth ther armye dysconfyted their ene-
28 myes. and blanchardyn toke þ^e kyng of polonye prysoner, whom
he delyuerd to þ^e kyng of maryenborough : ⁵ca. xxix [p. 105]

- How daruys, sone of kyng Alymodes, by fortune of the see arryued
in fryse / where he tok the kyng, fader of blanchardyn, and
32 dyde there grete damage, and ledde hym prysoner in to
Cassydonye. Capitulo xxx^o. [p. 110]

¹⁻¹ revint en lostel du ²⁻² a port ³⁻³ Wanting in the French.
⁴ jetter ⁵ et de lonneur quil fist a blanchandin

How darius arriued in thost of the kyng his fader, where he was
receyued with grete Ioye, bycause he brought grete foyson of
bestaylle, & almanere of vitayll, ¹to þ^e oost.¹ capl^o. xxxi^o. [p. 115]

How the goode prouoste wente oute of Tormaday, And toke all ⁴
the bestayll / that Daryus hadde broughte in to the ooste² /
And ladde it in to the cyte, Wherof they hadde grete nede.
Capitulo xxxij [p. 117]

³Of the complayntes that Blanchardyn made : And of the grete com-
forte that Sadoyne made to hym / promysyng that to his power
he wolde ayde hym. Capitulo xxxiij [p. 122]

How Sadoyne toke leue of his fader and also Blanchardyn, and
wente to the see wyth a grete nauye full of men of armes / for ¹²
to socoure thorguylleuse damours / and of the goode prouoste
whiche they mette ⁴in the see, of whome Blanchardyn was
Ioyous.⁴ Capitulo xxxiiij [p. 125]

Of the grete deuyses of Blanchardyn and of the goode prouoste / ¹⁶
and of the lettres that he sente to thorguylleuse damours / and
of the Ioye that she had. Capitulo xxxv^o. [p. 131]

Yet of the Ioye that thorguylleuse damours had for the comynge of
her frende ⁵& loue⁵ / & of the grete sorow that sone after she ²⁰
demened, whan she sawe the tempest & fortune that so soone
put hym soo ferre fro the porte / Capitulo xxxvj^o. [p. 134]

How blanchardyn & sadoyne arryueden tofore Cassydonye, where
they fonde daryus, whiche cam and spake to theym / ²⁴
Capitulo xxxvij^o. [p. 137]

⁶How blanchardyn sleue daryus, & of the grete batayll where cassy-
doniens were slayen & dyscomfyte, & the cyte taken / And how
sadoyne & the fayr beategye dyd do baptyse theym & their ²⁸
people. Capitulo xxxvijij^o. [p. 140]

How blanchardyn fonde ther his fader kyng of fryse, whiche ther
was prysoner / and of their pituose deuycies ⁷that thei had
togyder.⁷ capitulo xxxix [p. 144] ³²

¹⁻¹ quil ot amene du pays de frise a lost de soudit pere de quoy Ilz orent
eu tresgrant dangier ² du roy son pere ³ Ay parle

⁴ en chemin ⁵⁻⁵ Wanting in the French. ⁶⁻⁶ Ay parle ⁷⁻⁷ Wanting.

- How blanchardyn,¹ sadoyne, & the kyng of ffryse wente to þ^e see
wyth a gret puyssance for to com to socoure þ^e fayr orguillouse
damours, ²where they arryued in thende wyth right grete
4 Ioye, by the prouesse & valyaunce of armes that they dyde.²
Capitulo xl^o. [p. 149]
- ¶ How blanchardyn recounted³ to the kynge his fader, & to Sadoyne,
the beaulte and bounte of his lady : and of the prouoste whiche
8 cam for to mete theym / Capitulo xlj [p. 151]
- Of the grete Ioye that thorgulleuse⁴ damours had whan she herd saye
of the prouoste, the Ioyous tydynges of the comyng of blanch-
ardyn, ⁵her frende and loue⁵ / capl^o xlij [p. 157]
- 12 Of the grete bataylle tofore Tourmaday ayenst the kyng Alymodes,
whiche was descomfyted / And of the takynge of Sadoyne : and
of the sorowe that blanchardyne made. Capitulo xliij^o. [p. 160]
- ¶ How Blanchardyn made hym redy, and toke his men in his shippe
16 for to goo socoure his felawe sadoyne, whom kyng alymodes ledde
wyth hym prysoner⁶ in grete distresse.⁶ Capitulo xliij^o. [p. 171]
- How blanchardyn put hymself to the see for to socoure his sayd
felawe Sadoyne / Capitulo xlv^o. [p. 174]
- 20 How subyon, to whom blanchardyn to fore his departing had lefte
the gouernaunce of his loue, thorguyllouse damours, had made
conspyracion ayenst her for to take hir to his wyff, & make hym
self kyng, ⁷& of his grete alyaunces⁷ / Capitulo xlvj^o. [p. 175]
- 24 How the erle of Castelforde : the prouoste, and the knyght of the
ferye, toke and ledde the lady by force to castelforde, maulgre
subyon & alle his puyssaunce. capitulo xlvij^o. [p. 179]
- How the kyng Alymodes arryued to fore Cassydonye / & how he
28 spack to his doughter, the fayr beatryce. And for to doo her
despyte / he ded reyse a payr galowes, supposyng to haue hanged
theron sadoyne her husbonde. capl^o. xlvij [p. 182]
- How the fayr beatryce sente socours to her husbond sadoyne, & was

¹ *Orig.* banlchardyn ²⁻² Wanting in the French.

³ *Orig.* reconuted

⁴ *Orig.* thorgullense

⁵⁻⁵, ⁶⁻⁶ Wanting.

⁷⁻⁷ et ce quil en aduint

rescowed fro deth / and brought wythin Cassydonye, maulgre
the kynge Alymodes / Capl°. xlix [p. 189]

¹How Blanchardyn arryued in the hauen of Cassydonye, before
whiche Towne he founde Alymodos the Kynge.² cap. l. [p. 191] 4

How grete the Batayll was bytwyx Blanchardyn and kyng Alymodos
before Cassydonye, and how Alymodos was ouercome, take, &
broughte prysoner into the Cyte,³ & of the Coronacyon of Sadoyn,
& of his Wyff Beatryse. cap. li. [p. 192] 8

How the proude Mayden in loue sent the Prouost toward Blanchardin,
whiche after thees tydynges exployted so sore, that he arryued
wyth alle his Exeercyte nyghe to the oost of Subyon. cap. lii.
[p. 197] 12

How Blanchardyn and Sadoyne dyscomfyted Subyon, and of the
grete bataylle and manere how he was taken, ⁴and what followed
after.⁴ cap. liii. [p. 202]

How Blanchardin wedded his loue, the proude pucell in amours: 16
And of the grete joye that was made there, ⁵and of the Kynge of
Fryse deth.⁵ cap. liv. [p. 206]

¹ A leaf is out of the original. The next four Chapter-headings are taken
from Caxton's text below. The last is from the edition of 1595.

² et se mist en ordonnance pour le combatre ³ et des nopces

⁴⁻⁴ Wanting in the French. ⁵⁻⁶ et de la mort de subien



¶ The first chapitre of this present boke
 conteyneth¹ how Blanchardyn departed
 out of the court of his fader, kynge of
 fryse / Capitulo. primo.



Hat tyme when the Right happy wele
 of peas / flowrid for the most parte in
 all cristen Realmes / And that moche
 peple dyde moche payne to gadre and
 multiplye vertues / Regned in fryse
 a kynge² of right benewred and happy

In a time of
 peace

reigns in Fries-
 land a King

fame² / loued / doubted and wel obeyed of his subgettis /
 Ryght habundaunt of the goodes of fortune / But pri-

¹⁻¹ Et commence a parler

²⁻² de tres horeuse renomme

(The first 6 Chapters of the edition of 1595.)

[Wood-block.]

Chap. 1.

*The first Chapter entreateth of the
 byrth of Blanchardine, his nurssing
 and his bringing vp.*



Mongst many antient *Chronicles* importing the
 haughtie exploites of fundry nations, Lords and
 Princes, this story of the valorous *Blanchardine*
 deserueth greatest commendation of true and
 perfect magnanimitie.

At the time when a generall peace concluded
 throughout the most part of Chriften dome,
 when gentlemen and Noble Peeres made their
 returne from armes, and applyed them selues to

domestickall and cuntrie pastimes:

There reigned a King in the Realme of *Frize*, redoubted for man-
 hood and prowes, abounding in goodes and poffessions, reuerenced and
 beloued both of his subiects and equals, and most happie in all his

who has no child.

But after pray-
ing,

his Queen
brings forth a
son, Blanch-
ardyn,

who is nurst
by a noble lady.

uated¹ and voyde¹ he was of the right desyred felicity
in mariage / That is to wyte, of² lignage or yssue of his
body² / Wherof he and the quene his wyffe were³ sore
displeased³ / I leue to telle the⁴ bewayllyngis and lament-⁴
aciouns⁴ that the goode lady, the quene, made full often
⁵ by her self al alone in solytary places⁵ of her paleys
for this infortune. ¶ But she, knowyng the vertuose
effecte of deuote and holy oryson / exercysed with al⁸
her strengthe her right sorowful greuous herte to this
gloriously occupacion / And after this fayre passetyme /
by veraye permyssion deuyn, conceyued a right faire
sone, whiche was named Blanchardyn / ⁶ Now it is soo¹²
that atte his byrthe and comyng in to this world,⁶
⁷ sourded and rose vp⁷ one not acustomed Ioye and
gladnesse of the kyng and of the quene, of the prynces
and lordes, and of all the comyn people of the lande / ¹⁶
that Iudged hem self right happy of a successoure
legytyme / yf vnto you I wold recounthe and telle the
Ioye and the myrthe that atte that daye was made / I
myght ouermoeche lengthe oure matere / Blanchardyn,²⁰
the chylde, was taken in to the handes of a right noble
lady of the lande ⁸ for to norysse and bryngen⁸ vp.⁸

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French. ²⁻² lignie ³⁻³ tres desplaisans

⁴⁻⁴ regretz ⁵⁻⁵ en lieux solitaires

⁶⁻⁶ a laduenement duquel ⁷⁻⁷ sourdy

⁸⁻⁸ pour le nourir et esleuer

attempts, [fauling in y^e want of issue] to succed him in his kingdome,
wherof, bothe he and the Queene his wife, were most penfue and dif-²⁸
contented, and by mutuall complaints greatly bewailed this misfortune.
But the Queene, desirous to frustrate the scandal that might aryse by
reason of her barrennes, day by day, (in moste deuout and humble
manner) folicted the Gods to fend her a sonne; whose dayly and³²
deuout prayers, penetrating the heauens, by the permision and fauour
of the Gods she conceiued and bare a sonne, whome at the chrestning
they na⁹med *Blanchardine*. This vnexpected ioy bred such a con-
tentment to the King and Queene, and a comfort to all the Realme,³⁶
that after humble thanks giuen to the Gods, feasts, banquets, and all
triumphes were proclaimed throughout the Realme of *Friz*. And leaft

⁹ sign. A 3, back.

¹But ²well ye knowe² that he was not hadde sore ferre ¹ A J.

from the kyng his fadre, nor fro the quene his modre /

¶ For neuer daye nor owre the childe blanchardyn toke

4 noo fode of none others brestis, ³but all onely of the quene his modres owne brestis.³ The childe grewe and amended sore of the grete beaulte wherof he was

Blanchardyn is suckled by his mother.

garnysshed. none can telle it you, bycause that it was

8 so grete, that god and nature had nothyng forgotten there /

¶ Blanchardyn grewe in beawte / wytte and goode maners ⁴beyonde mesure, and passed all other of

He grows up good,

his age.⁴ Thenne whan he came atte thyssue of his

12 childhode, he was take for to be endoctryned in

lytterature and in goode maners / to a clerck, the

whiche wythin short tyme made hym expert and able

in many and dyuers sciences, that is to wyte, in

16 gramayre, logyke and philosophie. ¶ Blanchardyn, emonge other passetymes, delyted hym self in. ⁵hawk-

learns Grammar, Logie and Philosophy,

ynge and huntyng⁵ / ⁶where as right moderatly and

hunts,

manerly mayntened hym self. Of the tables and ches

and plays at chess.

20 playinge,⁷ and of gracyous and honeste talkynge. he

passed them that were his elder in age.⁶ ¶ And for to

speke the trouthe / he was naturelly inclyned, and vsed

alle that whiche the herte of a noble man appeteth and

24 desyreth / Reserued that he neuere had borne noon

²⁻² sachicz ³⁻³ que de celles de la Roynie

⁴⁻⁴ Wanting in the French. ⁵⁻⁵ en chasses et valleries

⁶⁻⁶ ou tresmodereement se contenoit des tables desches /

28 De gracieusement et sagement deuiser passoit les plus sagies de soy. ⁷ Orig. playnige

the Childe should (by abfence from the Parents, through negligence of the Nurffe,) misfcarie, the Queene her self vndertooke his nurffing and

32 bringing vp. [ed. 1595

The Childe grew in beautie, proportion, wit and manners, beyond the expectation of all men. And when he was arriued to the age of

36 Tutor, to be instructed in Philosophie; by whose industrie and

painful labour, he soone attained to perfection. his exercifes and

disportes at idle times were hawking, hunting, and playing at Chesse; and in such pafetimes he spent some part of his youth, till his

But he never
bears arms or
jousts,

though he gets
to know about
them.

armes, nor herde speke therof. Nor also had not seen
the manere and thusage of Ioustynge and tournoyng¹ /
²And that was for bycause of² the right expresse com-
mandementes of the kynge his fadre / doon to theym ⁴
that hadde the chylde in gouernaunce / ¶ Notwyth-
standyng he lefte not to knowe theym / For it is sayde
in comyn langage, that the goode byrde affeyteth hir-
self / And so dyde Blanchardyn / as ye shall mowe³ ⁸
here hereafre /

¶ The seconde chapytre conteyneth. how
Blanchardyn by fore his departyng talked
and deuysed wyth his mayster, demaund- ¹²
ynge of the bataylles of Troye, whiche
he sawe fygured in tapysseryes, And
the signyfycacion of the names of the
knyghtes, of theyre armures ⁴and of ¹⁶
theyre fayttes.⁴

One day Blanch-
ardyn

IT happed that on a daye emonge othre / Blanchar-
dyn fonde hym self in aduyses wyth his mayster,
walkynge wythin the paleys. And by aduenture ²⁰
entred in to a chambre, hanged wyth right fayre and

¹ *Orig.* tournoynige ²⁻² Et ce par les ³ *Orig.* omwe
⁴⁻⁴ Wanting in the French.

maturitie and riper age made him desirous to follow armes and feates ²⁴
of chivalrie, as heerafter you shall heer.

[ed. 1595]

Chap. 2.

How Blanchardine, walking in his Fathers Pallace, accom-
panied with his Tutor, he perused in the hangings of ²⁸
Tapestrie and Arras, the sack and distruction
of the famous Cittie of Troy.

IT happed on a day that *Blanchardine* and his Tutor, walking
within the Pallace of the King his father, and stedfastly ³²
pervsing the abtracts & deuises in the hangings, demaunded
of him what warlike feidge and slaughter of men that might
be, which he saw figured in the fame; and hearing his

- riche tapysserye of the destruction of Troye, Well and
 alonge figured. Blanchardyn, that neuere had taken
 theratte noo hede, Ryght instantly dyde aduyse and
 4 sette his syght toward the sayde tappysserie. And
 coude not merueylle hym self to moche, in beholdyng
 vpon the same, of the dyuerse and strange werkes that
 he perceyued. ¶ Thenne dylygently he demanded his
 8 mayster of the subtylnes of the werke, of thystorye
 and of the personages / ¶ And first recounted vnto
 hym his mayster / the puyssaunce / the right grete
 cyrcuyte and the noblesse of the cyte of Troyes.
 12 ¶ And syn the horryble and merueyllous bataylles of
 the grekes ayenst the troians. the right grete valyaunce
 of Hector / of Troylus, Parys / and Deyphebus brederen /
 1 and of Achilles,¹ and of many othere, Of whom he sawe
 16 the representacyon in the sayde tappysserye, that sore
 mouyd and styryd his noble and hyghe corage / And
 gaffe hym awylle for to be lyke vnto those noble and
 worthy knyghtes, wherof he sawe the remembraunces /
 20 ¶ After, he demaunded of his mayster, the names ²and
 blasure² of the armes that the sayde knyghtes bare /
 that well and alonge dide aduertise ³the chylde. And
 for tabredge ⁴longe taryeng,⁴ to fore they departed fro
 24 the chambre / by thynstruction of his mayster, he was
 sage and endoctryned of the names and vsages for the
 moost parte of thabylymentes necessary, and seruyng

sees a tapestry
of the Destruction
of Troy,

asks about it,

and is told of the
battles of Greeks
and Trojans,

of Hector and
Achilles,

their arms and
blazons.

³ A ij.

1-1, 2-2, 4-4 wanting in the French.

- 28 Mafter fo to blazon y^e warres of the Greekes, in this ten yeeres
 feidge gainft *Troy*, gaue more diligent⁵ attendance, especially when
 he beheld the valiancie of *Hector*, *Troylus*, *Paris*, *Diophæbus*, *Ajax*,
 and withall, the ingenious capacitie of graue *Vlisses*, the large cercuite
 32 of the Cittie, and princely buildings of the fame, so that from that
 time foorth hée conceiued small delight in any thing, ⁶but only in
 recording the magnanimitie, haughtie courages, and the great com-
 mendations atcheiued by that victorie. Then questioned he with his
 36 Mafter, of the blazoury of armes, and y^e quartering of these coates,

⁵ *Orig.* diilgent

⁶ leaf A 4.

Blanchardyn
resolves

to learn how to
fight.

to the werre / From that oure forthon the right noble
Iouencel Blanchardyn concluded in his corage, that he
shold fynde hym self, yf god graunted hym helthe, in
som place where by experyence he shuld lerne to bere 4
arnes, and shuld exerceye and take payne and dyli-
gence vpon hym self to knowe the wayes of the same,
for the grete plesure that he toke in herynge therof
speke, thynkyng in hym self that the vse therof shulde 8
be to hym / ryght moche agreeable and plaisaunt. And
so thenne departed from his mayster more pensefull
than he had be byfore tyme /

¶ The thirde chapitre conteyneth how blan- 12
chardyn departed wythout the knowlege
of his fadre, the kynge of fryse, and bare
awaye wyth hym his goode swerde, and
toke his goode courser / And of the 16
sorowe that the kynge and the quene
made for his departynge /

He goes into his
chamber.

Blanchardyn, after the departynge that he made
from his mayster, cam in to his chambre al alone. 20

which were portraied in the said tapistry; wherein, beeing by him
moft perfectly refolued, his minde was more & more instigated and
pricked forward to atchiue the honor which others, in that map, had
(as he learned) acquired, so that (all other pleasures and delights laid 24
apart) continually practised, both in action and in reading, the imita-
tion of those valorous warres; neither thought he any time so wel
bestowed as either in reciting, reading, or conferring of those warres.

[ed. 1595]

Chap. 3.

28

The deuices of *Blanchardine* after he had left his conference
with his Mafter, & of his departure from his Fa-
thers Court, without the priuitie of any.

B*lanchardine*, beeing come into his Chamber, pensue and fad 32
that he had not atchiued any enterprize, neither as yet had
lerned to beare arnes, by reason of the tender care his
Parents had ouer him, concluded with himself the meanes of

And there al his thoughtes he concluded in one, for to
 fynde the manere and facyon for to departe out of ¹his
 faders hous, the kynge¹ / ¶ And it is not to be doubted /
 4 but or euere he myght come to the chyeff of his enter-
 pryse, for to make his departynge, that his mynde was
 full sore troubled wyth al, bycause of the dynerse and
 many conclusyons that his fantasyouse wylle dyde
 8 present by fore hym / Neuerthelesse, all rewthis² layde
 a departe, aswell for his fader as for his modre, kyn-
 rede & fryndes, as other Infynyte thynges that are
 wont to tarye þ^e corages of some enterpryses / concluded
 12 by hym self his departynge, wythout shewyng tyl ony
 body, & dyde so moche by his subtyll engyne that he
 gate a ryght goode & riche swerde,³ that longed vnto
 the kynge his fadre, whiche afterward was to hym wel
 16 syttyng⁴ / whan he sawe hym self thus garnysed ther-
 wyth, he was ful glad / Therne went he all fayre &
 softe doune⁵ fro the paleys, euyng about the oure of
 mydnight: the mone shone bright & faire. Blan-
 20 chardyn toward þ^e stables tourned his waye / where he
 fonde, standing aparte, the best courser of þ^e kinge his

¹⁻¹ hostel du roy son pere ² regretz
³ Alimodes fut desconfit prins et mene prisonnier en la cite
 24 et des nopces et couronnement de sadoine et de la belle beatrix
⁴ bien séant ⁵ Orig. donne

Blanchardyn
 resolves to leave
 his father's
 house.

He contrives to
 get a good
 sword;

and one moon-
 light night

his departure, and couertly practifed with himself some secreet way
 for his escape, leaft that the priuitie thereof beeing once discouered,
 28 hee should be preuented of his purpose.

In these perplexities and solitarie devices hee spent great parte
 of his time, fur-channged with exceeding anguifhe of minde, for his
 aduenterous flight; and fearing leaft pouertie might breed daunger,
 32 he purueyed him self of a most rich & trusty fword, belonging to the
 King his father, which when he had fastned to his side, hee tooke
 more courage then before; then, pricked forward with the spurres of
 honor and armes, he forthwith left his Parents and people surprized
 36 with found sleepe, and about the houre of one of the clock in the
 morning, came to y^e stable, where stood many gallant & seruiceable
 horses; but amongft all other, ⁶hee chose the courser his father tooke

⁶ leaf A 4, back.

Blanchardyn
takes his
father's best
horse,
and gallops off,

no one knows
where,

but God guides
him.

fader, whiche was þ^e fairest & the best that coude haue
ben founde in ony countrey at that tyme. So that for
the fyersnes of the sayd courser, he was kept in a litil
stable by him self, nere ynoughe the grete stables / The 4
Iouencel blanchardyn, Ioyful & gladde, cam & entred
in to þ^e stable, & sette the sadell & the brydell to the
riche and myghty courser, vpon whiche right quykly
he mounted; & smyting wyth the sporys, went his 8
waye anone, to thende that he shulde not be herde nor
aspyed of noo man. So rode he all that nyght, that
was to hym of auantage, for cause of þ^e mone that
spredde her bemes abroad, wythout that ony body coude 12
telle ony tydynges ¹where he was becomen¹ / Thus
as ye here, the Iouencel blanchardyn all alone, wythout
companye, departed from the kyng his fader / the
whiche god wyl kepe & guide / so shal we leue him 16
drawing on his waye, & shal retourne to helpe the
sorowful kyng & quene for to complayne & wepe for
thabsence of theyre dere sone Blanchardyn.

²¶ The iiij. chapitre conteyneth how the 20
kyng of fryse made to pursyew his sone
blanchardyn, & of the grete sorowe that
he & the quene his wyf made for hym² /

^{1-1, 2-2} Wanting in the French.

24

greatest pleasure in, whome incontinently hee fadled and furnished
with a moste sumptuous caparizon; whome, when he had made ready
(as he imagined), hee led softly out of the stable, the Groomes, by
reason of their heauie sleepe, hearing no noyes at all. 28

Thus finding him selfe free, and vnseene of any, hee incontinently
mounted his horffe; and, beeing mounted on his back, he posted away
with all celeritie. But leauing *Blanchardine* on his iourney, that
way which fortune led him, I wil make mention what pittiful com- 32
plaintes were made in the Court after his departure, for his absence.

[ed. 1595]

Chap. 4.

The pittifull complaintes made in the Court
for the absence of *Blanchardine*.

36

¹ After the partynge that blanchardyn² made, that
 alone & wyth out companye rode lighteli, to
 thende he shold not be folowed of noo man, The nyght
 4 passed, & the fayre daye came, & the sonne rose vp
 spredying his bemes vpon the erthe, The owre cam
 that euery man was rysen vp wythin the paleys / right
 thus as many knyghtes & esquyers went there walkyng
 8 & spekyng one wyth other, cam the yomen & grommes
 of þ^e stable makynge grete noyse & crye for þ^e grete
 courser of þ^e kyng, whiche that night was stolen fro
 them. So moche that the bruyt & the tydinge therof
 12 ranne thurgh all the pallays. The kyng & the quene,
 his wyf, atte that owre were rysen vp, herynge the
 bruyt that there wythinne was made for that myschyef
 that so was fallen, & had grete meruelle. ³dyuerse there /
 16 were³ that vnto them brought þ^e tydyng of the same.
 but not long hit taryed, whan tolde and recounted was
 to them the harde departyng of their right wel-
 beloued sone blanchardyn. þat al alone was gon no man
 20 knewe where. whan þ^e good kyng & the quene vnder
 stode þ^e voyce of theym, þat þ^e pyteouse tydynges brought
 vnto them there nys no tonge humayn þat coude to yow
 recounte ne saye þ^e grete sorow & lamentacion that they
 24 both togidre made / & so dyde al they that were wyth-
 inne, for þ^e grete loue that they al had vnto þ^e Iouencel.
 but þ^e lamentable sorowyng that þ^e king & the quene
 made passed all other / for they were bothe fal in
 28 swone, so that no lyf coude be perceued in their

¹ A iij.

Next morning

the stablemen
cry for the
stolen horse.The King and
Queen hear of
their son's bolt-
ing.

They weep,

and swoon.

² *Orig.* blanchardyn³⁻³ assez fu

32 fter the filent night had taken her pitchie Car to runne to
 our *Antipodes*, *Phæbus*, being mounted on his glorious
 coach, entred the Horizon: the Groomes (according to
 custome), comming into the stable and missing the Kings
 Courser, ran heer and there, making most pittiful acclamations;
 which, being suddainly brought to the eares of the King, the whole
 36 Courte grew in an vprore what might betide of him, till being farther
 enfourmed that his fonne *Blanchardine* was no wher to be found,

All Friesland
sorrows for
Blanchardyn's
going.

The King
laments.

The King bids
all his Barons

search for his
son.

They set out,

bodies, but trowed all they that were present that they
had be bothe deed, wherof þ^e pyteouse cryes, wepyng &
lamentacions bygan to be more grete / so that thurgh
þ^e cyte were herde þ^e voyces, wherby they were soone 4
aduertysed, wherfor suche a sorowe was made wythin
þe palays / in the cyte & thurgh al the royalme / wept
ladyes / maydens / men & wymen / within a short¹
while þ^e palays and the cyte were tourned from Ioye 8
vnto tristresse, & replenysshed wyth sorowe ful byttir.
The kynge & the quene, after that they had layen in a
swoune a goode while, came ayen to theyme self. And
the kynge ascryed hym self ahyghe, saynge: 'O my 12
rightbeloued sonn, the gladnes and Ioye of myn herte,
who moued you to leue me / and to parte-soo? Cer-
teynly I perceyue in me the shortynge of my dolaunt
and sorowfull lyff.' After the rewthes and lamentacions 16
of the kynge, commaunded expressely to al his barons
and knyghtes in the cyte and thurghe alle the Realme,
that vpon the loue that they ought to hym, and vpon
asmoche as they entended to do hym playsire, That 20
they alle sholde mounte on horsbacke for tenquyre and
seke after his most dere and welbeloued sone, and to
brynge hym ayen vnto him. Thenne were anone
steryng out of alle partyes, knyghtes, noble men and 24
burgeys, and they parted for the cyte, toke dyuerse
wayes, enquiryng in every place where they passed
by for to here and vnderstande some good and true
tydynges of the Iouencel blanchardyn. But so moche 28

¹ *Orig.* ashort

present fcoures & postes were fundry waies dispatched, to make
inquirie after him; but all in vaine; for *Blanchardine*, being well
mounted, rode so fast, that before day he had gone aboue twentie 32
miles from his Fathers Court. The Messengers, desperate of his
inquest, in all places of their returne gaue it straight charge to the
inhabitants, that diligent search shoulde forthwith be made throughout
the Realme of *Frize* for *Blanchardine*, and hee that could bring first 36
tidings of him to the Court, shoulde be most amply rewarded for his

they coude not seke nor enquire that euer they coude
 lerne nor here ony tydynges of hym, wherof alle dolant
 and confuse tourned ayen to the kynge of Fryse, that
 4 of this aduenture was full sory and dolaunt. And so
 was his wyf the quene. I shal leue to telle yow of
 the kynge and the quene, suffryng theym to demayne
 theire rewthis and complayntes vnto that tyme and
 8 oure shalbe for to retourne to the same /

but can get no
 tidings of
 Blanchardyn,
 and come back
 to the King.

¶ The fyfthe¹ chapitre speketh how blan-
 chardyn founde a knyght on his waye
 wounded to deth by another knyght, that
 12 from hym had taken his lady awaye.

¹ *Orig.* fythe

paines. But when a moneth was past, and no tidings brought to the
 King of his sonne, Oh! the pit²tiefull outcries and continuall laments
 16 that both the King, the Queene, and all the Court made, was farre
 exceeding my capacitie to conceiue, & much more my pen to write.
 But the Queene (whose tender care of her only sonne was greater then
 the rest, vpon the present returne of the postes), founded with greif;
 20 and remaining in this extasie the space of an houre, at length coming
 to her self, beganne her exclames in this sort:

‘Oh! vngentle heauens, by whose mightie powers all terrestiall
 things are gouerned, what disasters doe you continually heap vpon
 24 our heads? oh! accursed nature, that thus vnnaturallie thou shouldest
 bereaue mee of the ioy of my foule, when my only solace rested in
 the happie sight of my *Blanchardine*. and thou, accursed earth!
 why hast thou giuen him leaue to walke on thee, from the sight of
 28 his Parents, whose solace is turnd to sadnes, whose mirth to mourn-
 ing, whose blisse to bale, whose happines to heauines, whose life to
 difmall death? But, ah! fond Womau, what boote these bootelesse
 teares, these vncoth passions and tragicall complaints, when there rests
 32 no hope of recouerie?’

In these, and such like extreames, the King, the Queene, and all
 the Court did spend great part of their time; and, in these agonies, I
 will leaue them, to recount what the aduenture of *Blanchardine* was.

36 [ed. 1595]

Chap. 5.

How *Blanchardine*, hauing rode all night, found an armed
 Knight, fore wounded, lying on the ground, &c.

² sign. B [1].

¹ A iiii.

And how by the ¹same, Blanchardyn was made knyght, that promysed to rescue his lady vnto hym.

Blanchardyn
rides by hidden
ways,

through a great
forest,

till 10 a.m.,

and sees an
armed knight on
the ground,
moaning,

AS byfore ye haue herde of Blanchardyn, that alone ⁴ was departed wythout leue of the kyng, his fader, holdyng the couert wayes, because that of his faders folke he shold not be folowed or ouer taken / So moche and so longe a space he rode wythout fyndyng ⁸ of ony aduenture that ought to be recounted or tolde, that passyng forth on his waye thurgh the londe, founde hym self in a hyghe waye brode ynoughe / that ladde hym vnto thende of a grete ² forest, in whiche he ¹² entred and rode styl tyl the morowe none, wythout ony aduenture whereof men ought to make mencion. And so rode all nyght vnto the next morowe, tenn of the clocke. And gooyng doune from a hylle in to a valeye ³ / ¹⁶ founde a knyght that lay there on the grounde armed of all pieces, the whiche full pyteously ⁴ complayned & made grete mone / Thenne blanchardyn, seeyng the knyght there alone taryed hym self, meruellyng ⁵ why ²⁰ nor what cause ⁵ moeuyd hym thus to sorowe and complayne. He stode styl, makyng humble salutacion vnto hym / and syth demaunded hym of the causes of his

² Orig. agrete ³ Orig. avaleye ⁴ Orig. pyteouly ²⁴
⁵⁻⁵ pourquoy ne a quelle cause



Blanchardine, hauing rode all the night, and finding both him felse and his horfe begin to be wearie, and not any aduenture woorthy recounting, traueling thorough a large ²⁸ forrest by many bye-paths (for feare of espialls), chaunced at laft to finde a man armed, lying groueling on the ground, all imbrued in his owne gore, being by a knight moste cowardly encountred; who not only had bemangled his limbes, but also bereft ³² him of his looue and Miftresse, which he had carried away ⁶ perforce. when *Blanchardine* beheld this moste heauie spectacle, allighting from his horfe, comforting the dismaid knight, holpe to binde vp his bleeding wounds, & withall inquiring of him y^e cause of his mishap, ³⁶

⁶ sign. B, back.

sayde sorowe and greuance / The knyght, right hum-
 bly and wyth a right lowe voyce, ¹as he¹ that hurt was
 to deth / rendryd hym ayen his salewyng, & well alonge
 4 aduertysed the Iouencel blanchardyn of his mysad-
 uenture / shewyng to hym the place and the wounde
 that drue hym toward to dethe by the hande of a
 knyght that had taken his lady from hym, the whiche
 8 thyng was but late doon vnto hym. ¶ Thenne
 Blanchardyn, moued of pyte, ²alyght from his courser,²
 and sette fote on erthe, and disarmed the knyght from
 his armures, and syth wrapped his wounde, wherof he
 12 so sore sorowed, and dyde couere hym wyth his man-
 tell, axyng / yf he that Iniurye had doon to hym
 myght be but lytyll ferre goon / The knyght answerd
 and sayde / that he myght wel haue goon a myle and
 16 nomore / After this he toke hym self to syghe full
 sore, saynge / ‘Alas! my right dere lady that so moche
 I loued / This day shal the separacion be made of the
 two hertes that so stedfastly loued eche other. I fele
 20 deth atte thentree of my sorowefull herte, ³prest and
 redy³ to make me pryuatod⁴ of the swete remembraunce
 of our entyre and feythfull loue / but moche more
 werse and greuouse is to me that by vyolent opressyon /
 24 that traytour that hath wounded me to deth / shall
 enioye youre youghthe vnpolusshed.’ To thees wordes

who shows
a mortal wound
given him by a
knight who took
and carried off
his lady.

Blanchardyn
tends the wound-
ed man,

who laments the
loss of his Lady-
love,

and that his in-
jurer will enjoy
her.

¹⁻¹ comme celui qui ²⁻² Wanting in the French.

³⁻³ preste

⁴ *Orig.* pryuatod

28 & the man that so inhumainlike had left him in this distresse. hee
 answered: “braue young Lord, I traueilling along these plaines,
 tending my iorney to my houle, distant from hence not past two
 leagues, was on the fuddain encountred by a villain, who not only
 32 hath left me mangled and wounded as you see, but also hath caried
 by force from me my wife, whose absence will be the present cause of
 my death, and whose daunger brings greater forrow to my heart then
 all these woundes which I endure.”

36 ‘Why,’ quoth *Blanchardine*, ‘how long since departed hee hence,
 and left you thus distressed?’ the wounded Knight replied: “scarcie
 half an houre agoe, he tooke his way towards yonder wood, and

Blanchardyn
begs the wound-
ed man to dub
him Knight,

that he may
avenge him.

The Knight arms
and dubs
Blanchardyn,

who at once
mounts his steed,

takes a gallop,

sayde Blanchardyn to the knyght, ¹and prayed hym ¹
²that he vousshesauff to helpe hym that he were doubde
knyght wyth his armes² / and that in fauoure and com-
passion of his infortune he sholde auenge hym of his 4
enmye, ³and that he shulde yelde ayen his lady vnto
hym³ / Thenne the knyght sore hurt to dethe, wyth grete
peyne rose up on feet, & armed blanchardyn with his
armes, & gaaf him þ^e necstroke of knighthode, & dowbed 8
knight for to strengthe þ^e more the good wyll þat he
had toward him / ⁴that tyme þ^e⁴ blanchardyn sawe
hym self armed of all his armures, he was right gladd
& Ioyous, & sore desyrynge for to auenge the dyshon- 12
noure & shame that to þ^e knyght had be late don / He
cam toward his goode courser, on whiche he lyght ful
quykly / the shyld alonge the brest, & the helmet wel
clos laced, ⁵the spere on the rest,⁵ & ⁶his goode swerde y- 16
girded⁶ / Whan blanchardyn sawe hym self on horsbacke
& thus wel armed, made a tourne upon the playne for
grete Ioye / & to þ^e knyght began thus to saye : ' vassell

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

20

²⁻² quil le aidast a adouber de ses armes ³⁻³ Wanting.

⁴⁻⁴ alors que ⁵⁻⁵ la lance au poing

⁶⁻⁶ sailly sur son destrier sans quelque auantage prendre

caried my looue with him." then replied *Blanchardine* : ' I neuer 24
yet until this day haue vndertaken armes ; but let mee request you
to honor me with the order of knight-hood, and I will pawne my life
to dye, or to recouer againe your looue.' Then said the wounded
man : " I will not only make you knight, but withall (if you please) 28
arme you with this my armour and launce, that fhall adde more
ftrength to your courage ; and besides, I will exorate the Gods to
fend you all happines, not only in this, but in all other your honorable
attempts." 32

' Sir,' quoth *Blanchardine*, ' I thinke me sufficiently honored by
this your offer ; therefore difarme your selfe speedily, that he may not
be pafte recouerie, before I ouertake him.' So the wounded Knight
armed him, and inuested him with the order of Knighthood. when 36
Blanchardine saw himselfe thus arraied, his youthly courage prickt
him on ; who, taking his horfe, mounted the Saddle, wher brauely
managing him vpon the plaine, to proue how well he could rule his
Launce, found himselfe (as he thought) fit for this enterprize. And 40

enforce your self & take ayen your corage, for, to the
 playsyre of our lorle, Your loue & lady I shal yelde
 vnto you this day / & also youre enmye taken or ded' /
 4 thenne brocheth blanchardyn forth wyth the sporys,
 his ryche courser, takyng his leue of þe knyght sore
 wounded, & kept the way that the knyght dyde shewe /
 ful wel & right fayre dyde blanchardyn conteyne hym
 8 self in his harneys, seen that neuer had borne non
 armes a fore, & right wel halpe hym self wyth his spere,
 & handled & tourned hit at his playsyre.

and spurs in
 pursuit of the
 knight who car-
 ried off the Lady.

¶ The vj. chapytre conteyneth how Blan-
 12 chardyn went after the knyght so longe
 that he founde him, where he wold haue
 enforced the lady of the wounded knyght /

Blanchardyn, that wyth all his herte desyred to
 16 fynde him that he went sekyng, rode forth
 wythin the forest so moche, that he founde the foot of
 the hors of hym for whom he wente in enqueste,
 whiche he folowed ryght quykly, in so moche that fro
 20 ferre he entre herde þe cryes ful piteouse of a mayden
 wher by he thought and knewe for trouthe that it was
 she that he went sekyng. So tourned he that parte /
 & soone chose in the shadowe vnder a busshe the
 24 knyght that he soughte, & the gentyl mayde or
 damoyzell dolaunt, & ful sprenet wyth grete teerys /
 Ryght fowly handled & sore beten by the sayde knyght,

Blanchardyn
 soon hits the
 traitor-knight's
 track,

hears the Lady's
 piteous cry,

and finds her
 weeping, she
 having been

fo, with valiant courage and cheerefull countenance, hee tooke his
 28 leaue of the w[ou]nded Knight, and posted after the other, that had
 carried away his wife. He had not ridden long, but he perceiued the
 tracktes & footsteps of a horse, that had lately gon that way; and,
 following those steps with a speedy pace, he heard the pittifull com-
 32 plaint that a ¹Lady made, to appease the raging lust of a villaine, who
 fought perforce to rauish her: whom presently hee found, hid vnder
 the shadow of a leafye tree, beating y^e poore distressed Lady, the wife

¹ sign. B 2.

beaten by the
traitor for re-
jecting his lust.

for the reffuse that she made to his shameles concupys-
cence / Blanchardyn herynge the cryes, & seeynge þ^e
wepynges, the grete sorowe & doleauunce of the vertuose
and noble mayden / broched wyth þ^e spowrys & swyftli 4
waloppyd that parte, tyl that he cam to the place where
as the sayde pucelle cryed so pyteously / Where as atte
thapproches that he made, said ful instantli to þ^e knyght:
Blanchardyn ‘vassal, kepe þat ye nomore attouch þ^e pucel / & defende 8
yours self from me. for hir sake I wyl fight with you
in fauoure of þ^e good knight her true¹ louer / þ^e whiche
falsly, as an vntrewe knyght, ye haue be trayd &
wounded vylaynously, wythout a cause goode or rayson- 12
able : so yelde ye her ayen lightli to me by loue² / & I
shal lede her ageyn surely and saufly towards her³ right
dere loue.’⁴ ¶ The knyght thenne beholdynge the
Iouencell Blanchardyn that right yong was, and sawe 16
hym alone, Rose anone vpon his feet / all chaffed and
full of yre, as half ‘madde for the contraryte of his
wylle that he founde in the same mayde, moche fyersly
behelde blanchardyn, & sayde vnto him, that in vayne 20
he traueylled for to require her from him for another /
in sainge to him that of suche purpose he wolde ceasse,
and that he shulde noo more speke therof, or ellys he
shulde shewe hym by his swerde / that the pursyewte 24
that he had made and wolde yet make for her / shulde

Blanchardyn

demands the
Lady for her
wounded lover.

The traitor-
knight

fiercely refuses,

and threatens to
injure Blanch-
ardyn.

¹ *Orig.* hertrue

² paramour

³ *Orig.* toward hers

⁴ ami

of the wounded knight. to whom, making speedy approach, ‘vassail, 28
(quoth he), defist from this cruell and damnable enterprize! for I
fweare by heauen, I will make thee repent this absurd vilany.’

The Knight, feeling *Blanchardine* to be young, & greatly greeued
for his fodaine approach, made semblance of much wrath; but *Blanch-* 32
ardine, with austere countenance & Princely voice, commaunded him
presently to free the Lady, whom most wrongfully he had caried
away from her husband, whom hee left almost ready to yeeld vp the
ghost. 36

The knight, disdaining to be so vpbraided by so yong a knight,
bestirred himselfe presently, and made him ready to the fight. But

be to his shame / And that he shulde therfore dye
shamefully¹ in that place.²

¶ The vij chapytte conteyneth and spebeth
4 of the bataylle that was made betwyx the
sayde knyght and Blanchardyn. And so
longe they fought that Blanchardyn slewe
hym sterke ded / and reskued the pucelle,
8 the whiche deyde for sorowe, bycause that
she founde her true louer ded.

W^Han blanchardyn vnderstode the knyght thus Blanchardyn
went thretnyng hym, and that so moche in-
12 humaynly entreated the gentyll pucelle / sayde vnto
hym, 'vassell, goo thou, and lyght vpon thy destrer. For
syth that by fayre meanes thou wylt not yelde ayen
the pucelle, ³thou most nedes deffende the nowe ayenst
16 me the right that thou pretendest vpon her.³ And yf
thou auaunce, ⁴or haste⁴ not thy self / I shal doo passe
this same spyere thrughe the myddes of thy body / For
thy lyffe is to me so gretly displeasaunte / But that
20 it were for shame that I see the a fote, ⁵I sholde haue
separed alredy⁵ the sowle of the / from the body.'

*bids the traitor-
knight mount,
and fight for the
Lady.*

¶ The knyght, heryng the grete wordes of the Iouencell
Blanchardyn / answerd hym, & sayde, 'o thou proude
24 ⁶berdles boye,⁶ and full of arrogaunce, ouer grete haste
thou makest to the purchas of thy deth whiche is right

*He sneers at
Blanchardyn,*

¹ *Orig.* shameffly

²⁻² Wanting in the French.

³⁻³ Il te conuient contre moi deffendre le droit que tu y

28 pretendz a auoir.

⁴⁻⁴ Wanting.

⁵⁻⁵ Ja te eust fait separer

⁶⁻⁶ garchon

(withall) commaunded *Blanchardine* to desist from his enterprize
and leaue him to his pleasure, (or if not) it should cost him his life.
32 *Blanchardine*, not able to endure these cruell menaces, willed
him to addresse him to the combat quickly, or he would send him,
body and foule, to hell: wherevpon he furnished himselfe to the
fight.

and mounts his
horse,

They charge,

break their
spears,

and fight with
swords.

Blanchardyn
cleaves the
traitor to the
chin,

sore nyghe, and the whiche I shal presente anone vnto
the wyth the yron of my spere whiche is full sore
trenchant' / ¶ Thenne wythout¹ moo wordes the
kynght mounted hastely on horsbake, and toke his 4
spere whiche he cowched / and cam gyuyng the spores
ayenst blanchardyn, that had his spere all redy prest in
hande / Soo ranne the vasselles to gyder, and roughte
eche other by suche a force vpon the sheldes, that they 8
were brusen and broken all to peces; theire sperys (that
sore bygge and stronge were) broke also all to pyces.
And thenne toke theire swerdes, wherof they gaaffe
many a grete stroke tyl eche other / Blanchardyn ²sore 12
angry and euyl apayde² / of that he sawe the vntrewe
knyght to endure so longe / approached hym self ayenst
hym, and heued vp his good swerde wyth bothe his
landes, wherof he gaffe to the knyght suche an horryble 16
and dysmesurable a strok, in whiche he had employed
alle his strengthe & vertue, that he detrenched and
cut his helmet and the coyffe of stele ³in suche manere
awayse,³ that the goode swerde entred in to the brayne 20
porfended, and cloue his hed vnto the chynne, and syn
wringed his strock atte the pullyng out ayen, that he
made of his swerde. So fell the knyght doune⁴ from

¹ *Orig.* wythont ²⁻² yre et maltalentif ³⁻³ tellement 24
⁴ *Orig.* donne

[ed. 1595]

The combate betweene *Blanchardine* and
the Knight.



Hefe braue caualiers, being mounted, encountred ech 28
other with such agility, that their speares shiuered in
the ayre; & each of them, admiring the valure of his
foe, and finding their launces broken, they betooke
them felues to their fwords. long remained the fight 32
doubtfull, till *Blanchardine*, remembring the equitie of his quarrell,
and the honor he should atchiue by this conquest, with all the agillity
and strength hee could, (mounting himselfe on his stirrops), fo
feircely assailed his foe, that vnnayling his armor and unlacing his 36
helmet, he sent him ⁵to carry newes of *Blanchardines* valure, to the

⁵ sign. B 2, back.

his hors, ¹that neuere moeued fote nor legge¹ / The
 pucelle thenne seeynge that she was delyuered by the
 dethe of the knyght / wylt not what a manere she
 4 shulde kepe, nor how to thanke humbli ynoughe
 blanchardyn, whiche made the pucelle to lyght vpon
 the hors of the knyght so slayne and deed / fro the
 whiche incontynent² he dyde cut of the hed, & henged
 8 hit atte forende of his sadel, for to shewe hit to the
 knyght wounded, that he shulde take the more comfort
 wyth the ryght wysshed desyre of the syght of hys pre-
 sent maystresse / ¶ The noble pucelle, ryght desyrouse
 12 to here tydynges of her right true louer / demaunded
 of Blanchardyn whether he wylt not that her louer was
 alyue / ‘Bewtefull suster,’ sayde blanchardyn, ‘that
 owre that I parted from hym I lefte hym strongly
 16 greued and sore hurt, but I hope that yet, to the
 plesure of oure lorde, we shal fynde hym alyue / ¶ So
 late vs ryde a goode paas, to thende we may gyue hym
 comfort’ / ‘Alas, syre,’ sayde the mayden, ‘I make grete
 20 dowte, seen³ his grete sore, that neuer I shal see hym
 alyue / And yf thus it happed, that god forbede, I shuld
 quyte and gyue vp the remenant of my lyffe. Syth
 that we two helde but one party For our herte, thenne
 24 shulde be departed, yf deth parted vs asondre in tak-
 ynge fro me my louer. and my parte shulde be wythout
 powere, and as Imperfyht drawyng to the perfection of

sets the Lady on
horseback,

hangs the trai-
tor's head on his
saddle,

and says he hopes
to find the
wounded Knight
alive.

The Lady an-
swers, that if her
Louer dies, she
shall die too.

28 ¹⁻¹ que oncques puis ne remua pie ne jambe
² *Orig.* incontynent ³ attendu

infernall ghofts: which when the Lady saw so brauely accomplisht,
 she forthwith gaue thanks to God and him for this deliuerie.
 Then *Blanchardine*, feuring the head of the flaine traitorous Knight
 32 from his body, hung it at the pombell of his Saddle, and fet the Lady
 on the Knights horse, and posted towards the wounded knight. but
 on the way, shee demaunded of *Blanchardine* in what state he had
 left her knight? to whome he replied, that though hee were greatly
 36 wounded, yet was he liuing. ‘alas! (quoth she), let vs post to
 comfort him, with as great speede as we may.’ But approaching the

They find the
wounded knight
dead.

His Lady-love
swoons,

weeps,

and falls dead on
his body.

Blanchardyn
weeps for them.

He cannot bury
them.

He takes off his
armour, puts on
his mantle,

his partye' / in suche deuyses as ye here, blanchardin
& the maiden rode forth tyl that they cam to þ^e place
where þ^e knyght her loue laye, whiche they founde
ded, & the sowle departed fro the body / whan the 4
pucelle sawe her feythfull loue dede, of the grete
sorowe that she toke therof / She fell doune¹ dyuerse
tymes in a swoone vpon the corps or euer thusaunce of
speche was in her restored for to complayne the intol- 8
lerable euyll that for this infortune enuyroned her
herte out of all sydes / ¶ And for tabredge, after the
rewthes, syghes, and wepynges that so moche inces-
sauntly or ²wythout ceasse² / made the noble pucelle, 12
fell doune sterke ded vpon the stomak³ of her most dere
louere. ¶ This seeyng,⁴ blanchardyn right moche
abasshed hymself / and sayde in hym self that thees two
persones loued eche other full truly. wher of moche 16
grete pyte toke hym ⁵in tendryng theym,⁵ so muche
that the teerys ranne doune⁶ from his eyen / & right
muche dyspleased hym that he muste leue them there /
Ryght gladly / yf he had myght, wold haue brought 20
them bothe wythin some place for to gyue the corsses a
sepulture, to thende they shulde not abyde there to be
fode for birdes and bestes / But so ferre he was from
all townes, that agrete day Iournay nyhe were there 24
noo dwellers. wherfor it behoued hym for to leue
hem there, seeyng that noon otherwyse he myght doo /
But disarmed hym self of tharmures of the sayd knyght /
toke ayen his mantell, and syn departed, sore troubled 28

¹ *Orig.* donne

²⁻² Wanting in the French.

³ le pis

⁴ *Orig.* seeyng

⁵⁻⁵ en soy rattendrissant

⁶ *Orig.* donne

place, where they found him dead, which sight so amazed and dif-
comforted the forowfull Lady that, calling to heauen for vengeance 32
on the foule of her aduerfary, she presently yeelded vp the Ghost ;
which straunge event so amazed *Blanchardine*, to see such perfect
amitie to rest in two conioyned hearts, that leauing them, and dif-
arming him self of his armour (being to heauy for his cariage), he 36
tooke againe his mantle, which before hee had left with the knights,

atte herte for the pyteouse dethe of the two true¹ louers.
 And also had wel in remembraunce the knyght that
 he had slayne. Blanchardyn, all mournyng and pense-
 4 full, departed & went his waye / And from that tyme
 forthar began to fele a lytel of the state of loue / &
 praysed & comended hit in his herte, and was remem-
 bred of it allewayes /

and goes his way,
 praising love.

8 ¶ The viij chapitre conteyneth. how blanch-
 ardyn fonde the knyght that made hym to
 passe ouer the ryuere wythin a bote² that
 he sent hym. And of the deuyses that
 12 they had to gydre. & of the goode chere
 that the knyght made to hym /

A ftre that Blanchardyn was goon fro the place
 where he lefte the two louers wythout lyffe / he
 16 began to ryde faste by the forest, in whiche he was
 bothe the daye and the nyght, vnto the morowe aboute
 the owre of pryme, wythout aduenture to fynde³ that
 doeth to be recounted.³ Ryght wery and sore trauaylled
 20 he was for hunger & for thurste that he felte, For syn
 that he was departed from his fadres house, the kyng
 of Fryse / had nothre eten nor dronken / but onely that
 whyche he fonde vpon the trees growynge in the grete
 24 forest, as crabbes and other wylde frutes⁴ that are wonte
 to growe in wodes.⁴ So longe rode blanchardyn by the

Blanchardyn

rides till next
 morning,

and is weary and
 hungry.

¹ Wanting in the French.

² *Orig.* abote

³⁻³ qui a raconter face

⁴⁻⁴ Wanting.

28 and pofsted away. but, remembring this integritie of affection
 betweene them, he felt the fting of loue to penetrate the intralls of
 his tender hart.

[ed. 1595]

Chap. 6.

32 How *Blanchardine* came to a riuer, which he could
 not passe, and the knight of the Ferry sent
 him a boate to passe him ouer.

Blanchardyn
sees a plain
through which
runs a broad
deep river.

He rides to the
river-brink.

A knight on the
opposite bank

warns him not to
swim the river.

A boat shall be
sent for him.

The boat comes.

forest, that in comynge down from an hylle / ¹he sawe¹
there vnder in a playn a moche ample and a grete
medowe / thorough which passed a grete ryuer wyth a
streame, sore bigge and right grete / Blanchardyn, seeyng 4
this riwere of so bygge a streame,² so depe & so sore
grete, was moche abasshed how nor by what manere he
sholde mowe passe hit ouer. So descended and cam
doune³ the hylle, and rode thurgh the medowe tyl he 8
cam to the banke of the ryuere, whiche he fonde grete
and large, wherof he was sore displeased, for Impossyble
was to hym for to passe ouer, tyl that by aduenture,
atte the other syde of the ryuere, he sawe a knyght 12
armed of al peces, that went hastily rydyng along the
ryuage; the whiche, whan he sawe Blanchardyn, anone
escryed hym self hyghe, sayeng / 'vassall, beware,
beware that ye putte / not your self wythin this ryuere 16
by noo manere for to passe hit ouer / For nother ye nor
your hors sholde neuer departe out wythout ye sholde
be bothe perysshed. ⁴Suffre alytel wyle; ⁴ For soone
I shal sende you a vessell ⁵for to passe for you and your 20
hors ouer ⁵ / Thenne blanchardyn, herynge the knyght
that to hym wolde do this curtoyse to make hym passe
ouer, alyghted from hys courser, & sette fote on
grounde. Not long he had ben there, whan toward 24
hym arryued a marener, that brought hym a boote
goode and sure / that from the knyght ⁶of the ffery⁶

¹⁻¹ Il choisy ² Orig. astreme ³ Orig. donne

⁴⁻⁴ suffrez veus ⁵⁻⁵ ou nef pour vous passer

⁶⁻⁶ Wanting in the French.



Ong ridde *Blanchardine* through the forreft, till at length
he came to a high hill, at the foote wherof there ran a
riuer, most deep and perillous; whether, when *Blanch-* 32
ardine was come, he, trauerfing vp and doune to finde a
passage, was espied by the knight of the ferry, and by him aduised
not to venter ouer (in any case), because there was no landing on the
other side. *Blanchardine* alighting, thanked the knight much, & 36
requested the boate to ship him ouer, which the knight of the Ferry

- was sent vnto hym / he entred the vessell, ledynge his
hors by the brydell. Thenne began they to rowe, so
that wythin a short whyle they were ouer. Whan they
4 were passed ouer, they founde þ^e ¹knyght, that awayted
after theym, that well and curtoysly saluted Blan-
chardyn; whiche thanked hym moche of his curtoysy
that he had shewed vnto hym, of his goode aduer-
8 tysynge, and of the vessell that he had sent hym for to
passe ouer the ryuer / ¶ The knyght wyth grete mer-
ueyll bygan to byholde blanchardyn. and the more he
loked vpon hym, the more lyked hym to be a childe
12 comen of a hyghe extraction / saynge in hym self, that
neuer noo day of his lyffe, a fayrer Iouencell had he
not seen / And that the disposicion of his membres
Iudged hym to be a man of grete myght. ¶ After ²he
16 mynded and dyde byholde² his Ioyouse espyrte, & his
assured contenance ³and goodely manere,³ that right
moche pleased hym / So aproched him self nygh
blanchardyn, and began to demaunde hym / axyng of
20 whens he was, and whyther he wold drawe to / Blanch-
ardyn full curtoysly answerd hym, sayeng / that he
was of the roalme of ffryse; & by cause, thanked be
god, that the marches there were in peas / he had sette
24 hym self to Iournaye / for to fynde som contreye
where werre was, for to proue his barnag, excercisyng
hym self in the noble crafte of armes for tacquyre lawde
²⁻² remiroit ³⁻³ Wanting in the French.

Blanchardyn and
his horse cross
in the boat.

¹ B j.

Blanchardyn
thinks the
Knight,

who takes a great
liking to him,

and asks him
about himself.

Blanchardyn
says that he has
left Friesland

to get some fight-
ing, and practise
arms.

- 28 presently dispatched away. *Blanchardine*, entring the boate, was by
the in⁴dustry of two Mariners conducted to the further shore; at
whose arriual, the knight of the Ferry attended to receiue him, with
such kinde and courteous falutations, that much encreased *Blanch-*
32 *ardines* loue towards him. and the knight, precifely veiwing the
singular beautie of *Blanchardine*, mixt with a kinde of maiestie and
courage, requested to knowe the place of his abode, and the cause of
his comming thither. to whome *Blanchardine*, with princely grace
36 and eloquent speech, related at large the Cuntrey where he was born,
& the aduenture that mooued him to trauell, which was by reason

⁴ sign. B 3.

The Knight of
the Ferry is
pleased with
Blanchardyn's
answer.

& pryce as tyl a knyght apparteyneth / Thenne the
knyght, heryng þ^e haulte corage & goode wyll that the
yonge knyght Blanchardyn had, was ¹ryght well
apayed¹ of that answeere, and praysed & comended hym 4
ryght moche in his herte.

¶ The ix. chapitre conteyneth and speketh
of the deuyses and fayre exortynges that
the knyght of the feery made vnto 8
blanchardyn, and how he conueyed hym
vnto the waye of Tormaday /

After many dyuyses made betwene the knyght and
blanchardyn by the shorys of the ryuere, the 12

1-1 trescontent

that all parts about the Realme of *Frize*, were fetled in tranquilitie
& quiet: and heerupon hee vndertooke this inqueft, to acquire honor
and fame by his Chiualrie.

16

The knight of the Ferry, much delighted with this braue resolu-
tion, and highly commending the valour of *Blanchardine* (beeing fo
young, and yet of fo haughtie courage), requested him home to his
houfe, where bothe him felf and his horfe did rest, and refreshed 20
themfelues for a day or two. Then *Blanchardine* (loth to linger, or
make longer ftay) craued leaue of his gentle hofte, y^e knight of the
Ferry, to depart; who, accompanying him a little way, difcourfed at
large the ftate of that Country vnto him, and many other nouels, 24
which heer after fhallbe flowen.

[ed. 1595]

CHAP. 7.²

How the Knight of the Ferry difcourfed at large to *Blanchardine* the
ftate of the Countrey, and the beautie of the Princeffe thereof. 28

After this freendly repaft, which *Blanchardine* had receiued
with the Knight of the Ferry, *Blanchardine* riding foftly
on the riuer fide with the knight in his companie, requested
him to enforme him of this Country, & the ftate thereof, 32
vnder whose government it then was: The knight, moft
defirous to fatiffie *Blanchardines* request, beganne in this
fort to vnfolde the circumftance: ³ "This Countrey (quoth
he) is called *Dalmacia*, wherof *Tormaday* is the principall 36

² *Cuxton's Chap. xi. corresponds to Chap. 8 of ed. 1595.*

³ B 3, back.

- knyght¹ [*le mena en son chastel, ou Il fut receu en grant reuerence par la femme de dud cheualier / Se on pensa bien de lui et de son destrier pas nest a demander, Coer*
 4 *de tous les biens dont on pouoit corps d'homme aaisier, blanchandin en fut seruy ainsi comme bien en auoit mestier ¶ Blanchandin, apres ce quil ot mengie a son aise et que Ilz furent leuez de table, demanda et enquist*
 8 *au cheualier comment auoit nom la marche et le pays ou Il estoit arriue ¶ Le cheualier, oyant le Iouencel, lui respondy, et dist quil estoit seruiteur a la pucelle de tourmaday, qui estoit succedee a la couronne du Royaulme*
 12 *de darye, dont tourmaday estoit le chief et la maistresse cite dudict royaulme / dont assez p[r]es estoit marchissant vng roy payen tresancien, nomme alimodes de cassidonie, qui par sa force et grandeur veult auoir a*
 16 *femme ladicte damoiselle, lorgueilleuse damours, et que plusieurs grans princes chrestiens eussent bien voulu auoir pour la grant bonte delle, et la noblesse de son royaulme qui moult est riche ¶ Mais par le refus que la pucelle*
 20 *a fuit au roy alimodes, Il sest prepare et mis en ordre pour faire grant guerre a ladicte pucelle, pour ce-que tant on luy auoit loee et prisee pour la tresexcellente beaute qui est en elle, et aussi les tresgrans vertus dont*
 24 ¹ A leaf wanting in Caxton, now supplied from the French original.

Blanchardyn is well entertained by the Knight of the Ferry,

who is under the Queen of Darye,

the capital of which is Tormaday.

King Almodes of Cassidonye wants to wed the Queen, 'The Proud Lady of Love' (Eglantine);

but she has refused him, and he is about to make war on her.

- and cheife Cittie, governed by the most beautifull, chaste & princely Lady *Eglantine*, who is now regent and Queene therof: and by reafon
 28 that diuers Kings, Lords & Princes haue folicited her in mariage (allured through her magnificencie and furpassing beautie, which all the world admyreth), yet her chaste life, beautified with virginitie, controles and countermaundes loue and all his lawes. And heeruppon
 32 she is furnamed *Eglantine* the faire, Queene of *Tormayday*: yet the proude Lady in looue. But not farre hence there is a proude Panim King, called *Alimodes* of *Cassidone*, that would haue enforced our Princeesse to marry him, after the refusall of many chrestian kings:
 36 and by reafon of her denyall, he is now preparing to inuade her dominions; and that which he cannot wiune by looue and promifes, he will attempt by fire and swoorde: for her beautie hath carryed

Q. Eglantine's
beauty and
wealth.

She has shut her
ears to all offers
of love,

and is therefore
called 'The
Proud Lady of
Love.'

The Knight of
the Ferry wishes
Queen Eglantine
would love
Blanchardyn,
and let him de-
fend her against
King Alimodes.

Blanchardyn
dare not think
of this.

elle est aournee, La quelle, entre les autres pucelles du monde, est repute'e la supellatiue / Se sa beaute, son humilite, et les biens qui sont en elle, vous vouloye au long raconter, trop vous pourroie tenir ¶ Neanmoins Ia soit 4 ce que elle soit telle comme vous me oez dire, si comme toute commune vise recite, on ne la pourroit trop louer et prisier ¶ La cause si est pour ce que elle na oncques 8 volu ne veult prester ses oreilles aux offres, prieres ne requestes, que nullui ait fait en amours, tant feust grant ne bien adreshie. Elle en est appelee de tous princes pres et loingtains, 'lorguilleuse damours' Ia soit ce quelle ait nom 'englentine' ¶ Blanchadin a grant merueilles 12 escoutoit le cheualier parler si gracieusement se deuisoit que le chiualer ne se pouoit assez esbahir comment le Ione chivaler pouoit auoir desia tant de vertus, comme de excellente beaute, gracieuseté et prudence, dont a 16 ceste occasion ne se polt tenir quil ne dist blanchandin ¶ 'Pleust ores a dieu sire que ma maistresse, lorguilleuse damours, eust de vous fait son amy, par ainsi ce feust voutre vouloir et vous la deussiez deffrendre (sic) alen- 20 contre du roy alimodes' ¶ Blanchandin lors respondy au cheualier, et lui dist, 'Sire, Je vous remercie du bien et de lonneur que vous me voulez ; mais Je congnois assez que vng si grant bien ne mest pas deu, et que oultre- 24 cuidance seroit a moy de y vouloir penser, veu que comme vous dictes, tant de gens de bien lont voulu requerre, et que pour riens elle ne veult oyr priere] nor requeste of noon of theym / be he neuer of so 28 grete perfection.' 'Certes' / sayde thenne the knyght, 'me semeth not / that this manere at long rennyng

fuch prayfe and commendation throughout the world, that all the neighbouring Princes haue profecuted her loue ; and euery one hath 32 giuen ouer his fute, sauing *Alimodes* : & hee (I say) whome no answeres will fatiffie, endeuoreth to compell her to wed him by force. Now (if it fhall please God) that you, by your haughty prowes and manly courage, fhall defend her from *Alimodes*, I doubt not but that 36

- may endure the arowes of loue, ne hir dartes right
sharp / som daye / yf god be plesed / shall not be
ydle about her / But peraduenture she so quykly
4 hitte atte her herte ther wyth all, that daunger nor
refuse shal haue nomore lawe for to rule nor gouerne
hir prowde corage / as touching loue. ¶ God gyue
grace that this may be soone. and that he to whom we
8 wolde wysse moste good in this worlde, be cause of
the reformacion of suche an obstynate wyll / Moche
humbly remercyed blanchardyn the knyght, excusynge
hym self in dyuers facions by gracyouse langage of this
12 thyng. ¹How be it,¹ that with in hym self alredy, by
thadmonestyng of the good² knyght, byganne for to
desyre the goode grace of the same proude pucelle in
amours, wythout makynge of eny semblaunt, nor to
16 dyscouere it to the knyght. ¶ After many wordes
seruyng to the purpos afor sayd, and vtteryd betwyxt
them bothe / the knyght sayd vnto Blanchardyn,
'Syre, ye be a right fayre Iouencell, and of noble
20 representacion, well syttyng on horsbacke, and tyl a
wysse wel shapen of alle membres / And to my
semyng right wel worthy to haue the grace and fauore
of the right gentyll damoyselle, the proude mayden
24 in amours. Soo thenne, after my counseyll, my aduyse
is that theffecte that shal procede therof shal be to you
- 1—1 Ja soit ce 2 Wanting in the French.

The Knight feels
sure that Eglan-
tine 'll be sub-
dued by love
some day,

and he hopes it'll
be soon.

Blanchardyn

begins to desire
the favour of
Eglantine.

The Knight says
he's a very good-
looking fellow,

- in time (confidering your excellencie of perfon and princely behauiour)
28 fhee may consent to be your wife : ' alas, Sir (quoth *Blanchardine*),
can you imagine any possibilitie in mee to obtaine her whome so
many Princes of high eftates haue vndertaken, and haue their intents
and purpofes annihilated? no, no, Sir, I neither can [n]or will pre-
32 fume so high : but all the feruice that my abilitie is able to perfourme,
shall rest at her employment and commaund.'
- ³'Wel, sir,' answered the knight of the ferry, 'nothing is im-
possible in loue ; and although she haue been hetherto most obstinate
36 and peruerse in liking ; yet loue may chance to make feizure vpon
her tender heart, when fhee leaft suspecteth.

and, if he'll
follow advice,
he may win
Eglantine.

She is going to
ride to Torma-
day.

² B ij.

Blanchardyn
must offer to
serve Eglantine
as a soldier.

'You will find
her

moche prouffitable / I haue told you her byfore, that
the paynem kynge Alymodes apparreylleth hym self to
make werre to my lady, my maystresse, the proude
pucelle in amours, and commeth for to be-syege the
cyte of Tormaday. And for this cause departeth now
my sayd lady ¹from a castell of hers,¹ not ferre hens, &
draweth toward Tormaday ²for to gyue a corage to the
knyghtes and other men of werre, that ben in the
towne for the deffense of the same ayenst the kynge
Alymades. Right well it were your fayt ³and welthe³ /
for to goo rendre your persoun vnto her, for to serue
her as a soudyoure for tacquyre praysynge of worthy-
nesse and goode renomme, ⁴that thurghe this cause
shall mowe growe to your ward, somoche that the bruyt
wherof haply shal come to her knowlege, vnto the
preiudyce of her pryde dampnable / And to the felycyte
of your benewred persoun⁴ / deseruynge ther-by her
goode grace / I doubte⁵ not / but that ye shall fynde
her by the waye / Ryght nobly accompanied of
knyghtes and noble men, of seruantes / of ladyes and
damoyelles / And by cause of her delycious custome
and tendernes of her selff, she rydeth ⁶the lytyl paas⁶
vpon ⁷her swete and softte palfraye⁷ / And of her custome

¹⁻¹ dun sien chastel

24

³⁻³ Wanting in the French.

⁴⁻⁴ qui a ceste cause vous pourra accroistre et auconter
tant que le bruit espoir viendra a sa rongnoissance ou preiudice
de son dampnable orgueil / et a la felicite de vostre bienueuec
personne

⁵ *Orig.* dobute

⁶⁻⁶ a petit pas

⁷⁻⁷ sa haguenee

32

'And by reafon of the entire affection I beare you, (feeing you
fo resolute to performe any thing for our Countries good,) If it shal
pleafe you to bee rulde by my aduice, I will vndertake that our
Queene shalbe your wife, and thus it is:

36

⁸'The King *Alimodes* (as I tolde you) intendes warre to our
Princeffe.' . . .

[ed. 1595]

whan she rydeth by the feldes awaye / she commeth
 allewayes behynde, ferre ynoughe from all her folke,
 hauynge onely besyde her a goode aunceyent damoyzell,
 4 whiche dyde norysse her of her brestys in her moost
 tender and yonge age / And is called her nouryce and
 maystresse. Wherfore I counseylle you to fynde the
 waye and the manere for to haue a kysse ¹or cusse¹ of
 8 her mouth, how so euer that it be / Yf ye doo so, I
 ensure yow ye shal be the happyest of alle other / For
 my herte Iudgeth yf ye may haue that onely cusse /
 and ye wyll ²but yf it be long on yow² / hit shal be
 12 occasyon of a loue inseparable betwyx her and you in
 tyme to come / How be it I knowe right wel, and
 make no doubte at all / but that first of all hit shall
 tourne / for pryde of her, tyl a grete displeasire vnto
 16 her, and shal be therof wors apayed more then reason
 requyreth. ¶ But care you not for that / ye be well
 horsed; passe forthe wyth the spore wythout eny
 spekyng as for that tyme, and ryde fast awaye,
 20 wythout taryeng, tyl ye come to Tourmaday / And
 whan ye come there, thynke to do that wher-by ye
 may be comended. ¶ whan Blanchardyn herd the
 knyght thus speke, he was ryght glad, and promysed
 24 hym to do soo yf possyble were to hym, what someuere
 shold falle therof / ¶ And after the curteys thanke / that
 wel coude make, Blanchardyn ³toke his leue³ of the
 knyght, and of the lady his wyf, thankyng the knyght
 28 of the goode counseyll and aduertysinge that he had
 gyuen vnto hym / Thenne departed forth the chylde
 Blanchardyn / But the knyght, that was right curteys,
 guyded hym & conduyted a whyle, and shewed hym
 32 the waye that he muste holde for to furnysse his en-
 trepryse / Prayeng our lord god that a gode adouenture
 he myght fynde, as the herte of hym dyde desyre /

riding behind
her folk,

with her foster-
mother.

Manage to kiss
her somehow.

At first she'll be
angry.

Don't mind that,

but spur on to
Tormaday.

Blanchardyn
promises to do
this,

and takes leave
of the Knight of
the Ferry.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French. ²⁻² se a vous nen tient

³⁻³ vould prendre conge

and syn toke leue of Blanchardyn, and tourned homeward ageyne /

¶ The x. chapitre conteyneth. how Blanchardyn parted fro the knyght of the Fery, ⁴ and rode on his waye al alone after the proude damoysselle in amours, for tacomplysshe¹ his desyrable entrepryse, ²as foloweth² /

8

Blanchardyn
rides fast to over-
take Eglantine,

After that þ^e knyght was retourned home, blanchardyn bygan to ryde on a good paas, desiring with all his herte to ouertake þ^e proude pucell in amours, for to fulfille his desyre and the promesse that ¹² he made to the knyght / ¶ So thought he moche in hym self by what manere he myght execute and brynge at an ende the werke that he hath vndertaken, that is to wyte, to kysse the proude mayden in amours, wherof ¹⁶ in this manere of ³thoughte was his noble herte all affrayed and replenysshed wyth grete fere lest he shold faylle of his entrepryse / For wel it was thaduis of blanchardyn that the thyng ⁴ought well to be putte in a ²⁰ proffie⁴ / syth his promesse was thus made to the knyght. And for this cause entred wythin his thoughte a drede as for to be so hardy that he sholde vaunee hym self for to kysse suche a pryncesse that neuer he had seen ²⁴ byfore / And wherof thacquentaunce was so daungerouse. But loue, that wyth her dart had made in his herte a grete wounde, admonested hym for to procede constantly to his hyghe entrepryse. And after all ²⁸ varyablenes and debates y-brought at an ende wythin the mynde of this newe louer, his resolucion fynall was / that he sholde putte payne for to haue a cusse of the proude pucelle in amours, al thoughe deth sholde ³²

³ B liij.

and is resolvd to

kiss her,

¹ *Orig.* tacomplyssse

² Wanting in the French.

⁴⁻⁴ deuoit aduenir

be vnto him adiudged onely for this cause; And her-
 upon went Blanchardyn sayenge: 'O veraye god, how
 well happy shold myn herte be, that presently is ouer
 4 moche pressed by cause of myn enterpryse, yf I myght
 obteyne that one cussyng / And yf myn infortune or
 feblenes of corage sholde lette me for this aduenture
 that so sore I desyre / Deth make an ende of me' /

though he should
 die for it.

8 ¶ The xj. chapitre speketh how Blanchardyn
 ouertoke the proude mayden in amours
 and kyssed her, wherof she toke a grete
 anger /

12 **T**Hus as ye here the Iouencell Blanchardyn went
 stryuyng in herte, for fere that he had, lest he
 myght not bryng his entrepryse at an ende, and rode
 thus, thynkinge a goode while tyl that soone after he
 16 herde the bruyt and the voyces of the proude pucelle
 in amours folke / and in tornynge of a narowe waye /
 by the knowlege that the knyght of the Fery had yeuen
 to hym of her araye / knewe that it was she that he
 20 went sekyng / & thought it was tyme to endeuoyre
 hym self. he gaf the spore to þ^e hors & forced hym as
 moche as he coude, for to ouertake the fayre pucelle,
 Soo that by his dylygence taken wyth an ardaunt de-
 24 syre / fonde hymself nyghe her and of her maystres
 wythin a short space of tyme. ¶ Blanchardyn seeyng
 the oure and the poynt that he sholde furnysshe hys
 'enterpryse that ful sore he desyred to fynyshe, smote
 28 hys courser wyth the spore for to kysse her ¹as he furth
 by her went,¹ wherof happed, by þ^e bruyt that his hors
 made, that she loked bakward for to se what he was
 that so hastily rode after her. And so well it fortun-ed
 32 Blanchardyn that bothe theyre mouthes recountred, and
 kyst eche other fast / ¶ Yf blanchardyn was right

At last, Blanchardyn sees Eglantine in front of him.

He gallops up to her.

She turns her head; their lips meet, and they kiss.

Blanchardyn
gallops on,

and passes all
Eglantine's
escort,

the ladies of
which praise
him.

glad of this aduenture / It is not to be axed. And of
that other party the proude mayden in amours coude
not kepe her behauoure in this byhalue for the grete
dyspleasyre that she toke therfore¹ / But blanchardyn 4
wyth a glad chere waloped his courser as bruyauntly as
he coude thurghe the thykkest of all the folke / lepyng
alwaye here and there, as hors and man had ²fowgthen
in the thayer² / And dyde so moche in a short while 8
that he had passed ladyes & damoselles / knyghtes and
sqyers, & all the grete companye of this proude pucelle
in amours / gyuyng a gracyouse and honourable saluta-
cion to them all where he went forth by. It is not to 12
be axed yf he was well loked vpon of all them of the
rowto / ¶ And in especall of the ladyes and gentyl
women, that all in one sayde he was a knyght right
goode and fayre, and that it semed wel by countenance 16
to be a man comen of hyghe extraction, merueylyng
hem self what he myght be, and fro whens he came
there thus alone wythout eny companye.

¶ The xij. chapitre conteyneth and speketh 20
of the grete wrathe and anger that the
proude mayden in amours had for the
kysse that Blanchardyn had taken of her.
And of the complayntes that she made 24
ther fore vnto her maystres, that peyned
herself full sore for to pease her / ³as
herafter foloweth /³

Blanchardyn is
joyful,

WHan Blanchardyn sawe that he had brought at 28
an ende his enterpryse,⁴ And that he had passed
alle the rowtes and compaynes of the proude pucelle in
amours, he was ryght glad of this fayre aduenture / Soo

¹ de ce baisier
³⁻³ Wanting in the French.

²⁻² volassent en lair
⁴ Orig. euterpryse

- toke his waye as right as he coude, as was tolde hym
 by the knyght, and rode toward Tourmaday. ¶ A and rides on,
 lytyl shal here ceasse oure matere to speke of hym /
 4 vnto tyme and oure shal be for to retourne to the
 same / And shal shewe the sorowes and the com-
 playntes of the proude pucelle in amours / and the
 manyere that she kept after the kysse that blanchardyn
 8 toke of her. ¶ Incontynente that she felte her self to
 be thus sodaynly kyst of a ¹man straunger¹ out of her
 knowlege, she fell doune from her amblere² as a woman
 from her self and in a swone² / ³And whan she myght
 12 speke vnto her maystres³ / that he that this Iniurye
 had doon to her what so euer he be / Yf he may come
 in her handes or in her power, noon shal mowe saue
 hym / but he shal lese his hed for the same / ¶ Of
 16 the teerys that from her eyen fyll doune, her gowne
 that she had on was therof charged as grete shoure of
 rayne had come doune from the heuens / thenne her
 maystres, that sage and dyscrete was / comforted her,
 20 blamyng gretly þ^e grete sorowe that she made for a
 cusse / but þ^e proude pucelle in amours kept so hard
 that same kisse in her corage, whiche she reputed for
 an Iniurye doon to her / that fayre speche nor non ex-
 24 cusacion that her goode mastres coude make nor shewe
 to her / for to pease her of her anger / myght not in
 nothyng confort her. But semed that she sholde sleepe
 her self to be more hastily venged. her maystres saide
 28 vnto her: ‘Alas, my goode damoyselle, I haue right
 grete merueylle, how a prynces of so grete renounne as
 ye be of, may make so grete a sorowe of a thyng of
 nought. yf a gentyl man hath kyst you, take ye hit for
 32 a folye or dishonoure whiche is not so. noon but I
 haue seen it, & make no doubte that euere hit sholde be
- Eglantine is in-
 dignant at being
 kist by a strange
 man.
- She vows
 revenge.
- She weeps,
- and will not be
 pacified.
- Her foster-
 mother bids her
 not make such a
 fuss over a kiss.
- No one saw [†]it.
 There's no harm
 done.

1-1 homme estrange

2-2 haguence comme vne femme oubliee et pasmee

3-3 Et quant elle polt parler dist a sa maistresse

Eglantine

declares she'll
put Blanchardyn
to death.Her foster-
mother advises
her to hold her
tongue,and say nothing
about it.

discouered ¹nor knowen¹ by me. Soo pray I you, that
ye wyl cesse your grete sorowe' / Theune ansuered the
pucell to her maystres / 'how may ye requyre me to
leue myn anger, ²but that I sholde complayne me² / No ⁴
lenger may suffre me god to lyue in suche a sorowe /
yf that shame done to me / be not right sone auenged.³
Now knowe I not yf he be a gentyl man or not.
¶ Alas, that my knyghtes knowe not, and my folke ⁸
that marchen byfore me / this aduenture. soone ynoughe
they wolde auenge me. ¶ Certaynly ⁴I shal doo folow⁴
hym; and byleue for certayn that his laste daye is
comen ⁵and shal deye.'⁵ 'O madame,' said the mays- ¹²
tresse vnto the yonge dāmysell / 'ye shal do more
wyseli. for yf thys thyng shuld come oute and be
knownen, your sorow ought to double sore therfor, yf
men sayden that of eueri man ye had taken a kysse. ¹⁶
yet ought ye to maynten & holde thapposite, ⁶saynge
strongly ayenst hit.⁶ & ye wyll scandalyze ⁷& vttre⁷ your
mysfal ⁸that is now happed to you of one man.⁸ lepe
vpon your palfraye. your folke ben ferre afore you / and ²⁰
put out of your ymaginacyon ⁹suche casuall fryuolles,⁹
& that ouer¹⁰ moche do greue your self / for it is for your
best, & worship grete yf ye wol vnderstande hit well' /

¶ The xiiij chapitre conteyneth how blanch- ²⁴
ardyn, after he had kyst the proude
mayden in loue / went forth on his waye,
¹¹hauyng styl his thought fast vpon here
beaulte¹¹ / tyll that he cam to the cyte of ²⁸
tourmaday / where he alyghted at the
prouostis house for to be lodged there /
¹²as hereafter foloweth /¹²

1-1, 2-2 Wanting in the French. ³ Je mourray piteusement⁴⁻⁴ Je le feray sieuir ^{5-5, 6-6, 7-7, 8-8} Wanting.⁹⁻⁹ les friuolances ¹⁰ Orig. ou ^{11-11, 12-12} Wanting.

- A**fter many shewynges that the olde damoysele had
 don vnto her lady, the proude pucelle in amours,
 1 wyth what payne & grief that it was¹ / atte thynstance
 4 & requeste of her sayde maystresse, she mounted anon Eglantine
mounts her
palfrey,
 vpon her² whyte palfray amblyng² / And sayde she
 sholde fynde at Tormaday / hym that had doon her
 this vyolence / And that by the morowe next she
 8 sholde³ make him to be hanged.³ Sore troubled of
 wyttis, and gretly vexed wythin her mynde as ye here,
 rode forthe the gentel pucelle after her folke towards and rides towards
Tormaday.
 her cyte of tormaday. But we shal leue her sorow-
 12 yng / wyth her maystresse that conforteth her, & shal
 speke of blanchardyn, that alredy was nyghe comen
 vnto the cyte of Tormaday / whiche he dyde beholde Blanchardyn
 well, hauynge merueylle of the comodyouse and riche
 16 contrey where the towne was sette / And hym semed
 the most fayre and most riche cyte that euer he sawe / thinks this city
on the sea
 The see was nyghe betyng on the walles atte one syde
 of the towne, at the other syde were the grete medowes,
 20 the fayre vynes and the londe arable / The wodes,
 swete ryueres, and dyuerse fountaynes. And sayde in
 hymself / that he that had suche a noble cyte of his a noble one.
 owne were a grete lorde. Blanchardyn exploytted so,
 24 that he soone entred the cyte. And rode a goode waye
 wythynne, beholding on eche syde the fayre houses and
 ryche palayces, and the grete edyfices, as monasterys,
 chirches, and chapelles. and also he sawe the grete
 28 multytude of peple, the fayre stretes ample and large /
 tyl that he cam to the chyeff market place, Where he
 dyde calle a man to hym for to brynge hym to a good
 lodygys for hym self and his hors. The man answered
 32 hym, that wyth grete payne he sholde be lodged / And
 that the men of armes of the proude pucelle in amours
 were comyng in so grete nombre for to awayte on p^e
 siege, that the Kynge Alymodes wold leye aboute the

¹⁻¹ a quelque painne et meschief que ee feust²⁻² la haguenee³⁻³ le ferra prendre

cyte there / that the towne was not suffysaunt¹ for to
 lodge hem alle. / But wel he tolde hym that he sholde
 be well lodged in the prouostys house of the towne, yf
 he wolde receyue hym for his hoste. ¶ Blanchardyn 4
 thanked hym humbly, and prayed hym that he wold
 shewe hym the prouostys hous / And he wyth goode
 wylle dyde soo / Blanchardyn drue thitherward / &
 fonde the prouost syttyng at his gate / He salued hym / 8
 prayng / that for to paye well and largely content him,
 he wold vouchsaf to take hym for his hoste, and lodge
 hym in his place. The prouost stode vp anon, & dede
 beholde blanchardyn, whiche he praysed moche in his 12
 herte, & sayde vnto hym thus: 'Syre, the manere of
 this lodgyse is suche, that noon may lodge hym self
 here / but yf he doth that whiche is wryton in that
 marbel stone aboue the yate' / Than casted blanchardyn 16
 his sight vpward, and sawe writon, graued wythin a
 marbel stone, the verses that hereafter folowen; ² wherof
 he was glad / for non other sporte or non other thing
 he desired / ¶ Here foloweth the ballade that was 20
 wryton vpon the gate of the prouostis place of
 Tourmaday /²

unless he first
 fights his host,
 the Provost.

³ **W**Ho that wol lodge hym self herynne, 24
 most furst befygth thost of herynne
 wyth spere, swerde, & eke of axe.
 Here nedeth non other craftes to gete ynne,
 for who that wol be receyued wyth chere fyn
 May thynke / that nedes he muste therto. 28
 But god graunte hym grace herto,
 to ouercome his host, thylke hardy foo /
 He shal mowe lawfulle entre this Inne /⁴

¹ *Orig.* suffysaunt ²⁻² Wanting in the French.

³ This is set as prose by Caxton.

⁴ Quy seouldra ceans logier,
 Loste fault combatre premier
 De la lance, despee ou de hache;
 Il ne conuient aultre fourrier.
 Quy a desir dy herbegier,
 Pense quil fault quainsi le faee;
 Mais se dieu luy donne la grace
 Que son oste vainque ou defface,
 En lostel saille sans songier.

¶ The xiiij chapitre conteyneth. how the
Iouencell blanchardyn Iosted and fought
ayenst the preuost, and ouerthrewe hym;
4 and how two yonge damoselles, doughters
to the prouost, cam and toke Blanchardyn
for to haue hym to be lodged wythin her
faders place /

- 8 **W**Han blanchardyn had wel loked and rede the
verses that grauen were in the marbell vpon
the gate, & well vnderstode theire sentence, a lytyl he
bygan to smyle / as he that ¹lytyl dyde sette ther by ¹ / Blanchardyn
smiles
- 12 And the prouost axed hym yf he was counseyllled for
to fulfyll the construction of that texte. Blanchardyn
ansuered that he was therof right wel content, so that
he myght haue harneys to arme hym self wyth all / and agrees to
fight.
- 16 The prouost sayd it sholde not lacke on that / and that
gladly he sholde furnysshe hym of goode and mete
harnoys to arme his body wyth all / And he dyde soo / The Provost
lends him
armour;
- 20 suche armures and harneys as to hym behoued to haue,
and that to suche a caas apperteyneth / Blanchardyn
sette fote a gronde, and made hym to be armed and
well appoyntted by the prouostis men, whiche was all
- 24 prest and redy poyntted to the Iouste / ¶ Whan Blanch-
ardyn sawe hym self well armed of alle peces / right
quykly he lept vpon his courser, the helme on his
hede / the shelde atte his necke, and the spere in his he leaps on his
courser;
- 28 fyste, wythout takyng any anauntage, wherof all thas-
systems that were comen there for to see hym Ioust with
the prouost of the toune, sayde that they neuere sawe no
fayrer man of armes, nor better pyght,² nor better syt-
- 32 tyng on horsbak. Grete multytude of peple was there
assembled for to see the Ioustynge of the two vasselles. many folk come
to see the ioust.

¹—1 de ce tenoit peu de compte

² adroit

The Provost
of Tormaday

states the con-
ditions of the
fight: if he is
beaten, he will
lodge Blanch-
ardyn gratis.

The Provost and
Blanchardyn

charge one
another at full
speed.

Blanchardyn
unhorsed the
Provost.

p^e prouost seyng blanchardyn redy mounted vpon his
hors, p^e spere in his fyste, & lepte out of his place, he
semed wel by his behauoure & mayntenaunce to be a
man of right grete fayte / for to saye trouthe, he was 4
a myghty man of body, wel renommed of prowesse.
And the valyant Blanchardyn, the spere couched on
his thye, awayted for hym in the strete all redy for to
assaylle hym. The prouost sayde to blanchardyn from 8
as ferre as he coude chuse¹ hym: 'Syre, thynke to
deffende your self well, For yf ye ouercome me I shal
lodge you in my house, where ye shalbe right richely
serued wythout your cost / but yf I may, it shal not 12
come therto, For I shal brynge you to dethe, or to me
ye shal yelde your self.' ¶ Blanchardyn herkned the
prouost, to whom boldly he answered that he shold
doo the best and the worst that he coude, and that he 16
shulde take no thoughte but onely for hym self, and
that he sholde putte peyne that his honoure sholde be
kepte, and his body ayenst hym / Thenne toke the
prouost his spere / and so dyde Blanchardyn ²the his,² 20
whiche was strong and bygge, that it was meruayll.
And as moche as the horses myght renne, came eche
ayenst other / The prouost brak his spere vpon blanch-
ardyn, but he hurted hym not, For his goode shelde 24
kept hym, and his stronge bones suffred hym not to
bowe bakward, by the right grete vertue wherof he was
garnysshed / Blanchardyn hytt the prouost in the
myddys of his shelde so myghtly that it was perced all 28
thourgh, that the yron was seen at the other syde of
the shelde / And yet the prouostis harneis was hole,
and nought dommaged of nothyng / But not-wyth-
standyng the strok was so myghty grete and so sore 32
peysaunt / that hit lyfted the prouost out of the sadel
to the grounde more thenne tenn fot ferre bakward; &
with that renne, blanchardyn his courser ran ouer p^e

¹ choisir

²—2 la sienne

- prouost that he tradd vpon one of his armes, so that it was hurt full sore. But he was so gretly astonyd of þ^e myghty stroke wherby he was fallen down, that he
- 4 wüst not ¹where he was.¹ Blanchardyn right quykly alyghted from his hors / his swerd in his hande for to cutte the laas fro the helmet of the preuost, & so to smyte of his hede yf he wolde not yelde hym self to
- 8 Blanchardyn, and gyue hym fre entre wythin his hous. But whan the two doughters of the prouost, that right praty and full fayre were, dyde see this harde bataylle, and theire fadre in parell of deth / lepte hastely out of
- 12 their house, and cam to the place, where as bothe of hem / puttyng them self vpon theyre knees byfore blanchardyn, sayde vnto hym : ‘ O thou free knyght, replenysshed wyth prowess & of grete wordynesse /
- 16 haue merey vpon² our fadre ’ / And Blanchardyn, full of courtoysye, to them answered / that for the loue of them / he sholde be sauf from all euyll / And euyn at these wordes / cam the prouost tyl his owne knowlege
- 20 ageyne, & vnderstandyng that he had lost the felde for cause of þ^e stourdy stroke that he had receyued of the spere of blanchardyn. ¶ And sayde ³in this maner :³ ‘ a, right gentyl knyght, to whom none oughte to compare
- 24 hym self / For that right grete vertue that in you is entred and sette, I yelde my self vnto you / And presente my hous ⁴to your plesure and behouffe,⁴ prayeng right affectually that in pacyence ye wyl taken hit
- 28 wyth suche as ye shall fynde in hit.’ And thenne wythout taryeng drewe his swerde, and toke it vnto Blanchardyn, that wyth goode wyll gaff it hym ageyn, and wyth-all pardoned hym alle that he myght haue
- 32 had mysprysed ayenst hym in that / that he wold fyght wyth blanchardyn / wherof the prouost thanked hym gretly.

and runs over
his arm.

Blanchardyn dis-
mounts, and is
about to cut the
Provost's head
off,

when his two
daughters beg
for his life.

Blanchardyn
spares the
Provost,

who yields up
his house

and sword to
Blanchardyn.

¹⁻¹ quelle chose aduenue luy estoit ² de
³⁻³, ⁴⁻⁴ Wanting in the French.

¶ The xv. chapytre conteyneth how Blanchardyn was moche richely lodged and receyued in the prouostis hous, of the two doughters of the prouoste. And of 4 the complayntes that the proude mayden in amours made vnto her maystres of Blanchardyn /

After this that blanchardyn, atte requeste of the 8 two yong damoysselles / had pardoned theyre fader, the prouost, ¹his euyll wyll¹ / dyuerse folke of the towne / that had seen the valeauntnes and prowes, the grete humylyte and courtoysyes that were in blanchardyn / praysed and commended hym right moche, sayeng comonly that a fayrer knyght they had not seen nor herd speke of in their tyme; And that by his ²behauoure and ²contenance, men myght well knowe 16 that he was departed and come of ³noble extraction and hyghe parentage.³ ¶ Soone after Blanchardyn / hauyng the two yong damoysselles by the handes, was lad by the prouoste in to his house, where he was receyued 20 and festyd, god knoweth how / So was he by the two doughters brought in to a chambre full richely dressed and hanged wyth riche tapysserie / where he was desarmed by the two damoysselles, that helped him / 24 whiche toke him a longe gowne furred wyth fyn martrons, that was her faders, for to clothe hym wyth / And syth dyde sende for the wyn, and made hym the best chere for the first acqueyntaunce that euer coude 28 be made to a knyght. ¶ It is not to be tolde but that Blanchardyn mayntened hym self, talkyng emonge hem more gracyously than euere dyde man, and shewed hym self of so goodly and honneste behauoure / that 32 right sone he conquered the hertes ⁴and goode wyll⁴

The folk of
Torinaday

praise Blanchardyn.

The Provost's
daughters
receiue and feast
him,

disarm him,

clothe him in
a furd gown,

and give him
wine.

He talks
graciously to
them, and wins
their hearts.

1-1, 2-2 Wanting in the French.

3-3 haute lignee

4-4 Wanting.

of the two forsayde praty maydens; ¹that was not a
 lytell thyng¹ / For moche fayre and gentyl they were.
 Whiche on that other part / sawe in ²Blanchardyn so
⁴grete a beaulte³ / that neuere was seen by them noon
 suche in noo man, wherfore it was noo meruaylle yf
 they gladly behelde hym. We shal leue to speke of
 this matere / And shal retourne to speke of the proude
⁸mayden in amours, whiche alredy had exployted so
 moche that she entred wythin her towne of Tormaday,
 and in a dyspleasans right bytter of her acustumed
 corage, descended in to her paleys wyth her stoute
¹²rowte of folke of armes, & syth, moche tryste and
 pensefull, entred her chambre, callyng wyth her her
 mastres, that fulle soone cam there / wherfore that
 night noon of them alle, were he neuer so moche her
¹⁶famylyer / cam to see her, but onely the captayne of
 Tormaday, that cam for to make vnto hir the reuerence.
 And emonge other deuyses, that ynough brief were,
 recounted vnto her / how a knyght straunger was come
²⁰to the cyte / whiche was the fayrest gentylman that
 myght be seen, and had befought the prouoste and
 ouercomen hym. ¶ Thenne the proude pucelle in loue,
 after a lytyl musyng, vnderstode well by the wordes of
²⁴the captayne, and by the cognysaunce that he tolde
 her of his horse, that he was that self knyght that the
 kisse had taken of her. But she therof made noo
 semblaunt / The captayne gaff ⁴the goode nyght⁴ to the
²⁸damoysele, toke his leue of her, and went. The
 proude mayden in amours, seeyng the captayne goon
 from her presence / sayde anon vnto her maystres: ⁵‘I
 shal suffre for this nyght hym that so grete a dys-
³²playsure hath don to me this day by the waye to be
 festyd in the prouostis hous.⁵ But ther nys man a

² Cj.Eglantine
reaches
Tormaday.

Its Captain tells

her that a most
fair knight has
overcome the
Provost.She recognizes
this knight as
the one who kist
her,¹⁻¹ qui nestoient pas peu de choses ³ *Orig.* abeaulte⁴⁻⁴ la bonne nuit⁵⁻⁵ Je lairay meshuy festoier en lostel du preuost celui qui
tant ma fait de desplaisir au Iour duy sur les champs

and declares that
she'll be the
death of him.

lyue, that so gretly be my frende / that myght kepe
me / But that I shal to morowe make hym for to deye
of an right euyl deth, ¹Yf I am woman a lyue.¹ And
wyth this, yf the prouost wolde not delyuer hym vnto 4
me / I shal destroye hym,² and shal make hym pryuated
from all his tenementes that he holdeth of me' / Thus
as ye here, p^e proude pucelle in amours, in her harde
herted wyll, abode all that nyght for to make Blanch- 8
ardyn to deye / wherof for this cause, for grete anger
that was in her, she had nother lust nor myght for to
ete nor drynk, nor also to take the reste of slepe /

¶ The xvj. chapitre conteyneth yet of the 12
complayntes & grete thretenynges that
the proude pucelle in amours made vnto
her maystres of the knyght Blanchardyn

Eglantine is
still wroth with
Blanchardyn,

IN suche astate, and of the wrathe wherin she was / 16
talked & deuysed her self sore harde and angerly
wyth her maystres, whiche dysconseyllled her by al
manere wayes of the deth of blanchardyn / But what
argument nor remonstrans that she coude make to the 20
proude damoyselle in amours, ³coude nor not myght
not³ moeue her for to haue awaye her corage from thob-
stynacion that she had toward Blanchardyn / Thenne
sayde the fayre damoyselle, ⁴that so fyers was ayenst 24
the god of loue⁴ / 'Of what detlie myght I do make
hym to deye for to tormente hym moost therby /
Other late hym be hanged / brente, or drowned / his
hed to be smytten of from his shulders / or to make 28
hym to be drawen and quartre l / for to gyue vnto hym
his payment of the grete outrage by hym commytted
in my persone' / Her maystres, heryng her wyll'e /
conclusion, and haulte corage insaueyble / that right 32

and disseses
how she shall
have him kild.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

³⁻³ ne le scent ne peult

² *Orig.* hym hym

⁴⁻⁴ Wanting.

sore touched thonestete and honoure of alle pryneesses /
 was therof right Impacient / And bygan to saye suche
 or semblable wordes : ' Alas, madamoselle, he that ye so
 4 sore do hate / hath not desserued dethe, thoughe he
 hath taken a kysse of you / To my semyng ye sholde
 forclose and take awaye out of your herte all invtyle
 sorowfulnesse, wherof ye ouer moche doo hurt hit,
 8 And garnysshe hit ¹ of a newe Ioye / The rayson
 wherby I so saye, I shal shewe hit vnto you, yf ye be
 pleased to vnderstande it / Al ynough ye may thynke
 and knowe / that what someuer he be / he hath a
 12 gentyll herte, and is a man of hyghe facion. And
 where all-redy ye haue mowe knowen. by the relacion
 of ² youre captayne of Tourmaday / ye may vnderstande
 of his worthynesse / Ye may well knowe / that yf he
 16 had not chosen you full praty and ryght fayre, and
 more than eny other accomplysshed in all manere of
 beaulte and faycture / byleue certaynly that he neuere
 wolde haue vaunced hym self to take a kysse of you /
 20 nor had not put hym self in daunger of youre indyngna-
 cion, that gretly ought to be drad. Wherefore atte my
 requeste, and for the loue that euere ye had to me ; by
 all the seruyces and pleasures that I haue mowe doon³
 24 unto you, And that hereafter I myght doo, beseche
 you / that this euyll wylle and grete indygnacion / that
 ye haue to that yong knyght, ye putte and chasse out
 from you. And that ye wyll ceasse your sorowe, and
 28 take ayen vnto you thastate of Ioyfull lyuyng / For
 vpon my sowle, it is the beste that ye can doo in this
 world' /

Her foster-
mother says a
kiss doesn't
deserve death.

¹ C ij.

Eglantine
should rejoice

that so gentle
and valiant a
knight as B'anch-
ardyn loved her.

Otherwise he'd
never have riskt
kissing her.

She should give
up sorrowing,
and be joyful.

¶ The xvij. chapytre conteyneth how the
 32 proude pucelle in amours, after dyuers
 and many remonstracions made by her

² Orig. yf

³ Orig. dooon

maystres vnto her, bygan to wexe moderate, puttyng awaye from her the hate that she had vpon blanchardyn /

Eglantine begins
to let love creep
into her heart.

After that the proude mayden in loue had largely 4
herde of her maystres, that all ynough semed
her raysonnable, wyst nomore what to replyque nor
gaynsaye, & bygan to leue her eerys thurghe a subtyl
and soubdayne hete of loue, that perced the veray hert 8
rote of her / for the delyuerance of the yong knyght
blanchardyn / She helde her self styl a longe¹ whyle
wythout speche, and becam pensful, with a conten-
aunce full sadde, more than euer she was byfore / But 12
at thende of a whyle, began for to saye wythin her
self: ¶ ‘O veraye god, what bruyt of cruelnes and of
tyrannye sholde be spred ouer all the worlde of me,
that am a woman, Yf I, for by cause of a kysse onely, 16
sholde make to deye soo gentyll a knyght. I nedes
muste saye that he loueth me truly, and ouer moche
straunge sholde be the reward of his loue vnto hym, yf
deth sholde folowe therby by the sentence of me, that 20
may conforte hym. ¶ But alas, I make a grete doubte
that ouer moche sholde greue me / yf by aduenture
it happed that he fonde hym self somewhere, as he
presently doth wyth the doughters of the prouost, 24
sholde boste hym self to haue kyssed me / this remors
prycketh me to the herte. how be it, I holde hym so
courtoys and dyscret, or wyse, that noo bostyng shold
not mowe come out of his mouthe, & in especyall of 28
her vnto whom he hath shewed so grete a token of
loue. It is farce, and her to I am constrayned / that I
confesse that he hath the corage areysed vnto parfytte
noblenesse / And that yf he were otherwyse, he sholde 32
neuere haue made farce to kysse me / ²¶ Men see atte
ey his beaulte,² wherof he is endowed hyghly / his

She says, ‘How
cruel it will be
of me to kill a
knight for only
a kiss!

‘Still I shall
grieve if he
brags to the
Provost’s
daughters that
he’s kist me.

‘But he is too
noble to do this.

valyauntnes is alredy well preued. And therfore I
chuse hym and make hym myn Seneschall and cheff of
my werre, For he is a man worthy to be taken soo /

'I'll make him
my Seneschall
and Commander-
in-chief.

¶ And by al thus, but yf it holdeth on hym / yf eny
malyuolence or euyll wyll I haue had byfore this vnto
hym, I altogydre pardone hym. But alwayes, yf he
hath eny lone to me / It is for nought ; For neuer, daye
of my lyffe, hym nor other I wyll not loue. So wot I
neuer what loue ment, nor what it is of loue / nor
I loke not after to knowe it / For all suche thynges
I repute and take for foly, as / ¹certaynly they be /
And wol that euery may knowe that it is / and
shalbe allewayes my ²souerayne desyre² and fynall
conclusion' /

'But I won't
love him,

¹ C iij.

'and that I
firmly resolve.'

¶ The xviij. chapitre conteyneth how the
proude pucelle in amours made her ordon-
aunces for the kepyng of her cyte / And
how Kynge Almodes arryued and toke
lande nyghe the cyte of Tourmaday,
whiche he beseged ³with a myghty power
of folke / ³

IN this dyuersyte of purpos the proude pucelle in
amours, to what a peyne that it was passed the
tyme of the nyght / And on the morowe she made
the castell and her sayde cyte of Tourmaday to be
garnysshed right wel of vytaylles, of men of warre, and
of almanere of artyllary / by cause that she had had
that same daye / that for certayn she sholde
be beseged there, after whiche ordynaunces so made by
her knyghtes & captaynes, she wythdrewe her self in
to her castell of Tourmaday / She entred in her chambre
and cam toward a wyndowe, out of whiche men sawe

Eglantine
victuals and
arms her city of
Tormaday.

She sees King
Alymodes's
navy

anchor before
her city.

Eglantine bids
her men oppose
K. Alymodes's
landing.

They muster,

but are too late.

Alymodes, with
his son Darins,

his pretty
daughter,

K. Rubyon,

and a seven-foot
hideous king,

right ferre in to the see / And there she had not be no
longe whyle, whan she had perceyued the playn choys
ands fyght of a right grete and myghty nauye, and of
many a highe mast that bare grete saylles / And many 4
penoncelles, baners, and standardes that the wynde
shok here and there, wherof the golde & the azure was
glysteryng tyl vnto her eyen / bycause of the bryght
bemes of the sonne that spred were vpon them. All 8
the see was couered wyth shippes & galeyes, that wyth
a full sayll cam to take parte, and to caste theire ankers
byfore the cyte of Tourmaday. ¶ The damoselle seeng
that grete armee commyng, knewe all ynoughe that it 12
was thexcercyte of the sayd kynge Almodes, by the
banners & cognysaunce that she sawe appyere vpon
the see / She called to her them that were in her
chambre / to whiche Incontynent she commaunded 16
that they sholde goo & arme them self for to resiste
ayenst her enmyes at their commyng on lande, whiche
she sawe approched alre dy right nyghe / After this
commaundement made, they all went to arme and 20
arraye hem self, & thourgh all the cyte¹ euery man toke
his harneys on hym, & made grete haste toward the
hauen.¹ Troumpettes, claryons, & other instrumentes
bygan to blowe thurgh euery part of the towne / and 24
were all in affraye for to lepe out, to thende they
myght be at the descendyng of theyr enemyes to lande.
Neuer so soone they coude comen, But that the kynge
Alymodes had alre dy taken lande, & his sone daryus 28
wyth hym, and one of his daughters that he had,²
whiche was moche fayre, and a praty mayden, that
it was meruaylle / So had he one kynge in his com-
panye that hyght Rubyon. And wyth theym was come 32
another kynge right myghty and grete beyonde mesure,
whiche of heyght was xv fote long, and wyth-all right
foull and hydouse for to see / So moche they dede that

¹⁻¹ Chacun courut aulx armes. ² *Orig.* he had he had

- they cam all out of their vesselles, and had out all
 theyr horses, tentes, & pauyllions / artylleryes, and
 harneys / And sprade them self thurgh the medowes
 4 that be there full ample & large / They of the cyte
 coude neuer lette hem nor defende / But that atte their
 pleasure they descended from their shippes & toke
 lande, for so grete a nombre they were, that men called
 8 them about four score thousand¹ men of warre or more,
 besyde thos that kept their shippes / Ryght grete bruyt
 & grete noyse they made at their comyng a lande, of
 harnes, bussynes, and of tambours, so that an horryble
 12 thyng it was to here / The Kynge Alymodes and his
 son daryus, acompanied wyth the two other kynges,
 mounted vpon theire coursers & palfreys,² & *xx thou-
 sand men wyth them,² & came to fore the cyte, The
 16 kynge Alymodes so ferre that he was nyghe by the
 gate, heuyng vpward his hand / sayeng to them that
 kept theire warde / that they sholde yelde vp the cyte
 vnto hym or euer that the lande aboute were wasted /
 20 sweryng vpon all the goddes that he worshiped / that
 he ne sholde departe from byfore the cyte, vnto the
 tyme that he had the proude pucelle in amours tyl his
 spouse and wyff / They of wythynne thenne heryng
 24 Alymodes the kynge speke that wel they knewe, an-
 suered vnto hym / that they had noo fere of hym /
 And that theyre damoyselle & maystres doubted nor
 feered hym nought in noo thyng / This ansuere y-
 28 herde, Alymodes þ^e kynge, replenysshed wyth wrath
 and Ire more than euer he was to fore / made his oost
 to approche as nyghe the cyte as he coude / He made
 there his tentes & his pauyllions to be pyght, and his
 32 folke to be lodged aboute hym / And made his chieff
 standard³ to be sette al on hyghe vpon his riche paui-
 lyon / ayenst whiche they of the cyte casted full fast,

with 80,000 men
at arms, all
land.

The Kings and
6000 men come
up to Tormadray,

* C liij.

and demand its
surrender,

and that Eglan-
tine be given to
Alymodes to
wife.

These demands
being rejected,

Alymodes
pitches his tents
close to the city.

¹ *Orig.* thousaud ²⁻² a dix mille hommes avec eulx

³ *Orig.* staudard

The citizens fire
on them, and
kill many,

but cannot dis-
lodge them.

Alymodes pre-
pares to bombard
Tormaday.

& often serpentynes and gunnes, wherof they dyde grete dommage vnto their enemyes / But what someuer thinge that men euere dyde vnto them, nor that of their folke was made grete occysion and slawghter, ⁴ Neuertheles, they lefte not to lodge hem self there, ¹ what for daunger nor moleste that men coude do to them¹ / And all as nyghe the cyte as myght be / making redy their canons and their bombardes, for to ⁸ bruse and bete doune the walles of the sayd towne /

¶ The xix. chapytre conteyneth how the doughter of the prouost brought to Blanchardyn a fayre coueryng, ² all of whyte ¹² sylke,² to couere his hors wyth all, and one of her sleues, prayng hym that he wold bere hit vpon his helme. And he dyde so.

WHen they of the cyte had seen the manere & ¹⁶ the rewle³ of their enemyes, and that all wyth leyser they had seen their puyssance and their manere of doynge, The captayne and the prouoste of the towne dyde ordeyne a stronge and a bygge warde that ²⁰ they sette by a goode ordenaunce along the walles, and in to the yates for the defence of the towne / And this doon, toke wyth them two thousand men well chosen and all in a goode array / lept out of the cyte, & ²⁴ sodaynly wyth a grete cry that they made, charged vpon theyre enmyes, wherof at their commyng on / they dyde putte to deth grete foison of Kynge Alymodes folke, whiche was right sory for it. But soone ²⁸ ynough, by the prouysion that he putte therto, reculed his enemyes abacke ⁴tyll wythin the barreys of the towne⁴ / Another posterne of the cyte was open, wherof

The Tormadians
set a guard on
their walls,

and then 2000 of
them charge
their foes, and

slay many of
them.

¹⁻¹ quelque dangier ou moleste que on leur sceust faire.

²⁻² Wanting in the French. ³ gouuernement

⁴⁻⁴ dedens de la cite.

- the enemyes toke noo kepe / out of whiche yssued out
a thousand men, goode & handy fyghters well shapen,
& strongly herted for to hurt their felon enemyes. So
4 smot they hem self, wythin callyng vp a hyghe crye in
to p^e thikkeste of their enemyes, where they slew and
detrenched many one / And dyuerse tentes and paulyl-
lyons they pulled doune, and brought to dethe theym
8 that were wythynne. Soo that the cry and the call-
yng camen vnto the kynge Alymodes paulyllyon, that
hastely came there, acompanyed wyth x thousand of his
men / The noyse and the cry ¹bygan thenne to be efte
12 as grete than it was to fore¹ / so that the folke of the
proude pucelle in amours were constrayned to wyth-
drawe them self ayen in to p^e cyte, after that they had
brought & slayne wel xiiij c. of their enemyes, without
16 eny losyng of their owne folke, wherof Alymodes the
kynge was right sory & dolaunt / & sore troubled &
heuy, wythdrewe hym self in to his paulyllyon, com-
maundyng his folke that euery man shold loke to lodge
20 hym self, trowyng to be in a sewrete that his enemyes
as for that same day sholde not comen nomore out of
their cyte. Blanchardyn, that at the same owre was in
the prouostis hous, heryng the bruyt & the noyse that
24 wythout the towne was made by kynge Alymodes
folke, the whiche he had seen and aduysed from ouer
the walles wherè he went vp / And seen the battaylles
& searmysshyng that by them of the towne & their
28 enemyes were made, So² began he to be ful of thoughte,
& all annoyed of hym self by cause he was not armed
tyl his plesure, and that he myght not yssue out vpon
the proude pucelle in amours enemyes wyth her folke.
32 The prouost, that right wyse was and subtyll / asked
blanchardin what moeuyd hym to be so sore sad &
pensefull, and yf he was not well lodged at his case

Then another
1000 of the
Tormadians
make a separate
sally,

and kill many
foemen.

Alymodes drives
them back,

after losing 1400
of his men.

Blanchardyn is

annoyd that he
was not in the
fight.

¹⁻¹ se renforcea si tresgrande

² Si

Blanchardyn
complains to
the Provost

that, tho' he
wants to fight,

he has no
armour.

The Provost
agrees to give
him a horse
and arms.

Both of them
arm quickly.

and to his playsure / and yf he wanted eny thyng that
myght be reconerd for gold or syluer, that he sholde
telle it hym, & that he shold late hym haue hit in-con-
tynent¹; al sholde he putte in leopardye, bothe lyf & 4
goode, for to fulfille his wyll / 'Alas,' saide blanch-
ardyn / 'Sire, of your lodgis and good chere I am right
wel content, & thanke you moche therfore / But one
thyng wol I telle you, syth that it playseth you to 8
knowe þ^e cause of my grete dysplaysaunce; ye shall
vnderstande that I haue habandonned & forsaken bothe
fadre & modre, kynnesmen & frendes, ²& eke lyfode &
lande² where I toke my byrth & noureture, for to ex- 12
cercyse & able my self in þ^e noble crafte of faytes of
armes, & to take & lerne þ^e discipline of knyghthode /
¶ And I se nowe that for defaulte of armures I may
not sette awerke nor employe my goode wyll / whiche 16
full sore greueth me, And moche more than I telle.'
¶ The prouoste, hering the goode wyll and grete affec-
tion / that this yonge knyght had / was therof right
glad / and sayde vnto hym / 'vassell, come wyth me, 20
and I shall delyuere you hors and eke harneys right
goode, so that ye shall haue noo cause for fawte of
armures / But that ye shal mowe proue your prowes
whiche I holde right grete.' 'Syre,' sayde blanch- 24
ardyn,³ 'of the curtosye that ye haue doon and proffre
vnto me, I thanke you moche;' thenne the prouost toke
Blanchardyn by the hand, smylyng, and to hym sayde:
'come⁴ you wyth me, and I shal gyue you the choys of 28
suche armures as ye shal lyke.' They two went to
gidre, and entred in to a chambre that wel garnysshed
was of all manere of armes, suche as atte that tyme
were vsed. ¶ The prouost dilygently armed blanch- 32
ardyn of suche armures as he wold chose. And syth
made eche hem self to be armed hastely / Whan dressid

¹ *Orig.* in contynent ²⁻² terre et le pays

³ *Orig.* saydeblanchardyn ⁴ *Orig.* saydecome

and redy they were, they made theire coursers to be had
 forth out of the stable, whiche were brought anone to
 the mountyng place before the halle. Thenne one of
 4 the doughters of þ^e prouost, knowyng that blanchardyn
 was armed and redy to goo out wyth her fader / she
 cam and brought wyth her a fayre whyte coueryng of
 damaske clothe, wherof she made the hors of blanch-
 8 ardyn to be couered wyth, and vnto hym she gaffe one
 of her gowne sleues, that was of damask blake / prayng
 hym that for her sake and loue he wolde voche sauf to
 were and bere it vpon his helmet / Blanchardyn toke
 12 þ^e sleue of the damoysell, sayng that he sholde fulfylle
 her request; & she, thankyng hym therof / sayde, she
 sholde, be cause as her semed that god sholde gyue hym
 some goode fortune that day /

One of the
 Provost's
 daughters gives
 Blanchardyn
 white horse-
 trappings,
 and her black
 sleeve to wear in
 his helm,

and says that
 God 'll favour
 him.

16 ¶ The xx. chapitre speketh of the grete
 bataylle that was byfore the cyte of Tour-
 maday ayenst kyng alymodes folke, and
 of the grete prowes that blanchardyn
 20 made there that day / and how the
 proude mayden in amours becam sore
 enamoured ou¹ him. & of the deuyses or
 communyng that she made wyth her
 24 maystres.

[¹ read on]

After that the prouoste and Blanchardyn were
 armed of all peces, and set vpon the myghty
 coursers the shelde at the necke / theire helmes bokled,
 28 and eythre of them the spere in the hande / toke leue
 of hem that were there, and departed out of the place,
 and cam to the towne gate, where they fonde thre
 thousaund men alredey for to yssue out / the whiche by
 32 the motion & warnyng of the prouoste / had appareyl-
 led them self for to kepe hym felawship and folowe

Blanchardyn and
 the Provost
 mount,

and find 3000
 men at the gate.

Blanchardyn
and the Provost

march out with
Eglantine's men,

and charge the
foe.

Blanchardyn, in
front, kills the
nephew of
Alymodes,

then one of his
knights,

and then six
enemies.

hym / ¶ When the prouoste was come to the yate,
hit was soone open, thurghe whiche they alle yssued out
in goode and fayre ordynaunce / Blanchardin, whiche
was sore desyryng for to proue¹ hym self and shewe his 4
strengthe and vertue, to haue bruyt and comendacion,
and that he myght be knowen / dyde putte hym self
in the fore front, hauyng a ryght bygge spere in his
hande / ¶ They bygan alle to vaunce, and marche 8
forth out of the barres of the towne. And syth all
atones gaaf a grete crye, Wherof theire enmyes that
all redy awayted there for them, were alle affrayed /
They byganne thenne to renne one vpon other by so 12
grete strengthe, that for the noyse and sowne that the
erthe gaffe by cause of the horses that ranne harde
vpon, It semed to them of wythin and wythout that
the foure elementes had fought theire togydre / ¶ The 16
duste rose vp fro the grounde that derked the lyght
of the sonne wyth the shot that drawe was of bothe
sides, one parte ayenst that other / ¶ Blanchardyn, that
in the fore fronte was the frist man of all, ²had his 20
spere in the rest, and ranne vpon² Corbadas, that neuewe
was to kynge Alymodes; and so grete a stroke and so
heuy he gaffe hym, that the spere hed appiered at the
backe thurgh the body of the sayd corbadas; & in 24
pulling ageyn his spere, he ouerthrew him doune ³sterke
ded³ to þ^e erthe; & syth anone he rought another of
kynge alymodes knyghtes in suche a wysé that he made
his spere to entre his body thurghe lunge and lyure, 28
and so kyld hym. And so moche he made atte the
first empraynte, that ar euere his spere⁴ was broken;
he threwe doune ded syx of his enemyes from their
saddelles / the whiche emonge the horses fete fynissshed 32
myserably theyre dayes. And syn aftre, he lyghtly
dyde sette hande on the swerde, of the whiche he smote

¹ *Orig.* prone ²⁻² *baissa la lance de laquelle Il consieuy*
³⁻³ mort ⁴ *Orig.* swerde

- here and there wyth bothe his handes by suche a
 strengthe, that him that he rought wyth full stroke, was
 1 all in to brused, and clouen in two peeces¹ / He de-
 4 trenched and kütte bothe horses and knyghtes / he cloue
 and rent helmes and sheldes, and brake the grete routes,
 and made his enemyes to sprede abroad / Moche better
 he semed to be ²a man of the fayre² than a creature of
 8 the worlde. All fled byfore hym, and made hym waye
 to passe / There was noo man, how hardy that he was,
 that durste mete hym, so sore fered and doubted hym
 his enemyes / wythin a lytyl whyle he made so moche
 12 ³of proesse³ that his enemyes were therof ryght sore
 abasshed, and that his swerde was well beknownen,
 emonge hem: ryght grete and horryble was the
 battaylle / And so moche that they of Tourmaday
 16 and his enemyes merueylled gretly of the grete
 strengthe and hyghe proes that they sawe in Blanch-
 ardyn, the whiche his enemyes fledde, as the larke doth
 the sperhauke.
 20 ¶ The howlyng and the noyse bygan to ryse vp a
 hyghe, and so moche that the fayre proude mayden in
 amours, that lened atte a wyndowe, seeyng the grete
 proesses & merueyllouse faytes of armes that by blanch-
 24 ardin were there made, Asked of her maystres that was
 nyghe her / yf she knowe not þ^e knyght that had his
 hors couerid with whit rayment / & syth she also per-
 ceuyed the black sleue that vpon his helmet was sette
 28 fast / Her maystres thenne wyst not what to thynke,
 nor also what he myght be / But well ynough sayde
 that he was the most valyaunt, & that dyde best that
 day of al bothe partyes / And she sayde: 'a, madame,
 32 loke / nowe ye may see that they all fle awaye byfore
 hym, and ye may well perceyue that noman dare abyde
 hym, moche grete desyre I haue to wyte & knowe

After that, he
 hacks right and
 left with his
 two-handed
 sword,

and slays men
 and horses,

so that all flee
 from him

as the lark from
 the sparrow-
 hawk,

Eglantine looks
 out,

and asks who
 the white knight
 with the black
 sleeve is.

¹⁻¹ tout fouldroye

²⁻² homme fae

³⁻³ Wanting in the French.

what he may be.' ¶ Euen atte this oure that the
proude mayden in amours and her maystres were in
suche talkyng, came vnto them a squyer that cryed on
hyghe, and sayde / 'O my right redoubted lady, 4
yonder wythout may you chuse and see the floure of
knyghthode, the subduer and sleer of your enemyes,
¹not yet satysfied nor fylled of the deth of many of
hem, but styl destroyeth them.¹ he heweth and felleth 8
doune right al byfore hym / his armes were not longe
syth all clere and whyt / but now they be dyed in red
wyth the blode of your enemyes that he hath slayne
and brought to deth / Madame, knowe for a trouthe 12
that it is the fayre knyght whiche is lodged at þ^e
prouostis house.' / Whan þ^e proude lady in amours
vnderstode the squyer speke thus, the bloode ranne vp
at her face, and wexed red as a rose / Well perceyued 16
hit her sayde maystres, and that the loue of hym smote
her / But no semblaunt she made therof to her. right
gladde and Ioyeful was the pucelle whan she knewe
that it was Blanchardyn / And bygan to thynke in her 20
self that he was wel worthy to be beloued. thenne she
sayde to her maystres / 'Certes that knyght that I see
yonder dooth merueylles of armes / I see þ^e prouost
that of nyghe foloweth him. it is to be thought þat he 24
shal wyl giue him one of his daughters in mariage,
with a grete parte of his grete hauoyre; but on my
fayth it were domage, for he is a man of noble corage,
& right valyaunt / & nought it is to be doubted, but þat 28
he is come of som noble hous. The maystres, that right
sage was, dyd perceyue incontynent by her wordes that
her Indynacion and euyl wylle, that she byfore that
had conceyued ayenst blanchardyn, was moderat ²in 32
her herte,² And wyst not what she therof shold thynke,
but that loue had ouercome her euyl erreure, Wherof
she shold haue ben right glad. and lyke as her thought

¹⁻¹ Insaule de les destriure.²⁻² Wanting in the French.A Squire tells
her that this

slayer of her foes

is the knight
who lodges at
the Provost's.Eglantine
blushes,

smitten by love.

She says it 'll

be a great pity

if such a noble
man marries
the Provost's
daughter.Her foster-
mother

- was to be, so it was in dede happed / Among other
comynnyng & deuyses that she myght more playnly
knowe how it was therof, right subtyly bygan to saye
4 thus to the proude pucelle in amours: 'Madame, as for
this I knowe, and can perceyue youre pryde shalbe
cause / but yf ye take hede, of the totall distruction of
your royalme. Concedere you not that ye be occasion,
8 and the cause mouyng of thassembly of the ostis that
are for your towne, and of the shedyng of bloode that
procedeth therof / Yf ye¹ wolde wedde the kynge
Alymodes, all your lande shalbe in surete, quyet, and
12 peas' / Than the proude mayden in amours, after this
exhortyng, herde of her maystres, sayde that she sholde
noo more speke therof vnto her, and that neuer the
dayes of her lyff she sholde wedde ²paynem nor noo
16 man infydele.² ¶ And for this cause cessed a while
their talkyng / And loked bothe toward the felde,
where they saw the knyghtes ful sore fyghtyng of
bothe partyes / But Blanchardyn hath the praysyng
20 ouer hem alle, For ther was no man of nother syde that
of prowes & worthynes coude go beyonde hym, wherof
kynge alymodes knyghtes had grete enuye ouer hym,
and grete cure & laboure toke vpon them for to slee
24 hym; but non of them / how hardy þat he was, durste
not proche nor nyghe hym, For as many as he myght
reche vnto, he feld hem doune or slew hem, and
wounded them greuously / ¶ The proude pucelle in
28 amours folke bare them self right wel that day / This
bataylle lasted tyl the nyght came; wherfore kynge
Alymodes, seeyng that he myght not by noo manere
putte nor close them fro the cyte, by cause of the wyse
32 wyt and worthynes of the goode knyght Blanchardyn
that conduyted them / made to sowne and call the
retreyte ³or wythdrawe his men,³ to his losse and grete

tells her that she
is the cause of
the destruction
of her folk.

If she would but
wed K. Alymodes,
all would be
peace.

Eglantine says
she'll never
marry a heatlen.

Blanchardyn is
the best fighter
on her side.

K. Alymodes

has the retire
sounded,

¹ *Orig.* Yf yf ²⁻² vng Infidele aourant les ydoles dyaboliques
³⁻³ Wanting in the French.

and withdraws
to his tent.

Blanchardyn is
escorted to the
Provost's house
by the Tormadian
nobles

whom he had
rescued and
helped.

The Provost's
pretty daughters,

both in love with
him, receive him,

feast him,

and attend on
him.

confusion / & wythdrewe hym self in to his tente, right
wrothe and serowfull for the losse of dyuers his
knyghtes / And all thurgh the vertue and strengthe
of one knyght only / Blanchardyn & the prouost, wyth 4
theire folke, wyth grete glorie and tryumphe entred
ayen in to the cyte, and brought wyth them many a
riche prysouner. And to the prouostis house toke
blanchardyn his waye, wher vnto he was conueyed of 8
the most parte of the noble men, makyng to hym the
greatest honoure that men can or may doo to a knyght /
as to hym that best had doon that day / And to saye
the trouthe, many of the greatest of hem had ben slayn 12
or taken, yf by the vertue and strengthe of blanchardyn
they had not be socoured & holpen that day.
Some he helped ayen vpon their horses whan they
were feld doune, some he rescued from the hande of 16
their enmyes that had hem as prysoners, so bare him
self, that wyth grete tryumphe and grete glorie he
retourned fro the bataylle wyth them vnto the sayde
prouostes place / to the grete benyuolence¹ and glad- 20
nesse of the peple of the cyte, and there alyghted from
his hors, and the prouost wyth hym, whos two daughters,
that were right fayre and praty, came there ayenst them /
For bothe of hem loued sore blanchardyn, & right en- 24
amored they were ouer hym / There abode xx knyghtes
at souper wyth blanchardyn, for to chere and feste hym,
and to be acoynted of hym. harpe / lute / ²sawtrye,²
and dyuerse other instruments of melodyouse musyke 28
were sent for, For to reioysshe the noble felawship that
was full fayre / fore there were comen diuerse ladyes,
many a gentyl woman, maydens / and noble bourgeyses,
at the requeste and prayers of the prouoste, and of his 32
two daughters³ that were right besy for to chere & serue
Blanchardyn wyth all dyligence. Atte the same owre

¹ *Orig.* beuyuolence ²⁻² guisternes

³ *Orig.* twodoughters

- that this Ioye & feste ¹was in makyng¹ in the prouostis
house / The proude pucelle in amours was in her
castel lenyng vp on one of her chambre wyndowes that
4 had syght wythin the towne, and herde the noyse and Eglantine hears
the noise of the
feasting,
the feste that was adoyng in the prouostis house for
loue of Blanchardyn, and for to doo hym worshipe &
honoure, wherof she was aduertysed alre dy. And how
8 be it that as ye haue herde anone, she had gyuen her-
self in hir herte to the sayd blanchardyn / alle wayes
at the same owre was taken the fynall and faste con-
clusion, and altogydre was of her determyned, to make
12 of Blanchardyn ²her loue and her speeyall,² that a lytyl
before that / for one kysse onely was so ferre from her
gode grace, and in daunger of his lyf, yf the goddesse of
loue, that is so myghty of her grace, had not purueyed
16 better for hym / At the begynnyng of this new alyaunce,
amoures or loue serued her wyth a messe sharp and
sowre ynoughe tyl her tast / that is to wyte, of a louely
care / that is as moche worthe / as a suspecyouse She is jealous of
the Provost's
daughters,
20 Ialousye of the daughters of the prouoste and her
speeyall Blanchardyn. But she thought in her self
that she sholde puruey therto of a remedye mete &
goode to the cause / whiche thyng she dyde as ye shal
24 here hereafter / loue that departeth wyth her goodes,
where as it semeth her best employed / forgate not her
newe seruauant / but atte her first comyng made her to be³
vysited and wayted vpon by ⁴a seruauant of hers⁴ named
28 Care, that well sore mouyd and troubled her spyrites. becomes anxious
and troubled,
And she that was not lernyd to receyue suche geestes,
sore harde was his queyntaunce to her. And yet wyth-
in a whyle after, loue smote her ayen wyth a darte to
32 the quicke tyll p^e herte of her / so that the fayer
pucell wist not her behauyng, ⁵nor how to mayntene
her self⁵ / and also had no power to drynke nor ete, nor

¹⁻¹ se faisoit ²⁻² son amy ³ Orig. tobe
⁴⁻⁴ vng sien seruiteur ⁵⁻⁵ Wanting in the French.

Eglantine asks
who can cure her
of her love-
troubles.

Her foster-
mother

thinks Eglantine
is in love with
K. Alymodes,

and says she
ought to thank
the God of Love.

Eglantine
confesses

coude not slepe ¹ne take no maner of reste¹ / but held
her hert so esprised & so ouer pressid wyth loue that
she had to blanchardyn / that she myght noo lenger
hyde her falle. Thenne cam to her maystres, & said 4
to her in thys maner: 'alas, who shall mowe recouer
helth to this pacient sore syke, that suffreth wyth
goode wyll of herte, both grete thurste, hunger, &
shaketh for colde caused thrughe a hete intollerabyll?' / 8
The maystres perceyued anoone by her wordes and
maner, that she had ben in the chapiter of the / god of
loue / and by his grace men shuld haue gode accompte
of the pryde that ouer longe a tyme had ruled her 12
dismesurable herte / She thought that² she had ben
taken wyth kyng Alymodes loue, & syth said vnto /
her: 'Madame, ye oughte to yelde grete graces &
thankes to the myghty god of loue / seyng the vn- 16
knoulege that ye haue had alwayes here byfore of his
vertues / that hath dayned to vysite you, & to altre
& change your corage. I byleue now that for cause of
thys sodayn mutacion ye be seke & sore passioned 20
of one accident that nameth hymself the sore of loue' /
'Alas,' said the pucell / 'the sore of loue is ryght
anguyssous and heuy forto bere, as me semeth.'
'Madame,' sayd her maystres / 'men must suffre for 24
better to haue / This euyl shalle be be cause of your per-
feccion / and knouleche that loue is that thyng that
moost embellisheth and decoreth the nobyl corages /
And I can not thynke that euer man and woman, 28
hanyng bruyt or name of some goode vertues passyng
other / haue come nor raughte therunto wythoute³ that
they were or had ben in the seruice of loue.' The
proude mayden in amours herkened hir maystres / but 32
the feure that loue had takn her for to plucke oute
the roote of pryde from her herte / lettid here sore.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French. ² *Orig.* thoughtthat

³ *Orig.* wythonte

and atte the ende of a whyle biganne to saye: 'Alas,
 amours, I haue longe defendyd my sylf ayenst the
 harde assautes and Impetuous excitacions, that often
 4 tymes thy messangers made vnto me. Now haue I
 nother power nor wyl to defende me eny more / vnto
 the I yelde me.'

that she can no
 longer resist the
 attacks of Love.

She gives herself
 up to it.

¶ The xxj. chapiter conteyneth how the
 8 proude pucell in loue / by the grete loue
 that she had sette vpon Blanchardyn,
 bycam Ialouse / and douted leest he shuld
 sette his loue on one of the doughters of
 12 the prouoste / whom she hasteli sente for,
 and spake to hym ¹as it foloweth¹ /

The maystres, herynge the complayntes of the proude
 pucelle in amoures, had no lytyl Ioye to here
 16 suche tydynges, and tyll her feete fell herself, and
 sayd: 'Thanked be god, madame, þ^e werre wiche is
 cause of so many euilles shal ceasse in your realme, yf
 it please god, for from þ^e ovr that ye shal wold gyue
 20 your loue vnto kynge Alymodes, the right happy wele
 of peas shal be publysshed thurgh alle the countrey.
 But and yf ye suffre the siege to abyde any lenger
 byfore youre cyte, Ye ought to wyte that the countrey
 24 about shal vtterly be dystroyed of kyng alymodes
 folke; wherfore at my request, vse youre self after þ^e
 dyscyplyne of amours, to whome ye haue made obeys-
 sance, and take to youre lord and husbande the kynge
 28 Alymodes: how well ¹he ys ouerraged, take no hede
 and care not therfore. he hath yet strenghe ynough.
 ye see what it ys of warre' / And thenn the proude
 mayden in loue answerd and sayde to her maystres:
 32 'I haue absoluteli sayde to you, ones for alle / that

Eglantine's
 foster-mother

falls at her feet,

and begs her
 to love K.
 Alymodes,

and relieve her
 country
 from war.

¹ D ij.

Eglantine vows

she will never
wed

an idolater like
Alymodes.

She sends for the
Provost,

speaks to him
of the war,

and Blanch-
ardyn's deeds,

and says she has

while I lyue, kyng Alymodes shall neuer wedde me.
I inerueylle me gretli of you, that ar ferre in age, &
ought wele to knowe so ferre that a lesse euyl it were
for to suffre all my lande to be wasted, than to wed 4
and take to my lorde a kyng full of Idolatrye, acursed
and apostata of oure holy crysten feyth. Thynke not
that I sorough for hym, but byleue that there is grete
choys of alymodes & hym for whom loue hath taken 8
my fayth, that neuer I shall change hym.' The
maystres wyste not goodely what she shulde thynke,
but ynoughe she doubted that Blanchardyn had that
grace, from whiche he was alytyl afore sore ferre cast. 12
Sone after, wythoute lityll taryeng, the proude pucelle
in amoures sent for the prouoste, sayeng that she had
nede of his counceyl / 'he is sage, dyscrete, and experte
in many thynges,' sayd she; 'I am sure that he hath in 16
his house a rote that, as to my semyng, shal gyf me
help, and shal lyght my herte of the soris wherof I am
full sore passyonned' / her maystres, wythout more
enquyre to be made / sent one for the prouost, that 20
cam sone toward the proude mayden in amours / and
made to her the reuerence / She toke hym by the
hande, and made hym to syt doune by her, for to breke
her matere and to come to a conclusyon. She made 24
her premysses for to speke of her werre / But she
forgate not to telle hym how the knyght, his hoste,
that is to wyte, Blanchardyn, and he hym self had
borne hem self that day right valyauntly, wherof she 28
was right well content / And that yf it pleased god, she
sholde haue knowlege som day of thoos that helpeth
her to mayntene her were ayenst the ¹false sarasyn¹
Alymodes / She that ardauntly sought occasion to 32
fynde matyere for to spek of Blanchardyn, sayde vnto
the prouost in this manyre: 'Prouost, I haue founde
you alwayes goode and / trewe seruauant vnto me /

- wherof I fele me moche beholden to yow / And wyl
 aduertise you of one thyng that dyspleseth me sore,
 whiche is sayd of youre doughters, that is that they
 4 vyll enamoure hem self of that knyght, youre ghest,
 whiche is now lodged wyth yow, whiche is a thyng of
 gete outrage and grete dyshonoure vnto them, know-
 yng that he is a man come of a grete house and
 8 extracted of hyghe parentage, and a grete lorde in his
 entrey / I make no doubte, but holde my self wel
 certayn that he the lesse therfore setteth by them.
 And also it is no merueylle, theyre grete foly dis-
 12 payseth me moche. for it is to be presumed that this
 nyght be cause to mynusshe your worship and their
 goode renomme' / 'Madame,' sayd the prouost, ¹'I haue
 not perceyued me of this¹ that ye telle me / But yf it
 16 were soo that the knyght wherof ye speke were wylling
 to take one of hem, I sholde holde her to be employed
 to the most valiaunt knyght that men euere speke of:
 to the moost free, sage, and curteys that I trowed euere
 20 to be acqeynted of. Now wolde god that his wylle
 were suche / And that he had as grete desyre to take
 her / as I sholde be wylling for to gyue her to hym,
 shure bargayne shold be all thus lyghtly doon / that sore
 24 lytyll that god hath lent me of goodes sholde not be
 straunged vnto hym by me / ²for he is worthy to haue
 mykel more² / hath he not taken this daye tenne
 knyghtes prysonners, besydes threty coursers that he
 28 hath conquered vpon youre enemyes; and so many of
 them he hath clouen and slayne, that grete merueylle
 it were to reherse the same. and ³to my demyng³ /
 I trowe better that he is a man of the feyre than
 32 ⁴otherwyse, for his prowes and worthynes, that ben
 hyghe, are not to be tolde ne compared to the humayn
 or wordely werkes.'

heard that his
daughters love
his guest,

which displeases
her.

The Provost
answers that he
wishes Blanch-
ardyn would
take one of his
daughters.

He must be of
Fairy race;

4 D iij.

no human being
could do so
valiantly.

1-1 Je ne me suis pas perceu de 2-2 car il le vault

3-3 a mon ensient

¶ The xxij. chapitre conteyneth and speketh of the deuyses that were betwene the prouost and the proude pucelle in amours. And of the grete loue that she had sette 4 to blanchardyn ¹the yonge knyght, as it folowed here / ¹

Eglantine delights in the Provost's praise of Blanchardyn.

THe proude pucel in loue, heryng þ^e prouost, was right glad, for she herkened not to þ^e rewthis, 8 but onely to that loenge and praysynge of her louer and frende speeyall. But well she bethought her self that the daughters of the prouost sholde not longe trouble her heedes, for she sholde purueye therto of a remedy 12 conuenable. And whan she spake ageyne, her wordes were suche. 'Prouost, as byfore I haue sayde vnto you the knyght of whom I speke, parauenture is of byrth right hyghe; And suche and so vertuouyse in armes, 16 as ye knowe. It nedeth not to be doubted that he is comme to his extremyte of prowes and valyantnes, wythout that amours hathe be the cause in the persone of some hyghe a pryncesse. And for to telle you I 20 knowe well soo moche, that he is this day in the goode fauoure and grace of a kynges doughter, right ryche, myghty, and well in lynage, & endowed as men sayen of all that / that can be desyred in the body of a 24 woman. And therefore grete foly it is to youre doughters to haue suche an ouerwenyng² wylle, wherof men gyuen them a dysmesured proclame / Neuertheles, as dere as ye haue my playsure to fulfille / and aboue all to renne 28 in to myn indygnacion, holde the hande to this, ³that they forbere hem self to the smylnges and fayre shewes of their eyen, whiche wauntonly they caste full often vpon that yonge knyght.³ And to thende 32

She says that Blanchardyn does his great deeds for love of some Princess.

The Provost's daughters

must be stopt from smiling and making eyes at the knight.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French. ² outrecuidant

³⁻³ que elles se deportent de semblant et regars quelles font vers le cheualier.

that ye may haue them to¹ soner awaye from the loue of
the sayd knyght, gyue me hem bothe, and make them
to be brought here wythin, and wythout eny thyng to
4 youre charge nor cost: I shal mary hem right wel' / Eglantine will
get the Provost's
daughters well
married.
¶ The prouoste, heryng his lady souerayne, right
humbly thanked her of the grete offre and curtosye
that she wolde do to his doughters / and was ryght
8 glad / he toke his leue of her in his most goodly
manere, as to suche a caas apparteyneth / After the
fayre offres had don vnto hym, and at his partyng from
her, she sayde vnto hym that she wold wel see the
12 knyght of whom they had spoken, and that he sholde
brynge hym to her the next day for to make aqueynt-
ance betwyxe hem bothe / & sayde that she was wel
holden to doo so, knowyng that he was in hir seruyse,
16 & that he exposed his body for the deffence of her
countrey. 'I wol,' saide she, 'knowe yf he shalbe
wyllyng to dwelle wythin this my towne, takyng suche
wages as ben acoustumed, or ellis yf not. soo, I shal
20 doo so well reward hym that he shal by reason be well
content of me. and be sure, yf he serue me as he hath
bygonne, yf god be pleased I shal rewarde hym right
well / And I hope that thurgh his ayde my werre shall
24 take a good conclusion. and that doon / yf it pleaseth
hym, he shal mowe take to his spouse hyr that so
moche is his / & that so truly hath gyuen her self to
hym. ¶ And yf it cometh to purpos / forgete not to
28 say / that it were yl don of hym for to forgete her /
But on my feyth, this that I speke / the cause is
moued, bycause that the forsayde, his specyall maystres
and true louer / is my cosyn germain. And also that
32 she bereth in hir herte care ynough and dyspleysure
for the loue of hym, And may nother slepe nor take
nomanere of naturall rest, so moche she is enamored on
hym. I doubte not that yf by aduenture she were out

The Provost is to
bring Blanch-
ardyn to her,

as she wishes
him to serve her.

Her cousin is in
love with him,

cannot rest
for him,

¹ D iiij. of his remembraunce, & by hym putte ¹in oblyuyon,
 and would die if he rejected her; that god forbede / but that sholde dey sodaynly / after
 that suche pitteuouse tydynges were brought tyll her,
 gryeuous sore and payne tendreth to pite the very herte ⁴
 of myn owne body / and nedes muste I putte peyne to
 the releuyng of her grete sorowe. ¶ for wythout fawte
 it were damage yf suche a lady, that is so well con-
 dycioned, ²and in all manere norreture right parfyt, ² ⁸
 sholde perysshe thourgh the coulpe of a knyght /

¶ The xxiiij³ chapiter conteyneth how p^o
 prouost retourned tyll his house, and
 recounted vnto Blanchardyn that the ¹²
 proude pucelle in amours had tolde hym /
 And how she sent for hym, that he⁴
 sholde come toward her / And how
 Blanchardyn went thither / And how ¹⁶
 they talked togydre at leyser, to the
 grete pleasure of bothe partyes. And
 how theyr loue was ⁵knytted and⁵ con-
 fermed / 20

The Provest

After the humble leue that the prouost toke of the
 lady, he went homward agayn tyl his place, all
 penseful of the wordes that he had herde of
 the pucelle. It was tyme to go to bed; so cam he ²⁴
 toward blanchardyn / that was alrede goo in to his
 chambre / and gaff hym the goode nyght / & on the
 next morning morowe, after the masse / the prouost sayde vnto
 Blanchardyn that he wold talke wyth him atte leyser. ²⁸
 And blanchardyn ansuered, 'fayre hoost / ⁶in good oure
 be it '⁶ / Thenne they two sette hem self vpon a benche /
 The prouost bygan hym to recounte and telle hou the

tells Blanchardyn

²⁻² Wanting in the French.

³ *Orig.* xxiiij.

⁴ *Orig.* she

⁵⁻⁵ Wanting.

⁶⁻⁶ en la bonne heure

proude mayden in amoures, the euen last past, had
 spoken wyth hym of many thynges, & emonge other
 tolde hym that she was right well content of his
 4 seruyce, and wolde reteyne hym in wages, and gyue
 hym of her goodes, for he was worthy therof. 'Mor-
 onere,' sayde þ^e pronost, 'sire, she hath tolde me that
 ye be enamored of a hyghe and a riche pryncesse,
 8 wherof I merneyll me not / for on my feyth ye be well
 the man that ought to chuse your specyall loue in
 a hyghe place. But allewayes it is force that j bere
 you in hande that it is her owne silf, for it semeth me
 12 not wel possyble that yf it were in som other place /
 hit sholde not haue comen to her knowlege. how wel
 that here is one doubte that retardeth myne ymagyna-
 cyon, she sette neuere nought by amours / & loue, But
 16 iapeth¹ & playeth her self of theym that ben amerouse.
 I wote not allewayes yf the god of loue myght haue
 shewed his vertues in her. Alas, we sholde wel desyre
 that it were so, to thende she myght take a goode lord
 20 for to deffende vs and her lande' / ¶ After that the
 prouost hade sayde to blanchardyn all that semed him
 good to be tolde / Blanchardyn curtoysly, wyth a
 smylyng contenaunce, ansuered hym, that god hath
 24 well kept hym from so moche an hap and so hyghe, as
 for to haue the grace of so noble and so grete prynces
 as was the proude pucelle in amours / '& also I byleue,'
 sayde blanchardyn, 'that ye make your self these
 28 tydynges. But I can not bethynke to what purpos ye
 haue seen eny token ne apparence for to coloure your
 graciouslye susceycon; I neuer spake wyth her, nor
 neuer in my dayes I dyde see her / wherof sholde to
 32 me come suche a wylle?' 'I wot not,' sayde the
 prouost. 'I telle you that, that I haue herde of my
 lady. Yf ought be ther to your anauntage, soo take
 hit / ¶ Now pleased god that she were that woman

what Eglantine
has said of him,

and that she is in
love with him,

tho' till then she
has always pooch-
poochd love.

Blanchardyn
smiles, and says

he's never
spoken to
Eglantine;

¹ se farse

that suffred so moche of sorowe and angwysshe at her herte for the loue of you.' 'I thanke you,' sayde Blanchardyn /

he can't understand her talk ;

he doesn't think of love for her ;

he only wants to joust and tourney.

But tho' Blanchardyn repudiates her love, he feels it.

He goes to Eglantine's palace with the Provost,

¶ 'I wolde not that noobody sholde suffre for loue 4
of me any thyng to his dyspleasure, where as I myght
by ony manere of waye putte a remedy. But alwayes,'
sayde blanchardyn, 'I can merueyll me not to moche
wherof suche langage commeth, & can not thinke that 8
it shold come of the doughter of a kyng / for thus to
say, she¹ in a manere¹ mocketh me : suffyse her yf I
am come to serue her in kepyng my worship. And as
to me, suche an vse I seke not ; but I wyl onely proue 12
and aduenture honorably my body, as a gentyl man
ought for to doo / Ioustyng, tournoyng, and behourdyng²
are my passe tyme / and no wyffe I thynke not
to take.' 'Aa, sire,' sayde the prouost, 'I wold well 16
kepe me, and be loth for to denounce thyng vnto
you that sholde tourne you to a displeasure, and praye
you that ye wyll not take the thyng other wyse than
I haue tolde hyt to you, and thynke nomore vpon it. 20
But let vs go see my lady / for in goode earnest she doth
sende for you by me' / Blanchardyn graciously ansuered
to his hoste that he was content, excusyng hym silf
alwayes of that loue that he had spoken to hym of. 24
How be it, he felt the contrary at his herte / They
cam to þ^e ladyes palays, and went thourgh þ^e grete
halle in to a fayre chambre. And after that announced
was there comyng, men made them to entre in to the 28
chambre of parement, wher as the right gracyouse and
fayre, the proude pucelle in amours, was wyth many of
her ladyes, and other her gentyll women / and spake at
that same owre wyth certayne of her counseyll vpon 32
the faytte of her werre. Blanchardyn and the prouost
entred in to the chambre ; and thenne, as blanchardyn

1-1 aucunement

² *Orig.* behonrdyng. Wanting in the French.

sawe & perceyued þ^e noble pucelle, he dyde vaunce
 him self toward her, & make vnto her the reuerence so
 graciously and so boldly in all worship / that non
 4 coude amende it; and consequently to all the lordes,
 ladyes, and gentyl women, so goodely & wel that euery
 one saide good of hym. þ^e noble mayden behelde hym
 moche humbly, whiche toke a right grete pleasure to
 8 see his graciously & assured behauyng, that tysed and
 doubled in her herte the fyre of loue, wherof she was
 sore esprysed / And thenne, after the fayre and swete
 welcomynges, the lady wythdrewe her toward a couche
 12 that was in the sayd chambre, & toke blanchardyn by
 the hande, and made hym to sytte besyde her. He
 made hym self to be prayed & drawen sore or euer he
 wolde vaunce hym self for to sytte hym doune by her.
 16 But force was to hym to obeye her commaundement,
 wherof al they that thenne were wythin the chambre
 coude not tourne their eyen from Blanchardyn, for his
 right grete beaulte, fayre behauoure, & good manyere.
 20 And she to whome the dede most touched, had grete
 Ioye at her herte / to fynde her self in the presence of
 hym. And for to saye the trouthe, she was so enbrased
¹and taken¹ wyth the brennyng fyre of loue, that she
 24 not coude kepe her contenance; & yf rayson had not
 restrayned her, wythout other premysse nor conclu-
 syons, she sholde haue gladly of pryme face tolde vnto
 blanchardyn, how loue constrayned her for the² loue of
 28 hym. And at ende of a while, the best wyse that she
 coude, Wyth a lowe voyce she sayde vnto blanchardyn:
 'Syre, ye knowe the werre that the vntrewe kyng
 Alymodes hath alrede don to me dyuerse tymes, Wher-
 32 fore I mystered gretly of thayde and socours of you
 and of other / So praye I you, that ye wyl helpe &
 conforte me in my said werre, & I shal rewarde you so
 that ye shalbe content.' 'Madame,' sayde Blanchardyn,

and salutes her
graciously.

Eglantine seats
Blanchardyn
beside her on a
couch,

and is glad at
heart,

for she burns
with love for
him.

She prays him
to help her.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French. ² *Orig.* to

He says he will,
not sparing him-
self.

He wants no
wages.
Let the Provost
have them.

Eglantine sighs
deeply.

She is over
head and ears
in love.

Blanchardyn
notices this,

and asks her
about her cousin
who she said was
in love with him:

‘I ensure you on my feyth, that in all that I shal
mowe, I shal employe me in your seruyce: I wyll not
spare my self. I am come out of myn owne contrey
for to fynde me in a place where as I myght excercise 4
the fayttes of armes, as longeth tyl a knyght to doo /
And thanked be god, I am here right well arryued: I
aske no thyng of you. But I praye you / syn that it
pleaseth you to gyue me wages, that ye wyl doo them 8
to be delyuered vnto myn hooste, youre prouost / for
moche beholden¹ I am to hym; and I shal gladly
dwelle wyth you, in the companye of your other
knyghtes / And shal serue you truly’ / ‘Syre,’ sayd 12
the pucell, ‘I promette you that youre hoste shalbe
al to gydre contented of you / and alle of myn owne’ /
And after thees wordes she dyde cast a profound syghe,
that proceded from the depnes of her herte, that sore 16
was pressed / She was so ouer perced and enflammed
of loue / that she had so moche on it as the herte of
eny lady myght bere or comprehende, vnto the grete
extremyte. And the reyson is goode / for the strenthes 20
and vertues of the gode of loue, that departeth wyth
where as hym semeth goode, are suche that the more
that þ^e persone is more harde to be conuertysed and
toured to his lawe, the more ought she afterwarl, 24
whan she is ouercome, to be more constant & stedfast
to kepe hit. This experyence was playnly shewed in
this lady. Blanchardyn trowed to perceyue a lytyl her
manere, and remembred hym self of the wordes that his 28
hooste had tolde hym the same daye, And syth sayde
to þ^e lady: ‘Madame, myn hoste hath tolde me this
daye that ye knowe well my lady paramours, and that
she is of your lynage. by my feyth, this thyng semeth 32
me right straunge.’ Thenne the proude pucelle in
amours byganne to ansuere, and sayde / ‘The lady of
whom I touched the prouoste, your hoste, is well

- trusted wyth me, and I wolde doo for her as moche
 honoure as I wolde for my self' / 'A, madame,' saide
 blanchardyn, 'pardoune me yf I desyre by manere
 4 of replycacyon to knowe the name of her of whom ye
 haue made nowe meneyon / for I ensure you, madame,
 that whan I dyde that grete oultrage, wherto I was
 constrayned by force, to nyghe & touche youre swete
 8 mouthe, I had not seen no lady, nor non other gentyl-
 woman, of whom I desyred to be reteyned her
 seruaunte / But syth I haue ben fayne of the seruyce
 of one whiche I repute to me a grete fredom, in suche
 12 a wyse / that yf I sholde deye for deffawte of her
 socours, yet coulde I not, nor wolde not departe nor be
 from her for no thyng of the worlde / & therefore, my
 ryght redouted lady, I beseche you in all humylyte,
 16 that it please you of your grace to pardoune me my
 vayne wylle / for in you lyeth my bytter deth, or my
 prosperouse lyf. I am and shalbe, yf it please you,
 youre feythful & true seruaunt, for temploie my self
 20 in youre seruyse in al that shal please you to com-
 maunde me, as longe as lyf shalbe in me, what someuer
 happeth to me for' / whan the pucelle herde this swete
 & graciouse langage, of the heryng of whiche she toke
 24 no displeasure, wold no lenger suffre hym to be in
 payne, vpon whom she had sette her herte, & in whom
 she hoped of goode seruise for to brynge her werres
 tyl an ende / but seide vnto him : 'Aa, gentyl knyght,
 28 forced I am atte this houre present, syth it is your
 wylle, that I declare & saye that whiche my herte
 thynketh & suffreth for your sake ; be ye sure that all
 that I sayde vnto þ^e prouost, toucheth noo body but
 32 only to my self / for so helpe me god, as I loue you
 wyth all my veraye herte / & am so esprysed wyth
 your loue, that reherce it to you I can not. I haue
 debated þ^e quarelle ayenst the god of loue¹ / but at the

what is her
name.

Blanchardyn re-
minds Eglantine
that he kist her
lips :

she, Eglantine,
is his death or
life ;

he is her servant.

Eglantine con-
fesses

that what she
told the Provost
referd to herself.

She loves
Blanchardyn
with all her
heart.

¹ *Orig.* of god loue

Eglantine will be
Blanchardyn's
till death.

Blanchardyn is
full of joy,

and thanks
Eglantine.

Thenceforth
their hearts are
one.

He takes his
leave of her.

last I haue ben subdued & vtirly ouercome thourgh
the graciouse maneres, honeste behauing, hardy & noble
corage that I haue perceyued in your persone, whiche
I loue moche better than alle the remenant of the 4
world / And from hens forth I reteyne you myn onely
true louer and goode frende / neuer to chaunge vnto
the oure of deth' / Wherof men may thynke al ynough
that in spekyng and vttraunce of suche wordes / they 8
were not wythout mutacion of coloure, chaungyng of
contenance, and suche other thynges in this caas
acostumed / And where vpon is to byleue that blanch-
ardyn was neuere in hys lyff half so glad, and not 12
wythout a cause / as whan he vnderstode this Ioyouse
tydyng / ¶ And as that thinge whiche most he
desyred in this world, dyde accepte this gracyouse and
desyrable ansuere / and how he thanked that noble 16
mayden / It is not to be demaunded / for he forgate
noo worde that therto serued to be sayde. And thenne
thourghe a soubdayne fyre, that descended from the
heuens aboue, was theire loue confermed to gydre. 20
And fro that oure abode botlie their hertes in one hole
wylle. The prouost at the same tyme perceyued well
that blanchardyns besynes was in non euyll waye.
How be it he coude knowe noo thyng therof but by 24
suspecyon / Betwix the lady and blanchardin were noo
wordes more for that tyme, but that the yonge knyght
toke a gracyouse leue of the fayre pucelle, that myght
not tourne her eyen from Blanchardyn / 28

¶ The xxiiij. chapitre conteyneth how
Blanchardyn toke leue, and went ayen
to the prouostis house / And of the fayre
whyt courser, and of the sleue of cloth of 32
gold that his lady dyde sende to him.
And of the grete battayll that was byfore

Tourmaday, betwix blanchardyn and a
gyant, whiche was dyscomfyte / and of
the grete meruaylles of armes that blanch-
4 ardyn made there, & of his takynge /

A fter their deuyses the prouost vaunced hym self
for to take blanchardyn by the arme, and haue
hym to his house. But or they went, the proude
8 pucelle in amours sayde to the prouost that he sholde not
lene to bringe her [his] two doughters the next morowe.
And that she sholde¹ marrye hem right well / as she
dyde, vnto two of her knyghtes right noble and gentyl,
12 wythin fewe dayes after. I saye not that Ialously was
cause of this thyng / but I leue it in the iugement /
that in suche a caas can good skyle / ¶ After the
gracyouse leue of the lady / Blanchardyn & the pro-
16 uoste came ayen in the sayd place / and was dyner
tyme / The prouost that wyth all his herte loued
Blanchardyn, coniuered hym, sayng, It semed hym that
he sholde be yet kyng and lorde of the londe of
20 Tormaday / And that their lady had hym well in her
grace / Thenne Blanchardyn, that well beholden was
to the prouost / and that knewe hym for a trusty man
and secret, mystrusted not hym / but recounted & tolde
24 hym al alonge the fayttes of his werkes in amours ;
wherof the prouost was not lesse reioysshed than
blanchardyn was. The dyner was redy, and made an
ende of theyr proces tyl another tyme. They sette
28 hem self at the table / And had not be longe at their
meet, whan the lady sent to Blanchardyn a fayre whyte
courser / and wyth it her right sleue, whiche was of
riche clothe of golde crymosyn, to thende he sholde
32 bere it vpon his helme whan he shold go vpon her
enmyes, by cause she myght the better knowe hym
emonge other / ¶ This present was not to be reffused.

The Provost
takes Blanch-
ardyn home.

Eglantine
marries the Pro-
vost's daughters
to two knights.

Blanchardyn
tells the Provost

how he has
prosperd in love.

Eglantine sends
Blanchardyn a
white steed,
and her crimson
sleeve to wear in
his helm.

¹ *Orig.* holde

Blanchardyn
rewards the
messenger,

who reports his
generosity to
Eglantine.

The King of
Giants, Rubyon,

challenges the
Tormadians to
joust.

and the messenger sayde to Blanchardyn / that well
he ought to areyse his corage whan so gentyl a lady
wolde sende him suche a present / Blanchardyn
thanked the messenger, and prayed hym curtaysly / 4
that he wold haue hym for humbly recomended to the
goode grace of the noble pucelle that so fayre a present
had sent to hym / ¶ Blanchardyn dyde putte his hand
into his aulmonere, and drewe out of it a riche ouche¹ 8
of golde, vpon whiche was sette a right riche ruby
enuyrouned wyth fyue grete perles, and gaffe hit to
þ^e messenger, whiche thanked moche humbly blanch-
ardyn / of whom he toke his leue, and departed and 12
taryed noo where vnto the tyme that he had tolde
and reherced to the lady the Ioye that blanchardyn
had made at the recepcion of the present that she had
sent vnto hym / And syth recounted her of the riche 16
gyfte that blanchardyn had don to hym, wherof the
proude mayden in amours was wel payd / sayng in her
self that suche largesse proceded to hym of veraye
noblenes. Here we shal leue to speke of her / and 20
shal retourne to speke of blanchardyn, that in the pro-
nostis house was sette atte dyner / Right soone afte
the last messe was serued, a lytyll affray and alarme²
roos wyth in the towne, for bycause of the kyng of 24
geauntes called rubyon, that was in the playne wyth-
out the cyte byfore the walles of the towne, And
demaunded after the Ioustes, for his ladyes sake that
daughter was vnto kyng Alymodes / the whiche had 28
taken hym a sleue that was of satyn vyolet, and had
sette hit vpon his helme for the loue of her / But bycause
he was of so hyghe & bygge corpulence, and so stronge
of body, and renomme of grete proes / the proes was 32
not grete of the knyghtes, nor of other folke of Tour-
maday, for to furnysshe his apetyte nor fulfyllle his
requeste / ¶ The bruyt of this werke cam to the know-

¹ fremail

² *Orig.* alytyll affray and a larme

- lege and vnderstandyng of Blanchardyn, the whiche
 for this tydyng was gladde by ouer mesure / And sayde
 of a goode herte & a free wylle / that he shal fur-
 4 nysshe Rubyon of his requeste / and that he was
 comme in tyme. Redyly and soone he made hit to
 be knowen to Rubyon, lest he sholde departe thens,
 whiche was right Ioyous of þ^e tydynges, for right
 8 moche he desyred to shewe hymself, for his ladyes
 loue, daughter to kyng Almodes, of whiche he was
 amoureuse, & of that other partye blanchardyn made
 hymself to be armed quyckeli, and syn mounted vpon
 12 þ^e myghty courser that the fayer, the proude pucell in
 amours had sente to hym / he forgate not the sleue of
 cloth of gold that vnto hym had be presented from her
 bihalf, the whiche he couched along his shoulder in stede
 16 of gardebras, and for that day he wold¹ haue therto noon
 other armour, wherof the prouost was not wele content.
 whan he was redy appareilled, mounted & armured of
 all his armures, except the haulte pece where the
 20 pucelles sleue kept stede, he made the signe of the
 crosse ouer hym, and so departed oute of the prouostes
 place, and cam ridyng through the toun accompaned
 wyth the prouoste and of many other knyghtes. he
 24 was sore loked vpon, and praysed of the ladyes &
 gentyll women as he passed by / for al prayd to our
 lord that wyth honoure & Ioye he wolde brynge hym
 ayen. So longe rydde blanchardyn that he cam to the
 28 toun gates, oute of whiche he yssued & parted, the
 spere in the hande, the shelde sette afore hym, the
 helmet lacid, & clos redy forto renne vpon his
 ennemye that he sawe byfore hym / þat walked before
 32 the barres of the toun, awaityng after hym that shuld
 furnyshe hym of batayll, thynkyng that none shuld
 dare come bicause he had taryed there longe, where
 of he bare hymself wel proude. whan he see Blanch-

Blanchardyn

accepts the
challenge,arms, mounts
Eglantine's
steed,wears her sleeve
as his only
arm-guard,rides through the
town,

out of its gates,

and comes close
to the Giant.¹ *Orig.* wlod

Rubyon asks
whence he
comes,

Blanchardyn
says from
Friesland,

¹ E. j.
to fight him.

They charge one
another,

and break their
spears,

They fight with
their swords,

Eglantine sees
them,

ardyn, that all prest was to furnyshe hys enterprise /
gaffe to hymself grete meruaylle, and praised hym but
litell, he asked hym of whens he was. Blanchardyn
answerd, that for no drede nor fere that he had of 4
hym he shuld kepe bis name from hym / and tolde
hym that he was of the realme of fryse, and his name
was blanchardin, that vnto lim was sent by the fayer
þ^e proude ¹pucell, his maystres in amours for to Iuste 8
and to aproue hymself vpon hym. Thenne answerd
Rubyon to blanchardyn, that the daughter of the
myghty kynge Alymodes, the euen byfore had gyuen
vnto hym her sleue, the whiche in presence of her 12
fader she had taken it from her ryght arme, to thende
that for the loue of her he shuld doo some thyng
wherby she myghte the better haue hym in her grace.
'vassayll,' sayd blanchardyn, 'thynke to do your werke / 16
ye see me here redy to furnyshe your requeste.' Thenne
bothe of them went abacke for to take their cours, and
turned ayen brochyng their horses wyth their spores,
that one ayenste þ^e other the speres in the rest, wherof 20
they raughte eche other vpon the sheldes by so grete a
strengthe, that nother of their sheldes abode there hole /
but were all quartred in peces / and in suche a wyse
they recountred eche other, that their speres brake vnto 24
their hands, that the shyuers flowe vpward / & syn
passed beyonde for to parfurnysshe their enterprise /
And in tornynge hemself ayen / layde hande on their
swerdes, wherwyth they began to smyte one vpon that 28
other by so grete & horrybyll strokes / that the fire
eam oute of their helmes / Euyne atte the same oure
that the two vasselles be foughte / eche other / the
proude mayden in amours was lenyng at a wyndow, 32
thorough whyche she sawe pleyntli the bataylle of her
speciall & of Rubyon / wherfore all ynoughe ye maye
bylene that she had grete fere that blanchardyn shulde
not retourne atte his honoure / How well she helde 36

hym so valiaunt / as he was / that her aduyse was for
the ryghte grete & goode desire that she had / that her
beste biloued was alle redy com¹ to his aboute ouere¹

4 Rubyon / The doughter of Alymodes the kyng was
atte this owre settinge² byfore her pauillyon for to
beholde þ^e batayll of þ^e two champions. She dyd
praysse & commende so moche blanchardyn / and

K. Alymodes's
daughter watch
es the fight.

8 preuely atte her herte wished³ hersilf hys lady per-
amours, for the grete worthynes / & proesse that she
perceyuid in hym there, for he smote so grete strokes
wyth his swerde, and so ofte that he had all astonyed

12 alredi his enmye Rubyon / Blanchardyn / seeng Rubyon
in that plyght, lefte vppe his swerde, of the whiche he
raughte Rubyon wyth a reuers myght by the eere wyth
suche a meruelous stroke, that he ouerthrewe hym down

Blanchardyn
unhorsed
Rubyon.

16 from his hors / The batayll had ben sone finyshed by-
tuyx them both / and Rubyon ded / ne had ben kyng
Alymodes folke / that cam for to socure Rubyon, to
whom blanchardyn had smyten the hed of / yf they

K. Alymodes's
folk resceue
Rubyon,
and surround
Blanchardyn.

20 had not come right soone. But the proude pucell in
amours for the grete care that she had to sende socoure
& helpe vnto her louer that she sawe in danger, &
enclosed with three score men / that aboute hym were

Eglantine

24 for to slee hym & bryng^e hym to deth / sent hastely
her men for to secoure hym / for he was assaylled of
eche side of good men of werre, but not wythstanding
thys, right vygoriously defendid hymself ayenst them

sends men to
help Blanch-
ardyn,

28 all / and yelded them ynoughe to do wythoute þat they
euer coude hurte, nor wounde hym / vnto the tyme þat
socours cam to hym / for he detrenched & kyt them
both legges and armes, and cloue their heedes vnto the

who hacks and
hews his foes.

32 brayne. And so fiersly mayntenid himself ther / that
none durst no more vaunce to approche nyghe hym /
whan they of kyng Alymodes oost sawe them of the
site þat were comen oute, they mounted on horsebacke,

More of Aly-
modes's men
come up.

1—1 au-dessus de

2 *Orig.* setytng

3 *Orig.* wished

A fierce fight
follows

¹ E ij.

Darius has to
support Alymo-
des's men.

Blanchardyn

unhorses Darius,

who has to be
carried to his
bed.

Rubyon, the
Giant-King,

slays the
Tornadians.

Blanchardyn
goes for him.

& came to themwarde as faste as they might come /
And atte the recountre that both partyes made one
ayenst that other / were many a spere broken, and
many a knyghte broughte to grounde, that were troden 4
wyth the ffecte of the horses, so that fewe of hem rose
¹vp alvue. And in conclusyon, all they of Alymodes
partie had ben there slayne or taken / yf his son daryus
had not come the same tyme, that brought with hym a 8
grete companie of folke, and assembled and called ayen
to gydre theym that fled fro the battaylle / ¶ And thenne
entred hymselff in to the battaylle, where he byganne
to do merueylles of armes / for a ryght gode knyght he 12
was, ²yf he had ben a crysten man.² Grete slawghtyr he
made of them of the cyte / but Blanchardyn, that sone
was aware of his commyng, cam ayenst him, the swerde
in hande vp right on hyghe, whiche he lete fall vpon 16
daryus wyth suche a stourdy strok, & so grete, that he
amasyd hym wyth all, and ouer threwe hym doune
from his hors / And right sone wolde haue taken the
hede wyth the goode helmet from the body of hym, yf he 20
lyghtly had not be socoured of his men, that wyth right
grete payne, strong wounded and sore hurt, remounted
hym on his hors, ³and had hym³ to his paupyllyon, wher
he kept his bed the space of thre dayes. Rubyon, the 24
kynge of gyauntes, that of Blanchardyn had ben ouer
throwen, as it is sayde afore, fought full sore ayenst
theym of Tourmaday, beryng to them grete damage.
But blanchardyn, that alle his mynde and thoughte 28
had sette to fynde hym, to thende he myght be
auenged ouer hym / loked aboute at the right syde of
hym, where as he chose Rubyon, that made merueylles
of armes, and had ouer thrawen doune the goode pro- 32
uoste, whos hed he sholde haue stryken of right soone,
yf Blanchardyn had not be / that hastely brake the
presse, and camen there, and socoured hym, cryey[n]ge

- vpon Rubyon in this manere of wyse / ¶ ‘Ha, A ! thou
false paynem ¹and cursed man !¹ this shall be thy laste
daye, for by false and grete traysen, and ²by a watche
4 thought before, wolde haue madest me to be murdered /²
And by suche meanes thou escaped ones fro my handes ;
but to me nor to noon other thou shalt neuere werke
trayson.’ ¶ And thenne Blanchardyn that had a stronge
8 axe in his handes, smote atte Rubyon wyth al his
strenthe, & gaff hym suche a stroke that his goode
armures coude not waraunt his lyff, But was feld doune
sterk ded, wherof the cry and the noyse rose vp ryght
12 grete / Whan the sarrasyns saw the kyng of the gyauntes
dede they were sore frayed and gretly abasshed, for in
hym was alle their hope. they fled toward their tentes
as faste as they myght / ¶ Blanchardyn and they of
16 Tourmaday pursued them, smytyng and ouer thrawyng
hem ded vnto their tentes. And so moche that Blanch-
ardyn cam to the kyng Alymodes tente, before the
whiche he fonde his doughter syttyng, that behelde the
20 battaylle that was afore the sayde towne / Whan blanch-
ardyn sawe the yong damoyzell that was there syttyng /
he bowed hym self douneward vpon his hors necke, and
toke the mayden by the myddes of her body, and sette
24 her vp byfore hym, wythout any resystence made by
the pucelle, whiche made therof noo refuse / And syth
retourned ayen as faste as he myght toward the cyte of
Tourmaday. But Alymodes seyng this harde aduenture
28 so befall, as a man madde and all to gyder from his
wyttes, cam rennyng after Blanchardyn wyth more
than foure thousand sarrasyns wyth hym that folowed
faste at the backe of hym for to socoure their lady /
32 ¶ And blanchardyn that bare the pucelle byfore hym,
sawe a sarrasyn that moche nyghe folowed hym / he
toured his horse hed toward hym, lyfte vpward his

Blanchardyn
kills the Giant
Rubyon with an
axe.

The Saracens
flee,

the Tormadians
pursuing them.

Blanchardyn
carries off the
daughter of K.
Alymodes,

and rides
towards
Tormaday,

pursued by 4000
Saracens.

He unluckily
turns and kills
one of them.

1—1 Wanting in the French.

2—2 par aguët appeuse mais mas cuidie faire murdrir.

1 E iij.

The rest of
Alymodes's men
close on Blanch-
ardyn.

They kill his
horse.

He slays many
of them.

K. Alymodes
reproaches his
men for their
cowardice.

They rush on
Blanchardyn,

who cleaves the
King's nephew
to the chin,

swerde, and gaff suche a merueyllouse stroke to the
sarrasyn that he cloue his hede ¹to the harde² tethe /
Alas, why dyde he tary hym self for to slee that
sarrasyn, for so sore nyghe he was pursiewed by kynge 4
Alymodes and his folke, that they closed hym anone
rounde aboute / The prouost and the other of the towne
entred ayen in to the cyte, wenyng to them that Blanch-
ardyn had be wyth them / but he was not, but was 8
enclosed from al sydes, and in suche wyse opressed
that they had all redy slayne his horse vnder hym, and
was a fote amonge the sarrasyns, where he fought wyth
p^e swerde in the hande, wherof he made grete slawghter 12
of them. But what occysion or defence that he made
myght not warauntise hym, for aboute him were more
than foure thousand sarrasins that desyred all for to
purchasse hym his deth. The kynge Alymodes seeyng 16
the grete prowes that was in Blanchardyn, & that non
so hardy durste approche hym, he bygan to crye a
lowde on hyghe / 'fy on you all, vntrewe paynemys I
cursed be the owre of your natyuyte / Whan for the 20
body of one knyght alone, I see you more than foure
thousand men to tourne & recule abacke ! full yl haue I
employed p^e godes that I haue doon vnto you ! a full
sory noryshyng I haue doon ouer you' / thenne the 24
sarasyns, that herde their lorde soo speke to them,
whiche they dyde ferre ryght sore, all attones ranne
vpon Blanchardyn, that sore wery & traueyllled was of
the grete strokes that he had / gyuen and receyued, soo 28
that the blode ranne out of dyuers places of his body.
wel he saw that it was Impossyble to hym to laste eny
lenger, but that he muste be other slayne or taken.
Notwithstandyng this, blanchardyn, lyke as other a 32
tygre or a lyon that is broken loos from his boundes³ /
Heued vpward his swerde wyth bothe the handes, &
smote a knyght therwyth that neuewe was / vnto Kyng

² Wanting in the French.³ gardes

- alymodes, wyth suche a strengthe, that he cleued hym
 vnto the chynne bone. But as he wythdrewe his
 swerde to hym ward, from that grete and merueyllous
 4 stroke, his fotyng faylled hym, for cause that the grasse
 wher vpon he trad was sore weet & slyther. And so
 nedes he muste falle / Thenne cam vpon hym sodaynly but falls himself.
 out of all sydes grete foyson of paynemys, and toke Alymodes's men
take Blanchardyn, bind him,
 8 and bonde hym full fast / ¶ Whan the sarasyns dyde
 see hym thus fallen to the grounde, they made all
 atones suche a horryble crye that ferre wythin the cyte
 was herde the sowne of hit. ¶ At the same owre the and raise a cry
of triumph.
 12 proude pucell in amours, that yet was styll at her
 wyndowe, and had seen her folke turne agayn in to the
 towne wyth grete haste / And syth herde the crye and Eglantine hears
this, and
 the greate noyse that was made wythout the cyte /
 16 And of another part she sawe a grete noumbre of folke
 that retourned to the tentes / thoughte wel, & also her
 herte Iudged & gaf it to her that, that was þ^e worthy thinks her lover
Blanchardyn is
taken prisoner.
 blanchardyn / her louer, þ^e sarasins ledde wyth them
 20 prysoner / Seyng this confusion thus to be happed,
 she wyst not how to conteyne her self, and byganne
 full sore to wepe wyth grete teerys, that fell doune She weeps.
 alonge her swete vysage, And sayde : ' Alas, my right
 24 dere and feythful louer / yf god thurgh his grace put-
 teth noo prouysion her-vnto / this day shalbe broken
 and vndoo oure sore desyred acqueyntaunce / ¶ Thenne
 the prouost, right sorowfull and gretly dysplaysed, wyth The Provost
comes to her,
 28 a sad chere entred in to the chambre where the right
 desolate, the proude pucelle in amours, made grete
 mone, whiche he fonde fallen in a swoun in the lap
 off one of her gentyl wymen / And syth whan she was
 32 come ayen to her self, that she had the myght to speke,
 she sayde to the prouost that soone and incontynent
 he shold go toward the kyng Alymodes for to wyte and she bids
him go to K.
Alymodes,
 yf for golde or syluer he ¹wolde take to raenson þ^e 1 E iiij.
 36 knyght that was a straunger, whiche was but as her

and offer him
seven dromedary-loads
of gold for
Blanchardyn's
ransom.

The Provost goes

to the battle-
ments,

and asks a
Saracen knight

to get him a
safe-conduct to
K. Almodes.

This procured,

the Provost goes
to K. Almodes's
tent,

sowldyour in this her werre. And yf his playsure was
to sende hym ayen to her, 'I shal gyue him for his
raenson seuen dromadaryes al laden with fyn gold /
so that he wyll sende hym to me sounde and hole' / 4
Whan the prouost sawe ¹the grete amarytude, or by
termes grete sorowe,¹ where as his lady, the proude
pucelle in amours, was Inne, And the promesse that
she made for the delyueraunce of Blanchardyn, He, 8
moend wyth pyte, ansuered and sayde to the pucelle,
that wyth all possyble dilygence he sholde do so
moche, that or euer the nyght sholde come he sholde
knowe the certeynte of that / that kyng Almodes 12
wolde doo in this behalue. he toke his leue of the
proude pucelle, whiche he lefte sorowyng wyth in her
chambre wyth her maydens, and went anone hastily
vpon a hyghe toure that had syght toward kyng 16
Almodes oost. And there he called out of the
batelmentes as hyghe as he myght, vpon a knyght
sarrasyn pat went forth by the same toure, to whom he
prayed sore moche that he wold doo hym as moche 20
curteysy toward the kyng almodes, that he myght,
vudre gode snyte and saufcondyt, goo to speke wyth
hym, for to shewe and anonce to hym certayn message
from his lady the proude pucelle in amours / The 24
paynem knyght, that was full curteys, made a token to
hym that his request he dyde graunte. Soo went he
hastely, and dyde so moche that he brought to hym a
goode saufcondyt, where the prouoste right moche 28
thanked hym. the prouost anone after made hym self
redy toward his waye, and cam nygh ynoughe to the
tente of kyng Almodes. and as he passed by, he saw
blanchardyn, that was kept in holde of six squyers, 32
syttyng byfore a pauyllion² / That tyme that Blanch-
ardyn perceyued the prouost that passed forth by hym /

¹—1 la grant douleur et la grant amertume

² Orig. apauyllyon

- he demaunded of hym what thyng he went there
sekyng. The prouost tolde hym that he went toward
Alymodes the kyng for his delyueraunce, saynge to
4 hym that he sholde not be abasshed of no thyng, &
that he sholde not care / but sholde make good chere /
And that he sholde not abyde behynde, so that for eny
golde or syluer he coude be had / 'frende, of that ye
8 telle me,' sayde blanchardyn, 'I am right glad, ¹& Ioye
wel to thanke god therof.¹ I praye you that ye wyl
doo the beste that ye shal may toward the kyng
alymodes, for my confyance & trust is in you' / The
12 prouost toke leue of hym, and dyde so moche that he
cam and alyghted byfore kyng Alymodes tente, And
syth entred Inne, where he fonde kyng alymodes
and his barons aboute hym / He right reuerently
16 salued hym, sayeng vnto hym, that he was come there
for to beye ayen þ^e straunge knyght that he helde
prysonner, whiche is a souldyour, and reteyned in to
wages wyth the proude pucelle in amours. And the
20 cause that moeueth her herto, it is by cause that he is a
straunger, and that he is comen from ferre lande to
take wages: thus right gladly she wolde haue hym
ayen, yf your plesure were for to putte hym to raen-
24 son / and my lady, the proude pucelle, offreth you for
hym seuen dromadaryes, al charged of fyn golde, and a
thousand coursers, and as many amblyng horses and
armures, goode and fyn ynoughe for to arme a thou-
28 saund knyghtes. ¶ Whan the kyng herde the pro-
uoste, that soo grete offre made for to haue ageyne
blanchardyn / He gaff hym self grete merueylle, &
bethoughte in hym silf a lytyl whyle / and syth dyde
32 sende for blanchardyn, whiche he behylde so moche
whan he was come afore hym, and sayde wythin hym
self, that neuer in his lyff he had not seen noo fayrer
knyght, nor more better made and myghty of body /
¹⁻¹ en suis moult Ioyeulx et en doy bien louer nostre seigneur.

speaking to
Blanchardyn
by the way.

The Provost
tells the King
he has come
to ransom
Blanchardyn,

and offers for
him seven
dromedary-
loads of gold,
1000 coursers,
1000 amblyng
horses, and 1000
suits of armour.

K. Alymodes
sends for
Blanchardyn,

sees what a fine
man he is,

gets jealous of
him as loved by
Eglantine,

He dyde coueyte moche sore the grete hauoyre that
was proffred hym for his raencon / but a soubdayne
sparkle of Ialousye cam to hym byfore / that was lest
this yonge and fayre knyght blanchardyn were reteyned 4
of the proude pucelle in amours as her owne speeyall
louer ; the whiche thyng kept hym so sore at the hert
of hym, that he, mouyd wyth grete wrath & yre, wold
haue ronne vpon blanchardyn for to haue slayn hym / 8
sayeng for to couere his right false Ialousy / that it was
for the grete damage and grete slawghtir that he had
don of his folke / and that by the feyth that he owed
to his goddes, he sholde not abyde longe alyue, for he 12
sholde nother ete nor drynke tyll that he sholde see
hym deed /

and swears that
he'll kill him
forthwith.

¶ The xxv. chapiter conteyneth how kynge
Alymodes wolde make to be put to deth 16
blanchardyn / But at the request of the
fayre Beatryse, his doughter, he respyted
hym / And how the proude pucelle in
amours had sent þ^e. prouost toward the 20
kynge Alymodes, offryng to hym a grete
raenson for the delyueraunce of Blanch-
ardyn, whiche he refused /

K. Alymodes's

THus after as ye haue herde, kynge Alymodes made 24
his auowe, and sware his goddes / that he sholde
neyther ete nor drynke tyl that Blanchardyn had lost
his lyff. Wherof daryus, the sone of the same kynge
son Darius
and other barons Alymodes, and many other barons that were there pre- 28
sent, had grete pyte, for the right grete beaulte and
pity Blanch-
ardyn, worthynes that they sawe and knewe in Blanchardyn /

but dare not
speak for him.

¶ But the best of them all was not so hardy that he
durste speke one worde nor praye for hym, by cause they 32
drad and fered euer sore kynge Alymodes / And thenne

- his daughter Beatryse that was there, whiche had taken
goode hede and well ouer loked the grete beaulte of
Blanchardyn, and well had also consydered the grete
4 and meruellous faytes of armes that she had seen hym
do that day, prostrned or casted her self doune byfore
her faders feet, on her knees humbly / requyryng, wyth
bothe handes heued vp faste to gyder, that pyte and
8 compassyon he wolde haue of the yonge knyght, and
that hys lyf myght be saued. .Kynge Alymodes heryng
the request and humble prayer of his doughter, whiche
he loued tenderly / ansuered to her and sayde: 'My
12 ryght dere & right well beloued doughter, I wold for
mekell goode that ye had not requyred me herof, &
that ye had not ben here at this tyme / for the pre-
sence and syght of hym ¹for whom ye haue caused
16 your humble supplyeacion,¹ reneweth alle my sorowes.
But for to obtempre youre request, for this tyme I
graunte hym his lyf / but ye shall wyte that I shall
sende hym in to the royalme of Salmandry, vnto the
20 kynge of the geautis brother, that is to wyte, Rubyon,
whiche he hath slayne, and the whiche I loued as myn
owne persone / for yf he had ben yet man alyue, I
wolde haue gyuen you tyl his wyff / ¶ So may ye
24 knowe that he shal doo goode Iustyce of hym, and shal
take cruelle vengeance / And noon other wyse wyll
I doo' / And syth dyde caste his eyen vpon the pro-
uoste full proudely as by grete despyte, and tolde hym
28 that he myght well go home ayen. And that he sholde
not leue, but that he sholde departe his presence incon-
tynent, or ellys he sholde make hym soono deye an
euyll deth / And that nother for noo golde nor for no
32 yeste that myght be don to hym, nor for noo manere of
raenson, he shold not respyte nor yelde ayen blanch-
ardin / But he sholde sende hym in to a suche place
from whiche he sholde neuer retourne ayen. & thenne

But the King's
daughter
Beatrice

throws herself
at his feet,

and prays him
to spare Blanch-
ardyn's life.

The King
unwillingly

consents;

but says he
will send
Blanchardyn
to Rubyon's
brother,

who will take
vengeance on
him.

K. Alymodes
orders the
Provost off at
once,

and declares he
will never give
up Blanchardyn.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

The Provost
takes leave of
Blanchardyn,

who sends a
message of
fidelity to
Eglantine.

The Provost
returns sorrow-
fully to
Eglantine,

and tells her
the hard tidings
of her love,
Blanchardyn.

She makes
pitiable
lamentations.

the prouoste departed anone, & full sory of thaunsuere
that kyng Alymodes had gyuen to hym, ful sore
wepyng, went toward blanchardyn, & recounted hym
the harde tydynges that had be made of hym. And 4
euyng thus, as they sholde neuer haue seen eche other,
they toke leue one of other. And after their leue
taken / Blanchardyn, loking right pyteously vpon the
prouost, prayed hym that he wold haue hym for re- 8
comended vnto the fayre, the proude pucelle in amours /
besechyng her on his byhalue that she wolde not putte
in oblyuyon nor forgete hym that is in her seruyse,¹ for
he whom god wolde preserue can not peryshe.¹ The 12
prouost heryng blanchardyn speke that, charged hym his
eraunde to be do vnto the proude pucelle in amours,
departed soon wythout eny more that he could say to
blanchardyn, for he had no power to speke no more for 16
the grete pyte that he had ouer hym / but retourned
to the cyte so full of hertely sorowe that no man can
expresse it to you, and rested hym not tyl he come to
the / paleys, where he alighted doune and went forth in 20
to the halle, and syth entred in to the chambre wher
the noble pucelle was / vnto whom he recounted and
tolde the harde & pytoyable tydynges, & the proude
ansueres that kyng Alymodes had gyuen vnto him, 24
wherof the right noble mayden made suche a sorowe &
grete heuynesse that neuer was sen like / we shal leue
her makynge her pytoyable complayntes, & shal re-
tourne to speke of kyng Alymodes p^e right and euyl 28
tyraunt, that all taken was wyth anger and wrathe.

¶ The xxvj. chapitre foloweth, whiche con-
teyneth how darius had a commaunde-
ment don vnto hym in his faders byhalue, 32
that he shold haue blanchardyn forth in

to Salamaundrye. ¶ And how the ship
 in whiche Blanchardyn was Inne, was
 perysshed by fortune and tempeste of the
 4 see, and were all drowned except blanch-
 ardyn / And how he cam toward the
 kyng of Maryenbourgh / that retheyned
 hym ¹in seruyse,¹ & of hym he made
 8 his constable /

After the departyng of the prouost, Alymodes the
 kyng gaaff commaundement vnto his sonn
 daryus, that he sholde tourne ayen in to Cassydonye,
 12 whiche is in the lande of Nourwaye, of whens he was
 kyng. ¶ And that he sholde take wyth hym his
 suster, and kepe wel his lande and countreye duryng
 the tyme that he sholde kepe his siege before Tourma-
 16 day / And that he sholde haue wyth hym blanchardyn /
 whome he sho'de sende forth hastely assone as he were
 comen to Cassydonye / to be presented on his byalue
 to the kyng of salamandrye, whos brother blanchardyn
 20 had brought to dethe,² for to haue wrake vpon hym.²
 Daryus heryng his fadres commaundement, made to be
 redy a shippe right bygge and grete / wher Inne he
 and his suster entred wel garnysshed wyth folke &
 24 vytaylle / And in another small shippe that was there
 redy he made Blanchardyn to be brought ynn wyth
 thre score men that had the kepyng of hym / Whan
 they were redy they³ woude theyr saylles vp and de-
 28 parted / Grete pyte it was to see and here the pyteouse
 rewthe and complayntes that blanchardyn made / for
 well he wend that he sholde neuyr haue seen ayen her
 for whom he was brought in suche angwysshe and
 32 sorowe / We shal at this tyme leue to speke of hym,

K. Alymodes
 bids his son
 Darius go to
 his kingdom of
 Cassidonic in
 Norway,

and deliver
 Blanchardyn
 to the King of
 Salamandry,

whose brother,
 Rubyon, he had
 slain.

Darius embarks
 in a big ship,

and puts Blanch-
 ardyn in a small
 one.

Blanchardyn
 mourns his loss
 of Eglantine.

1—1 de son hostel

2—2 Wanting in the French.

3 *Orig. thy*

K. Alymodes
wastes the
country round
Tournaday.

The citizens
make sallies on
his men.

Eglantine
mourns for
Blanchardyn's
departure.

She swoons,
and is put to
bed.

Blanchardyn
reaches Norway,
at the port of
Cassidonie.

Darius orders
him off to
Salamandry,

to be given up
to Rubyon's
brother.

and shal retourne to speke of the proude pucelle in
amours, And of the grete tyraunte Alymodes that
wasted al the cuntry aboute the city of Tournaday,
& greued sore the towne and them of wyth-ynne wyth 4
his engynes asmoche as he coude / How be it that the
cytezeynes yssued oute often and slew fuson of their
enmyes / And y^e fayre, the proude pucelle in amours
that euermore had her sight that parte that she wyst her 8
best beloued goon, whiche she wysshed sore agayne /
lamentyng for hym, for she sawe playn ynough whan
he departed from the porte, toke in her herte her leue
of hym, full sore wepyng / She brought thene in re- 12
membraunce how swetly he had kyssed her, wherof she
had take so grete a dyspleasure; 'but alas!' sayde she,
'this displeasure passed ouer manyfolde that other, and
more than I can telle. Ha, A! fortune, shal I neuere 16
haue noon other, but alwayes dysplaysure' / And after
thes wordes she fel in a swone as half ded. And the
ladyes and other gentyl women full pyteously wepyng,
toke her vp anone, and had her to bedde, where fro she 20
parted not six dayes after / Of that other part, Daryus
and his folke, his suster wyth hym / & blanchardyn in
the lytyl shippe, saylled soo longe that they arryued in
the lande of Northweye, euyñ at the hauene of the cyte 24
of Cassadonye where they ancred / But or that daryus
went out of his shippe, he commaunded and ordeyned
to them that had kepyng of Blanchardyn / that they
shold haue hym streyght forth to the kynge of Sal- 28
maundrye / And that they sholde delyuere hym in his
hande / And telle hym that it was he that had slayne
Rubyon, his brother, byfore Tournaday, where his fader
kynge Alymodes was yet kepyng the syege, whiche 32
made hym a present off hym that had kyled his brother,
for to take vengeaunce thereof atte his wylle / They
that had the charge to doo this, ansuered that they
sholde doo hys commaundement. They departed from 36

- cassydonye; but ye may be wel in certayne that this
 departynge dysplayسد moche vnto Beatrise, Daryus sus-
 ter / & ful fayne wolde haue putte ther vnto a remedy
 4 yf by any meanes she had coude; but atte that oure she
 had noo power to do soo / Blanchardyn, that in the
 lytyl ship was, was sore dolaunt whan he sawe hym
 self to be had forthe from the other, and thoughte well
 8 that a present sholde be made of hym in some straunge
 lande. he dyde reclame & calle vpon oure lord god
 right deuoutly, beseching that of his grace he wold
 haue pyte and mercy vpon hym, that he myght yet ones
 12 come to his sore desyred wyll / that is to wytte, to see
 his fayre lady, the proude mayden in loue, and that he
 wold kepe her sauff from kynge Almodes handes /
 Ye may byleue well that Blanchardyn made grete
 16 sorowe and lamentacyon, ¹wyshyng full often that he
 may yet see ones his lady that he loued truly aboue all
 other.¹ ¶ And whan they were comen two days saylyng
 nyghe the coste of Salamandre, a grete tempeste roose
 20 in the see, and so horryble that the saylle of their
 shippe was all to-rent in peces, that all the maryners
 coude putte therto noo remedye. suche and so grete was
 the tempeste that they must gyue nedes to the wyndes
 24 and wawes of the see, the kepyng & the gydyng
 bothe of their shippe and of them alle that were ther
 Inne, whiche soone were brought besyde a grete roche,
 wher vpon their ship smote by suche a force / that she
 28 clouded anone in two peces, wher-by alle the mareners
 and þ^e sayde thre score men were perysshed and drowned
 in the see / And neuere non of them saued, But onely
 blanchardyn, that couched hym self alonge vpon the
 32 mast of the shippe, whiche enbraced & colled sore fast
 wyth bothe his armes. They were nyghe the lande, as
 it is sayde, where as the sayd mast and Blanchardyn
 vpon it was cast of the wawes vnto the shores. whan

His ship sails,
 much to the
 Princess
 Beatrice's dis-
 pleasure.

Blanchardyn
 prays to God
 to pity him,

and let him see
 again his love,
 Eglantine.

A great storm
 rises,

the ship drives

against a rock,

splits in two,

and all the men
 are drown'd,
 save Blanch-
 ardyn,
 who clings to
 the mast.

He is cast ashore.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

blanchardyn felt hym self nyghe a grounde, and fast by
 the lande, he forsoke his maste, & lepte from hit to the
 lande; and whan he was come there, he kneled doune
 right sone vpon bothe his knees, and hauyng his handes 4
 heued vp toward the heuens, rendered and gaff louynge
 and thankes vnto our lord, that thus had delyuered
 hym from that grete parell where he was Inne / ¶ After
 that he had made his oryson to oure lord, he toke on 8
 his waye all a fote, for to drawe hym self to that aduen-
 ture that god wolde sende hym / And walked so longe
 tyl that he fonde not, fer wythin the contrey, a right
 fayre towne, whiche is now called Maryenbourgh, and 12
 is in the lande of Pruce / wythin the whiche, at þ^e same
 tyme, was a right myghty kynge that kept ther a grete
 feste, wher-atte he had called alle his barons and
 lordes, & alle the gentylmen of there aboute, whiche 16
 alle arryued there vpon the daye that to them was
 prefyxed or poynted for to come / ¶ Blanchardyn
 thoughte wythin hym self that he wolde make black
 his vysage, or of coloure suche that the folke of that 20
 contrey had hers atte that tyme; he toke and gadred
 som herbs that serued hym ther to, and rubbed ther-
 wyth his vysage all aboute. And in lyke wyse his
 handes / by cause that of noo body he sholde not be 24
 knowen. He coude well speke dyuers langages, and in
 especyall ¹the hygh duche¹ tonge. He purueyed and
 dyde ordeyne hym self so, that yf he had ben met of
 them that had seen hym afore, they myght not thenne 28
 haue knowen hym. ¶ Whan he had apareyllled hym
 self well, he toke his way forth on, and folke he met
 ynoughe by the waye, of whom he asked the name of
 the towne that he sawe a fore hym / and they tolde 32
 hym that it was the city of Maryenbourgh / He went
 so longe that he cam in to the towne, and asked whiche
 was the waye to the paleys, for right well he coude

- speke the langage of the contrey, as it is sayde. Men
shewed hym the paleys; and he went in, where he fonde
the kynge amonge his barons, to whom he made the
4 reuerence righte humbly & honorable, as ful wele coude and salutes the King.
he doo it. The kynge thenne demaunded of hym yf
he was a yoman or els a squier, and Blanchardyn tolde Blanchardyn asks
hym that he was a knyght, & that from his contree
8 that sore ferre was, thens he was departed / for to come
& serue hym, for by cause of the grete renomnee pat he to serve the King of Marienburg.
had herde speke of him, and how thorough fortune &
tempeste of the see his ship was perished, & he only
12 had saued hymself. The kynge ful besily behelde
Blanchardyn, that semed to hym a full faer yonge man,
and wele shapen of all membres / And wyth thys he
prayed hym ryght gretly that he was a knyght, and
16 so thought in hymself that he was come of som highe
& nobyl extraccion, for his fayr behauore & assured
contenance that the kynge sawe to be in hym, gaffe
demonstracion of the trouble of what byrthe he was
20 come of; wherfore the kynge was right wele content,
and reseuyed hym of his hous. And commanded to
his stewarde that he sholde be brought to a chamber,
and that all suche thynges that necessarye were to
24 hym / shulde be delyuered wythoute onye gaynsaynge
vnto hym: the whiche thyng, after the commaundement
youen, was doon / he was ledde in to a chambre fayre
& clene, where was raymentes, & full riche clothynge
28 were to hym delyuered, wherwyth he dyde araye hym-
self. whan he was thus clothed & richely arayed, he
semed wele to be a man comen of some nobyl hous. he
cam ayen anon toward the kyng, that ful gladli sawe
32 hym and moche plesed him, and so dyd he to all p^e
knyghtes and other of the kynges courte. The kynge,
that gretli desired to knowe of his estate, asked of hym
what he was, of what lande and of what lynage. blanch-
36 ardyn aunsuerd pat ¹he was of the lande of Grece, and

The King likes
the look of him,

accepts his
service,

has him well
clad,

and asks him
what and whence
he is.

Blanchardyn
says that he is
from Greece,

which he left
without leave
of the King,
his father.

A storm drove

his ship against
a rock,
and he alone
escaped,

thanks to
Mahoum,

to serve the King
of Marienburg.

The King
appoints

Blanchardyn
head captain
of his army,
to fight his foe.

sone to a kynge / 'but, sire, for cause of the right grete
renomme and goode fame that renneth of you ouer all
the world, is a wylle entred wythin me to departe
secretly out of my countreye, wyth a fewe men of myne, 4
wythout licence of the kynge, my fader, and brought
wyth me but thre score men / We toke the see, and
cam nyghe by the castell of Mocastre, byfore the whiche
a right grete & Impetuous tempeste rose, that lasted 8
vs thre dayes and thre nyghtes without ceasse / In so
moche that fortune, through stormes of wyndes, made
oure vessel to smite ayenst a grete roche, and brake, so
that all my men were drowned, and noon escaped sau 12
onely myself that ye see here. And wyth grete payne
and traueyl, all a fote, I am come toward you hether /
Yf I sholde all suche aduentures as I haue fonde by
the waye, reherce vnto you, ouer moche myght let you 16
the heryng of hem / but thanked be Mahoum, that this
grace hath doon vnto me / I am comen to do you '
seruyse after my powere' / 'Vassell,' sayde the kynge /
'of your commyn vnto me I am right glad / and wel 20
pleaseth me your seruyse, and wyl not reffuse it / And
for the grete losse and grete trouble and payne that ye
haue had for to seke me / rayson requyreth / that ye
shold haue a goode reward of me / Well, ye are come 24
to passe for to serue me in a werre whiche to vs is
happed of newe, ayenst a kynge whos countrey is not
fer hens / And for thys werke to conducte & brynge to
an ende, I graunte you euen now, and chese you, for to 28
be in oure behalue Conestable and hed captayne of oure
present armye, for the grete trust and hope that we
haue in your worthynes and personne' /

¶ The xxvij. chapitre conteyneth how a 32
knyght, all sore wounded, cam and
brought tydynges to the kynge of Ma-

ryenborough, that his enmye, the kynge of Poleyne, was entred wythin his royalme.

4 **W**Han the kynge had precented this grete worship
to blanchardyn, it nedeth not to be asked yf
he was therof gladde / or yf he forgate to thanke the
kynge for the same; yet he dyde th[e]rin his deuoyer
so well, that none coude haue doon it better, sayeng to
8 hym in this manere / 'Syr, sith that this grete honoure
ye haue proffred me / euyng now forthwythall I do
accepte it, promyttyng you that all my strenghe,
myght & vnderstandyng, that the goddes haue gyuen
12 to me, I wyll putte & applie in your seruyse' / The
kynge thenne, wyth a right glad chere, receyuyd
blanchardyn, and toke hym by the hande, and sayd
vnto hym: 'vassel, yf ye serue me well / a grete
16 rewarde shal be redy yeuen to you therfore of me' /
Ryght thus as the kynge was talkyng so wyth blanch-
ardyn / cam there a knyghte armed of al peeces, that
was sore hurt in dyuerse places of his body, his shelde
20 crasyd and broken, and his helmet all to-kutte / he
cam byfore the kynges presence, sayeng to hym all an
hyghe / 'Alas, noble kynge, where is now becomen the
grete prowesses and hardynesse that were wont to be in
24 the, that soo well hast ruled and kept vs of soo long
tyme paste, Whan thou suffrest now thyn enmyes to
sette thy land al on a fyre, and wymmen & children to
be slayn of them, are comen ferre wythin they royalme /
28 And but yf thou putte a prouysyon therto shortly,
thou shalt, are thre dayes be passed, see thy self
beseged wythin the cyte of Maryenbourgh / & knowe
for certayn that the kynge of polonye, thy mortall
32 aduersarye, is there in his persone, whiche hath
aunaunced hym self for to brezne and waste all the
lande, the whiche thyng he shal mowe well doo, yf
remedy be not ¹sone putte by the therunto; and alredy

Blanchardyn
thanks the King,

and promises
to devote his
strength and
skill to his
service.

A wounded
knight arrives

with tidings

that the King
of Poland is
harassing the
land,

and is near the
city;

his folk have
wounded

and nearly taken
the knight.

Within three
days, the Poles
will be before
Marienburg.

The King
assembles his
Council to plan
their defence.

thou mayste see by me that they be not fer from hens,
for as I was commynge towarde the / I dyde fynde
thyn enmyes byfore me, whiche haue broughte me to
the plyght that thou seest me nowe ynne / and yf wele 4
yhorsed I had not ben / I shulde neuer haue escaped,
but other I muste deye or be taken of hem.' Whan
the kyng herde the knyght speke, he vnderstode wele
by his wordes / that the thyng wente euyl for hym / 8
he asked hym in what countree of his realme he had
lefte his enmyes. 'Syr,' aunswerd the knyght / 'hyt
is wele xxx. myle from hens to the place where I lefte
them / but to myn aduyse, or euer thre dayes be past / 12
but yf ye se a remedy, ye shal se them lodged here
byfore the toun in their tentys & paullyons.' The
kyng thenne, after the knyght had thus spoken to
hym, he gaff commandement to his styward that he 16
sholde be seen wele to / that he were helyd of his
woundes, that were grete, by his owne leches cyrur-
gyens / the whiche thyng was doon as he had com-
maunded / ¹The kyng wyth grete haste assembled 20
them of his counseyll, for to see how a remedye shulde
be had to the grete daunger that lykely was to comme,
wythoute a goode prouysion were had.¹

[Chapter XXVIII.] How the kyng of Ma- 24
ryenborough toke Sadoyne his sone to
blanchardyn, & thre score thowsand men
wyth / for to goo ayenste his enmyes to
fyghte wyth hem / and to caste hem oute 28
of his realme.

After that the kyng had herde the knyght, that
had rehersed to hym the commynge of his
enmyes / he sent for his lordes & barouns, whiche cam 32
to hym in his paleys; & to them he shewed all that
he had vnderstonde of the sayd knyghte / prayenge

The King of
Marienburg tells
his Council the

1-1 Wanting in the French.

- them that they wolde gyue hym counseyll therupon, to
 thende he myght resyste & goo ayenste the dampnable
 enterpryse of his enmyes / The barouns and counsellors
 4 auswerde to the kyng, they that shold speke togyder,
 for to aduyse the manere & how this thyng myght be
 conducted. They wythdrewen them self asyde, &
 assembled them in grete nombre to haue consideracion
 8 vpon this matere / the whiche they sore debatyd
 emonge them self by many & dyuerse oppynyons ; but
 at last they dyde conclude togyder all of one accorde /
 that the kyng shold sende his new Conestable ayenst
 12 his aduersaryes, accompanied wyth thre score thousaund
 off the most valyaunt & best chosen men of his
 royalme / & that he sholde haue wyth hym the kynges
 sone, that called was Sadoyne, by cause that the barons
 16 & knyghtes of the sayd royalme sholde go wyth better
 wylle wyth hym / They went ayen to the kyng, &
 proffered and tolde hym their aduyse / Whan the
 kyng had herde speke his barons, the thyng was to
 20 hym right agreable / he called blanchardyn his new
 Conestable / & tolde hym how, by hym & his barons,
 was ordeyned to hym the charge & conduyte of his
 werre / and that wyth thre score thousaund men he
 24 sholde go ayenst his enmyes, for to fyght wyth hem &
 dryue hem oute of his royalme / Whan Blanchardyn
 vnderstode the kyng, he was therof right glad, &
 thanked hym of the grete honoure that he dyde vnto
 28 hym / Thenne sent the kyng his *lettres myssyfe*¹ in to
 al the partyes of his royalme, to be directed in all
 haste to his barons & knyghtes, that they sholde
 wythout delaynge come hastely toward hym. The
 32 messagers were sone redy, that bare the letters to them
 vnto whom they were dyrected / & so grete a dilygence
 they made that wythin short terme dyde arryue in the
 cyte of maryenbourgh, fro the first to the last, wel

news of the
Polish invasion.

They advise
him to send
Blanchardyn,
and 60,000 of
his best men,

with his son
Sadoyne, against
the Poles.

The King tells
Blanchardyn,

who gladly
accepts the task.

¹ *Orig.* mysfyfe

60,000 Marien-
burgers
assemble, well-
arund.

1 F iij.

Clarions
summon them.

The King prays

Blanchardyn

to show himself
the son of a King

in prowess and
valour.

Blanchardyn
says he will
lower his foes'
pride.

thre score thousaund men of werre, alredy prest & well
apparelled for to deffende their royalme & to go ayenst
their ¹enmyes / & whan the kyng sawe his men that
were comme, he was of them right glad / & so was ⁴
blanchardyn, that had the rule ouer hem all, to whome
he gaff in *commaundement* that they sholde be redy on
the morowe by tymes, for to departe in the felaweship
of Sadoyne, the kynges sone, & of hym. Whan the ⁸
morne cam, trompettes and claryons byganne to blowe
thourgh the towne, & in the subarbes of the same /
They alle departed from their lodgis, & cam wel
apparelled, in gode araye to the felde / where they ¹²
awayted after the counstable, that shold be their ruler
& their guyde / the whiche camm toward the kyng, &
sadoyne wyth hym, & to take their leue of hym / The
kyng, seyeng his sonis departyng, saide to blanch- ¹⁶
ardyne: 'Vassall! vassal! ² to whom I haue taken in
hande that thyng most dere to me in this world / that
is my sone, my royalme, my knyghtes & my barons.
I beseke & praye þ^e, in the worship of the goddes, ²⁰
that at tyme of nede, for the defense of my royalme,
thou wylt vtir & shewe that whiche I see appiere
wyth in þ^e, that callest thy self the sone of a kyng,
in whom ought to be graffed ³ & sette³ the floure of ²⁴
knight-hode, with proesse & hardynesse, ⁴wher-with
thou art armed, as I holde' ⁴ / 'Syre,' sayde blanch-
ardyn, 'as for me, thourgh the helpe of þ^e goddes, I
shal so moche do, that wythin fewe dayes your enmyes ²⁸
shal haue no cause to be glad therof / ⁵& in their
folysshe pryde I shal succombe & brynge a lowe their
corage' ⁵ / And thenne, wythout mo wordes, sadoyne &
blanchardyn toke leue of the kyng /

32

²⁻² ³⁻³ Wanting in the French.

⁴⁻⁴ dont Ie te cuide estre arme.

⁵⁻⁵ Et de la folle entreprinse quilz ont faicte pour lorgueil
et oultrage qui les esuient contre vous. vouldroy abaissier leur
courage follastre

¶ The xxix chapitre conteyneth, how blanchardyn & sadoyne & their folke, discomfyted their enmyes, & how blanchardyn
 4 toke prysoner the kynge of polonye, the whiche he putte in the handes of the kynge of Maryenbourgh. And of the worship that they made to Blanchardyn /

8 **A**fter their leue taken of the kynge, the two barons mounted on horsbacke, & camen to the felde, where they fonden their folke renged to-gydre; to whome they commaunded to departe, holdyng their
 12 waye toward their enmyes, whiche they fonde two dayes after, all redy aparailled for to fyght, for they were aduertysed afore of the commyng of blanchardyn /
 Whan they two oostes sawe eche other / the noyse &
 16 the cry began to be grete on bothe sydes / soo beganne they to marche forth toward eche other in right fayr ordonnaunce, made by blanchardyn, that conduyted the first bataylle; & had lefte sadoyne in the seconde
 20 baytaylle, in the kepyng of two noble prynces, that were there comen with hym / The shot beganne to fle of bothe partyes so fast & soo thicke, that the lyght of þ^e sonne was kept wythal from þ^e fyghters / And syth
 24 cam to Ioyne hem self togyder wyth sperys & wyth dartys, and wyth swerdes and axes, wherof they hewe eche other, in so moche that the felde was sone couerd wyth the bodyes ded that were slayne there / The
 28 horses went, trauayllyng after theym their owne bowellys, rennyng ouer hylles & dales here & there / And blanchardyn thezue, that in proesse & hardynes was entred, toke his spere doune, & ranne ayenst the
 32 brother of the kynge of polonye, that grete damage had done to þ^e prusyens / he rought hym so sore, & wyth so grete a strengththe, that he shoued and passed his spere

Blanchardyn
meets his troopes,

and in two days
they come on
their Polish
enemies.

Blanchardyn
heads his first
battalion,
Sadoyne the
second.

The fight begins.

Blanchardyn

runs the King
of Poland's
brother

right through
the body,
and kills him.

The King rushes
to the fight,

1 F iiij.

and slays many
Prussians.

Blanchardyn

kills more than
34 Poles.

They think him
a fiend or spirit
of faery.

All flee before
him.

Sadoyne charges
with his second
battalion.

The Poles draw
back.

alle thorough & thorough his body, that he fel doune
sterk ded, wherof the noyse & the cry rose vp grete
thourgh the bataill of þ^e polonyens. ful sone cam the
tydynges therof to the kyng, that grete sorowe made 4
for his brothers dethe / he sware and made his auowe
that he shold neuer haue Ioye at his herte vnto the
tyme his brothers deth were auenged / Sore an angered
& ful of wrath, smote hym self in to the thyckest of 8
1 the bataylle, where he dyde vpon the prussyens grete
merueylles of armes, so that there as he arryued no
man durste not abyde nor come nyghe hym. Of that
other parte was blanchardyn, that so many fayttes of 12
armes had doon that, or ener his spere was broken, he
had slayne and brought to deth, and borne to the
grounde more than xxiiij² of his enmyes / And syth
toke in hande his swerde, wher wythall he brake the 16
grete presses; he kutte & cloue the polonyens by so
grete fyersnes that his swerde & bothe his armes were
dyed wyth red blode / He semed not to them that sawe
hym to be a man mortall, but semed better to be 20
a fende, or a spiryte of the fayrye. he brake þ^e arayes
of them that were renged, and the grete presses he
departed, & made waye byfore hym. Alle fled, & non
durste abyde hym, for the grete & merueyllouse faytes 24
of armes that he made there, wherof they of prusse that
wyth hym were, gaff hem self grete merueylle. they
folowed after at þ^e backe of hym, as the yonge lambe
do the sheep. sadoyne & his bataylle dyde approche 28
their enmyes; they smote hem self wythin them,
callyng a grete crye, wher for they of polonye lepte
and reculed hem self abake ³six passes or moo.³ But
the kyng of polonye, seeyng his folke go backe / was 32
ful sory / he ascryed & dyde calle vpon his mayster
Conestable, that he sholde ryde forth vpon his enmyes /
þ^e whiche thyng he dyde, wherof the batayll began to

² dix.

³⁻³ plus de six pas.

be reforced ayen, so that þ^e prussyens, wolde they or
 not, muste lose grounde and goo abak / And sholde
 haue be full sore dealed wyth all yf they had not
 4 be soone socoured of Blanchardyn / the whiche, seeyng Blanchardyn
 his folke recuyelle abacke, gaffe the spore to his hors,
 & cam ayenst hym that bare the cheff standarde of cleaves the chief
Standard-bearer
of Poland to the
chest.
 8 polonye, to whom he gaaff soo merueylouse a stroke
 wyth his goode swerde that he cloue hym vnto the
 brest, and fell doune emonge the hors feet / ¶ Thenne
 byganne the noyse and the crye to ryse vp grete of the
 polonyens, that trowed to haue taken vp ayen their
 12 standarde. But blanchardyn, whiche at that owre
 slept not, smot hym self emonge them / he kutte and
 cloue them that nother helmet nor shelde coude helpe
 there / Soo that none was so hardy to approche hym /
 16 His folke dyde folowe hym, and putte hem self vpon
 their ennyes, so that it was force the polonyens to
 recule abak the space of an acre of lande or more. The
 kynge of polonye, that sawe his folke recule & fle, and The King of
Poland
 20 his standarde ybrought to the grounde thourgh the
 valyauntnes and strengthe of one knyght alone, ¹sware
 his goode goddes¹ that he sholde neuere haue Ioye at
 herte tyll that the deth of his brother, and the damage
 24 that he had receyued were by hym auenged / he smote
 hym self in to the bataylle, and relyed his folke to
 gyder as well as he coude / Soo chose he Blanchardyn,
 that grete slawghter dyde make ouer his men. he toke
 28 a bygge spere in his hande, and drewe that part where
 he sawe hym that so moche of euyll and damage had
 borne to hym / Blanchardyn sawe hym right well and Blanchardyn
 commynge toward hym; he toke also a grete spere
 32 from the hande of a knyght of his, that was nyghe
 hym, and cam ayenst the kynge of Polonye, that soone
 perceyued hym. They brought alowe their sperys, & charge one
another.
 ranne sore one vpon the other, and gaff eche other soo

The King is
unhorst,

and, to save his
life,

gives himself up
to Blanchardyn,

and is kept in
custody.

The Poles flee,
and are taken
or slain.

Blanchardyn

returns to Ma-
rienburg,

whose King

vnmesurable strokes that the kyng of Polonye spere
brake al to peeces / but that other spere that blanchardyn
had, that was of wode right stronge and harde, brake
not, But roughthe the kyng of Polonye wythall by 4
suche a strengthe and vertue, that he bare hym from
his horse doune to the grounde / ¶ Blanchardyn anon
cast from hym his goode spere, & syth tooke his goode
swerde in hande, and cam to the kyng for to haue 8
smytten of his hed / but þ^e kyng, seyenge that noon
of his folke came for to socoure hym, dyde take his
swerde to blanchardyn, yeldynge hym vp vnto hym, &
prayed hym to saue hym his lyff / Thenne was the 12
kyng redely taken to mercy of blanchardyn, that toke
hym by the hande, & gaf hym to tenn knyghtes for to
kepe hym, that had hym out of þ^e presse ¹by cause that
they sholde be more sure of hym.¹ Whan they of 16
polonye sawe & knewe their kyng to be take, they
wyst wel ynough that he was not to be recouered of
hem / wherfor gaffe vp the place & fled awaye / And
so fynably were all the polonyens discomfyted, taken, 20
or brought to dethe, that fewe of them escaped / but
grete gayne made there they of prusse, whiche was
departed by blanchardyn to them that had hit deserued.
After this bataylle doon, & that they had chassed their 24
enmyes oute of their royalme / Blanchardyn wyth grete
glorye & grete tryumphe, & Sadoyne his trusty felawe
wyth hym, retourned toward Maryenborugh, and their
folke wyth them, where they were receyued of the 28
kyng wyth grete Ioye & praysynge / Thenne cam
blanchardyn to the kyng, and to hym sayde : ‘ Syre, I
do yelde and delyuere in to your handes the kyng of
Polonye your enemye, whiche I haue taken wyth the 32
helpe of your sone, and of your noble and worthy
cheualrye ; & ye may now doo wyth hym what youre
goode plesure is or shalbe ’ / The kyng, that therof

1-1 Wanting in the French.

was well aduertysed by his sone and by his other barons that the bataylle had ben ouercome, & the kynge of polonye taken, thourgh þ^e right excellent & 4 hyghe proesse of Blanchardyn, toke hym in his armes, and syth sayde vnto hym : ‘ Ha, my right trusty frende & right noble knight, fulfilled with al gode maners and vertues ; that hath be the pyler, susteynyng^e ¹vnder 8 thy swerde¹ bothe my self & all my royalme² / I am not a power to reward the after the meryte that ye haue deserued to haue of me. Well ye hane shewed, & doon perfytyly ³to be vnderstande³ the excellent vertu of 12 humplite that is in you / and the right hyghe and noble lynage that ye be descended of.⁴ But fro this owre now I betake my self, my sone, & my royalme in your protection, & wol that all your commaundementes be 16 obeyed and put to execucyon in all manere poyntes.’ The noble Blanchardyn thenne heryng the kynge, that suche honoure made vnto hym, sayd : ‘ sire, suche a worship apparteyneth not to be doon to me / for I am 20 not to the value therof / And it suffyseth me right well to be symply taken and kept as one of youre knyghtes wyth you and youre soone.’ The kynge wyst not to thanke hym ynough, that soo had delyuered hym from 24 his enmyes, and had put in his handes that kynge that moost he hated in this world / Wherefore he sayde vnto Blanchardyn that he had a Cosyn, that was of a right excellent beaulte, whiche he wolde gyue hym right 28 gladly to be his wyff. But Blanchardyn dyde excuse him self, saynge þat in his countrey he was trouthplyght tyl another / The kynge herynge blanchardyn, helde hym therof for excused. right grete honoure was don 32 vnto hym of the kynge & of all his barons / but aboue

praises him,

and puts himself and the realm under Blanchardyn's orders.

The King offers his beautiful cousin to Blanchardyn as a wife ;

but he is trouthplyght to another.

¹—¹ Wanting in the French.² de mon peuple deffendeur / De refues et orphenins seure garde et droituriere³—³ Wanting.⁴ sans nulle doubte et as bien averi fie tes parolles.

Blanchardyn

always sorrows
for his lady
Eglantine.

al other he was most beloued & dere yholde of Sadoyne,
the kynges sone, that was a fayr knyght & yonge, right
hardy and valyaunt; and also Blanchardyn loued hym
moche, & yet more he wolde haue do yf he had be a 4
crysten man / but nought he durste to hym speke
therof / ¶ Here we shall leue to speke of Blanchardyn,
& shal leue hym wyth the kyng of Maryenbourgh in
prusse, and wyth his sone Sadoyne, that soo dere loued 8
hym that wythout he was alwayes wyth hym, he
myght not endure. but what so euer goode sporte &
pleysure that blanchardyn sawe ther make for his sake,
nothyng coude playse nor brynge hym tyll his hertys 12
ease, But euer more reforced and redoubled his sorowe
at alle tymes that he remembred wythin hym self his
right swete lady & goode maystres, the whiche he had
lefte beseged wythin her cyte of Tourmaday by the 16
vntrewe and crymynel tyraunt Alymodes, kyng of
Cassydonye, that had made his othe neuere to departe
thens Into the tyme that he had tyl his wyf the right
fayre and proude pucelle in amours / 20

¶ The xxx. chapitre conteyneth how daryus
the sone of Alimodes, by fortune of the
see, arryued in the lande of ffryse, where
he dyde grete hurt, damage, & toke the 24
kyng of ffryse, the fader of Blanchardyn,
and had hym wyth hym prysoner vnto
Cassydonye.

Darius, the son

WELL ye haue herde by-fore how Blanchardyn was 28
taken and had prysoner by kyng Alymodes
folke, the whiche betoke hym to his soone Daryus for
to brynge hym to cassydonye; And þ^e manere how
he escaped the fortune of the see, and cam & arryued 32
in the lande of prusse; Duryng the whiche tyme

- Daryus, the sone of Alymodes, the kynge beyng in his
 cyte of Cassydonye, awaytyng after tydynges of them
 that had forth Blanchardyn toward the kynge of Sala-
 4 mandrye. But his awaytyng that he made was in
 vayne, for they were all perysshed and drowned in
 the see, as ye haue herde aboue / ¶ Whan Daryus sawe
 noo tydynges, he coulede not vnderstande of them; he
 8 made redy a grete nauye laden wyth men of werre, and
 wyth artylary, and vytaylles for to goo agayn to the
 syege of Tourmaday toward his fader / Whan all these
 thynges were redy, he toke his leue of his suster
 12 Beatryse, to whom he betoke his citee to kepe. he syn
 entred his shyp, made to drawe vp aneres, and began
 anon for to sayle, so that wythin a lytil / whyle they
 were oute of syghte and fer from the hauen. and so
 16 longe they saylled wyth goode wynde, that they were
 anon nyghe the realme of Tourmadaye; but as they
 shulde haue taken lande, a storme began to come, grete
 & horribyll wynde to blowe, that rose oute of the
 20 landes, soo that, wether they wolde or not, they must
 habandoune their barkes & galleys to the wyndes &
 wawes of the see, wherfor they were ful sore afayed.
 The wynde & the see were so horryble to here & see,
 24 that they wende all to peryshe anon / They were full
 sone y-caste from the realme of Tourmaday / And the
 wynde brought them in to a lytil Isle, longyng to the
 realme of fryse, the whiche was fruytfull & right fayr,
 28 and replenyshed wyth all maner of goodes / So that
 bycause of the grete commodytees of that Isle, Blanch-
 ardyns fader, kynge of fryse, went for to sporte hym
 there thre or four tymes in the yere, that he shulde for-
 32 gete ther by the grete sorowe that was atte his herte for
 loue of his sone Blanchardyn, of whom no tydynges he
 had syth his departyng from hym / And also for of the
 grete dysplesure that he had of the quene his wyffe,
 36 that suche a sorowe made for her entyerli beloued

of K. Alymodes,
 waits in vain
 for the drown'd
 keepers of
 Blanchardyn.

Darius makes
 ready his ships,

and sails

towards Torma-
 day,

bnt is driven to
 an isle of Fries
 land,

where Blanch-
 ardyn's father,
 the King of
 Friesland,

happens to be
enjoying himself.

Darius and his
men come to the
palace,

learn that its
folk are Chris-
tians,

and accordingly
kill them all,

save one,

sonne / blanchardin / whiche she wyste not where he
was becom / that no body lyuyng myghte gyue her
consolacoon / nor brynge her herte oute of trystesse &
sorowe. And ther for the noble kynge, wyth a fewe 4
of his folke, was come to the sayde Isle for to dysporte
hym there, and to dryue his fantassye away. In the
whiche Isle he had do make a fayr paleyee ryghte
delectable / Duryng the tyme that he was thus there, 8
the sayd aduenture happed, that daryus, the sonne of
kynge Alymodes, wyth his grete naue, by fortune of
the see arryued there, as it is sayde, euen at that same
hauen that was most nyghe to the sayde paleys where 12
the kynge of fryse lay / ¹Daryus, that of his beyng
ther was soone aduertysed,¹ came anone wyth his puis-
saunce of men to the paleys, where they founde but
littel resistaunce. whan they were come there, they fonde 16
three² of þ^e kynge of frysys seruantes, to whom they
asked to whom belongeth that paleys, and how the
lande was called. The sayd thre men ansuerd them
wyth grete fere, that the paleyee and the yslle was by- 20
longyng vnto the kynge of ffryse, that was come there
thre dayes afore that / ‘frendes,’ sayde daryus, ‘what
lawe is there kept amonge you in this lande?’ / ‘Syre,’
sayde one of hem, ‘we holden on the crysten feyth, & 24
are byleuyng in Ihesu cryste’ / Thenne daryus, knowyng
that he was fortunatly arryued vpon the crysten peple,
enmye of his lawe / comaunded that they sholde be all
slayne & brought to deth / the whiche thyng was 28
putte to execucyon after his comaundement, except
vpon one of hem that escaped, that dyde soo moche,
that he went & entred in to the paleys thurgh the
wykettes of the gate, that of a custume were allewayes 32

¹⁻¹ Daire et toute sa nauire y vint arriuer et prendre port
par vng bien matin Il fist jette les ancrs puis saillirent hors
tous ensamble moult loyeux de ce que hors de la tourmente de
la mer estoient eschappez. Mais pas bien ne scauoient en quel
pays Ilz-estoient arriuez.

² Orig. there

lefte open. And whan¹ he was come wyth ynne, he
 made a serye, and called alowde after the watche / so
 that euery man cam forth for to doo his deuoyre, ^{who rouses the} ^{watch,} ²eche
 4 of hem in his rowme² in defending the place after their
 powere / & whan he was come as ferre as the halle
 wythin the paleys, he byganne to reforce his callynge,
 crying wyth a hyghe voyce / sainge þat 'they were all
 8 lost, and that þ^e sarrasyns were descended from their
 shippes byfore þ^e paleyce in grete nombre.' thenne
 rose & cam they of wythin out of all partyes of the
 place; armed & arrayed as haste requyred, and no
 12 bettre / Soone was the tydynges herof brought to the
 kyng, that at that owre was at his rest, and slept fast
 as a man that doubted hym self of noo suche aduen-
 ture to be falle / he a-woke out of his slepe thurghe
 16 the pyteouse crye that of his men was made. Notwyth-
 standyng he made hym self redy, and made a goode
 ordynaunce as a prynce of hyghe corage and grete
 vertue / for in all poyntes he was a right valyaunt and
 20 a hardy prynce / but ouer sodaynly he was taken.
 Neuerthelesse, full nobly, lyke a man of grete corage,
 he admonested his folke, and trowed to haue goon to
 the yate of his palayce, the whiche was all redy wonne
 24 and taken / And daryus and his folke were entred
 Inne / The kyng of fryse seyng his paleys wonne, a
 grete sorowe toke hym at his herte of that he was so
 taken vnbeuare / And anone hastely he and his folke
 28 went and sought wythin the place where they myght
 saue hymself best / but ouer sore oppressed they were,
 and of so nyghe chassed that neuer one of them escaped,
 but he was taken or ded / The kyng was taken and
 32 seasid, the handes ybounde & the eyen yblynded, and
 sent in to the shippes by daryus, and lykewyse was
 doon of all his barons that were there / After that this
 grete myshap was thus falle to the kyng of fryse /

who rouses the
watch,

and says the
Saracens are at
hand.

The King of
Friesland wakes,

and hopes to
resist, but finds

his palace occu-
pied by Darius;

he is seized,
bound, blinded,
and sent on
board Darius's
ship.

¹ *Orig.* wahn ²⁻² chacun en son lieu accoustume

The Isle is plundered by Darius's men,

and the cattle carried off to the ships.

The palace is fired.

The King of Friesland sorrows.

His wife

swoons,

and then dies.

Daryus & his folke serched the paleys / they robbed alle the riches and goodes that were ther inne / & were al brought in to daryus shippes / ¶ Thees pytoyable thynges thus y-happed, they made their horses to be had out of their shippes, and anone ouer ranne all the ysle, & wasted and dystroyed all the countrey, and slewe men, wýmen, and children bothe yonge and olde / they toke and rauysshed alle the bestyall, as oxen, kene, and shepe, wherof was there wythout nombre, and had them in to their shippes whyche they charged wyth the praye and gayne that they made there in the sayd Isle. And syn they dyde putte the palayce all in a fire, and toke wyth them grete nombre of prysoners, and entred agen in to their shippes, wyth grete Ioye & gladnes for the goode aduenture that they had fonde. all thus in grete dyspleasure & heuynes was taken þe kyng of frise, and was broughte as a prisoner, sore wepyng & sorowynge his byttirnesses. The poure sorwfull kyng had his herte all replenished wyth sorowe & heuynes, of the whiche the nobel quene his wyff shall haue parte whan thees pituable tydynges shall come to her eeris, for she toke in her self suche a sorow & so grete a displesure therfor, wyth þat that she sorowed before for the departynge of her dere sone blanchardyn / that she was constrayned thorough grete passion & bytternes of hert to falle in a swoune ; for her legges nor feete myghte not bere her, and not wythoute a cause, and bycamme so sore febil, & so full of sorowe that atte the laste, what for her sone blanchardyn as for þe loue of her goode husbande & her lorde, she toke suche a sekenes that her soule departed from the body of her / And thus the noble ladye & goode quene of fryse ended her dayes in heuynes & sorowe, ¹for the loue of her lorde that she so myserably had loste.¹

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

¶ The xxxj. chapiture conteyneth howe
 daryus arryued in to the ooste of kyng
 Alymodes his fader, wher he was receyuyd
 4 wyth grete Ioye ¹for loue of the vitaylles
 that he broughte vnto them there.¹

WHan daryus entred ayen in his ship, he thanked
 moche his goddes, of aduenture & good fortune
 8 that was happed to hym; he made the ancores to be
 drawen vp and the sayles to be haled a lofte. The
 wynde & the see were apeased, and a softe wynde
 goode for them byganne to ryse oute of the west, that
 12 droef forth their shippes there as they wolde, and wyth-
 oute lettyng arryued on the therde daye byfore the
 cytye of Tourmaday, where as thoost of kyng Alymodes
 was lodged / they cast their ancores, & ful sone they
 16 were knowen of kyng Alymodes that hastily cam
 wyth hys barons toward the hauen / for to welcom
 daryus his sone whiche was com a laude, & fonde his
 fader / that wyth grete Ioye and gladnes receyued,
 20 askyng of hem how he had doon syn his partyng from
 hym / Daryus al alonge recounted to hym how by for-
 tune of the see they arryued & entred in to an Isle of
 the see / whiche was crysten / where they dyde fynde
 24 a kyng ryght puyssaunt / whiche he had broughte wyth
 hym prysoner. And also tolde hym how he had dys-
 troyed the sayd Isle, & brente the paleys that was
 there, & had brought wyth them a grete praye &
 28 vytall ynough / as wyne & corne, sheepe & oxen, for
 to susteyn his oost the space of thre monthes and
 more / Wherof kyng Alymodes & they of his oost
 were oute of mesure glad / but & yf god wol kepe
 32 the goode prouost of Tourmaday / he shall haue or thys
 two days be paste his parte of the sayd praye / Wher-

Darius sails from
 the Isle,

and arrives at
 Tormaday.

His father,
 K. Alymodes,
 welcomes him,

and is glad of the
 Frisian stores he
 has brought.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

of the Ioye shal be renewed amonge the knyghtes & pepyll of Tourmaday, that grete scarcenes had of fleshe & of other vytaylle / After that daryus had thus recounted to his fader his aduenture that to hym was of 4 late happed / they two both to gyder cam toward theire tentes talkyng of many thynges / Daryus demaunded of his fader ¹how they of p^e cytye dyd,¹ & yf hit was longe agoo that they made eny yssue oute of their toun / 8

Alimodes aunsuerd to hym, and sayd that it was more than a monthe ago that they neuer made noo yssue, wherof men sholde take eny hede / and that he thought wele that grete defaulte of vytaylles they had wyth-in, 12

and that they were ²made full symple, syth that the yonge knyght was taken whiche I betok you for to be brought vnto the kynge of salamandrye / ‘Syre,’ sayde Daryus, ‘I haue doon of hym as ye commaunded me’ / 16

But neuer syth that they parted from me I haue herde noo tydynges of hem, nor of hym, nor of thre score men of myn owne that I dyde sende for to make present of the knyght crysten, wherof I haue gyuen me 20 full ofte grete merueylle.’ They thenne seased their wordes / he was al nyght wyth his fader Alymodes, vnto the morowe that Daryus made hym self redy by thordonnaunce of his fader to retourne in his cyte of 24 cassydonye. ryght grete Ioye and gladnes made they of the oost, for they made no doubte at all of their enmyes. Daryus, after the feste & Ioyouse talkyng that he had wyth his fader and wyth his barons / He 28 toke his leue for to retourne and take his shippyng.

²The kynge and the barons dyde conueye hym vnto the ship where he entred ynn^e,² commaundyng hym in the

The Tormadians
have made no
sally since K.
Alymodes took
Blanchardyn;

² G j.

but of him
Darius has heard
nothing.

Next morning

Darius sails,

¹⁻¹ comment ceulx de lacite faisoient

²⁻² Desquelz Il auoit fait deschargier tousles vinres pour reuitailler lost de son pere / lequel le connoya en grant Ioye et leessee / et aussi firent tous les barons de lost Iusques a la nauire sur laquelle Il monta en prenant congie du roy son pere et des Barons.

kepyng and protection of all their godes. ¹The maron-
ners bygan to saylle, & seaced neuer tyl that he camen
in to the hauone of cassydonye, where he was receyued

and reaches his
home, Cassi-
donie.

4 wyth grete Ioye /¹

¶ The xxxij. chapitre conteyneth how the
goode prouost yssued out of Tourmadaye,
and cam to fet bestyall, that daryus had
8 brought in the oost, whiche was brought
in to the cyte wyth grete Ioye /

EVyn at the same owre that daryus toke shipping
vpon the see, and that his fader the kyng
12 Alymodes, and a grete parte of his barons were goon to
conueye hym, and were there tyll he was departed
from the hauen and ferre fro the cleues, the prouost
of Tourmadaye and many other barons of the cyte
16 were vpon the walles beholdynge the manere and the
gouernauns of them of the oost, And were alrede
aduertysed of a spye / howe that the daye byfore,
darius, the sone of kyng Alymodes, was arryued in
20 thoost, and had broughte wyth hym grete plente of
vytayles / and that he retorned in to his countree, and
toke the see that same daye. And wyth this they
sawe the grete nombre of bestes, that toke their pasture
24 in a grete medowe not ferre thens, and that noo body
kept hem; for they went to haue be sure thourgh
all the ooste, by cause that they of the cyte had not
made longe tyme afore that no manere of entrepryse,
28 nor dyde not come out of their towne; and also that
the custume of them of wythin was, that they neuer
made non yssue but it were in the mornynge, or at
euyne. And for this cause the prouost, that thought
32 vpon the same, delybered in hym self, consideryng that

While K. Aly-
modes is at the
sea-side

the Provost of
Tormaday

sees all the
Frisian cattle
grazing near the
city;

and as the chief
besiegers are
away,

and the cattle
unguarded,

the Provost goes
with his officers
to Eglantine.

With her ap-
proval,

² G ij.
6000 horsemen

and 4000 archers
muster.

The foot go into
the pasture
where the Frisian
cattle are;

the horse out of
the sally-gates.

whiche he sawe at eye; how all thoost was styll, and
that kyng alymodes, nor his barons, nor his princypal
capitaynes were not comen yet from the see syde,
where they were all gon for to conueye and see daryus 4
take his shippyng. ¶ Of that other part, he sawe
also a fore hym, nyghe by the walles of the towne, the
grete multytude of bestes, that were wythout kepyng,
whiche was the thynghe wherof they had most nede 8
wythin the cyte / He, seeng and consyderyng this that
he sawe at his eye, descended hastely from the walles,
and dyde calle to hym al the capitaynes, barons,
knyghtes ¹and noble men,¹ whiche he made to come 12
byfore theyr lady, the proude pucell in amours; and
byfore her he declared vnto them all his purpos, and
what he entended for to doo. Whan the lady, wyth
her barons, had well vnderstande the prouost, they all 16
in generall accorded wyth him for to putte to execucion
the wordes afore spoken; & for to do the same, they
went preuely & armed them self. & whan they were
redy, they fonde six thousand of ²hem all a horsebak, 20
the whiche were conducte by þ^e prouost. And another
of the capitayns had the charge of the foure thousand
archers, fote men / whiche yssued oute at a posterne
that was nyghe the see, & lepte anon in to the medowe 24
where the sayd bestes were fedyng / & of that other
party, the prouost & his felauship wente oute of the
gate where as they were wonte to goo oute whan they
made their Issues. whan the capitayne of fote men 28
was wele aduertysed, and that he wyste the prouost to
be come oute of the toun, he made his folke to vauce
hemsself forth softly and by order alonge by the toun
dyches, whiche were drye at that syde of the toun / 32
and so made them to walke al vnder couerte vnto the
see syde all along the dyches, tyl that they cam & saw

- the bestes, that wythoute eny kepyng were enclosed
 wyth in a maner of a parke / and after they had putte
 hemself betwyx the bestes and the oost / they taryed &
 4 herkened there after there men on horsbacke, the
 whiche they herde full sone makyng their cryes in
 their enmyes tentes, where as they foughte wyth hem /
 The fotemen thenne entred wythin the close medowe,
 8 where the bestes were pasturyng, whiche they brought
 all to gydre on a flock, & byganne to chasse them afore
 hem to the towneward, where they brought Inne bothe
 oxen, kyen, and sheep, wyth all other manere of
 12 bestyall that was there, wherof the peple of the cyte
 was gretly reioyced. And syth cam and put hym self
 by fore the yate of the towne in fayre ordennaunce,
 awaytyng that the prouost and his folke sholde tourne
 16 ayen, whiche were wythin their enmyes tentes &
 pauyllions, whiche they powlyd & brought doune /
 and slewe many of their enmyes or euer that kynge
 Alymodes nor his folke coude be garnyssed of their
 20 armures / And whan the prouost sawe that it was tyme
 for to departe, & that the bestes myght well be brought
 in to the cyte by that tyme, he made his trompette to
 be sowned, that euery man shold with draw hym self /
 24 & so cam ayen wythin the cyte wythout eny losse of
 his men, to their grete glorie & praysynge / & grete
 confusion to theyr enmyes / to whom they had born so
 grete damage, that neuer byfore that they had receyued
 28 suche / Wherby the kynge alymodes & alle his oost
 was right sore affrayed, and in grete heuynes of the
 grete losse that they had susteyned by the sayd prouost
 and his folke / And also of that other part, whan they
 32 knewe how alle their bestes were / had awaye fro the
 medowe and brought in to the towne, their sorowe
 redoubled them full sore / The prouost, that lytyl dyde
 care therfore, hym self and all his folke, bothe a fote &
 36 a horsback, in gyuyng thankes & graces vnto our lord,

The foot get
round the cattle,

wait till the
horsemen attack
their foes,

then drive all
the Frisian cattle
into Tormaday,

and await the
return of the
Provost.

The Tormadian
horsemen slay
many of their
foes,

and then retire
safely into the
city,

to the great
damage

and sorrow of the
heathen enemy.

Tormaday gets
provisions for a
year.

Eglantine never
ceases sorrowing
for Blanchardyn.

She asks her
Provost to
3 G iij.

go to her uncle,
the King of
Norway,

and pray him to
help her.

entred agayne in to the cyte ¹wyth grete gladnes and
Ioye / ¹ where they were ful curtoysly receyued of their
lady, ² that graciously thanked theym / The cyte of
Tourmaday was purueyed of vytaylles of the same for 4
a hole yere / & their enmyes oost sore dysgarnyshed
ther by, wherfor they made emonge hem self grete
sorowe / but what so euer Ioye & gladnes that they
made wythin the towne, the fayr pucelle and proude 8
in amours myght not seasse nor leue her sorowe ther-
fore, that she contynually made for her right dere
frende blanchardyn; that for the loue of her she
trowed that he had other be lost or ded, & wyst not 12
what she sholde thynke therof / But sawe wel that yf
by proces of tyme she had [not] som socours, that force
sholde be to her to yelde vp & deliuer her cyte vnto
kynge Alymodes, but rather she wolde deye / than she 16
sholde see suche a sorowe to be falle to her; & for to
see a remedy to the same / she dyde sende for the
prouost, to whome she sayde thus / ‘Prouoste, oure
cyte is nowe garnyshed, thanked be ³oure lorde, both 20
of vytaylles & of artyllerye for a grete space of tyme;
and wyth this, for the defence of p^e same, hit ys wele
& suffysaunly furnyshed of goode knyghtes, & of goode
souldyers grete foyson. Wherefore ryght instanly I 24
praye you that ye doo make redy a galleye, & I shal
furnysshe her welle wyth vytaylles, & wyth goode
artylerye for the defence of your self and of them that
shall be wyth you / and ye shal goo as myn ambas- 28
satur toward myn vncle, the kyng of grete Nor-
weyghe / to whom ye shall declare & shewe, in my
behalf, the estate where presently I am inne / prayeng
hym, in my behalf, that now atte my grete nede / he 32
wolde sende me folke for to helpe & socoure me, or els
that my sylf & my royalme are in wey of perdyccion’ /
‘Madame,’ sayde the prouost, ‘wyte ye for certeyn,

¹⁻¹ *Orig.* at ², third line.

that to the pleasure of our lorde I shall doo therein my
 best, wyth all deligence vnto me possyble / And I hope
 I shall brynge you good tydynges, & suche a socours
 4 that shal not be pleyasant vnto Alymodes the false
 kyng' / The prouost, after many other deuyses, toke
 hys leue of the pucel, & cam to his hous / he made a The Provost lets
out a galley,
 galee to be dressyd wyth all her apereylye / And whan
 8 all his thynges was redy & preste, he went oute of a
 posterne pryuely wyth suche as he wolde take in his
 companye toward the see syde; & entred his ship so
 preuely in the mornynge, that none of his enmyes coude
 12 see hym tyl that they were gon awaye from the lande,
 & wyth oute fere of them / whan kyng alymodes knew
 the same, he waxed sore angry & wroth, but no remedy
 he myght not put therto / ¹for or euer he was aduertysed
 16 therof, the prouost & his felauship were almost oute of
 syght¹ / well he had wold that they myght be met
 wythall by daryus his sone / but he oughte not to care
 for it / for daryus & hys nauey helde their waye
 20 toward Cassydonye, wher they arryued in fewe dayes
 wythout eny fortune / ²& the prouost saylled & rowed
 toward the costes of nourthweghe² / Whan daryus was for Norway.
 come to lande in to the hauen of Cassydonye, ³where
 24 he arryued wythin short tyme wythout ony fortune, as
 it is sayd³ / he made the kynge of fryse, & other his
 prysoners, to be had out from the shippes in to a grete Darius puts the
King of Friesland
into a dark
dungeon,
 & strong toure, where as was a tenebrouse & derke
 28 dongeon; wherin the poure sorowfull kynge, replen-
 ysshed and sore beten wyth the flayel of fortune, was
 cast in pryson, there to consume his olde dayes ful
 myserably, vnto the tyme that by his right wel beloued to consume his
old days miser-
ably.
 32 sone blanchardyn he be had out from this grete pouerte
 & myserye. So shal we leue hym thus makynge his
 sorowfull complaynte tyl that tyme be for to speke of

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.²⁻² Wanting.³⁻³ Wanting.

hym / & shal retourne to speke of his sone, ¹the goode
yonge knyght¹ blanchardyn / Whiche we haue lefte
wythin the paleys of Maryenborough ²wyth Sadoyne.²

¶ The xxxiiij chapyter conteyneth how ⁴
Blanchardyn made pyteouse complayntes
for his lady ³wythyn a gardyne,³ and of
the grete recomforte that was made to
hym of sadoyne / ⁴ 8

Blanchardyn is

ever thinking of
Eglantine,

and how he can
get to help her.

⁵ G iiij.

One day, in the
palace garden,

he sees one rose
more beautiful
than the others,

YE haue all ynoughe vnderstande here a fore how
blanchardyn had the goode grace of the kynge
of prusse, of Sadoyne his sone, & the loue of all the
barons of the sayde royalme. And how he had reffused ¹²
the kynges cosyne for to haue her in maryage; but the
grete loue & fydelyte that he had toward his lady, the
proude pucelle in amours, kept hym there fro / for
rather he wold haue deyed than to haue falsed his feyth ¹⁶
ayenst her, for whome he had at herte so many a
sorowful & hevy thought for to bere / for nother nyght
nor daye he dyde non other thinge, but thynke how &
what manere he myght departe out of the contrey ²⁰
where he was Inne, for to go to gyue socoure vnto the
proude pucell ⁵in amours his fayre loue, that was his
souerayn desyre & his right besy & continually thoughte,
wherof it happed upon a daye amonge other as blanch- ²⁴
ardyn was entred in a gardyne wythin þ^e kynges paleys
alone, wythout eny feliship, for to complayne the better
his hertes sorowes, that in beholdyng vpon the fayre
flouris wherof nature had fayre appareylled the gardyne, ²⁸
& amonge other he sawe a rosier tree laden with many
a fayr rose that had a smel ful swete / emonge whiche
one was ther that of flagraunt odoure & of beaulte
passed all the other; wherfore vpon her he dyde arrest ³²

1—1, 2—2, 3—3 Wanting in the French.

⁴ En promettant que de tout son pouoir lui aideroit

his eyen, & said in this maner / 'Ha, noble rose, pre-
 elect & chosen byfore all other flouris that ben about
 the / how be it they be right fayre / thou putttest into
 4 my remembraunce thurgh the fayrnes that I see in the /
 1 the right parfyt & excellent beaulte of myn owne goode
 lady, the proude mayden in amours,¹ whom god gyue
 all that whiche her noble herte wyseth & desyreth / I
 8 am so ferre from her / that aduyse it is to me, and also
 I byleue the same / that I neuer shal see her nomore. I
 can not curse to moche myn vnfortune that hath brought
 me, whiche was come to haue the goode grace of the
 12 most parfyt creature that god & nature wythout com-
 parison wold euer make, in to the grete sorowes where
 I am now Inne / Now most I be ferre from her : wolde
 god now that ye, myn owne swete lady, wyst that I am
 16 aliue, & how goode a wyll I haue to socoure you, yf it
 were to me possible ;' & in proferryng this wordes, þe
 teeris fel grete from his eyen in grete haboundaunce
 2 without ceasse² / sadoyne that coude not dure nor be
 20 with-out blanchardyn, went him seking in all þe place
 so longe that at the last he cam & sawe hym wythin
 the gardyne / & cam there as he was or euer blanch-
 ardyn was aware of hym / He fonde him the terres at
 24 the eyes of hym makynge his full pituouse *complayntes* /
 the whiche sadoyne had herde a part of hem / he cam
 & set hym self down besyde blanchardyn, & prayed
 hym that he wolde telle him the cause of his sorowe &
 28 grete lamentacion, promyttyng to hym that it sholde
 neuer be told noo knowen by him, & saide vnto him :
 'My right trusty felawe, ye do sobbe & make grete
 sorowe, wherfor I true & thinke for ueray throuth /
 32 that it is loue that so ledes you' / 'Certes, sadoyne,'
 sayde blanchardyn, 'ye may beleue well for certayn
 that the god of loue werreth ayenst me right sore, to
 holde & kepe me here in³ this contrey / & to myn

and says
 it reminds him
 of his lady's
 beauty.

Blanchardyn
 curses his
 mishap in being
 separated from
 Eglantine,

and wishes she
 could know how
 he'd like to help
 her.

Sadoyne (the
 Prussian King's
 son)

overhears
 Blanchardyn,

and says he must
 be in love.

Blanchardyn
 confesses he is.

1-1 madame 2-2 Wanting in the Freuch. 3 *Orig.* herein.

aduyse, yf he wolde be content wyth reason / he sholde
suffre that som worde were brought here to me to the
comforte of one parte of my grete sorowe, ¹from her for
whos sake they be sore grounded wythin my penseful 4
herte¹ / I loke styl ouer the mountaynes & valeye als
ferre as my sight can comprehende; but, alas, I can not
chuse nor see the toure wherynne she holdeth her self' /
'O my right trusty frende & dere felawe,' sayde sadoyne, 8
'is it the toure of babylonye where she doth holde her /
or of Rome, ²of spayne, or of Almanye.'² 'Certes,'
sayde blanchardyn, 'it is not so ferre ³as ye wene,³ but
syth that ye desyre so sore to knowe myn angwyshe & 12
sorowe, I shall telle you what is me befall / I am a
seruaunt reteyned wyth the lady of Tourmaday, that is
called of euery man the proude mayden in amours.
She is beseged within her cyte by Kyng Alymodes, a 16
cruel tyraunt, kyng of Cassydonye, that hath had me
as his prysoner here before, but by fortune of the see
and the goode aduenture, thanked be oure lord, j am
escaped; he wold haue by strengthe & puyssaunce to 20
his spouse my sayd lady / But by cause that she wil
not haue him tyl her lord, he hath purposed to kepe
his power men of werre by fore her cyte of tourmaday
vnto tyme that he haue her at his wyll.' After the 24
wordes, the teeres ranne doune from his eyen. ¶ And
whan Sadoyne sawe his true and feythfull felawe
Blanchardyn make suche a sorowe, his herte bygan to
quake wythin hymself for pyte that he had of blanch- 28
ardyn / & sayde thus vnto hym, 'Certaynly, dere
felawe myne, yf ye wol do after me, we shal go wyth
all pouer & myght to helpe & socoure your lady, for
whos loue ye take suche a sorowe, & shal delyuere her 32
from Kyng Alymodes handes' / Blanchardyn, thenne

Blanchardyn
laments that he
cannot see where

his love Eglan-
tine, the lady of
Tormaday, is.

She is besieged
in Tormaday by
K. Alymodes,

who will per-
severe till she
weds him.

Sadoyne advises

that they shall
go with an army,

and deliver
Eglantine.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

²⁻² patras despaigne ditalie ou dallemaigne.

³⁻³ ou madame se tient que celles que vous auez nommees sont.

beholdyng ful pyteously vpon his felawe sadoyne,
sayde vnto hym, 'O the right grete recomforte of my
sorowful lyf / wolde god it were so as ye saye / for þ^e

4 Kyng Alymodes hath a daughter of his owne, whiche
is so fayr that god & nature can not amende her, nor
in no lande can be choson no fayrer / Certaynly yf we
coude bringe this werke at an ende, she sholde be yours

Blanchardyn promises Sadoyne Alymodes's daughter Beatrice, if he will help him.

8 wythout faylle' / 'My frende dere,' sayde sadoyne, 'it
lieth in the wyll of the goddes. We haue goode men of
werre ynough for to furnysshe this enterpryse, whiche
I sore do desyre for to gyue helpe to youre sorowes. I

12 wyll go toward the kyng my fader, for to haue leue
for you & for me.' Whether blanchardyn of this
tydynge was glad / it is not to be asked /

Sadoyne will ask his father's leave.

¶ The xxxiiij chapter conteyneth how sa-

16 doyne toke leue of his fader the kyng, &
so dyde Blanchardyn, & toke the see wyth
a grete naue, charged wyth men of werre,
for to gyue socoure to the proude pucelle
20 in amours / And of the prouost of Tour-
maday, whiche they founde by the waye.

After many wordes proffered & sayde betwene þ^e
two yonge knyghtes, sadoyne departed & com to
24 fore the kyng his fader, to whome in the best wyse
that he myght or coude / dyde shewe vnto him his
wyll / requiring of him that it myght be accom-
plished / shewyng vnto hym how that his royalme
28 was in peas & tranquillite that tyme, & that it was not
lyke that werre shold happe there to befall; and by cause
he was a yonge man, he wolde yet faine excereyse him
self in þ^e noble crafte of armes, & that a lawfull &
32 iuste cause he had to do soo, for to gyue socoure &
helpe the yonge knyght straunger, 'that thourgh his

Sadoyne asks his father, the King of Prussia,

to let him help Blanchardyn.

who has done so
much for them.

The Prussian
King

consents,

and fits out ships
for them,

with 12,000
knights,

and four idols on
board.

prouesse & grete worthynes hathe socoured you, and
holpen to putte out your mortal enmyes that were ferre
come wythin this your royalme / and hath brought in
to your handes as prysonner, your enmye the kynge of 4
polonye, for to do your owne wylle vpon hym / of the
whiche good seruyse, he ought of rayson to be well
rewarded' / Whan the kynge of prusse vnderstode his
son / he gaf to hym-self grete merueylle, & was wel 8
abashed of that soudayne a wylle that was come to him.
Neuertheles, whan he knewe, & that he was aduertysed
by his sone al alonge of the cause & quarelle of Blanch-
ardyn, he was al ynough content, and graunted hym his 12
request / Wherof his s^{on} & eke Blanchardyn cam &
fel bothe doune humbly at þ^e fote of hym, and thanked
him of that grete curtosye. And for to see and fur-
nysshe that this were doon, the kynge dyde make redy 16
suche shippes as apparteyned therunto, and made them
to be garnished well of vytaylles and of artyllery nede-
ful to suche an enterpryse. Vpon whiche nauye he
sent wyth his son and wyth Blanchardyn the nombre 20
of twelue thousand knyghtes of the most approued and
best chosen of al his royalme / and other men of werre
in grete nombre / Al their arraye was made redy, & the
daye come that they sholde departe. The kynge seenge 24
the barkes and shippes of his sone to be furnysshed of
men of werre and of vytaylles, of golde and syluer, and
of alle thyng that were necessary to them / he was
therof right glad / And syth dyde doo putte wyth the 28
shippes foure ydoles, his goddes, that were all of fyne
golde and garnysched full richely wyth grete perles and
precyouse stones. ¶ And after this he entred hym self
wythin the ship & toke his leue of his sone Sadoyne / 32
prayng vnto blanchardyn that he shold haue him for
recomended / & toke his leue of them / Whan the
kynge was come out of the ship where he had lefte his
sone sadoyne wyth blanchardyn / he beganne to wepe / 36

- And after that he was gon from hem / they made to
 take vp the aneres & to hale vp their saylles, wher-in
 þ^e wynde entred that had them soone ferre from the
 4 lande out of syght / & toke the hyghe see assone as
 they myght, sayllyng by the costes of many a strange
 regyon wythout fyndyng of eny aduenture that is to
 be recounted / & so longe they saylled bothe daye and
 8 nyght that they cam nyghe Tourmaday as two dayes
 Iournay / byfore whiche cyte was yet kyng Alymodes
 at siege wyth his oost, wherof the fayr the proude
 pucell in amours was sore displeysaunt. And in espe-
 12 cyall she was sore discomfited at her herte for the loue
 of her frende blanchardyn, that was the same tyme
 wyth his felawe sadoyne sayllyng vpon the see in grete
 gladnesse for the wynde & the see that were peaisible.
 16 And saylled so longe that they perceyued a galeye
 from ferre, that made fast waye ther as they went hem
 self, In whiche vessell was the prouost of Tourmadaye
 & other seruantes to the proude pucelle in amours,
 20 and cam ayen from the oncle, the kyng of the grete
 Norweghe, whiche they fonde but late ded whan they
 cam there, where they retourned wyth-out expedicyon
 of that wherfore they were goon thyder. Whan the
 24 prouost & they of the galeye dyde perceyue the shippes
 of Blanchardyn, they were full sore affrayed, by cause
 they knewe well anoon that they were all sarrasyns.
 ¶ And of that other parte, Blanchardyn and sadoyne
 28 perceyued sone that they of the galleye were crysten /
 they made anon after the sayd galleye for to enclose &
 take her / And whan they cam nyghe by her, they
 called & asked 'of whens was the vessell, What they
 32 were, & fro whens they came;' & thezne the prouost,
 wyth a grete drede & feer of his lyfe, lept forthe &
 sayde / 'Lordes, we see wel that we can not escape
 you / but for drede of noõ deth I shal not leue to telle
 36 vnto you the trouth of all oure affayre / We all that

Blanchardyn and
Sadoyne start.

When two days'
sail from Torma-
day

they see the gal-
ley of the Provost
of Tormaday,

coming back
from Norway.

The Prussians
come up with
the galley.

The Provost says they're sailing from Norway to their lady Eglantine.

He does not know Blanchardyn, whose face is darkend.

Blanchardyn is kind to the Provost,

and asks him about Tormaday.

The Provost tells him of Eglantine,

be here, come from the grete north weghe, & were sent toward the kyng of the lande, whiche was oncle to the proude mayden in loue, whiche is oure ladye & maystresse.' ¶ Blanchardyn, right Ioyouse, knewe fulsone 4 the prouost, & thought that sone ynought he sholde here of hym som goode tydynges of that thyng whiche he most desyred in this worlde / But the prouost knewe not blanchardyn the same tyme, by cause he was made 8 blak, disfigured & sore chaunged of face by strengthe of the sonne / but trowed that he had ben a sarrasyne as other were / Therne cam blanchardyn nyghe the bordours of the galley, & toke the prouoste by the hand, 12 & made hym to come wythin his ship. Of dyuerses thynges he questyoned hym, but the prouost ansuered ferfully, for he doubted them sore. So prayed he to blanchardyn, after he had exposed vnto hym of whens 16 he cam & what he was, that he wolde doo them no harme. Blanchardyn right humbly aysuered hym & sayde / 'ffrende, take no feere at all, for nother damage nor euyl shal not be don to you nor to non of yours, 20 for I shal myself conueye you yf nede be' / the prouost thanketh hym moche & was right glad. 'Sir,' sayde blanchardyn to the prouost, 'ye haue tolde me that ye be of the cite of tourmaday. I pray you that 24 ye wyl telle me in what regyon & what marche it is sette, and who is lord there. I praye you to telle me the trouth of it' / þe prouost therne seeng þat feabli he myght speke without doubte or fear, he dyde reherce 28 unto blanchardyn al a longe, how þe royalme of tourmaday was come to a doughter full fayre and goode, that made her self to be called the proude pucelle in amours, that neuer wolde wedde kyng, duc, nor erle, 32 how grete that he were; & that for the loue of a gentyl knyght that not longe agoo cam and socoured her in her werre, that she had and yet hath ayenst the kyng Alymodes, that wolde haue her to his wyff. 'But, 36

sire,' sayde the prouost / 'by grete infortune the worthy
 knyght wherof I do speke to you, and the most valyaunt
 and most fayre that euer man myght or coude seke
 4 noowher in all the worlde, was taken of kyng Aly-
 modes folke by-fore the cyte of Tourmaday; whiche
 kyng hath sent hym in to exile in ferre landes, that
 none can not knowe where / But that men saye that of
 8 hym sholde be made a present to a kyng sarrasyne,
 whos brother the sayd knyght had slayen. Wherfor
 my sayd lady is in grete displaysure, & ceaseth not
 nyght nor day to wysse hym wyth her / praying god
 12 for his retourne agayne. The sayd kyng Almodes is
 alwaye kepyng his siege before her cyte of Tourmaday,
 & wasteth & distroyeth al the contrey about, for other
 harme can he not do to her, the towne and the castel
 16 are stronge ynoghe and are vytayled alle ynough, so that
 or euer he coude haue them, my sayde lady sholde be
 for aaged.' Blanchardyn herde wel gladly the prouost /
 and sayde to sadoyne his felowe in his ere, that of his
 20 lady in amours thees wordes were sayde. Sadoyne
 dyde here hem gladly, and the deuyses wyth Blanch-
 ardyn to the said prouost of many thynges concernyng
 this matyre. And Blanchardyn coude vnderstande
 24 noo thyng by the prouost, but that all was at his
 auantage, wherby he knewe that he was in his lady's
 grace as well as he was euer afore / ¶ The prouost
 thenne seeng soo many fayre men of armes, he pryuely
 28 demaunded of Blanchardyn / yff they wolde be soul-
 dyours of the fayre, the proude mayden in amours,
 ayenst the kyng Almodes, and they shold be right
 well payed / Thenne ansuered to hym Blanchardyn and
 32 sayde, 'I byleue al ynough well that yf she wolde
 make of one of vs a kyng, she myght of lyght be serued
 of vs and of oure men.' 'Syre,' sayde the prouost, 'it
 is no nede to speke more herof / for she shal neuer take,
 36 I am well sure, non other man tyl her lord, but that self

BLANCHARDYN.

and how her lover
 Blanchardyn was
 taken prisoner,

and how she sor-
 rows for him.

Sadoyne is let
 into the secret.

The Provost asks
 if the Prussians
 will fight for
 Eglanthie.

Blanchardyn
asks

if Eglantine
is inconstant,
like other
women,

and what the
name of her
lover is.

The Provost an-
swers, 'Blanch-
ardyn.'

She dreams of
him,

and loves him
most truly.

knyght of whom I spake right now to you of / nor
non shal hane her royaltie of her but only hym self.'

¶ 'How thenne,' sayd blanchardyn, 'thynke ye that
her loue be so stedfastly & so truly sette vpon hym 4
that kynge Alymodes hath sent to be presented as ye
saye / Is it your aduyse that yf of aduenture he cam
ayen to her, that she wolde sette ought by hym / for
it is sayde of a custome, that the herte of a woman is 8
mutable and inconstaunt, and not in purpos stedfast' /
'Ha, ha, sire,' sayde the prouoste, 'pleysed god that
he myght come to her ayen, Neuer happed so goode a
daye to the contrey nor to hym also / for he shold 12
renewe manyfold þ^e goode grace of her that so truli
loueth him.' 'frende,' sayde Blanchardyn, 'I praye
you telle me the name of the knyght of whom ye doo
speke so moche.' 'Sir,' sayde the prouost, 'the knyght 16
of whom my sayde lady is so sore enamoured vpon, hath
to his name blanchardyn / Ye may well be sure that
she shal neuer forgete hym, nor sette her herte from
hym / though she were insured neuer to see hym / for 20
she wol not here nother prayer nor requeste of no man
in this world, al be he neuer so grete a kyng or prince.
She dremeth often that her frende Blanchardyn cometh
ayen, & that they embrace & kysse each other in recom- 24
pence of þ^e right euyl tyme in whiche they haue be
longe in grete displaisure one from another / & for to
telle you þ^e trouth¹ of it, It were not possyble to [l]oue
more tenderly nor more truly than she doth hym / so 28
oughte wel þ^e said knyght to haue her ryght dere, yf
he lyue yet.' 'frende,' sayd blanchardyn, 'I doute not
but he doth so / and aduyse is to me that wyth al
dilygence he shold himsilf come to socoure her at her 32
nede, ²after his power, yf / he applye him it* to do
soo' / ²

¹ *Orig.* troutghi

²⁻² se en lui estoit de ce faire.

* *Orig.* is

¶ The xxxv chapter speketh of the grete¹
 deuyses of þ^e prouost & of blanchardyn /
 and of the lettres that he sent to his
 4 lady, the proude pucell in amours / And
 of the Ioye that she made whan she had
 red them.

8 **A**fter all the deuyses aboue sayd, blanchardyn drew
 hymself aside wyth-in his vessell, and toke both
 ynke & paper, and wrote a letter with his owne hande
 vnto the fayer proude mayden in loue / whiche lettres
 he toke to the prouost for to be presented vnto his
 12 lady. The prouoste toke them, promyttyng to do
 therwyth his deuoyr / And thenne blanchardyn sayd
 vnto the prouoste / 'frende, all these shyppes &
 tharmye that is herin are sarasyns; and I am a
 16 paynem, & ful well I knowe blanchardyn, wyche is
 enprysoned in paynems land, where he suffreth grete
 euyls & grete sorowe / but so moche do I knowe of his
 doynge / that he doth not care so moche for all that /
 20 as he doth of that he knoweth wel that the proude
 pucell in amours is, for his sake, sore greued atte her
 hert' / 'Syr,' sayd the prouoste, 'I praye to our lorde
 that the knyght for whos loue my said lady taketh
 24 suche an heuynes atte herte, more than I can tell
 you / maye retorne ayen wthyin shorte tyme / for the
 pytyuoes complayntes that she daily maketh for her
 louer, maketh vs al to lyue in grete dyscomforte' /
 28 After dyuerse talkynke don by blanchardyn & the
 prouost, they sepayred hemsylf, & toke leue of eche
 other. So went the prouost & entred ayen in to his
 galee, holdyng goode fortune & a goode wynde, wherby
 32 wythin a whyle he was ferre a-fore the shyp where
 blanchardyn was inne / & so sore employted wyth sayles

Blanchardyn
 writes a letter to
 Eglantine,

and assures the
 Provost of his
 joy in her love.

The Provost sets
 sail.

¹ *Orig.* thegtere

In three days the
Provost reaches
Tormaday.

He and his fel-
lows return
thanks to the
Virgin.

The Provost tells
Eglantine that
her uncle is dead,

that his Barons
look to her as
their Sovereign,

1 H. j.

and will soon
come to help her.

& oores, that at thende of thre dayes he arryued wythin
the hauen of Tourmaday wyth his felyshyp, wythoute
eny lette were don to them / But a lytyl afore, they had
be ryght sore afrayed leste they shold be recountred by 4
kyнге Alymodes folke / how be yt that there was no
ship that waye that coude haue hurte theym. Not-
wythstandyng this, there were smal rennyng vesselles,
that oftymes dyspoyled & robbed theym that cam to 8
the sayd hauen of Tourmaday, aswell by lande as vpon
the see. whan the prouost was arryued, or euer he
went in / his owne hous nor noo where, he & all his
felyship went into our ladyes chirche of Tourmaday, for 12
to yelde vnto her thanks & praysynges of the godde
aduenture that was com to hym: they made theyr
offrynges, & syn departed / Ye may wele thynke that
the prouost was that tyme full well accompanied of 16
the barons, nobyl men, & bourgeys of the sayd cyte,
for the grete loue that they had vnto hym / and also
that he was worthy therof / and thus accompanied, he
cam in to the paleys, where he fonde the proude pucell 20
in amours, that welcomed hym & made hym grete
chere, and was ryght glad of his commynge ayen /
and then þ^e pucell asked hym tydynges of the kyng
her vncle, & how he had exployted & furnyshed her 24
message. ‘Madame,’ sayd the prouost, ‘I haue ben in
the grete Norweyghe, wenyng to fynde ther the kyng
your vncle / but thre dayes byfore my comyng thyder,
it pleased god that your vncle the kyng termyned his 28
lyff by deth, that then toke hym; wherby the barons
of the realme ben in grete troubyl, & haue noo recom-
forte but in you, that are theyr lady by verey suc-
cessyon, as heyre of the land most nexte parent / 32
Wherfore ¹they sende worde to you by me / that after
thobsequyes and fyneralles of your sayd vncle be doon /
they shall approche, puttyng theymself in ordynauce
for to helpe & socoure you, as they ought for to do 36

to their natural lady and souerayn prynces.' Whan
the nobyl mayden herde & vnderstode the prouost, she
began to make grete sorowe / but þ^e prouost sayde vnto
4 her, for to recomforte her / 'Madame, ther nys so grete
sorowe, but that it may be forgoton at the laste / and
afterwarde cometh som other message, that is cause to
reioyse & brynge the creatures into consolacion. I
8 saye this, therfor / that after the pyteous tydynges that
I haue brought vnto you of your vncles deth / I shall
now telle you one thyng that of reason ought please
you well / loke ! here ys a letter that a paynem knyght
12 hath taken to me, whiche ful sore prayed me that
I shulde dyrecte them vnto you.' The lady, that
wepte ryght sore, toke the letter & red yt / wherof the
tenore was suche as foloweth. ¶ 'My ryght redoubted
16 lady, the supportans of my poure lyff, the gladnes of
the hert of me, and the thyng whiche in this worlde
I most desyre, I me recomende ryght humbly vnto
your good grace / After the harde fortune that I had
20 to be prysoner vnto kynge Alymodes, god, my swete
creatour, whom I yelde praysynges & louyng, hath
long preserued & kept me from deth ; and hath delyuerd
me from the peryles of the see, wherof I all alone am
24 escaped ; but myn enmyes that led me forth wyth
them, were all drowned and peryshed in the see, and
not one that escaped alyue, sauf my self alonely / to
whom our lord hath don thys grace, wherof I ought
28 wel to Ioye my self in yeuyng vnto hym thankes &
praysynges euermore / After thys fortune I haue ben
syn, as force compellyd me therto, seruauzt vnto a
kynge sarasyn, as I had ben one of theym ; ffro the
32 whiche kyng, to myn worship and wyth grete loue, I
am departed ; & hath taken me in my kepyng his
sone and twelue thousand knyghtis, right expert in
armes, and other souldyours in grete nombre, for to
36 come and socoure you, and to take vengeaunce vpon

Eglantine
sorrowes ;

but the Provost
gives her Blanch-
ardyn's letter,

which tells her
how,

after his capture,

he alone escaped
drowning,

and then servd a
Saracen King,

who has given
him his son and
12,000 knights to
avenge her on
K. Alymodes.

Blanchardyn reminds Eglantine how he once kist her.

He prays God to fulfil her desires.

kyнге Alymodes the tyraunt, that was the thyнге that most I dyde desyre in this world, as of reason my dutye was. And to the surplus, to the playsure of oure lorde, and hym playсед / ye shal vnderstande by 4 mouthe ferthere of myn astate / And by cause ye shall gyue credence and feyth to this, myn owne hande wrytyng, I do now bringe to your remembrance that one onely kyssyng that I toke of yow, not ferre 8 wythout youre cyte of Tourmaday, afore that I was of you reteyned in to your noble seruyse. ¶ My right redoubted lady, I praye to god to gyue you the complыshement of your noble desyres. Wryton vpon 12 the see by the hande of the knyght unfortunate / Thus signed Blanchardyn.'

¶ The xxxvj chapiter conteyneth and speketh of the Ioye that the proude 16 pucelle in amours made for loue of the commyng of her specyall frende blanchardyn / And of the grete sorowe that she made anone after, whan she see that 20 fortune so lyghtly had hym and his nauye ayen in to the see, ferre from the hauen of Tourmaday /

Eglantine rejoices at Blanchardyn's letter.

WHan the proude mayden in amours had red the 24 saide letters al alonge, & wel vnderstand the tenoure therof, the Ioye was not lytyl that she made for the reception of the same. She demaunded of the prouost yf he knewe not hym that had taken the 28 letters vnto hym / he sayde 'nay' / but vnto her he recounted & tolde the manere, & how as by a happe / he had fonde & met wyth a myghty nauye, vpon whiche was a right grete excercyte of folke of armes; 32 but they were alle ¹sarrasyns, & had theyre byleue

vpon their ydolles / & emonge them all was one knyght
 that coude speke to me / 'Ha, ha, prouost!' sayde the
 lady / 'well ye haue be deceyued, whan ye dyde not
 4 knowe hym that somtyme ye haue lodged in your
 house wyth you. It was, I ensure you, my moost dere
 frende blanchardyn, that at my grete nede cometh to
 socoure and helpe me / how thenne haue ye not knowe
 8 hym? ¹a grete merueylle I haue therof' ¹ / 'Madame,'
 sayd the prouost, 'as to the body of hym, he may be
 lykened well ynough to blanchardyn / but the face of
 hym was dyed and blake, as all other of his felyship
 12 were. Moche grete merueylle I gyue to my self that
 he dyde not dyscouere hym self vnto me' / The
 pucelle, heryng the prouost speke, beganne to smyle
 and lawhe strongly / full sone was forgoton her onclis
 16 deth, for cause of the right Ioyfull tydynges that she
 had herd of blanchardyn, the whiche were full soone
 knowen thourgh all the cyte, whyche thyng brought a
 newe Ioye to alle the enhabytantes there. But who
 20 someuer made Ioye therof, the proude pucell in amours
 reioysshed her self aboue all other, by cause that this
 nyghed her at herte. All ynough she red and ouered
 the sayd letters, whiche she dyde kysse full ofte, soo
 24 sore was her thoughte vpon blanchardyn / The nyght
 passed, and the fayr day cam. And erly in the
 mornyng the pucelle rose from her bed; and whan she
 was clothed, and opened the wyndowe, and loked ferre
 28 vpon the see, yf euere by aduenture she myght see ne
 chuse the nauye of blanchardyn / She behelde so longe
 on euery syde, that she byganne to chuse and perceyue
 the saylles of the shippes of hym that so sore moche
 32 she had desyred / She was thenne recomforted of all
 thynges, and remembred her self of non euyl that she
 had suffred byfore that / An hundred tymes she salued
 & made obeyssaunce to þ^e shippes, prayng to god that

Eglantine chaffs
 the Provost for
 not recogniz'ng
 Blanchardyn.

She soon forgets
 her uncle's
 death, in her joy
 at the news from
 Blanchardyn.

She often kisses
 his letter,

and in the morn-
 ing

sees the sails of
 his ships.

Eglantine says
she shall soon
haue 30,000 fresh
helpers.

But a great storm
rises,

and carries
Blanchardyn's
ships

far from Torma-
day.

Eglantine la-
ments her loss of
Blanchardyn.

2 II iij.

they may arryue sauf & sounde. Atte that hour her
maystres was beside her, whiche was ful glad to see
her thus mery & ful of Ioye; to whom the lady sayd,
that sone she shuld haue socours of xxx. thousand 4
1 knyghtes & 1 souldyors, that ayenst king almodes
shold helpe her. As she was thus talkyng wyth her
maystres, and that the vessayls beganne to com nyghe,
and made redy all thynges to take lande, a south wynd 8
rose vp sodanly, horryble & gret; the see beganne to ryse
& swelle, and the wawes waxed so bygge & so grete, that
they semed to be mountayns / And was the tempeste
so perelouse, that they were constreyned to enter into 12
the brode see agayne, leste they sholde haue smytten
hemsylf agrounde / and so wythdrew hemsylf fro lande /
they were so sore tourmentyd that the cordes and the
saylles breke of all their shyppes, or of the most 16
partye, and were fayne to cutte of their mastes, haban-
dounnyng to the wynde & wawes of the see the
conducte of them alle / and were caste so ferre into the
hyghe see, that in a shorte whyle they knewe not in 20
what marche of the see they were / The proude pucell
in amours seeng thys grete infortune, wende to haue
deyd ancne for the grete dyspleasure that she toke of
thys cursed aduenture, & reputed her self indygne to 24
haue eny helpe nor socours, whan she see her fortune
thus torned ayenst her. She began to crye aloude,
sayng in thys wyse / ' Alas, my ryght trusty & feythful
louer, I perceyue well that I shall neuer see you more / 28
I am the cause of your Inconuenyent ye were taken
in my seruyse' / She made so grete mone and so
pytefull complayntes, as any body in thys worlde
myghte doo / alwayes dyscomfertyng her owne self 32
wythouten mesure. ¶ we shall leue to speke of the
proude pucell in amours, vnto the tyme be comen that
her sorowe be lefte, 2and her Ioye recouered and

renewed / and shal shewe you of blanchardyn, and of
Sadoyne ¹his feythful felawe.¹

¶ The xxxvij chapiter conteyneth how
4 blanchardyn and Sadoyne arryued by
fore the cyte of Cassydonye, wher they
founde daryus, that cam to speke ²of
them / ²

8 **W**ELL, ye haue herde here aboue the ryght mer-
ueyllouse & horrybyl fortune that happed to
blanchardyn and to Sadoyne, that daye they shold
haue taken lande atte the hauen of Tourmadaye, whiche
12 were all redy caste ferre frome all costes, & waited but
þ^e hour whan they shold be drowned, wherof they were
in a grete fere / Then sayd blanchardyn to Sadoyne,
that he doubted ryght sore lest god were wroth vpon
16 theym by cause they had brought wyth theym theys
cursed ydolles, and that hym semed yf he wold be
baptysed & all his folk, & to byleue in our feith, that
the tempeste shold breke, he preched so longe sadoyn
20 & his folke, that they all of one assent & accorde pro-
mytted vnto Blanchardyn that they sholde deuoutly do
baptyse hem self, and shold byleue in the holy crysten
feyth whan they shold come to lande, or in place where
24 hit myght be doon. The whyche thyng cuyn so as
they promysed it full deuoutly ded accomplyshe hit
afterward. They toke awaye the precieuse stones, &
the gold & syluer from theyre ³ydolles & maumetys,³
28 and syn cast them in the see wyth goode herte / Soo
taryed not long after thys was doon that the tempeste
ceassed, and the see became swete and amiable / and be-
came as a lytyll ryuer. ¶ After the ceasse of thys
32 tempest that had broughte theym so ferre oute of

Blanchardyn

says that God
has sent the
storm because
they haue idols
on board.

If Sadoyne and
his Prussians 'll
be baptized as
soon as they
land, the tempest
'll stop.

They agree to
turn Christian,
and they throw
their idols into
the sea,

which then be-
comes as smooth
as a river.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

²⁻² a culx

³⁻³ decepuables et dampnables ydolles

The Prussians
reach the haven
of Cassidonie,
where Darius
and his sister
Beatrice are.

The Prussians
land,

learn that Cassi-
donie is K. Aly-
modes's country,

and resolve to
attack the town.

theyre knowleche that they wyste not where they
were, fortune ledde theym in atte the hauon of Cassy-
donye, where Daryus, the sone of Kyng Alymodes, was
that daye, ¹and the fayre Beatryx his suster wyth hym, ⁴
whiche was vttyrly fayre, and replenysshed of all goode
condicyons and maners that may be in a creature /
Blanchardyn and Sadoyne, seeyng that they were
comen tyl a sure hauene, and they and their folke all ⁸
sauf, they were right glad. They thanked our lord,
and had doune their saylles / cast their ancrs, and
syth lepte a lande and their men of armes wyth them,
whiche they renged, and dyde set hem in gode ordon- ¹²
aunce of battaylle al alonge the medowes that were
there full fayre and grete, by cause that they knewe not
in what marche they were arryued, no whether they of
the contrey were frendes or enmyes. Sadoyne wende ¹⁶
at fyrst that it had be Tourmaday / but they fonde a
man, and asked hym the name of the towne, and who
was lord of it. He ansuerd to them that it was the
cyte of Cassydonye, wherof Alimodes is lord and kynge ²⁰
of this royalme, that for the tyne beyng was wyth a
right grete pyssaunce of men of werre before Tourma-
day kepyng there his siege / And that his sonn daryus
and the fayre Beatryx his doughter were bothe togyder ²⁴
wythinne the towne of Cassydonye / ¶ Blanchardyn
was Ioyfull and glad to here these tydynges, and sayde,
all lawghyng to Sadoyne, 'that they were well arryued
vpon their enmyes, And that euery man sholde thynke ²⁸
to proue hym self well, for they must assaylle the
towne, bycause that the lady that he dyde promytte to
hym was within Cassydonye' / And, morouer, he
sayde vnto Sadoyne: 'my right trusty felawe, we ben ³²
come to a goode hauen / it is to vs force that this cyte
be wonne and conquered by oure strengthe / and after
that we shal go to the playsure of god for to socoure
and helpe myn owne dere lady, the proude pucelle in ³⁶

amours' / Sadoyne, heryng Blanchardyn, that sayle
 1 to hym that the fayre Beatrix, whiche he had so sore
 desyred afore was wythin the cyte of Cassydonye, was
 4 right glad that they were arryued there. He toke and
 gadred all newe corage wythin hym self / and mounted
 to gyder on horsbacke, Blanchardyn and he, and alle
 theyr folke dyde so, and poynted himself for to fyght
 8 or for to gyue assawte to the towne. Euyng at that
 same houre that the sayde barouns were in the medowe
 renged one nyghe another, and redy for to fyght /
 Daryus, kynge Alymodes sone, was at a wyndowe
 12 of a grete toure wythin his paleys, out of whiche he
 loked, and behelde ouer² the medowes and ouer the
 playne, whiche he see all coueryd with men of armes
 that were afore the towne, wherof he was right sore
 16 merueylled, and wyst not yf they were frendes or foes.

¶ He made hym self to be armed hastely, & dyde
 publishe thourgh alle the towne, and to them of his
 house, that all sholde be armed on horsbacke, and redy
 20 for to go wyth hym wyth out makynge eny delaye /
 for he sayde that he wold go to vnderstande what folke
 they were that comen in armes so nyghe his towne /
 And after that daryus commaunded was publyshed /

24 ther were tenn thousand Cassydonyens soone redy,
 right well in harneys, wel appoynted, that folowed
 hym, and yssued out of the towne wyth daryus, that
 was rydyng before hem all vpon a right myghty
 28 courser / And Blanchardyn and Sadoyne that sawe
 hym comen made on her bataylles, and cam ayenst
 daryus, that sore hyghe byganne to calle, and sayde :
 'Ye lordes that are here comen, & haue seased my
 32 hauen, and taken lande / and that shewe tokens that
 your purpos is for to werre vpon me / telle me yf ye
 be sarrasyns.' ¶ Thenne Blanchardyn, his spere in
 hande, ³and all armed fro top to too³ byfore his

1 H liij.

Blanchardyn and
Sadoyne mount,and their men
make ready.

Darius arms,

and with 10,000
Cassidonians
sallies from the
town.Blanchardyn
tells him² *Orig.* ouer and ouer³⁻³ Wanting in the French.

that they are
come to help
Eglantine
against K. Aly-
modes,

and mean to take
his city of Cassi-
donie,

and give Beatrice
to the Prussian
Prince Sadoyne.

bataylle, answered hym that they were not sarrasyns,
'but we ben,' sayde he, 'crysten men that wyl go to
gyue socoure and helpe vnto that mayden, the lady of
Tourmaday, where as the tyraunt alymodes kepeth now 4
his siege byfore þ^e towne; but I wyl wel that thou
know that in an euyl houre he cam euere there / for yf
we may fynde hym, we shall make hym to deye a
shamefull dethe. And wyth this, yf it pleyseth vnto 8
Ihesu cryst, in whom we byleue / we shal this daye
take by strengthe his cyte of Cassydonye / And see
here by me Sadoyne, the sone of the kynge of prusse,
that shal mary his doughter thy suster, the fayr Beatryx. 12
So shall he reigne in this lande, where he shal soone be
obeyed, loued, and dred as a lord souerayne. ¹And we
shal not ceasse vnto tyme, that to the playsure of Ihesu
cryst / we shall haue all our wylle in this byhalve' /¹ 16

¶ The xxxviij chapter conteyneth how the
valyaunt blanchardyn slewe daryus, and
of the grete bataylle, where the Cassy-
donyens were dyscomfyted and ouer- 20
thrawen, and the cyte taken. ²And the
fayr Beatryx was taken to mercy,² & how
Sadoyne and the fayre Beatryx made
hem self to be baptyzed, and their folke 24
wyth them /

Darius recog-
nizes Blanch-
ardyn,

and tries to flee;

WHan Daryus vnderstode thees wordes, he knewe
all ynough that it was blanchardyn the worthy
knight; wherof he gaff hym selff moche grete merueylle 28
of the manere how he was escaped from thre score
men, to whom he had taken the charge to kepe hym,
and to haue presented hym vnto the kynge of Sala-
mandrye. He wende to haue tourned the brydell of 32

his horsse, ¹for he was right sore affrayed to see hym
there byfore hym /¹

¶ But Blanchardyn perceyued it anone, and he but Blanchardyn
4 that well lerned was in all poyntes of werre / kept
Darius ther fro. He gaff his hors the spore, and cam
and kutte the waye betwene their two bataylles / for
he was right well horsed. he folowed daryus of so
8 nyghe that he ouer reched hym with his swerde, as he
was fleyng at the right syde of hym, soo that his riche
cote of maylle myght not warauntyze hym. But he
cutte bothe fleshe and bone, and made in his body a slashes Darius
12 grete wounde mortall, And syth recouered another with his sword
stroke, so that he smote hym doune ded to the grounde and then kills
from his horse. Atte that oure were the Cassydonyens him.
sore abashed whan they sawe their lorde that laye
16 vpon the grounde sterk ded / They wysshed and com-
playned hym sore, But neuerthelesse they anaunced The Cassidonians
themself proudely, & ranne vpon their enmyes / charge the
¶ Themne bygaune the bataylle grete and cruell of Prussians.
20 bothe partes. Blanchardyn and Sadoyne made there
merueylles of armes / they brake and cutte Cassy-
donyens on all sydes. No man was there so hardy
that durste approche hem, where al as they came they
24 made þ^e presse to sprede abroad / Blanchardyn dyde
espye a knyght that bare the standarde of the cassy-
donyens / he ranne vpon hym, and gaaff hym suche Blanchardyn
an horryble stroke vpon his helme that he all to- brains their
28 brayned hym wyth his swerde. And thus he ouer- Standard-bearer,
threwe doune bothe man & standarde, so that the
Cassydonyens had not syth the powere for to haue
dressyd it vp ayen, but were slayne and all to-cutte and and many of
32 clouen, that all the wayes were couered of bodyes ded them are slain
and wounded men. The same tyme was the fayre or wounded.
Beatrix at a wyndowe wythin the paleys loking vpon
the batayll, that sone perceyued & knewe that the losse

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

Bentrice sees
that she must
yield up the town

and herself.

She surrenders
both to Sadoyne.

Blanchardyn and
Sadoyne

put all the
Cassidonians to
flight, and enter
their city with
them.

was tourned vpon her party. Wherefore she wist well
for certayne that Impossyble was to her for to kepe the
towne ayenst so grete a puyssaunce as she dyde see by-
fore her / consydering that the best defense & the 4
moost worthy knyghtes of the lande were wyth her
fader, the kynge Alymodes, at the siege by fore
Tourmaday / and that suche as were yssued out there
were almost all ouer throwen / Wel saw þ^e fayre 8
Beatryx that she muste yelde vp her self. The same
tyme passed Sadoyne by-fore the wyndowe, that wyth
bothe handes smote vpon his enmyes / The fayre
Beatryx called hym, sayng in this manere: 'Alas, 12
right noble knyght, I gyue my self vnto you / prayeng
that ye wol saue bothe me and my cyte, And to take
vs in to your mercy and pyte / hauyng compassyon
vpon a yong mayden that yeldeth her self vnto you' / 16
Sadoyne, loking toward the wyndow, heued right
soone his hand vpward and sayde, & promysed her
that he sholde warauntise her from all harme; he was
right glad of these tydynges. It was not longe after 20
this that blanchardyn and Sadoyne dyde mete to
gyder, hauyng their swerdes in their fystes, all dyed
wyth the blode of their enmyes that they had al to-
hewen and clouen, and fynally dyde so moche by their 24
prouesse that wythin a whyle they made the Cassy
donyens to fle, and discomfyted them / & so nyghe
they chassed them that they entred in to þ^e cyte wyth
them. It was grete horreur to see the horryble occy- 28
sion and slawghter that was made in the playne byfore
the town, where the bodyes lay by ded, grete hepes
here and there in many places / whan blanchardyn saw
that they were com to their aboue of their enmyes, 32
And that no resystence at all was made ayenst hem /
He made by a trompette to be proclamed that the
slawhter sholde ceasse wyth in the ¹towne, syth that
they were lordes & maysters of the same, the whiche 36

thyng was don as yt was commaunded. Sone after
 thys blanchardyn & Sadoyne cam to the paleys wyth-
 oute to fynd eny body that wold hem lete or gaynsey
 4 thentre therof. they went into the hall, where the
 founde the fayer Beatrix, that cam ayenst them &
 yelded herself to them, prayng that they wold haue
 pyte vpon her. Blanchardyn toke the mayden by the
 8 hande, sayng to her: 'ffayer damesel, god forbede that
 euyl nor harme sholde be don to you!' he cam toward
 sadoyn, & sayd vnto hym / 'My ryght trusty felawe /
 the promysse that byfore this tyme I made vnto you I
 12 wol now quyte my self therof toward you. Take thys
 pucell, I geue her to you / by suche a condycoun that
 ye shal helpe me to socoure the proude pusell in amours.'
 Sadoyne, ryght glad, all laughyng, aunswerd to blanch-
 16 ardyn: 'ffrend myn, yt is wel reson that I do so, and
 wyth ryght a good hert I shal goo to helpe you, for wel
 I am bounde therunto / your promysse ye haue ryght
 wele acquyted vnto me, & an houndred thousand
 20 thankes I gyue you therfor.' sadoyne behelde þ^e pucell
 beatrix, ¹þ^e so gentyl was, & so odly fayr / ¹he enbraced
 & kyssed her, sayeng: 'ffayr dameseyll, ye & I my
 self shal be baptyssed, and after that I shall take you to
 24 myn own dere spouse & wyff / for I woll that thys
 false lawe & vnabyl byleue, & thys peruerse sacryfices,
 that ben to this false Idoles, ye leue & forsake.' ¶ She
 aunswerd full mekely, that she shulde so do wyth ryghte
 28 a goode wylle. ¶ wythin the same cyte of Cassydoune
 were the same tyme certeyne crysten men that dwelled
 there vnder trybute, that were ryghte glad whan they
 sawe by the crysten men the town was take. But by
 32 the comaundement of Blanchardyn the preeste of the
 crysten men that were dwellynge there assembled anone,
 and made redy many tubbys and other vesselles full of
 fayne water, whiche he blessed and halowed ther² ynne.

Blanchardyn and
Sadoyne are

met by Beatrice.

Blanchardyn
gives her to
Sadoyne.

Sadoyne kisses
Beatrice.

They will both
be baptized, and
then marry.

The Christian
priest gets plenty
of tubs;

¹⁻¹ qui tant estoit belle et gente

² Orig. thher

and baptizes all
the Cassidonians,

Then Sadoyne
weds Beatrice,

who wears many
rich jewels,

Sadoyne then

reforms the ill-
custons of
Cassidonie,

and sets the land
in good order,

Sadoyne and Beatryx, and all their people, made hem
self to be baptyzed. And namely,¹ all the people of
that contrey were conuerted into our holy feythe.
After these thynges thus happed and doon / Sadoyne 4
wedded the fayre Beatryx, the doughter of kynge
Alymodes / The solemnytez of the wedlok were made
grete and notable, where the knyghtes and ladyes of
the lande were all of the noble clothyng, wherof þ^e 8
pucelle was ornated wyth all, it is no nede to telle you
of it. But wel I dare saye, that neuer in thoo dayes,
nor an hondred yere afore, men had not seen eny quene
nor pryncesse more richely arayed; for so many a ryche 12
Iewell, so grete haboundance of precyouse stones, and
so grete a tresoure was ther wyth-in the paleys, ygadred
by the kyng Alymodes, that it was a thyng Infynyte,
by cause that all the dayes of his lyff he had be a grete 16
tyraunt / Soo had he taken and rauysshed, & by stronge
hande vpon his neyghbours, bothe ferre and nere, all
that he fonde of grete value. ¶ Thre dayes hool lasted
the feste / And syth after Sadoyne byganne to enquire 20
of the gouernaunce and astate of the lande, as to hym
was nedefull to be doo. The euyll custumes he dyd
brynge doune, And sette vp the goode / and syth
putte goode prouysyon for the Iustyse, and dyde 24
stablysshe prouostes, ballyffes, and rulers of the lande /
and putte sure watche in all the townes and castelles.
And by all the counseyll and goode aduyse of Blanch-
ardyn, that was right wyse /

28

¶ The xxxix chapter conteyneth how
blanchardyn fonde his fader, the kynge
of ffryse, that was prysoner wythin Cas-
sydonye, and of the pyteouse deuyses that 32
the fader and the sone had to gydre.

¹ mesmement

After these tydynges don and brought at an ende,
 It happed that one a day blanchardyn, Sadoyne,
 and his wyff the fayer Beatryx, were sitting at the
 4 bord takynge their recreacyon / The same tyme herde
 blanchardyn a voyce of a man that full pyteously ¹la-
 mented hym self; ¹ wherof he toke grete merueylle, for
 he alredy had herde hym crye by whiles thre tymes /
 8 he demaunded of theym that were there byfore the
 table, who myght be that wayled and cryed so pyte-
 ously / ¶ Ther was a knyght that answered hym, and is told that
 and sayde: 'Syre, it is not long a goo that Daryus
 12 made a coursse in to ffryse, wyth a grete nombre of
 shippes, in so moche that by tempeste of the see he
 was cast in to an hauen of the see of the sayde lande,
 where he made grete wast, toke and slewe many men,
 16 and many he dyde brynge wyth hym prysoners /
 wherof emong other is one that called hym self lord of
 them alle / and the same is he that ye haue herde crye
 so pyteously' / Whan Blanchardyn herde speke of
 20 ffryse, he doubted hym well sone that it was som man of
 his lynage and sybbe, and was sore dyspleased for the
 destruction of his lande, & wel glad to be auenged
 wyth his owne hande vpon the personne of Darius,
 24 that the said distruction had commytted and don /
 Sadoyne thenne dyde sende incontynent toward the
 pryson, and made to be brought out of it the noble
 kynge of fryse / The tables were alredy taken vp
 28 whan he was brought into the halle / Whan blanch-
 ardyn sawe the noble kynge his fader, he knewe hym
 anone, how wel that he was ryght sore chaunged of
 face, for grete sorowe and hardnesse of the pryson.
 32 ¶ Blanchardyn coude not kepe hym self, but that the
 grete teerys dropped fast out of his eyen, for grete pyte
 that he had of his fader ²/ and myght kepe his coun-
 teynauunce, nor behaue hym self.² And whan he was

Blanchardyn
hears a man
lamenting,

it is the captive
Lord of Fries-
land.

Sadoyne sends
for the prisoner,

in whom Blanch-
ardyn recognizes
his father.

¹⁻¹ se lamentoit

²⁻² Wanting in the French.

The prisoner
says he was once
King of Fries-
land,

was captured by
Darius, and cast
into a dark
dungeon.

He once had a
son, who left him.

He asks for
death rather
than re-imprison-
ment.

Blanchardyn
tells his father

that he knew his
son,

com ayen to his manere / he demaunded of his fader
what lande he was of / The goode kyng answered
hym, and sayde: 'I am a power caytyf kyng, that
somytyme regned in fryse lande / But thourgh fortune 4
changeable my lande hath be wasted and lost by
darius, the sone of kyng Alymodes; and after that he
had vtirly dystroyed a grete part of my royalme, he
brought me wyth hym to be here his prysoner, lyuyng 8
full pourly wythin a derke dongeon / and wold neuer
putte me to noo raenson / A fayr sone I had somtyme
of myn owne spouse, my wyff, whiche I helde & had
full tenderly dere; but bycause I wolde not make 12
hym a knyght / yongthe mouid hym & departed from
me. And syth, as I haue tolde you / my self, my
royalme, & my folke haue be thus dystroyed and
wasted. what wol ye doo of me? I am but a man 16
lost for euer more / I requyre you that ye wyl slee me,
for to brynge my grete myserye at an ende / And nought
to putte me ayen in to the ¹harde and ¹tenebrouse
pryson, where I and my knyghtes haue be so longe, 20
²shortyng oure dayes in suche pouerte, as ye may
see ² / The goode kyng thenne, that thus reherced his
angwysshe and displaysirs, byganne to wepe & sobbe
right sore / Blanchardyn asked of the kyng, yf he 24
sawe his sone / whether he sholde knowe hym. 'Alas,'
sayde the kyng, 'wel I am sure / that I shall neuer see
hym.' Blanchardyn myght not conteyne hym self,
and sobbed full sore in his herte. And syth sayde 28
vnto the kyng his fader: ¶ 'Syre, I spake wyth your
sone not longe a goo, whan he departed from vs / We
two felawes, this gentyllman & I, haue ben a longe³
espace wyth hym / & nothyng was partyd amonge vs, 32
lyke as the one of us wold haue yt / that other was
therof content / he loued me as he dyde hymself, & I
heeld hym as dere as my self. we were long tyme

1-1, 2-2 Wanting in the French. ³ *Orig.* alonge

to gyder, in somoche that for grete loue that he had to
 me, he gaff me this rynge of gold, that ye now see ¹on
 my fynger.¹ The kyng loked vpon the rynge, & knew
 4 yt ryght well; but he knew not the fynger, ²nor the
 hande that had yt on² / 'Certaynly,' sayd the kyng,
 'I see & knowe right wel by the tokens that ye shewe
 vnto me, that ye haue seen hym / Wherfore, sire, I
 8 requyre & praye you, for the recomforte of me, that am
 a poure olde man, & replenyshed wyth bytternes / that
 ye wol telle me where my sone blanchardyn may be' /
 Then blanchardyn, wyth grete payne, spake wyth a
 12 lowe voyce, aunswerde him & sayd: 'Syr, ye muste
 knowe that he that ye askd for is ded.' Whan the
 nobyl kyng vnderstode hym, from a hyghe as he was,
 he lete hymself falle down to the erthe all in a swoun
 16 before all them that were there / for the grete dys-
 pleasure that he toke atte his hert whan he herd that
 bytter & pytous tydyng, that of new Ioyned vnto his
 olde trybulacions / And then blanchardyn, seeng the
 20 sorow where the kyng his fader was ynne, toke repent-
 aunce of that he had so longe hyd hymself / and wyth
 eyen all tempred wyth teerys, dyde put hymself vpon
 his knees byfore the kyng his fader, & ryght swetly
 24 cryed hym mercy, sayeng in thys wyse / 'My ryght
 doubted lord & fader! byfore you ye maye see your
 sone blanchardyn, that from you did departe wythoute
 your knowyng & lycense; wherof he asketh of you
 28 mercy & grace / and thoffence that I dyde take &
 brynge wyth me your good courser, whiche ys wythoute
 pyere amonge al other, wyth your good swerde, of
 whiche I haue brought to deth daryus your enmye' /
 32 whan the kyng of ffryse, that alredy was come ayen to
 hym sylf, herde his son blanchardyn speke, the whiche
 he knewe not atte that tyme well / for his sighte, that
 was sore troubled of the derkenes of the pryson, in

who gave him a
ring,

but he is now
dead.

The father, the
King of Fries-
land, swoons.

Blanchardyn
repents,

confesses that he
is the King's son,

and begs his
pardon for being
ungrateful to
him.

1-1 Wanting in the French.

2-2 ou elle estoit

No tongue can
tell the King of
Friesland's joy
at regaining his
son.

Blanchardyn
kisses his father,

has him bathed

and royally clad,

and asks after
the Queen.

She never had
joy after Blanch-
ardyn left her.

* I j.

whiche he had suffred grete peyne & grete sorow,
there nys no tounge of no creature mortall, that vnto
you coude telle, wryte,¹ or do to be rehersed,¹ the grete
Ioye that the same howre entred into the hert of that 4
nobl kyng prysoner;² and of all thassystens that were
there the same daye, for theyr terys were parted among
them. And in especyal, Sadoyne & his wyff had of hit
their parte, in suche a wyse that the teerys fell from 8
their eyen al alonge their faces, in so grete habondaunce
that they ryche raymentes that they hadde on that
daye, were all wete wythall. The nobel kyng of fryse
was enbrased & kyssed of his sone blanchardyn. the 12
reuerence and honoure that sadoyne & his wyff made,
for loue of blanchardyn, to his fader, sholde be longe
for to be recounted here / Wyth [r]yght grete Ioye and
gladnes they had hym in to the chamberes, where was 16
a bayne redy made, where they made hym to be
wasshed clene; And syth toke hym clothyng, accordyng
to hys royal astate. And in lyke wyse they ded to all
p^e knyghtes that had be prysoners wyth hym, euery 20
man after hys degree. ¶ Blanchardyn thenne, seeng
the aduenture that was happed to hym, came toward
the kyng hys fader, and sayd vnto hym: 'My ryghte
dere and honoured lorde and fader, I bespeke you that 24
ye woll / telle me howe the quene my moder dyd
byfore your harde Infortune?' 'My ryght dere sone,'
said the kynge / 'knowe now, that neuer syth thy
departyng, thy sorowfull moder had no Ioye at her 28
herte; and noon was there, my self nor noon other,
that myghte recomforte her / wherof thou mayst thynke
wele, that after that greuouse sorowe that she hath had
of my takynge, and that she had neuer no worde from 32
me ³syth that I was take and broughte here of the
sarasyns, Wherby I knowe certeynli, as I fere me /
that she ys rather ded than a lyue' / After thees

¹⁻¹, ² Wanting in the French.

wordes, the kynge bygaune full sore to wepe / and so ded blanchardyn, so that Sadoyne nor Beatryx his wyff coude do no thyng to stynte them.

Blanchardyn
and his father
weep.

4 ¶ The xl. chapytur conteyneth how Blanchardyn and sadoyne and the good kynge of fryse toke the see wyth a grete excercyte of folke / for to gyue socours vnto the
8 proude pucelle in amours.

After their teeris and pytuable reconyssaunce were
past and chassed, they taryed the space of a
moneth wyth in the cyte of Cassydonye / abydyng
12 that the kyng of fryse, fader vnto blanchardyn, were
hole, and brought ayen in to the astate of his owne
strength / that was yet that tyme of resonabel age for
to suffer the excercise of armes / Blanchardyn, that all
16 his hert and his thought had sette vpon his ladye, the¹
proude pucell in amours, ryght sore desiryng to haue
her oute of thraldom and power of Alymodes the
kynge / and also seeng his fader broughte vp ayen in
20 good conualescence and helth, cam by-fore Sadoyne and
seyd: ‘my feythfull felawe and ryght trusty frende,
god and fortune hath helped you, so that ye be come
to that thyng that ye moost dyd desire by-fore this
24 tyme / for þ^e whiche thyng to be complete / accordyng
to my promyse, I haue holpen you the beste that I
coude, so thanked be our lord, ye are therof come to
your aboue. Wherefore I praye you that in lyke case
28 ye woll do so to me / as in you ys my verey truste and
parfyte confydence. ¶ Whyche certaynly I knowe
welle that ye woll doo. It ys soo, that I beseke you
now that ye woll helpe and socoure me now ayenste
32 the kynge Alymodes, that by his grete crueltee and

They stay a
month in
Cassidonic,

till Blanchardyn's father
is well.

Blanchardyn
prays Sadoyne
to help him fight
K. Alymodes,

¹ *Orig.* lady ethe

and free Eglantine.

Sadoyne at once agrees, and says nothing shall ever divide them.

The ships are

stored and
mand.

tyrannye kepeth shette & closed that thyng that I
oughte moste to be desirouse of in thys worlde / for to
haue her oute of seruytude into franchyse. It is my
ryghte doubted ladye, the proude pucell in amours.' 4
Whan Sadoyne vnderstode the wordes of blanchardyn,
all smylng he ansuerde vnto hym, and sayde: 'My
ryghte verey frende and goode felawe, your desyer and
your wylle is myn own; and ¹neuere whyle I am man 8
alyue, nothyng shall be parted, for, bytwene vs* /
your wylle and my wyll is but one wylle so stedfasteli
knytted,¹ that hit shall be lefte for an ensample / to
them that shal come hereafter / in perpetuall memorye. 12
¶ And your commaundementys and myn shalbe
wyth vs two persones but one thyng / Late oure
shyppes be made redy and appareyled / so shall we
thenne goo for to gyue socoure and helpe vnto her, 16
whos presence we so sore do desyre' / Thenne blanch-
ardyn, heryng the gracyous ansuer of Sadoyne his feyth-
ful felaw / he thanked hym right moche / And syn
afterward, by ordenance of Sadoyne & blanchardyn, the 20
nauey was apparelled & redy made, stored & garnyshed
wyth good men of werre, & wyth artylarye / as was
perteynyng to suche a thyng, & made himself redy in
fayr araye for to goo to socour & helpe ²her that passed 24
all other of beaute,² that beseged was by kyng alymodes
³& his folke wythin her cyte of Tourmaday³ / after
this that blanchardyn & Sadoyne sawe their shyppes
redy & well stored wyth vytaylles & of other thynges 28

¹⁻¹ I'amais entre nous et moy ny a rieurs party. Vostre
volonte et la mienne est vne telleque

* ? shall be parted betwene us, for your wylle, &c.

²⁻² lorgueilleuse damours

³⁻³ le quel par sa cruaulte est cause que le Royaulme de
frize auoit este degaste par daire son filz / dont le bon roy
pere de blanchandin auoit grant desir de sen vengier / tres-
conuoitant de soy trouver en lieu ou Il lui peust porter dom-
mage car il estoit encorres de bon eaige pour porter et excer-
cicer les armes

necessare to fynyshe their enterpryse to the socours &
 helpe of the proude pucel in amours, Sadoyne toke leue
 of his wyff, the fayre Beatryx, and so dyd blanch-
 4 ardyn / whiche they shall neuer see tyll that she & her
 husbonde Sadoyne haue ben in grete peryll of their
 lyues / as here after ye shall mowe here / ¶ Sadoyne,
 thorough the counseyll of his felaw blanchardyn ¹lefte
 8 wythin his cyte of Cassydonye foure thousand of goode
 knyghtes, chosen for to defende and kepe it ayenste
 kynge Alymodes, yf by eny aduenture he cam thider
 ayen / as he dyd afterwarde. After their leue thus
 12 taken of the fayr Beatryx, they departed & toke the
 see, leuyng behinde theym the fayr Beatryx, that
 made so grete sorowe for her goode husbonde
 Sadoyne / Whan the barons were vpon the see the
 16 maryners made saylle. The wynde was ryght goode
 that broughte theym forth by suche a wyse, that wyth-
 in a whyle they were ferre fro the lande / And were
 togyder xxx² grete shyppes and four score galeys
 20 subtyl / Duryng the tyme that the goode kynge of
 fryse, Blanchardyn and Sadoyne, and their folke shall
 be thus saylyng towarde Tourmaday / We shall re-
 torne to speke of the tyraunte, the kynge Alymodes,
 24 and the proude pucell in amours /

Sadoyne and
 Blanchardyn
 take leaue of
 Beatrice,

¹ I ij.

giving her 4000
 knights to
 defend the city.

The expedition
 sails :

30 big ships,
 and 80 galleys.

¶ The xlii chapyter sheweth how Blanch-
 ardyn recounted to his fader & to Sadoyne
 the beaulte and the godnes of his lady,
 28 the proude pucell in amours, And of the
 prouoste that cam ayenste hem /

32 **W**E haue herde here tofore howe kynge alymodes
 had besege the nobel cyte of Tormaday,
 where was the nobel lady, the proude mayden

K. Alymodes
 still besieges
 Tormaday.

K. Alymodes
continually
cannonades
Tormaday.

Eglantine
grieves, and has
no hope, save in
Blanchardyn.

One morning

she sees ships

in amours, byfore whiche cyte he made gounes & other
engynes to be caste ayenste the walles bothe nyghte
and daye, for to brynge hem adoun; and wyth the
same he made the toun sawte ofte tymes ful sore, 4
where he made grete losse of his folke / But yt is all
ynough to be byleuyd for a trouth that it was not donn
wyth oute slaughter and damage to theym of the
towne / The proude pucell in amours, seeng herself so 8
sore expressyd¹ / her knyghtes and her men slayne, was
ryght sory / And of that other partye she had no hope
of eny socours / but only of Blanchardyn, in whom was
al her trust / but by no manere she myght not knowe 12
in to what parte of the worlde he was dryuen, and was
in a grete feer lest he had ben drowned in the grete
tempeste of wyndes that had reculed them in to the
hyghe see from the costes of Tourmaday; and full often 16
nyght and day she wyshed hym wyth her / and was so
sory for hym that she wyst not what she sholde doo,
and noo playsure she coude taken in no thyng / but
was euer more sorowyng at the herte of her / In so 20
moche that one daye amonge other, erly in a mornynge,
kyng Alymodes made the towne to be assayled, and
was there made grete alarme & grete fray, so that the
noyse and the callynge that was made of bothe parties 24
cam vnto the eerys of the proude pucelle in amours.
Wherfor she rose out of her bed and bygan to wyshe
sore after blanchardyn / ¶ She cam toward a wyndowe
whiche opened her self; and as she dyde cast alwayes 28
her syght toward the see, she trowed to haue seen a
grete nombre of shippes that were appyeryng vpon the
water / and cam sayllynge, as her aduyse was, toward
Tourmaday / She seeng that thyng, for grete Ioye 32
that she toke, she wyst not what she sholde saye or
thynke therof, whether she was a wakyng or a slepe.
And for to be better in certaynte of the trouth, she

¹ oppresse

- went vp at a hyghe wyndowe, and loked so longe tyl
 that she myght perceyue clerly that they were shyppes
 and vesselles of werre / ' Ha, god,' saide she, ' myght som
 4 socours come to me of eny souldyours? for of noo man
 of my sybbe I awayte for none, syth that the kynge of
 the grete Nourthweghe, myn oncle, is decessed, that
 wold helpe me ayenst the tyraunt kynge Alymodes.'
 8 Atte the same houre Blanchardyn was vpon the borde
 of his ship, and talked wyth the kynge of fryse his
 fader / ¹ And as they were thus in deuyses / blanch-
 ardyn loked on the see, and byganne to espye the
 12 toures of the paleys of Tourmaday, and shewed them
 to his fader and to sadoyne his felawe. He recounted
 to his fader, the kynge of ffryse, the beaulte, goodnes,
 and other goode vertues and maners that were in his
 16 lady, the proude pucelle in amours, And how he was
 in her goode grace, and she lyke wyse in his; & that yf
 god gaff hym that hap, that he myght come to bataylle
 ayenst her enmye the kyng alymodes / he sholde shewe
 20 to hym the beneuolence that he ought to his lady /
 And the grete malyuolence or euyll wylle that he had
 for her sake toward the tyraunt, that by so grete wronge
 and wythout lafull cause made to her suche force and
 24 Iniurye. ¶ Thus talkyng of many thynges, they ex-
 ploytted so by a goode wynde that they had, that they
 cam so nyghe the lande, that they see playnly the
 tentes and the pauyllions of kynge Alymodes, the
 28 whiche Blanchardyn dyde shewe vnto the kynge his
 fader, and to his felawe Sadoyne. The proude pucelle
 in amours, that at this houre was lenyng vpon her
 wyndowe, sent hastely for the prouost, that he sholde
 32 come and speke wyth her / whiche cam anone to her /
 he entred in to her chambre, and right humbly salued
 the pucelle / she called hym nyghe her; and shewed
 hym the right myghty nauye that cam to arryue there /
 36 the prouost, that was right wyse and subtyll, perceyued,

of war approach-
 ing, and hopes
 they are to help
 her.

Blanchardyn

¹ I iij.

points out Tor-
 maday to his
 father, the King
 of Friesland,
 tells him of
 Eglantine's
 beauty,

and hopes he
 may meet K.
 Alymodes in
 battle.

They see this
 King's tents.

Eglantine

shows her
 Provost Blanch-
 ardyn's navy.

The Provost of
Tormaday takes
an eight-our, and
rows to Blanch-
ardyn's ship.

Blanchardyn
asks about
Eglantine.

The Provost says

she can never
rest,

and knewe full sone that they were crysten, and sayde
to his lady that he sholde go to them to wyte what
folke they were, and yf he coude doo so moche by
eny wyse, that they wolde take her wages and serue 4
her. He toke his leue, and went oute of the chambre,
and cam streyght to the hauen, where he toke a bote,
prest and garnysched wyth eyght goode felawes, eche of
them an ore in his hande, whiche wythin a short whyle 8
brought the prouost nyghe to the galleyes / & so wel
they stered that they cam and borded the ship wherin
blanchardyn was, that desyred sore to knowe what
they were that so fast rowed toward his vessel / 12
Thenne the prouost, seeyng hym self arryued where he
wolde be / Right highly he salued theym that were
wythin þ^e ship / Blanchardyn, that lened vpon þ^e
borde of it, rendred to hym his salutacion / The prouost 16
thenne al on hyghe exposed & sayde the charge that he
had of his maystres byhalue, the lady of tourmaday /
Blanchardyn, that wel knewe the prouost, ansuered,
demaundyng of hym yf his lady was so sore oppressed 20
by her enmyes as he sayde / & whether she might
holde the towne longe ayenst them that had layde
siege to it by fore her / The prouost ansuered to hym &
sayde / 'ye, right wel / but one thyng there is, that she 24
may not haue nother helthe nor Ioye, but alweyes she
most be ¹chaunged vpon her bed,¹ where she can not
haue rest nor noo goode slepe by night nor by daye.'
'frende,' saide blanchardyn, 'wherof may come this 28
dysease vnto her that so traneylleth & tourmenteth
her? for myn aduyse is this, that at all endes she
ought to force her self from her bed, for to shewe her
self, admonestyng her folke to do wel, bycause they 32
sholde take a better corage for the persone & sight of
her' / 'Syre,' sayde the prouost, 'be ye sure, & knowe
for a trouthe, that so moche I knowe by my lady, that

- she shal neuer haue no parfytte Ioye at her herte, for
 loue of a knyght of whom she is enamored, whiche she
 weneth to be peryshed & ded / but my hope is in god,
 4 that he shall yet come ayen hyther; for men sayen
 comynly, that he whome god wyll haue kept, may not
 be peryshed / Syre, I saye the same for the knyght,
 that is the most parfyt in all beaulte & condicyons /
 8 that his lyke can not be founde. how be¹ it that not
 long ago we herde tydynges of hym of a pylgryme that
 passed here byfore, that sayde to vs for veray trouth,
 that he and his felawe Sadoyne were arryued in to the
 12 cyte of Cassydonye, whiche they had taken & gotten
 by force of armes / for the whiche tydyng my sayde
 lady hath be wel asswaged of her dysplaysure, trustyng
 in god that shortly she shal vnderstande more playnly
 16 the certaynte therof.' Whan blanchardyn vnderstode
 the prouost / he sayde vnto hym, that this whiche the
 pylgryme had sayd was true, & that blanchardyn had
 sent hem there for to socoure and help his maistres.
 20 but som men wyl saye that he shal wedde the doughter
 of kyng Alymodes, whiche is lady of the lande where
 he is, & that he shal maynteyne & kepe the contrey
 with her / 'Ha, ha, sire! what is that / that ye saye? /
 24 what a grete synne & vntrouth it were to blanchardin,
 to take nor haue to his wyf another than the proude
 pucell in amours, *pat* loueth him so truly / & that so
 longe hath wayted & taryed after hym / & that for p^e
 28 grete loue that she hath to him, she hath reffused so
 many kynges & so hyghe prynces that dayly do requyre
 her. Certes, who someuer brought her this sorowfull
 & pyteouse tydyng / I doubte not but that she shold
 32 slee her self for grete displaysir / for suche, & so true,
 I knowe her. Now, god for-bede that I be the brynger
 of thys tydynges / that so sore displaysaunt shalbe to
 me for to vttir & declare hem, that I had almost as lief
 36 to deye as to reherce them vnto my said maystresse.

for love of a
 knight whom
 she thinks dead.

¹ I iiii.

But he is said to
 be alive,

and to have taken
 Cassidonic.

Blanchardyn

suggests that he
 is to wed K.
 Alymodes's
 daughter.

The Provost
 declares that
 Blanchardyn
 will have no
 other wife than
 his love Eglan-
 tine.

Has he sent any
letter to her?

No, says
Blanchardyn,

and smiles.

The Provost then
recognizes him,

and tells him
how truly Eglan-
tine loves him.

But, sire, syth it is therof as ye saye, & that ye come
from Blanchardyn, I praye you to telle me yf he
wryteth or sendeth eny wordes to my sayde lady by
you / for nothyng coude make me to hyleue that this 4
grete & lothely vntrouthe sholde be in blanchardyn /
to leue & for-sake her of whom he is so parfytly
beloued for to take the doughter of a kynge her enmye.
'frende,' sayde blanchardyn, 'as for wrytyng or eny 8
worde that he sholde sende, I knowe of none.' 'that
rewyth me,' sayde the prouost, 'so am I wel sore
abashed how he can haue a wylle to chose another lady
than þe proude pucelle in amours, whiche is the most 12
fayr, and the most noble & the most complet a lady, &
most plesaunt of all the remenaunt of the world / how
thenne doeth not he remembre hymself of the courser,
& of the sleue of clothe of golde that she dyde send 16
vnto hym after the fyrst acqueyntaunce? Certaynly,
my herte can not Iudge to me that euer of suche a
knyght as is Blanchardyn, shold growe suche a wille
'to be do.'¹ 'Ha, ha! madame,' sayde the prouost, 'see 20
here sore harde tydynges, that shalbe cause to brynge
at an ende full myserably your laste dayes' / Whan
blanchardyn herde the prouost speke thus / he bygan to
smyle. Thenne the prouost behylde hym ful ententy- 24
fly, and knewe hym, wherof he had so grete & so
parfyte a Ioye that it can not be recounted / And after
many wordes of reconyssaunce / the prouoste tolde to
hym of all, how he was euer truly byloued, & how his 28
lady, the proude pucelle in amours, had borne, & as
yet bare suche a displeasure for & by thoccasyon of
hym; & that neuer syth that she receyued the letter
that he dyde sende to her by hym, she had no Ioye at 32
her herte, nor shal neuer haue vnto the tyme that she
see you ayen. Blanchardyn sayde to him: 'lat her
take no care of nothing, nor no doubte of my parte;

for as to me, I haue alwayes be, and euermore shall as
 longe I shall lyue, her true and feythfull lover / And
 shall neuer fayle her of noo thyng that is or shalbe in
 4 my power to doo for her, as to her that I more desire
 to complayse than al þ^e worlde / ye shal recomende me
 to her gode grace, & from me ye shal presente vnto her
 this rynge of golde / & as to þ^e faytte of our men of
 8 werre that ben here, we haue brought hem alle hyther
 only for to gyue vnto her helpe & socoure; we shal
 kepe our self wythin our vesselles, bycause it is as
 now to late; & to morwe erly, whan we see houre &
 12 tyme goode, & alle redy, we shal do sowne oure trom-
 pettes, horses, & busynes / and ye that shalbe wythin
 the cyte / see that ye be redy & appareylled for to
 yssue out at the same owre, for to come ayenst oure
 16 enmyes; for from oure syde we shal assaylle them so
 quykly that they shal cursse the owre of oure commyng /
 and thus they shal be fought wythal of bothe sydes by
 suche a manere, that wyth grete payne they shal haue
 20 leyser to graunte on to vs the victorie, ¹yf god woll' /

Blanchardyn
says he ever
loves her;

he sends her a
ring, and says he

will debark his
men next morn-
ing, by sound of
trumpet,

so that they and
the Tornadians
from the city
may attack
Alymodes front
and rear.

²¶ Here foloweth the xliij chapter, that
 conteyneth in hit self,² & speketh of the
 grete Ioye that the proude pucelle in loue
 24 made whan she herde reherce, by the
 prouost, the gracyouse tydynges of the
 commynge of here frende blanchardyn /

THe prouost, herynge blanchardyn speke ³so truly &
 28 benyngly,³ he ansuered vnto hym, & sayde that
 as to their⁴ parte, suche a dylligence salbe made ther-
 upon, ⁵that their enmyes shal knowe soone by grete
 strokes the grete corage of them of þ^e towne.⁵ & thenne
 32 right ioyouse he departed from Blanchardyn, & toke

The Provost
promises that
the Tornadians
will do their
part.

¹—¹, ²—², ³—³ Wanting in the French. ⁴ *Orig.* thier
⁵—⁵ que de nul tort nen seront reprins

The Provost of
Tornaday
hurries back

to Eglantine,

kneels to her
and tells her
that the navy
brings her
helpers,

Blanchardyn and
his father and
friend,

who will take
vengeance on
K. Almodes

leue of hym, sore desyryng of all his herte to fynde
hym self byfore his sayde lady, for to announce & telle
to her this glad tydyng: & wend neuer to haue come
1 tyme ynoughe¹ there. He exployted so, and made 4
suche a dilygence, that wyth grete Ioye and gladnesse
he entred wythin þ^e hauen of tourmaday, without eny
delaye nor lettyng by no maner; & cam to þ^e towne,
where he fonde þ^e noble mayden, right nobly acom- 8
panyed of her knyghtes / ladyes, & gentyl women, that
were wyth her in grete number / ¶ She, seeng the
prouost com a land out of his bote, makyng a mery
contenance / was sore desired to / know of hym som 12
gode tydynges, for her hert iudged her that he brought
som / so taryed she not tyll that the prouost were com
toward her / but a grete pas marched ayenst hym / The
prouost made vnto her the reuerence, puttyng hymself 16
vpon his knee / and sayd to her: ‘ My ryght redoubted
lady, knowe ye for certayn that I haue be wyth the
ryght puyssaunt nauye, wyche is laden wyth men of
armes, that are come to helpe you / Of the whiche ben 20
conducters & chieff rulers, the kyng of fryse, þ^e nobyl
knyght blanchardyn his sone, & Sadoyne his felaw /
Madame, see here a rynge of gold, that blanchardyn
sendeth to you by me, wyth recommendacyons many- 24
fold / knowe, madame, that a grete Ioye ought to be
encreased wythin you / whan suche a socours is come to
your grete comforte, for thes thre hyghe pryncys haue
brought wyth theym grete number of folkes. And 28
they haue a ryght perfyte desire to avenge your quarell
vpon Almodes, the tyraunt / and ye maye byleue for
certeyn, that the goode kyng of fryse hath noon other
desire than to auenge hymself whan he shall com to 32
the feelde, for the grete hurt, Iniurye, & damage that
hath be doon vnto hym by daryus, the sone of kyng
Almodes. To morowe, by the mornyng, shall the

- bataylle bygynne; wherfor Blanchardyn prayeth you,
 by me / that ye commaunde your captayns & men of
 armes that they be redy, all to the ende that whan the
 4 houre shall come that þ^e trompettes & bussynes of þ^e
 oost of blanchardyn shall begyn to sounne / that your
 folke be redy forto take the feelde, and that quyckly
 they assaylle your enmyes of all sydes / And as to that
 8 parte of the prynces that come to your socours, they
 shalbe redy atte the same owre / And by all, thus, your
 enmyes shal fynde hem self oppressed both byfore &
 behynd, wherof kyng Alymodes shalbe in grete affray /
 12 & ye shalbe auenged vpon him, to the playsure of god,
 for he shal haue a double displaysure; & in espycally
 whan the tydynges shalbe recounted vnto him of
 daryus his sone, that hath be slayne & brought to his
 16 deth by the handes of blanchardyn. & wyth this he
 shal fynde his cite of Cassydonye & all his grete
 royalme conquered & goten / & his doughter wedded /
 whiche by blanchardyn hathe be yeuen vnto his felaw,
 20 sadoyne.' That tyme that the proude pucelle in amours
 had herd & vnderstande the prouost / neuer in her
 dayes had she so moche of displeasure, but that these
 tydynges dyde redouble her ioye ouer mesure: &
 24 thanked god of this goode aduventure. So is there non
 that coude telle nor wryte the ioye that the same tyme
 was in her, & emonge all the people of the towne.
 She went ayen in to her paleys, replenysshed wyth
 28 ioye & gladnesse, & made to be cryed thurgh all the
 stretes & common places of the towne, that all the
 stretes of the cyte sholde be hanged wyth clothes the
 next day folowyng / & that at the comyng in of
 32 blanchardyn, euery man sholde were his best clothyng /
 & that myrth / & melody sholde be made thurgh al þ^e
 cyte þ^e same night, where-as were al maner of musical
 instrumentes: whiche thing was don, for suche noyse
 36 & suche sowne was there made al that night, what of

by battle next
morning,

the Tormadians
assailing him
in front,

and Blanchardyn
attacking him
in rear.

Eglantine
rejoices and
thanks God

She orders the
city to be hung
with clothes
next day,

and mirth and
melody made all
that night.

Merriment of
the Tormadians.

tambours / trompettes, claryons / harp / lute, clauicordes, & other diuerse instrumentes / wyth þ^e swete voyces of the ladyes & gentyl women, that sange there, that it semed that god had descended among them 4 from heuen / & so grete was þ^e ioye wythin þ^e cyte, that the sowne therof was herde vnto kynge Alymodes oost. Merueylles it was to here the thankes, the louenges, and the praysynges. ¶ And the ryngyng 8 of belles, that were don in all the chirches of the towne, yeldyng graces vnto oure lord.

K. Alymodes
wonders at the
festivities in
Tormaday.

¶ The kynge Alymodes, that was that same tyme wythin his tentes wyth his barons, gaff hym self grete 12 merueylle of the Ioye & feste that he herde don wythin the cyte. he wyst not what he sholde thynke, & doubted lest they had herde eny tydynges of som socours comyng vnto them / for by no meanes he 16 myght not loke ferre toward the see syde. & also blanchardyn & his nauye, after that the prouost was gon from hym, wyth-drewe hem in to the see, wherfor Alymodes nor his folke coude not see hem nor here 20 them, for the grete reuyll & Ioye that was made by them of the cyte, that made grete noyse / And at that self houre blanchardyn, wyth all his shippes & galeyes, cam and arryued wythin the hauen, & descended on 24 lande wythout their enmyes were aware of hem; for the Ioye & noyse ¹that wythin the towne was thus grete¹ /

Blanchardyn and
h's army debark
at night in peace.

¶ The xliij chapiter followeth,² whiche con- 28 teyneth & speketh of the grete beaulte³ that was by fore Tourmaday, ayenst the kynge Alymodes, that was discomfyted / And of the takyng of Sadoyne, wherof 32

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

² *Orig.* followed

³ bataille

Blanchardyn was right sory, as rayson
was /

- 4 **W**ELL ye haue herde here to fore the grete Ioye
& gladnesse that was made wythin the cyte,
for the goode tydynges that the proude pusell in loue Eglantine
had vnderstand of Blanchardyn her loue, whiche that
nyght made grete diligence for to accomplysshe that
8 whiche blanchardyn had sent her worde of; for she
was her self that nyght in the towne house, where she sends for her
war-captains,
made to come al her captaynes to fore her, to whome
by þ^e prouost she made to be tolde and related al and the Provost
gives them
Blanchardyn's
instructions.
12 alonge that was charged vnto her by blanchardyn. the
captaynes & hedes of her werre were all glad of thees
tydynges, right ¹ desyryng to putte it in to execucyon.
at the commaundement of ther lady, they made hem all ¹ K j.
16 redy, & putte hem self in araye for to sprynge out the
next mornyng vpon their enmyes, as by blanchardyn
was sent worde / ¶ Of that other part, kynge Alymodes, K. Alymodes
that was in grete affraye to knowe the cause and occa-
20 sion wherfore they of the cyte were makynge suche a
gladnesse, assembled his barons for to haue aduyse &
counseyll vpon this matiere, & sette the scout watche calls a Council
of War,
wyth grete nombre of men that he sholde not be ouer-
24 taken vnbeuare / And that same nyght he sent for his
shippes that were two mylle thens ² wythin an hauen and sends for
his ships
for to haue theym brought nerer his oost / that he
myght entre in them yf eny infortune happed to hym ² in case of
disaster.
28 & to wythdrawe his folke therinne yf nede were /
Thus passed kynge Alymodes the nyght ouer tyl the
fayre daye came, that the sonne byganne to ascende,
castyng his bemes a brode vpon the erthe; & as he

²⁻² qui pour secrete estoit en vng port pour ce que la en-
droit ou Il estoit logie ny auoit quelque perilaige de la mer Si
la fist venir auprez de lui ancerer pour ce que le temps estoit
doyls et la mer quoyt Il le fist affin que ne aucune malle
aduenture lui aduenoit

K. Alymodes
sees with disynay
Blanchardyn's
navy, and his
troops in battle
array,

in three bat-
talions, led
1. by Blanch-
ardyn,
2. by Sadoyne,
3. by the King of
Friesland.

Blanchardyn's
trumpets sound.

The Tormadians
sally out,

encouraged by
Eglantine.

K. Alymodes

arranges his
battalions as
best he can.

The hosts draw
nigh one another.

was musyng vpon þ^e werke, loking to & fro vpon the
see, he perceyued a right myghty nauy, wherof they
that were come vpon lande, he sawe hem in grete
nombre, al redy renged in a fayr ordeynaunce of batayll 4
for to fyght nyghe by þ^e see shoris, a lytyl beyonde his
ooste, wherof he was not awar afore that; & he was
sore abashed, & gretely merueylled how they were so
soone landed wythout that he knewe therof / So fered 8
he soone of this that was true, that it was blanchardyn
& his folke that were come there. ¶ The worthy knyght
Blanchardyn had ordeyned his folke in three battaylles,
wherof he led the formest / the seconde he be-toke to 12
Sadoyne his felawe, & the thirde he gaf to be conducted
to his fader the kyng of ffryse. ¶ Whan Blanchardyn
had al this thynges redy, and all his ordeynaunces y-
made, he made his trompettes / hornes, olyfauntes, and 16
busynes to be rongen & blowen so highe that it was
wonder to here them. They of the cyte thenne that
herde the sowne therof, yssued anone out of their
towne by commaundement of their lady, the proude 20
mayden in amours, that sore admonested and prayed
them to do wel / to thende that som goode tydynges
might be reported by them. alimodes, seeng his enmyes
cam a lande, and in so fayre ordonaunce y-sette of that 24
one part / & of that other syde he sawe them of the
cyte that cam wyth a grete puyssaunce vpon hym
and his folke, It is well ynough to be byleued, that he
was not wel assured. But nought therfore, as a sharp 28
and hardy knyght as he was, the best wyse that he
myght or coude / he ordeyned his bataylles, whiche he
toke to be conducted and guyded to theym that semed
hym worthy therof. The oostes beganne to approche 32
eche other / the callyng and the crye arose so grete &
hyghe betwyx them, what by the sowne of trompettes /
hornes and bussynes / as of the stour dynnyng and
noyse that their horses made treddyng and wallopyng 36

hyghe and harde vpon the grounde, that it semed that
all the foure elementes had fought there to-gyder.

The dust darkens
the sun.

- The duste byganne to ryse so hyghe aboute them and
4 so thykke, that it toke away the bryghtnes of the
sonne / so that they that were wythin the cyte sawe
nother frendes nor enmyes. They went to the chirche
in grete deuocyon, makyng their prayers to our lord,
8 that he wolde helpe their frendes; And, namely, that
noble lady, the proude pucelle in amours, alle barefote,
went from one chirche to another, prayng god that he
wold graunte þ^e victorie to her true loue blanchardyn,
12 & to them that were with him / & syth cam ayen to
her paleys / & mounted vp to a highe toure for to see &
beholde þ^e batayl þat was alredy bygonne. right grete
murdre & slaughter was ther made at setting vpon of
16 bothe partyes / many a knyght ded, & brought to the
grounde, that neuer syn had power to releue himself /
the horses of whom went runnyng vpon the playn, &
in to the medowes, the raynnes of their brydels hang-
20 yng & drawyng up on the grounde. blanchardyn, at
his comynge on that he made, ¹recounted a duke, ¹cosyn
germayn to kyng Alymodes, vpon whom he sette the
sharpe hed of his spere by so grete force, that he perced
24 his body thorough and thorough, so that the spere was
seen from the breste to the backe of hym more than
thre fote longe / and syn cam to the second / to the
thyrd, & to the fourth / & neuer he rested nor ceased
28 hymself as long as the spere abode hole, whiche was
sore bygge & oute of mesure grete, to slee & ouerthrowe
his enmyes to the grounde / And or euer his spere was
crased or broken / he ouerthreu & slew seuen of theym,
32 that deyde myserable ther amonge the horses fete / Then
toke blanchardyn his good swerde into his fyste, ²wher-

Eglantine goes
barefoot from
church to church,
praying for
victory for
Blanchardyn.

Blanchardyn
runs thro'
Alymodes's
cousin

and seuen others,
till his spear
breaks.

¹⁻¹ *rencontra* ("a duke" wanting in the French).

²⁻² (next page) *dout il detrenchoit piez braz et Iambes et les pourfendoit Iusques es ceruelles*

Then Blanchardyn hews
foes with his
sword till the
ground is red
with blood.

K. Alymodes
brings up 10,000
fresh men.

Blanchardyn
attacks them,

but they sur-
round him, and
cast darts at him,

and kill his
horse.

He fights on foot,

of he brak salletes & helmettes of fyn stele / and to
brayned ther many one / he al to-hewe* his enmyes, &
mado legges, armes & fete to flee from the body of
theym / that all the grounde aboute hym was dyed in 4
red wyth blode of his aduersaryes² / he dyd so moche
of armes, that wyth in a while his swerde was wele
beknownen among his enmyes / In so moche that they
made hym waye, fleeng. ³they dyd so moche by their 8
ryght excellent proues, that they made to recule theyr
enmyes vnto their tentes / and sore yll yt had ben
wyth theym / yf kyng Alymodes had not socoured
them, that cam of freshe wyth ten thousaund of his 12
men / and to them he began to call & saye / 'forth,
forthe, nobel barons / haue thys daye remembraunce
of your wyues & chyl dren that ye haue lefte at home
in care & myserye ! for dred that they haue to lese you / 16
take ayeii wythin yourself a good and vygoryus corage
in shewyng of your force and vertue ayenste your
enmyes.' †They began than to caste a crye amonge
hem sore grete & wonderfull, tournynge their faces 20
toward their enmyes† / blanchardyn smote hymselfe
wyth-ynne theym fyrst of all / whom they knew full
wele, by cause that by hym & thorughe his cause they
had receyued all the most losse that they had done 24
there. wherfore all their desire was for to close hym
all aboute, & slee hym yf they myghte haue doon soo.
And they, seenge that he had embated hymself amonge
theym, dyde putte himself togyder, & enclosed hym 28
rounde aboute, launchynge and castyng to hym speres
& dartes, in somoche that they wounded hym ful sore
in many places of his body, and vnder hym they slew
his horse / but as a prew knyght ryght valiante & 32
hardy / lepte lyghtli on his fete, enbrasyng his shelde,
his swerde heued vp in his fyste, wherwyth he smote

* *Orig.* alto hewe ³⁻³ next page = ⁵ next page.

†† Wanting in the French.

- & hewe bothe legges & armes from the bodyes of theym
 by suche a myghte & fyersnes, and thorughe so grete
 strokes of hym,³ so that noon was so hardy of all his
 4 enmyes that durste abyde a full stroke of his handes /
 Of that other partye was the kyng of fryse & Sadoyne,
 that made the bataylles of hys enmyes to trembel full
 fast, & made rouine where grete preses were. Ryghte
 8 preu & valiant was the kyng of fryse; for whom soeuer
 he aryued vpon, he dyd shewe suche a puyssaunce
 that he had no power to escape, but that he slew hym
 or wounded hym full ylle. Sadoyne, that was of grete
 12 corage & full of brennyng desire to acquyer to hym-
 self the name of famouse proesse, chose corboraunt, the
 brother of kyng Alymodes, to whom he gaff suche a
 grete stroke wyth his swerde vpon his helme, that he
 16 ouerthrew hym from his horse down to the grounde /
 and had kylde hym & broughte to his ende lightly /
 yf he had not ben ryghte sone socoured by king
 Alymodes⁴ his brother, that cam vpon Sadoyne, acom-
 20 panyed wyth six thousaund of his folke, wherof the
 battayl beganne of fresshe to be sore fyers and grete /
 right grete was the effueyon or shedyng of blode there
 of bothe partyes, but more of alymodes parte, that was
 24 assaylled and befought on eythre syde, bothe behynde
 and before. Blanchardyn made there ryght a wondryng
 of worthines and goode conducte. The kyng, his fader,
 folowed hym nyghe / and so dyde his felawe Sadoyne,
 28 for to confounde and ouercome their enmyes /⁵ ¶ The

and none dare
abide his stroke

The King of
Friesland fights
valiantly.

Sadoyne nearly

kills Corboraunt,

but his brother
Alymodes

⁴ K ij.

rescues him with
6000 fresh men.

Blanchardyn

⁵ Lesquelz trois vaillans et haultains princes firent tant par leurs tresexcellentes proesses *que* Ilz firent reculer leurs ennemis Iusques en leurs tentes ¶ Ia leur fust la chose mal tournee se le roy Alimodes ne leur fust sourvenu qui les vint secourir a tout dix mille hommes des meilleurs de ses gens Ausquelz Il comenca a crier et leur dire ¶ Auant barons au Iour dhuy vueillies auoir souvenance de voz femmes et enfans *que* auez laissie en douleur et misere pour la paour quilz ont de vous perdre / Reprendes en vous vigoureux et bon couraige en monstrant *votre* force et vertu alencontre de voz ennemis ¶ Blanchandin qui dedens eulx sestoit feru le premier lequel Il cong-

whiche sawe hym fyghtyng and destroyeng, and¹ sleyng
 his ennyes in suche wyse that he raughte noon vpon
 the salate, how stronge that he was / but that he claafe
 hym down vnto the tethe / But his grete corage and 4
 grete prouesse had ben but lytell worthe to hym, yf he
 had not be socoured anone of Sadoyne his true felawe /
 that had herde the cry and the noyse that they made
 aboute blanchardyn, that trowed to haue slayne hym / 8
 sadoyne seeng his true felawe blanchardyn that faught
 on fote ayenst his ennyes, broched his hors wyth the
 spore, full of anger & of wrathe, his swerde in his hande,
 dyed & all bloody of the blode of his ennyes, smot hym 12
 self in to the presse, where he dyde see it moost thyk,
 accompanied wyth suche knyghtes as he well trustyd
 vpon, callyng hygh after his baner, wherby x. thousaund
 men of his feliship folowed right soone the bak of 16
 hym / and, namely, the noble kyng of fryse, that ful
 quykly cam to the rescue of his son blanchardin / So
 smot they hem self all at one weyght vpon kyng
 Alymodes folke, and byganne to hewe and slee them, 20
 so that wythin a short tyme they brake the presse,
 and made grete occyeyon vpon their ennyes. To the
 rescue of blanchardyn cam also the gode prouost, &
 wyth him were they of the towne, that ful wel dyde, 24
 & bare hem self right wel; for so moche they deyde,
 that in a lytyl while, wolde their ennyes or not / that
 Sadoyne gat the place, & brought a right myghty courser
 vnto his felow blanchardyn, vpon whiche he mounted 28
 vp anone. The kyng of fryse seeng his son blanch-
 ardyn / rescued & on horsbake ayen / brought his horse

cuts thro' every
helmet he can
reach.

Sadoyne

spurs to rescue
Blanchardyn,

followd by 10,000
knights,

and the King of
Friesland,

and the Provost
of Tormaday,
with his towns-
men.

Sadoyne re-
mounts Blanch-
ardyn.

noissoit assez pour ce que par lui et sa cause Ilz auoient receu toute la plusgrant perte quilz eurent faicte Pourquoy tout leur desir estoit de lenclorre et occire se faire leussent peu / et eulx veant que dedens eulx estoit embatus se mirent ensamble et lencloirent en lui lanchant lances et dards tant que en plusieurs lieux le naurerent et lui occirent son cheual.

¹ *Orig. dna*

- nere hym, & demanded of hym / ¹how he dyde,¹ & yf
 he felt hym self wounded or hurt in any place where eny
 doubte were of his lyf / 'Syre,' sayde blanchardyn,
 4 'no sore at all I fele wythin my body, that can let me
 to kille & sle myn ennys & yours.'² They thenne, Blanchardyn
and his father
renew the flight,
 wythout eny moo wordes, entred ayen bothe to gyder
 into the bataylle toward them of the towne, where
 8 Sadoyne was wyth them, fyghtyng ayenst Alymodes &
 Corboraunt his brother / Blanchardyn, seeng them of
 the towne by the baner that they bare, in which was por-
 trayed a figyre in lykenes of a mayde that represented
 12 the proude pucell in amours, he dyde shewe it vnto his
 fader & to ³his felawe³ Sadoyne. he thenne toke corage
 & fyersnes more than euer he had don afore, admonest-
 yng his fader & sadoyne to do wel their parte / Soo putte rush into the
thick of it,
 16 them self in to the thyckest of the batayll, where they
 ouer-threwe & casted doune alle that founde hem self
 by fore them / Wherby kynge Alymodes folke reculed and drive back
Alymodes's men.
 abak more than is the lengthe of an acre of lande /
 20 Alymodes seeng his folke lese grounde, & were smytten
 ded down right by the hyghe prouesse & grete worthy-
 nes of blanchardyn / desyred sore wyth al his herte to
 joyne hym self wyth hym; & so cam he at the one K. Alymodes
tries to take
Blanchardyn
in flank;
 24 syde of blanchardyn, his swerde in the hande, for to
 slee hym yf he myght. but blanchardyn, that ware
 was, & wel taught of all poyntes of werre, perceyued
 soone his manere of *commying* ayenst hym, & tourned but Blanchardyn
wheels,
 28 brydel, and went hym self vpon kynge Alymodes, &
 suche a stourdy stroke ⁴he gaf him vpon the helmet,
 that he brought him doune from his hors all astonyed / * K ij.
and unhorses
Alymodes,
⁵the whiche blanchardyn had taken right sone the hed
 32 from þ^e body of hym,⁵ if socours & help had not come
 to hym of his folke, that brought his hors to him ayen, who is rescued
and remounted.

¹⁻¹ comment Il se faisoit² les vostres³⁻³ Wanting in the French.⁵⁻⁵ le quel blanchandin eust occis

K. Alymodes
then challenges
Blanchardyn to
single combat.

They fight
fiercely,

and Alymodes
has to be rescued
by his brother
Corboraunt.

Eglantine sends
her white sleeve
to Blanchardyn,

bidding him dye
it red in the
blood of her
foes.

He thanks her.

& remounted him on horsbak. whan he see hym self
on his hors, he cam ayen vpon Blanchardyn, the swerde
in his hande, requyryng to blanchardyn that he wolde
drawe out of the prese, & that he had grete desyre to 4
proue hym self vpon hym / Whan blanchardyn vnder-
stode kynge Alymodes, he was right glad, & right
lyberaly 'graunted to hym his requeste / They two
drew e them self out of the bataylle, & byganne to bete 8
& smyte one vpon other so ofte & so thyk that the fyre
came ¹out of their armures, that were of fyn stele.¹
but blanchardyn dyde serue hym wyth so peysaunt &
heuy strokes, & so horryble, that alymodes sholde neuer 12
haue departed from the place quyk, yf he had not be
socoured of corboraunt his brother. The batayll of
theym two, dyde see playnly p^e proude pucell in
amours that was vpon her highe toure, where she 16
praied god for the prosperyte of blanchardyn / She
called a yong knyght ²a seruauant of hers,² to whom she
toke a sleue of whyt damaske, & commaunded hym to
presente hit hastely from her behalue vnto blanch- 20
ardyn / prayng hym that for her sake & loue, to dye
the whyt coloure in to red wyth the blode of her
enmyes / The gentyl man, sore desyryng to accomplyshe
his maystres commaundement, toke of his lady the sleue 24
of whyt colour. he departed & made suche diligence,
that a present was therof made to blanchardyn, rehers-
yng vnto hym that that his lady, the proude pucelle
in amours, had charged him to saye vnto blanchardyn / 28
³whiche was right glad of the saide present, more than
he sholde haue be yf the messenger had brought to
hym a mylyon of fyn golde³ / and thanked moche his
lady, the proude pucelle in amours, that behylde hym 32
from her tour⁴ as ferre as she myght chuse hym, and

¹⁻¹ hors de lachier qui en leurs heaulmes estoit.

²⁻² son seruiteur

³⁻³ blanchandin ful moult loyeulx

⁴ fenestre

enforced his power for to parfurnysse her request. he
smote vpon his enmyes as it had be the thonder, con-
foundyng and ouerthrowyng them ded to þ^e grounde;
4 for who that was that tyme yrought of hym, his dayes
were fynysshed. fynably, the batayll lasted so longe
that kyng Alymodes & his Cassydonyens were re-
buked, wold they or no, to their grete losse, hurt and
8 damage / for of thre score thousaund, the reme-
naunt that myght be saued wythdrewe themself wyth
kyng alymodes, that toke hastily the waye toward his
shippes for to entre, and saue hym self ther Inne / But
12 sadoyne folowed hym of so nyghe at bak of hem, that
with grete payne gaf them leyser to saue hem self /
And so ferre he folowed and chassed them, that he ouer
toke kyng alymodes brother called Corboraunt, to
16 whome he gaff a reuerse wyth his swerde so grete that
he made fle bothe the helme and the hed from the
body of hym.¹ Kyng alymodes seeng his brother
slayne of a knyght alone, was full sory and an-angred /
20 he ascryed to his folke that traytoure that had slayne
his brother Corberaunt sholde be taken by them, for
he hath doon to vs this day so moche of euyl, bothe
he and his felawes / that I shal neuer haue Ioye at my
24 herte tyl that I haue hym ded or taken / They thenne
from al sydes tourned vpon Sadoyne, and slewe his
horsse and enclosed hym rounde aboute, so that his
defendyng had nought proffytred to hym nor holpen
28 but that he shold haue be there slayn, yf kyng
alymodes had not ascryed & commaunded to his men
that they sholde not sle hym, but sholde take hym
quyk,² whiche thyng was don of hem. Grete crye,
32 noyse, and houlyng made the sarasyns at the takyng
of Sadoyne, in somoche that blanchardyn herde them,
whiche cam rennyng there as the medle was wyth a
grete nombre of folkys. But the kyng Alymodes seeng

Blanchardyn
strikes his foes
like thunder.

K. Alymodes and
the remnant of
his men with-
draw to their
ships.

Sadoyne cuts off
the head of
Corboraunt.

He is sur-
rounded,

and taken.

² K iijj.

¹ et chey mort.

Sadoyne is
carried by
Alymodes on
board ship.

Blanchardyn's
offer of ransom
for Sadoyne

is refused.

Sadoyne is to be
hangd.

hym comyng wyth puyssaunce, for fere that he had of
hym, he departyd, & went hastely wyth suche as wold
be saued wyth hym / and entred hys shyppes, and
brought wyth hym Sadoyne / for blanchardyn coude 4
neuer come tyme ynough to the rescue of hym; but or
euer they were entred in to theyr vessels they made
grete losse of their men / but the sorow was ryght grete
of Blanchardyn and of hys folke, whan he wyste that 8
the paynemys had wyth hem his trew felawe Sadoyne /
wherof he was so dolaunt, & so replenyshed wyth sorow
and heuynes, that no body coude pease hym by any
manere. He smote his hors wyth the spore, alonge by 12
the shores of the see, escryeng as loude as he myght vnto
kyng Alymodes, that he wolde take to hym ageyn his
felaw Sadoyne / and that for his raensom he shulde
geue hym thre score thousand pound of fyne gold, 16
wyth six thousand men of his folke that he had
prysoners / Alymodes ansuerd, that yf he wolde
delyuer the proude pucell in amours to hys wyll /
that he shulde take hym ayen Sadoyne / blanchardyn 20
ansuerd that he was content, and that whan he
sholde haue ayen Sadoyne / and had delyuerd the
proude pucell in amours in his hande / he shold rather
slee hymself than that she shold abyde wyth hym no 24
while. ¶ After these wordes / Alymodes, the kyng
of Cassydonye, that was ryghte sore an-angred, rose
vpon his fete and sayd to blanchardyn / that he
loste his wordes / And that he sholde neuer see 28
Sadoyne, but sholde haue hym wyth hym in to Cassy-
donye, where he sholde make hym to be hanged byfore
Beatrix his doughter, sayeng that suche sholde be the
rewarde of his folyshe loue, and that noon other raenson 32
he sholde take for hym. And the sorowefull / Sadoyne,
that was that tyme vpon the wale of the ship, sore
harde ybounde wyth yrons, bygan to calle, and sayde
wyth a hyghe voyce / 'far wel, my true felawe blanch- 36

ardyn / Ye shall neuer see me more, as I byleue.' And thus they departed wythout eny more speche. The wynde was goode for them, that sone brought them 4 ferre from the coste of Tormaday, ¹and drewe towarde Cassydonye / ¹

Sadoyne calls
farewell to
Blanchardyn.

¶ The xliiij. chapiter conteyneth in hit self how blanchardin made hym self redy with 8 his folke and nauye for to socoure and helpe his felawe Sadoyne / that kynge Alymodes brought prysoner ²to Cassy-donye / ²

12 **W**Han blanchardyn dyde see that to hym was Im-
possyble to haue ayen by raenson his true felaw
sadoyne, he was right sory therfor, and none was there
so grete frende wyth hym that coude recomforte hym.

Blanchardyn

16 sore pyteously he byganne to wyshe hym ayen, sayng
in this wyse; 'wo me, sadoyne, my veray true felawe!
for my sake ye haue lefte your fader, your royalme,
landes, lordshippes, and kynrede, and your frendes, and

laments the
capture of his
friend Sadoyne,

20 haue exposed the body of you and of your men to the
socoure and help of me / & nowe for myne owne cause
ye be prysoner, ought not I wel to enforce my self that
ye were delyuered from the euyll where ye be in at

24 this tyme for the grete loue that ye haue vnto me /

¶ Certes I ought to do it / and yf god be playсед, I
shall acqyte my self therof' / ¶ The pouere folke of
prusse, that is to wyte, the barons and knyghtes that

and resolves to
set him free.

28 Sadoyne had brought wyth hym / were sore dyscom-
fyted and full of sorowe for thabsence of their maystre,
that they sawe was brought prysonner of the paynems /
But blanchardyn ryght humbly dyde recomforte hem

32 þ^e best wyse that he coude / after that the gayne was

1-1 Wanting in the French.

2-2 auec luy

Blanchardyn
orders all the
ships at Torma-
day to be
victuald.

Eglantine meets
Blanchardyn,

and kisses him.

She sorrows for
his going.

He promises to
return soon.

In her Court

is a knight of
low birth,

parted emonge them that therof were worthy / Blanchardyn gaff commaundement, that alle the shippes and other vesselles that were al aboute Tourmaday, sholde be made redy and garnyssed wyth vytaylles suche as 4 apparteyned / and that his wyll was vttyrly sette for to goo to gyue socoure and helpe vnto his felawe Sadoyne / ¶ The fayr yong lady, the proude pucell in amours, was alredy come ayenst her true loue, Blanchardyn. So may ye well ynough thynke and knowe for certayn that teerys were there shed and wepte of her parte ¹in grete habondaunce¹ / ¶ Whan the two mouthes met kyssynge eche other, the noble mayden was 12 well recomforted of all her euylls past. But ouer moche dysplaysed her to see her feyth-full frende Blanchardyn that wolde goo ayen out of the lande / They cam wythin the cyte, where they were receyued wyth grete 16 feste and gladnesse. And syth, after the owre of mydnyght was past / Blanchardin cam to the paleys, where he fonde his loue, the proude pucelle in amours, that sorowed right sore for the departyng of her frende 20 blanchardyn. But the best that to hym was possyble he dyde recomforte / her, promyttyng to her, that alsone as he godely myght, he sholde retourne ayen toward her / ¶ Ther wythin was a knyght wyth her in whom she 24 had a grete confydence, whiche had be noryshed in her paleys from the first tyme of his yonge age wyth the kynge of Tourmaday her fader, that recomended hym at the owre of his deth vnto his doughter / ¶ A full 28 fayr knyght he was, but he was descended of a lowe kynrede, for his fader & his moder had be seruauntes wyth-in the place, ²the whiche knyght by his subtyl engyne and gode seruyse that he made, came to be soo 32

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

²⁻² (next page) Le quel fut par son subtil engin et seruice quil faisoit *que* le Roy de tourmaday pere de la pucelle auoit plus de foy

- pryue famylier wyth the kynge, the proude pucelle in
 amours fader, that he added and gaffe more feyth and
 truste,² and more credence vnto hym & his wordes, than
 4 he dyde in eny other knyght or baron of his royalme,
 wherfore atte his decesse he had him moche recom-
 ended / But men saye in a comyn langage that 'neuer
 noo wodewoll³ dyde brede a sperhawke' / ¶ I saye
 8 this for the knyght of whom I doo make here mencyon,
 whiche had to his name Subyon / for he was soo proude
 and so hawten, that aduyse was to hym for the grete
 auctoryte that he was ynne, that non sholde haue com-
 12 pared wyth hym / ¶ And therfore I saye that 'of
 churles, bothe man and wyff, can departe noo goode
 fruyte.' ¶ And it is Impossyble that yf eny grete lord,
 prynce / or baron gyue auctoryte or lene his eeres for
 16 to herken to a churles wordes / ⁴But that he shall be at
 last deceyued by hym, wythout more happe be⁴ / ¶ for
 men sayen that 'of a kerle may nought come but poyson
 and fylth, ⁵that maketh the place to stynke where he
 20 haunteth ynne⁵' / as ⁶the same⁶ Subyon dyde / Blanch-
 ardyn, seeng this knyght to be in grete auctoryte in the
 court of the proude pucelle in amours, and well hon-
 oured and gretely set by of all thoffycers of the places /
 24 He dyde cluse the sayde knyght subyon, wythout eny
 counseyll of other, for to playse the better the pucelle
 therby, and betoke vnto hym the keypyng of the proude
 pucelle in amours noble personne, wyth the charge and
 28 gouernaunce of an hundred knyghtes, that sholde wayte
 vpon hym, and made hym seneshall of all the royalme
 of Tourmaday, & rewler of all the lande, wherof the
 noble mayden was right glad, that knewe not what vnto
 32 her sholde befall therby afterward, as herafter ye shall
 mowe vnderstande playnly /

who was much
trusted by her
father.

His name is
Subyon.

To him,
Blanchardyn

entrusts
Eglantine,

and the realm of
Tormaday.

³ bruhier

⁴⁻⁴ merueilles est si en la par fin nen est deceu

⁵⁻⁵ que en bausme le lieu ou Il repaire

⁶⁻⁶ Icellui

¶ The xlv chapyter sheweth how Blanchardyn toke the see for to go socoure his felawe Sadoyne.

Blanchardyn
takes leave of
Eglantine.

His father
comforts her.

Blanchardyn,
his father and
men, embark.

They have many
ships,

After that Blanchardyn had put prouysion and 4
 A kepyng for his lady and her lande, he toke his
 leue of her, whiche was wel sorowfull of eyther
 parties. But the grete desyre that blanchardyn had for
 to socoure & helpe his true felaw sodayne, to haue hym 8
 out of the thraldom in to franchise, retarded wythin his
 herte many sobbynges / The kyng of fryse came toward
 the proude pucell in amours / And sayde to her ¹in this
 maner of wyse, ¹‘madame, It nede not to you to make 12
 eny sorowe / But be of goode chire and alle recom-
 forted, for, to the playsure of oure lorde, we shal not
 haue so soone accomplysshed oure enterpryse, But that
 I shal brynge to you ageyne my sone blanchardyn.’ 16
 The proude pucelle in amours thenne ansuerde full
 mekely, and sayde to the kyng, fader vnto Blanch-
 ardyn, ‘sire, of that ye promytte to me I thanke you
 moche; I pray god that it may be soo, and gyue you 20
 and hym grace to retourne wyth Ioye wythin short
 tyme / for the waytyng and tarying therof shalbe so
 renoyouse to me.’ The kyng of fryse and the other
 barons thenne toke their leue of the pucelle, and folowed 24
 blanchardyn that had taken his shippyng alredy. Whan
 the proude pucelle in amours sawe her frende blanch-
 ardyn departed from her chambre, where she lened
 vpon a wyndowe that loked vpon the see / making full 28
 pyteouse rewthes for her loue that she sawe, nor neuer
 thens she wolde departe aslonge as she myght see the
 shyppes that were sayllyng / ¶ Whan blanchardyn
 had taken the see wyth many shippes & galleyes, he 32
 had grete Ioye at his herte for the grete excereyte of
 folke that he conducted, And that wyth hym was the

kyng his fader, of whom he was well recomforted / as
 of thre score thousand good men of warre that wyth and 60,000 men.
 hym were wele appoynted, ¹what of Sadoynes folke as
 4 of hem of Tourmaday, ¹whiche had all a goode wyll &
 grete desire to rescue their lord Sadoyne, and to haue
 hym oute of the handes of king Alymodes: The weder
 was fayr and clere, and the see peasyble & styll; the
 8 ances were drawn up, and the sayles alofte, wherin
 the wynde smot & blew softe & good, that sone brought
 them a goode waye fro the lande. Grete bruyt & reuyl
 they made at their partyng; the see was couered wyth
 12 their sayles, that sore brode were spred vpon their ves-
 selles / many an horne, many an olyphaunt, ²& many
 a claryon & trompettes were blowen there, that made a Their trumpets
make a joyful
sound.
 Ioyefull noyse. ² ¶ We shall here leue to telle of blanch-
 16 ardyn & of his ryght puyssaunt excereyte, that wyth
 force of saylles & oores goon saylyng on the see, fulsore
 thretnyng kyng Alymodes his enmye / And shall re-
 tourne to speke of subyon, and of his lady the proude
 20 pucelle in amours, for to telle of their aduenturys, of
 the trayson of hym, and the grete comstaunce & feyth-
 fulnes of that other noble pucelle, in manere as here
 foloweth:

24 The xlvj chapter sheweth how Subyon, to
 whom blanchardyn atte his departyng
 had lefte the gouernaunce & kepyng of
 his lady, the fayr proude pucell in
 28 amours and of all the royalme: made con-
 spiracyoun ayenste her for to take her
 and haue her to his wyff: And of that
 that whiche happed afterwarde.

¹⁻¹ tant des gens de sadoine comme de ceulx de tormaday.

²⁻² et maintes tempestes de trompettes en y oy bondir.

Et sonnerent plus de deux grandes lieues de mer pour prendre leur estour.

Subyon, being
left in command
of Tormaday,

and having
charge of
Eglantine,

bargains with
the Chiefs of the
land,

that if they'll
help him to wed
Eglantine,

they shall share
her wealth.

YE haue well harde here afore, whan blanchardyn dyd departe from Tormaday, how he dyd ordeyne Subyon, & made hym seneschall & his leefteuant generall of the royalme of Tormaday / takynge to hym 4 the rewle and the keypyng of the pucell, vnto tyme that he were comen ayen. Subyon, seeying hym self in suche an auctoryte, ¹and so hanned in worship¹ / toke in his herte an vnconstaunt pryde of the moeuable² godes of 8 fortune, ³& wolde clymme vp yet in to a more hyghe astate than he fortunably was comen vnto / whiche myght wel haue suffysed a better man than he was ; for hym semed that the tyme was now come that he best 12 myght bryng it aboute.³ He sawe that he was obeyed thurgh all the royalme / & that nothyng was don wythout his leue or commaundement, whiche euery man kept & obeyed. So dyde he so moche, that wyth the 16 most grete of the lande he made conspiracion, in so moche that, by grete gyftes and promesses that he made to them, they promysed hym for to serue hym in accomplysying of all his wyll, & to make him kyng of 20 the lande / To this dyde consent many a traytour of the house of the pucell. Subyon sayde vnto them all / ‘ Lordes, ye knowe me al ynough, and the grete auctoryte and power where I am now ynne / Wherby I 24 may make yow all riche yf ye wyl helpe truly to brynge my desyre at a gode ende / and that ye helpe me so moche that I may haue to myn espouse the proude pucelle in amours and wedde her ; of alle the godes and 28 riches wherof she is endowed and well garnysshed, that nothing therof be parted / ¶ But ye shalbe perteners to the hool as my self, & to me shal suffyse the name to be a kyng, and to haue the pucelle to myn owne 32 wyf / & for þ^e seruyse that ye shal do to me in this

1—1, 2 Wanting in the French.

3—3 lui sembla que en plus hault estat quil nestoit lui conuenoit monter et que heure estoit venue pour ce faire /

byhalue, ye shal haue þ^e reward suchie as I haue promysed vnto you; & wyth this, I shal kepe you ayenst al other that wold trouble or greue you by eny maner
 4 of wyse; for moche better it is to you to haue a lord borne of this lande / than to haue a straunger; & ye may byleue certeynly that Blanchardyn shal neuer come ayen at thys syde; kyng alymodes is to myghty a lorde
 8 in his lande, ¹that shall sone ouercome blanchardyn.¹ And yf so be that he wolde be so ouer proude to come hyder ageyn, I shall make hym to be hanged wythoute eny respyte.' Then the false traytours & vntrew
 12 men to whiche Subyon made thys promyse / ansuerd to hym all wyth one voyce, that they shulde helpe to bryng thys werke aboute, that he shulde be kyng / & Incontynent dide geue vnto him their feyth, making a grete
 16 & a solempne oath that they shulde be trew to hym of their promesses. Alas, the good knyghte blanchardyn was not aware that tyme of the grete treason that machyned was ayenst hym. The ryght vntrew subyon
 20 was therof ryght glad / & sore desirouse to accomplysshe his dampnable enterpryse at an ende; he & his complices in grete nombre went vp to the paleys hall, where he fonde the proude pucelle in loue was, that
 24 but a lytyl afore was com fro the wyndowe, where she had conueyed wyth her eye her trewe louer blanchardyn / & commended hym & his fayer companye in to the keypyng of our lord, prayeng humbly that a goode
 28 retorne & a shorte he myght make. Thenne whan she sawe that she myghte no more see hem, she went awaye from the wyndowe as halfe in a swone, sore tenderli wepynge / And euyn at that tyme entred subyon in
 32 her halle, and toke her by the hande, and had her vp fro the grounde, and syn sayd: 'Madame, dyscomforte you not thus for a stranger that fleeth from one lande to a nother, but gyue me wythoute mo wordes your loue

K. Alymodes will kill Blanchardyn, or Subyon will.

The Chiefs agree to this treachery, by oath.

The traitor Subyon and his accomplices go to Eglantine,

who is mourning for Blanchardyn.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

Subyon asks her
to love him.

She scorns the
infamous churl.

He declares
he'll wed her
by force.

She is betrayd
by her Chiefs,

and sorrows
bitterly.

& goode wylle, and ye shall doo as a wyse woman &
well counseyllled.' Whan the noble mayden vnderstode
Subyon, ryght fyersli she began to loke vpon hym,
drawyng herselfe to the vpperhande of hym, and sayde : 4
' O thou ryght enfamouse churle and olde myschaunte,
How hast thou ben so hardy to speke thus of the sone
of a kynge, the most preu and the most valyant that
euer gyrded eny swerde? ¹how thenne, arte thou now 8
dronke, or folyshe, or from thy witte that thou haste
dare utter or profere suche wordes oute of thy mouthe' /¹
Thenne subyon al a hyghe ansuered and sayde : ' lady,
speke nomore of hit / for ye shal neuer haue non other 12
man to youre husband & lorde but me, and tomorowe
wythout lenger abydyng, wyl ye, or not / I shal take &
wedde you to my wyf, and shal beslepe your bed wyth
you' / And the traytours & felon conspiratours sayde 16
vnto their lady al togyder atones : ' Madame, take and
wedde subyon ! he is a man that shal kepe yow right
wel, and al your royalme, lordshipys, and landes' / The
good lady thenne hering the cursed and false traytours 20
speke / saw wel that she was trahyshed of all poyntes,
but yf god of his grace purueyed not for her, she was
lyke to be vttirly lost. To see that noble pucelle dys-
comforted as she was / ther was noo man but ought to 24
haue compassion & pyte of her / She wyst of noo com-
fortè to take vnto her, but to loke out at the wyndowe,
callyng after blanchardyn that alredy had saylled ferre /
& knewe nothyng of this adoo ;² for yf he had know- 28
lege ther-of the same tyme, he sholde neuer haue had
Ioye at his herte tyl that she had be delyuered out of
that grete heynynesse. The noble mayden made grete
sorowe & tourmented her self ful piteously. Thenne 32
cam her maystresse sore discomforted, that wyth grete

¹—¹ Comment doncques es tu fol ou yure ou esragie dauoir
oze dire telz motz

² affaire /

peyne brought her in to her chambre. ¶ The rewthe
 & doleaunce that this right parfit & true lady made,
 ought certeynly to styre and moeue all noble hertes to
 4 pyte & compassyon of her infortune / Whan at the best
 tyme and most entier of her age ¹she had euer more
 sorowe / care, & grete displeysure.¹ The night was to
 her sore long, whiche she & her maystres passed all
 8 wayes wepyng wythout onye ceasse. And the next
 day subyon, that to the nobles of the lande had assigned
 an owre for to be at the paleys / cam wyth theym that
 helde part wyth hym in the halle, hauyng their
 12 swerdes al naked vnder their mantelles / And whan
 the nobles of the lande were come there at his sendyng,
 subyon dyde expose vnto theym the cause wherfore he
 had called hem, and tolde them that he wolde be made
 16 kyng of tourmaday / & that he wold wedde the proude
 pucelle in amours, for many causes & raysons that were
 to long to be reherced.

Next day Subyon
 summons the
 Nobles, and

demands to be
 King,
 and to wed
 Eglantine.

¶ Here foloweth the xlvij chapter, that
 20 sheweth how therle of castelforde, the
 goode prouost, and the knyght of the
 fery, wyth their folke, toke and bare
 awaye the proude pucelle wyth them in
 24 to Castelforde, magre Subyon, that be-
 sieged them wythin the sayde place / ²as
 ye shal here.²

28 **W**Han the nobles of the lande that were there
 assembled vnderstod Subyon, they had therof
 grete merueylle, and loked vpon eche other al abashed /
 Of that other part, they marked well that wyth subyon
 were grete fuson of men, al in harneys vnder their

The Tormadian
 Nobles, seeing

Subyon's men
 arind,

¹—1 elle nauoit que desplaisir.

²—2 Wanting in the French.

are obliged to
yield his de-
mands.

But Lord
Castelford,
the Provost,
and the Knight
of the Ferry,
refuse,

fight Subyon's
men,

and carry off
Eglantine.

They mount her
on horseback.

and guard her.

gownes, wherfore they see wel that / force it was to
them to consent his wyl at that owre, & ansuered vnto
hym / 'Syth that his playsure was so, they were
content.' but the olde erle of castelforde, the goode 4
prouost, and the knyght of the fery, sayde al thre to-
gyder, of one accorde / that they sholde neuer be
consentyng of that infydelyte and grete trayson; but
cryed vp alowde, that men sholde taken Subyon, for to 8
be brought to pryson vnto the tyme that blanchardyn
cam ayen. subyon thezne called vpon his folke, &
saide that they sholde avenge hym vpon thees treytours /
The gode erle, the pronost, & the knyght of þ^e fery 12
called ayen in lyke wise vpon their folke / so byganne
þ^e medle to be grete & fyers Betuyx the two partyes,
whiche were not equal / for ouer moche were the
traytours in grete multytude / So were constrayned the 16
thre knyghtes and theyr men to wythdrawe themself
togyder awaye. Whan the proude pucell in amours
sawe therle departed, she ded call after hym ryght
pyteousli, 'Ha, ryghte nobel knyght, haue pyte & com- 20
passyon ¹vpon thys pore chylde, whiche is now all alone
amonge wolues famyshed, be redy to deuoure me.'¹
The goode erle, then, the prouost, & the knyght of the
fery, their swerdes in thier handes naked, toke & 24
seyssed her by force, & broughte her down the stayers
of the paleys, where they founde their horses, that
bode there after hem; and lepte a horsbak, and, by the
helpe of their frendes & kynnesmen, they sette the 28
lady vpon a myghty palfray, magre Subyon & all his
complyees. The prouost guyded her horse by the
reyn, that was made faste to the brydell, and the good
erle & the knyght of the fery cam behynde hem wyth 32
their folke, that had their swerdes al naked. And
somoche they dyd, by their highe proesse, that magre
their enmyes they conducted & broughte wyth them

the pucell oute of her cyte of tourmaday / that was not
 wyth oute grete rewth, & pyteouse clamors of the
 peple / for they were all in a grete dyspleasure for their
 4 noble & good lady, that so pyteousli they sawe departe
 the town. The noble erle, the good prouost, & the
 worthy knyght of the fery exployted¹ so longe, that
 wythoute eny let or combrauns they & þ^e proude
 8 pucelle in amours arryued in sauete wythin the fortres
 of Castelforde, where they were receyued of the countesse
 wyth hertly loue & grete humylite. The proude pucell
 in amours thanked and rendred graces onto oure lord,
 12 that she was thus escaped oute of the handes of her
 enmye / Wherof she thanked ryght moche the goode
 erle of Castelforde. And Subyon, seeng that the pucell
 was thus caryed awaye, he was ryght wrooth and sory
 16 that she was scaped soo from hym. he made all hys
 folke to lepe on horsbak, & folowed hem that had her
 awaye, by the markes of their horses steppes. but at
 thentree of a forest that was there, they loste their
 20 trayne, and went oute of ther waye / wherby they
 myght not folowe nor ouertake the pucell, nor they
 that brought her wyth them / ²And thus subyon & his
 complayees inordynate purpos was tourned, chaunged,²
 24 & fayled of their false & vntrew enterprise. the ryght
 wycked & false Subyon had not refreyned nor fulfilled
 his peruerse & vntrewe corage / but sent hastyly to
 Tourmaday for folke & engynes, ladders, and other
 28 habylmentes of warre, and made them com afore
 Castelforde, where he dyd laye his siege; and sware
 that he shulde neuer departe from afore the place vnto
 the tyme that the Castel were take, and theym³ of
 32 wythin at his wyll / But it ys sayd often, in a comyn
 langage / that ‘moche abydeth behynde that a fole

Eglantine's protectors conduct her safely to the fortress of Castelford.

Subyon pursues them,

but loses their track.

He sends to Tourmaday for munitions,

and besieges Castelford.

¹ *Orig.* fe expyloyted

²⁻² Par quoy leur desordonne propos en fut mue

³ ceulx

Eglantine's place
of Castelford is
impregnable,

and well mand.

* Lj.

thynketh' / for the good erle, the prouost, & the knyght
of the fery, wyth theyr folke, ordeyned & prouyded
theym self soo, that they fered but lytyl subyon or
nouzte; And had more lette & care to comferte the 4
noble lady ¹Eglantyne, otherwyse callyd the proude
pucell in amours,¹ than they had of Subyon. Castel-
forde was a stronge place, and well appoynted to the
werre / for that yt was Inprenable, and fered not the 8
shotte of the engynes / nor of bombardes. ¶ It was
purueyd ryghte well of vytaylles, and of good men of
werre. ¶ ²Here we shall tarye styll oure penne, to
wryte of them² that be byseged, and of Subyon, that 12
kepte his seege byfore the fortresse of Castelforde; And
³shalle wryte³ of Alymodes, the vntrew kynge, that
ladde wyth hym the goode knyghte Sadoyne, felawe to
blanchardyn, ⁴toward the cyte of Cassydonye /⁵ 16

¶ Here foloweth the xlviii chapter, that
conteyneth how kyng Alymodes arryued
before the cyte of Cassydonye / And how
he spake to his doughter, the fayr Bea- 20
tryx; and how for to doo to her a more
grete despyte, made a gybet to be dressed
vp, for to haue hanged there, afore her
eyen, hyr goode husbonde⁶ Sadoyne. 24

K. Alymodes
and his prisoner
Sadoyne

land in Cassi-
donye.

YE haue wele vnderstonde here afore, how kyng
Alymodes toke his shippyng hastely after the
batayll that was afore Tormaday, and brought Sadoyne
prysoner wyth hym; and saylled toward Cassydonye, 28
where they arryued wythoute lettyng or perell. whan
they were comen in to the hauen, Alymodes made his

1-1 qui avec eulx estoit

2-2 Atant vous lairons a parler deceulx

3-3 parlerons

⁵ la ou Ilz arriuerent sans peril auoir

⁶ *Orig.* husboode

aneres to be cast, and toke lande there wyth his folke ;
 and syth made their horses to be had oute of the
 vesseles, wherupon they mounted, and spred theymself
 4 vpon the playn in a fayr ordenaunce of batayll. There
 beganne the trompettes, the hornes, the olyphautes, &
 the busynes to blowe, that suche a noyse made, that
 the see & the erthe retentyssed wyth alle / The same
 8 tyme was the fayr Beatrix, the doughter of kyng
 Alymodes, lenyng ¹ wyth bothe her armes ¹ vpon a
 wyndowe wythin her paleys, that loked toward the see
 syde. ¶ She sawe there in the playne a grete nombre
 12 of men of armes, wherof she was right glad, wenyng
 to her that it had be Sadoyne, her true loue and
 welbeloued husbnde, that had retourned ageyne wyth
 Blanchardyn. hastely she made her stywarde to lepe
 16 a horsbak, and sent hym for to knowe what folke
 werre arrayued, and landed in so grete nombre ; whiche
 taryed not longe after that he was goon out of the
 towne, that he sawe Alymodes and his folke, that cam
 20 toward the towne ²a softe paas² / he asked hem what
 they were, and yf they wist not som goode tydynges
 of Sadoyne / Thenne cam kyng Alymodes forthe, and
 demaunded to the styward whiche his lady had leuer
 24 to see, other her fader or her loue Sadoyne. The
 styward ansuerd and sayde : ‘ Syre, I knowe not your
 persone, what ye be, nor to whom I speke ; but wel I
 dare telle you, that she careth not of her fader, and that
 28 yf he cam ayen, ³he sholde not entre nor come ayen he[r]
 nor come wythin the towne ’ / ³ ¶ And he tolde hym
 that they of the towne, and of alle the lande of Cassy-
 donye, were becomen cristen ; and had crowned Sadoyne
 32 ⁴to their kyng,⁴ & had made their homage vnto hym,
 and helde hym for their lorde souerayne / Whan
 Alymodes vnderstode the styward, he was sore dolaunt,

The noise of the
trumpets makes
Beatrice

send her steward
for news of
Sadoyne.

The steward
tells Alymodes
that Beatrice
cares not for
him.

The folk have
turnd Christians,
and elected
Sadoyne king.

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

²⁻² le petit pas

³⁻³ Il neutreroit pas en la ville

⁴⁻⁴ a roy

K. Alymodes & tryste of that he sawe hym self thus vnfortunable as
 to haue lost his knyghtes, and trowed to haue come to
 reffut in his lande, that he fonde tourned to another
 lawe than his owne; The gates of the cyte and castell 4
 shet / And theym of wythin rebell ayenst hym; his
 right dere sone daryus slayn and ded. Of that other
 part, he sawe his only doughter, that denyed and
 defended hym his comynge in to his cyte of Cassy- 8
 donye. He sayd full angerly to the styward, that 'to
 an euyll owre hath your lady ben so madde as to mary
 her self to a ladde, a straunger, wythout my lycence
 and knowlege. She hath styred suche a thyng, wherof 12
 she shal haue yet at her herte grete sorowe and heu-
 ynes. ¶ for thou shalt mowe telle vnto her / that wyth
 me I doo bryng her yong ladde Sadoyne, whiche I
 shall to morowe make to be hanged in despyte of her, 16
 byfore my cyte of Cassydonye /' ¶ Whan the goode
 styward vnderstode hym that to hym spake, and knewe
 certaynly ¹ that it was kyng Alymodes / wythout eny
 moo wordes departed from hym, and cam hastily, 20
 brochyng his horsse wyth the spore, vnto the cyte / he
 went in to the paleys, where he fonde his lady, and
 recounted to her how it was kyng Alymodes and his
 folke, and what he had sayde; wherof she entred in to 24
 a bytter displaysure, and hertely sorowe. ¶ Not wyth-
 standyng this, as a vertuose lady, made alle her folke
 to be redy in their harneys, whiche at that syde off the
 towne made to goo vp vpon the walles and towres, for 28
 to deffende the towne. And charged them that they
 sholde not late her fader come wythin, and that non
 of them sholde speke wyth hym. Kyng alymodes
 came rydyng toward the cyte wyth his bataylle / And 32
 aryued afore the castell, where he sawe and knewe his
 doughter, that loked out of a wyndowe / wyth hym he
 brought Sadoyne, to thende that she myght see hym,
 for to make to her a gretter dispite. Thenne called 36

bids the steward

tell Beatrice
 that he'll hang
 her husband
 Sadoyne next
 day.

¹ L ij.

On hearing this,

Beatrice has her
 walls mand.

Her father

- kyng Alymodes slowde, and sayde vnto his doughter,
 that anone hastely she sholde make to hym and his K. Alymodes
 folke openyng of the gates of the castel and towne;
 4 sayng to her / that ouer grete haste she had made to reproaches her,
 mary her self wythout his wyll, and that in an euyl
 oure she euer wedded Sadoyne; that for this cause, for
 to doo to her a grete dyspite, he shal to morowe make and threatens
 8 hym to be hanged / ¶ The fayre Beatryx, heryng her to hang her
 fader speke that she sone knewe, ansuered vnto hym husband.
 swetly, and sayd by grete humylyte, full of sorowe,
 and of compassyon and pyte, for to refrene and brynge
 12 to swetnes the harde corage and cruel wyll of kyng
 Alymodes her fader / And namely for her goode hus-
 bande sake / trowyng to eschewe his deth therby :
 ¶ ‘Ha, ha, my lorde, my dere fader, pardone your Beatrice tries to
 16 Wrathe and euyl wyll to my lorde my good husbonde, appease him,
 and to me your only doughter; & be you sure my
 lord, my dere fader, that whiche I haue donn in this
 behalue, I haue donn it for the best. and yf ye woll
 20 byleue me / ye shall leue your folishe credence¹ that ye and appeals to
 geue vnto your false goddes,¹ and shall byleue the fader, him to turn
 the sone, & the holy goost / ²one onli god,² that shalle Christian,
 make you to come to the blysse³ perdurable, that neuer
 24 shall fayll; and ye shall accorde wyth blanchardyn & and agree with
 wyth sadoyn, ⁴of whom⁴ ye shall be serued and dred of Blanchardyn
 all your neyghbours / and shall lyue in grete worship aud Sadoyne.
 & goode prosperyte alle your dayes; and I shall well
 28 doo wyth theym, that all that whiche I saye ⁵shall be
 made sure’ / ⁵¶ Whan thenne kyng Alymodes herde
 thus speke his doughter, as a cruell man from his
 wyttes, sayd vnto her: ‘Ha, ⁶false and renyed strompet, Alymodes abuses
 32 I were me leuer ded,⁶ than that I sholde byleue nor doo her.

1—1, 2—2 Wanting in the French. ³ gloire⁴—⁴ desquelz ⁵—⁵ Ilz feront⁶—⁶ mauuaise pute et renoyee lameroye mieulx que Il fusse
mort

K. Alymodes
says he'd rather
be torn in
bits than turn
Christian.

He will hang and
burn Sadoyne.

Beatrice taunts
her father,

³ L ij.

ridicules him
as a worn-out
old fool for
pretending to
Eglantine's
love,

and says that
God will restore
Sadoyne to her.

thi cursed counseyll; and that euer I sholde byleue in
that same god of the crystens, that thou now preyssest /
I sholde me leuer soffer to be drawen wyth horses /
and in despyte of hym & of the, I shall doo to be ⁴
executed in thy presence that that I haue sayd / and
after I shall make hym to be brent, and to deye an
euyl deth.' ¶ And whan she sawe that by ¹no manere
of meanes ¹she myght not tourne ne chaunge the corage ⁸
of her cruel fader, And that she herde hym saye blame
of her god, her creatoure in whom she had sette her
byleue and her herte / she by grete wrath sayd to hir
fader: 'O, full ryght false and olde tyraunte, that ¹²
worshypste false and desceyuable ²goddess and ²ydoles,
that canne not helpe the nor theym selfe, ¶ What
sekest thou here, nor what moeueth the to come in to
this marche? Thou haste noughte to doo here, for ¹⁶
thou shalt not sette thy foote wythin my towne / goo
ayen ³to Tormaday to see the noble lande of that lady,
she of whom thou arte amoureuse soo moche, that thou
arte a fole become therfore / Olde vnfamous mys- ²⁰
chaunt / how arte thou soo folyshe and so ouerwenynge /
as for to wene to haue her / ⁴thou haste that berde of
thyne ouer whyte therto / thy face is to mykel wonne /
and that olde skynne of thyn ys ouer mykel shronken ²⁴
to gyder; ⁴ put thy selfe in to some fayr hermytage,
And medel thou nomore wyth loue / leue this thoughte,
and make no more thyne accomptes for to entre wythin
my cyte; for yf ye haue taken and bunde my husbond, ²⁸
that I see ther by the, I shall haue hym ayene, to the
pleasure of our lorde my creatour, some daye, that shal
be to your euyll aduenture' / Whan Alymodes vnder-
stode the reproches and the rygorouse wordes of his ³²
doughter / he wende to haue lost his wyttes, and to

1-1 nullement 2-2 Wanting in the French.

4-4 vous auez la barbe trop grise, la face trop vsee et le
cuir trop retrait

- haue deyde for anger and sorowe / Incontynent, wyth-
 oute delaye, he made his trompettes to be blowen, And
 commaunded that the towne sholde be wele assaylled
 4 of all partyes / His men made hem redy after his
 commaundement / and came and sawted the towne full
 proudly / they that were wythin defended theym
 vygoryously, as men of highe facion¹ / ²They kylled
 8 and slue and hurte sore many one, Deffendynge hem
 selfe soo strongly ayenste their enmyes, to theyr grete
 losse and damage, & to wythdrawe them self ayen / ²
 wherfore kynge Alymodes, sore angry and full of wrathe
 12 ³for the deth of many of his knyghtes that had be ther
 slayne³ / ⁴made his ryche paulyons to be dressed &
 hanged byfore the towne⁴ / and commaunded thorough
 al his oost that they sholde reioyse hem self, and that
 16 they sholde make grete reuell, in sygne of Loye / to
 thende that þ^e noyse therof shold come to the eeres
 of his doughter / for to gyue a more grete cause of
 dysplaysure and sorowe: Also he commaunded that
 20 Sadoyne sholde be beten / And syth to morowe, in the
 mornyng, as soone as the daye byganne to appiere,
 kynge alymodes commaunded expressely to the mare-
 shall of his ooste, that he shold doo make and to be
 24 sette vp a galhouse, eyn byfore the castell / to thende
 that his doughter myght better see hange at her ease
 her frende and louer Sadoyne. He ordeyned and
 comaunded that he shold be hanged / After this
 28 comaundement made by kynge Alymodes, his mareshall
 dyde the kynges wyll to be accomplyssed; and accom-
 panied wyth fyue hundred men of armes, brought

K. Alymodes as-
 saults the town
 of Cassidonye,

but his men are
 beaten back.

Alymodes bids
 his Marshal set
 up a gallows,

that Beatrice
 may see Sadoyne
 hangd.

This is done.

¹ faeon

²⁻² maint en naurerent et occirent en eulx deffendant /
 tellement *que* leurs ennemis a leur grant perte et dommage sen
 retournerent arriere sans gaires prouffiter par moult en yolt de
 mors et de naures

³⁻³ Wanting in the French.

⁴⁻⁴ fist sonner la retraite et fist tendre son pauillion et ses
 tentes.

Sadoyne is
brought to the
gallows,

and sees his
wife Beatrice
in the castle.

The Saracens
beat him.

He hopes
Blanchardyn
will avenge him,

7 L. iij.

as he cannot
defend himself.

sadoyne eyn at the place where the gybet was made
redy / Whan he cam there, and sawe ¹a payre of gal-
house¹ dressed vp, where he trowed certaynly to hane
fynysshed hys dayes, þ^e teerys habondantly fell doune ⁴
from his eyen so byttyrly² that they wette al his face /
He byganne to make grete rewthe and pyteouse com-
playntes, sayng ³in this wyse³ / 'O, my right true felawe
and right dere frende blanchardyn, this day shall the ⁸
seperacyon be made of the amyte that is bytwene vs
bothe.' and syth loked vp toward the castel, where he
sawe his lady & wyf, the fayr beatryce / And whan he
dyde perceyue her face, he fyl doune in a swone alonge ¹²
the erthe / The sarrasyns, that saw this / lyfte hym vp,
and gaf to hym ⁴grete and heuy strokes wyth stau⁴ /
⁵He byganne yet ayen to make rewthe and complayntes,
wyshyng after blanchardyn ;⁵ and sayde how that he ¹⁶
was come out of his contrey, whiche was ferre thens,
for to helpe hym to socoure his lady, the proude pucelle
in lone ; & syth that he shold neuer see hym, that
he at the laste wyste yf he wolde auenge hym of ²⁰
this shamefull dethe or not, ⁶that he most nowe suffre.⁶
and syth he saide, ful sore sobbyng / 'Alas ! yf nedes
I shal dey, I were of it all well ⁷content / soo that it
were in the absence of her, that maketh all my sorowes ²⁴
to encrease for her tendre loue. Alas ! myghte not
fortune aswell hurte or greue me by a nother manere of
wyse, than for to mak me deye shamefully by-fore my
owne true loue, my goode wyffis presence / Alas ! wo ²⁸
to me, vnhappy man, and more than myschaunte that
I am / ys ther non other remedye ? muste I nedes deye
thus shamefully, wythoute eny deffence makynge ?'
After thees wordes of complaynte that Sadoyne made, ³²

¹⁻¹ "les fourches" as above.

² Wanting in the French. ³⁻³ Wanting.

⁴⁻⁴ de moult graus cops et ourbes

⁵⁻⁵ De rechief commença a regretter blanchandin

⁶⁻⁶ Wanting.

the cursed and felon paynems peyned hemselfe sore for
to make redye suche thynges as serued to make hym
deye vpon the galhouse, ¹that was sette vp byfore the
4 castell.¹

¶ The xlix chapter conteyneth / How the
fayer Beatrix sente her folke for to
socoure her husbande sadoyne / and was
8 rescued from deth, and brought wythin
Cassydonye, malgre his enmyes /

WHan the fayr beatrix, that at her wyndow was
lenyng her hande ouer her brestes, & ful sore
12 wepyng for loue of her husband, þat she sawe in pereyl
of hys lyf / she lefte asyde her femenyn wyll, & toke
wythin her the corage of a man vertuose in manere &
faccion of a hardy byfgyhtresse² / so ascryed she highe,
16 & sayd / 'O my ryght good & trewe knyghtes / this
daye I doo praye you & commaunde / that ouer all the
best knyghtes that are now reynynge in the wyde
worlde / ye woll socoure the comforte of my Ioye,
20 And that most is of all my lyffe, that goeth to per-
dyceyon, wyth oute it be by youre benyngne grace:
And vpon all the gode socoures and seruyces that euer
ye woll doo to me / That at this tyme and owre / atte
24 my requeste and prayer, Ye woll enforce yourselfe to
rescue oute of daunger of deth, my lorde ³& youre³ / my
gode husband sadoyne, that I see yonder in grete parel
of his lyf, but yf he be socoured right soone / ¶ And,
28 therefore, yet ayen to you, myn mēn, my true vasselles
I do full instantly pray, that your naturell lorde ye
wyll help, to haue hym out of his harde enmyes handes,
yf it be vnto you possyble' / The barons and knyghtes
32 thenne of a right gode wyll, wythout answer nor replie

Almodes's men
make ready to
hang Sadoyne.

Beatrice, seeing
her husband's
danger,

appeals to her
knights to

rescue him.

¹⁻¹ qui la estoient

² batailleresse

³⁻³ Wanting in the French.

The Cassidonian
knights forth-
with

arm, sally out

through the dry
ditches,

and are seen by
Sadoyne,

who bursts his
ropes,

kills four of his
guards,

and scatters the
rest.

K. Alymodes's
Marshal

reproaches his
men.

making, in grete hast and wythout delaye, enflamed
wyth yre & of cordyal wrath, for loue of their lord,
that the sarrasyns wolde doo deye thus pyteously ¹so
shamefull a deth¹ / ¶ And also for the loue of their 4
lady that they had full dere / went & armed hem self,
and hastely in grete nombre of folke, all a fote, lepte at
a posterne out of the towne, and cam al vnder couert
from wythin the dyches of the castel that were drye at 8
that syde, wythout that they were a-spyed of no man /
except of sadone, that soone perceyued theym comyng,
bycause he was alredy brought vpon the ladder / Whan
he had seen them, he that was as half ded a lityl afore, 12
toke ayen his strenthes and corage wythin hym self; he
wrang his fystes and brake the cordes al a sonder that
he was bounden wyth / And syth lept from the ladder,
whiche his legges enclosed to gyder, lokyng vpon a 16
sarrasyne that in his handes helde a grete guysarme,
²whiche is full goode and deffensable.² he toke hit from
his fystes, and gaf to hym suche a merueyllouse stroke
wythall, that he cloued hym vnto the breste / and 20
quykly gaf asmoche to another, & syth to the thirde &
to the fourthe, And scatered them abroad, soo that
none so hardy a paynym was there that durste come
nyghe for to hurte hym / ¶ Whan the mareshall of 24
kyngge Alymodes oost sawe Sadoyne, that all alone
bare suche damage ayenst them alle, he wexed full of
wrathe in his herte, he ascryed on his men, and sayde
that gretly and well they ought to hate hem self, and 28
to prayse hem self full lytyll. ¶ Whan for one man
alone they fled / and that it was a grete shame vnto
them that he had endured so long ayenst them all /
He approached hym self toward Sadoyne, his swerde in 32
his hand for to smyte hym. But Sadoyne that was
sore quyk and pert³ sawe him wel come, and gaf hym
wyth his guysarme suche an vnmesurable stroke that

¹⁻¹, ²⁻² Wanting in the French.

³ appert

- he cloue his hed vnto the tethe and slewe him. Euyne
 at this owre the cassydonyens that come were out of
 the cyte, smotte hemself emonge the fyue hondred
 4 sarrasyns by fore that they were aware of them / they
 beganne to slee doune right in euery side / and stroke
 and smote vpon the paynemys, so that they delyuered
 lightly þ^e place of hem, and none of them abode there,
 8 but that he was ded or taken / excepte som that fled
 awaye, that this tydynges brought to Alymodes, that
 was full sory whan he vnderstode this tydyng /
 Quykly he mounted a horsbake, and ranne as a mad
 12 man toward the gybette, where he fonde Sadoyne and
 his men that fought togydre. And whan Sadoyne saw
 hym come, he cam wyth a grete corage ayenst him,
 and leued vp his guysarme vpon him, where wythall
 16 he smote hym suche a stroke vpon his shulders, that
 he cloue¹ and ouerthrewe hym to the grownde, and
 sholde haue take the lyf from him right soone yf he
 had not be socoured of his men. But they came so
 20 fast by and by / And by so grete tourbes and hepes,
 that force it was to sadoyne to wythdrawe hym self &
 his men wythin the towne of Cassydonye, where he was
 receyued as ye may thynke right well wyth grete Ioye
 24 & gladnesse of ²my lady² his wyf, the fayr beatryce /
 And of that other part, the kynge alymodes was so sore
 brought as to dispeyre him self bycause that he had
 thus lost his prysoner Sadoyne, and that he sawe his
 28 mareshall of his ost slayne, and sawe hym self ban-
 nyshed and chassed out of his towne and royalme, and
 also his doughter that was wedded to his mortayll
 enmye / ¶ Of that other part, he harde the reuell and
 32 the Ioye that was made wythin the cyte, that gaff a
 cause to renewe his sorowes and heuy fortune ouer
 many folde / The same tyme that Alymodes the kyng
 was in suche h[e]uynes, Blanchardyn came sailynge

Sadoyne cleaves
him to the teeth.

The Cassidonians
charge,

and clear the
place of
Saracens.

Sadoyne
unhorses K.
Alymodes,

but his men
come up,

and Sadoyne
withdraws to
Cassidonye,

to Beatrice's
great joy.

K. Alymodes
grieves at his
bad luck.

¹ clove his helmet.

²⁻² sa dame

Blanchardyn
hopes to be in
time for the
fight.

vpon the see, sore desiryng forto com in tyme that he mygte fynde his enmye the tyraunt Alymodes, whiche he fonde ¹as ye shall vnderstond by the historye, whiche is folowyng.¹

4

¶ Here foloweth the l. chapter, whiche sheweth how blanchardyn arrayued in the hauen of cassydonye, before whiche towne he fonde Alymodes the kynge.² 8

Blanchardyn
and his father
the King of
Friesland

WEl ye haue herde here afore, how blanchardyn & the kynge of fryse his fader departed from Tormaday, wyth a gret excersite of men of armes, for to come towrade Cassydonye for to rescue his felawe 12 Sadoyne / they exployted soo long and made suche a dylygence, thorough helpe of god and of goode wynde, that they arrayued all hole & sounde wythin the sayd hauen of Cassydonye /. 16

land their horses
and men at
Cassidonye.

Whan they were arrayued, they caste theyr ancre, and had horses oute of the shippes / they descended on lande & mounted on horsbacke / Blanchardyn loked towarde the cyte, byfore the whiche he perceyued clerly 20 the tentes & the paulyllons of kynge Alymodes ryght well sette there in gret nombre, wherof he toke in hym selfe a ryght parf[i]t Ioye / he dyd shewe hem vnto his fader, and sayd : ‘Syre, ye maye espie & see byfore 24 you oure enmyes, as I wene.’ In thes wordes talkyng togyder, dyd arrayue there foure of their men, that were gon to clere the waye afore theym as ferre as kynge Alymodes ooste / whiche as they came ayen, recounted³ 28 a peynem, whiche they toke and broughte hym before Blanchardyn, that ryght dylygently examyned hym ; of whom he knewe for veraye trouth that it was kynge

They find K.
Alymodes en-
cempt there.

¹—¹ comme cy apres pourrez oyr.

² et se mist en ordonnance pour le combatre.

³ recontrerent

Alymodes that lodged was byfore the cyte of Cassy-
donye wythin his tentes and pauyllions, wherof he was
ryght glade. he made hys folke hastely to putte theym
4 selfe in ordenaunce of bataylle, and syth beganne to
marche fourth ayenst his sayd ennynes / that alle redy
were aduertysed of his comynge, Insomoeche that bothe
partyes cam ayenste other, wherby kyng Alymodes
8 knew full sone that it was blanchardyn / wherof he
had no grete Ioye / but became pencefull / Neuerthe-
lesse, as a knyght preu and hardy as he was, toke
corage in him selfe, admonestyng his folke to do well /
12 And of that other parte, Blanchardyn, ¹whan he wyste
that his felawe Sadoyne was escaped oute of kyng
Alymodes handes al hole, and sounde of all membres
thorough the goode remedye & ryght grete prouesse
16 that had mocued the herte of the fayr B[e]atryce his
wyffe & treue loue / wherof she canne not be praysed
al ynough [had right grete Ioye].

They put their
men in battle
array.

Blanchardyn
rejoices at
Sadoyne's
escape.

¶ The 1j^o chapter speketh of the grete
20 batayll that was bytwyxx blanchardyn
and kyng Alymodes byfore Cassydonye.
And how Alymodes was ouercome / take
& broughte prysoner in to the cyte.
24 And of the coronacyon of sadoyn and
of his wyff Beatryx.

WHan sadoyne, that was the same tyme ²lokyng
out at a wyndowe² wyth-in his castell of Cassy-
28 donye, & his wyf the fayr Beatryx by hym / sawe the
two oostes þat they wold Ioyne to-gyder to batayl, he

Sadoyne sees

the two hosts
fighting.

¹ la lance au poing venoit cheuauchant deuant ses ba-
tailles priant et exhortant ses gens de bien faire et eulx effor-
chier a abatre et pourfendre et confondre leurs ennemis qui
deuant eulx venoyent ¶ Moult Ioyeulx estoit.

²⁻² appuye aux fenestres

gaf hymselfe gret meruayl, for he had seen them take
 lande / but he knew hem not / so hadde he gret desire
 to know what they wer. he saw them com to eche
 other, makynge grete cryes & callynges, so þat emonge 4
 other he harde call Tourmaday; he dyde set al his
 entent for to know the baners and tokons of the lady
 of Tourmaday, so that incontynent after this he per-
 ceuyed and knewe that it were they, that by blanch- 8
 ardyn his felawe were conducted and guyded. hastily
 he made and comaunded to be publisshed thorough all
 the cyte, that all men shold be in harneyse / whos
 commaundement they full dyligently acomplyshed / 12
 Sadoyne, armed of all his armes, mounted vpon his
 courser and lept out of the towne wyth xv. thousand
 gode knyghtes, valyaunt & hardy, that al at one poyse¹
 smot hem self wythin Alymodes folke, wherof at their 16
 comyng on they slewe many one / Of that other part
 was blanchardyn, that made thynges wonderful vnto
 men, of sleeing / hewyng,² and gyuyng horryble strokes
 vpon his ennynes.² And who had seen hym at that 20
 tyme / he wold not haue trowed that he had be a man
 mortal; he craunted & ouerthrew al before him, cleuyng
 them³ to the eerys & to the brestes of hem³ / ⁴he had
 be there longe,⁴ whan his swerde was ryght well knowen 24
⁵in euery of the ooste⁵ / he brake & departed the grete
 preesses / so that his ennynes made waye byfore his
 swerde, for grete drede that they had of hym: and they
 all fled, ⁶that none durst abyde the peyse of his heuy 28
 strokys.⁶ sadoyne, his trewe felawe, cam that tyme &
⁷Ioynd his horse beside his.⁷ Of their reconyssaunces
⁸and thankes⁸ that they made ⁹tyll eche other,⁹ I make
 no mencyon at al / by cause at þ^e tyme ther was nother of 32

Sadoyne

at length per-
 ceives that one
 of the armies is
 Blanchardyn's.

Sadoyne musters
 with 15,000
 knights, and
 charges Aly-
 modes's army.

Blanchardyn
 slays and hews
 his foes,

and is soon joind
 by Sadoyne.

¹ feris ²⁻² confondre et abatre ses ennemis
³⁻³ Iusques es cervelles ⁴⁻⁴ Gaires ny ot este
⁵⁻⁵ de tous costez ⁶⁻⁶ que nul ne losoit attendre
⁷⁻⁷ se vint joindre empres luy.
⁸⁻⁸, ⁹⁻⁹ Wanting in the French.

them bothe / but that he had grete besynes in hande /
 notwythstandyng ¹what a doo¹ that they had, they
 embraced ²& colled² eche other, & made grete ³know-
 4 leg, gyuyng thanks to othre.³ And syn, both togyder
 smote theym self amonge theyr enmyes al atones / to
 whom they solde ful dere ther acqueyntance / And
 wyth theym was the kynge of fryse, that of new had
 8 cast doune to the grounde that bare the chief standarde
 of kyng alymodes, wherof their enmeis made grete cries
 & grete noyse for their baner, that laye vpon the
 grounde. They forced hem self as moche as they
 12 coude to haue it vp ayen; but the right grete prouesse
 of the forsaid thre princes kept them ther fro. ¶ for
 they dyde so moche, that wythin a whyle they bracke
 the presse, and putte to flyght theyr enmyes. The
 16 kynge Alymodes, seeng his folke that fled / his cheff
 standarde ouer thrawn and layng vpon the grounde,
 His barons all ⁴to-bet adoune⁴ / and also⁵ sawe that
 Impossyble it was to hym to escape hym self quyk
 20 ⁶from the bataylle⁶ / wherfore assone as he myght, or
 euer that a more grete myscheff sholde happe vnto hym,
 cam & yelded hym self in to the handes of blanchardyn
 and of Sadoyne / prayng them right humbly for mercy
 24 and grace, & that they wolde saue his lyff. ¶ They
 toke hym as their prysoner; and after that the werke
 was ended, and that all their enmyes were taken or
 slayn, they brought hym, and entred wythin the cyte
 28 wyth grete tryumphe and glorye / ¶ Yf the Ioye, &
 the fayr welcome and honourable recepcion that of the
 fair Beatrix was made vnto theym, I wold reherce and
 telle, I sholde ouer longe tary my self / But the Ioye
 32 and the feste was there so grete, that suche another was

The King of
 Friesland
 unhorses the
 chief Standard-
 bearer of K.
 Alymodes.

Alymodes, seeing
 that he cannot
 escape,

gives himself up
 to Blanchardyn
 and Sadoyne.

They take him
 in triumph into
 Cassidonye,

to Beatrice's
 delight.

¹⁻¹ quelques affaires

²⁻² Wanting in the French.

³⁻³ recoignoissances.

⁴⁻⁴ abatre et detrenchier

⁵ dautrepart

⁶⁻⁶ Wanting.

Sadoyne is
crownd King.

He holds the
land united,

sets up good
customs,

and does all that
Blanchardyn
advises,

Then Blanch-
ardyn makes
ready to go home
to Eglantine.

not seen byfore that tyme, ¹duryng this grete Ioye and feste¹ / The barons and lordes of the lande, that were there alle to gyder, of one accorde and one wyllle crowned Sadoyne, and receyued him to their kyng and 4 to their lord. And the fayre Beatryx his wyff they also dyde crowne as heyre of the lande. the feste beganne ayen to be right grete, ²for Ioye of this coronacyon² / The barons of the lande made their homage 8 vnto sadoyne, and toke and releued their lordshippes of hym / and obeyed hym as their lorle³ naturell as longe as they lyued, and that Sadoyne and their ladye were to gyder wythout eny rebellyon / ¶ Sadoyne helde and 12 kept the lande all his tyme in goode vnyon : they that were about hym rebell / he dompted ⁴and subdewed⁴ them, and brought them to his obeyssaunce. Well and truly he loued and maynteyned Iustyce / The euyl 16 customes he brought doune, and areysed and ordeyned other that were goode and most proffitable, that he & his counseyll coude aduyse : And by especyall all that was told hym, ordeyned and aduyed by blanchardyn / 20 He dyde and acomplysshed. ¶ After that Sadoyne was crowned to be kyng, and that he had achyeued and made alle his ordonnaunces for to gouerne and holde his royalme in gode peas ⁵and vnyon,⁵ Blanch- 24 ardyn, his felawe, dysposed him self for to retourne ayen toward Tormaday, to the proude pucelle in amours, his lady, that he desyred sore for to see. So made he to be apparelled his nauye, for to make his retourne 28 ayen, leuyng Sadoyne his felawe wyth the fayre Beatryx his wyff. he wyst not of nothyng that he sholde haue eny more to do / for he knewe not of the ⁶venymouse malyce of the false traytoure Subyon, that wold haue 32

¹—¹ Apres que la solempnite des nopces fut passee

²—² et y furent fais plusieurs esbatemens durant laquelle

³ *Orig.* lordes ⁴—⁴, ⁵—⁵ Wanting in the French.

⁶—⁶ nouvelle que par subien auoit este procedee alencontre de sa dame.

attempted a grete trayson ayenst hym and his lady,⁶ the
proude pucelle in amours /¹

¶ The lij chapter conteyneth how the
4 proude mayden in loue sent the prouost
toward blanchardin, whiche after thees
tydynges exployted se sore, that he ar-
ryued wyth alle his excercyte nyghe to
8 the oost of Subyon /

Well ye haue herde here afore, that atte departyng
that Blanchardyn made fro Tormaday,² for to
goo rescue hys felawe sadoyne,² he lefte his lady, the
12 proude pucelle in amours, in the gouernaunce & kepyng
of subyon / the whiche, as ye haue vnderstonde afore,
made conspyracoun ayenst her / for to haue her to his
wyff, and to make hymself kynge of Tourmaday,³ to
16 thende that blanchardyn were kepte ther fro³ / But
thorough the prudence & worthynes of the noble erle of
Castelforde, of the goode prouost, & of the knyghte of
the fery /⁴ a remedy was had ayenst his wycked malyce,⁴
20 by suche a wyse that, wold subyon or not, & all his
helpes, the noble lady, proude of loue, was taken oute
of his power, and was brought by the forsayd two
knyghtes & erle to the castel of Castelford / wherof
24 subyon was ryght sory. he cam & layde his seege,
trowyng for to haue taken her; but the place was soo
strong that it had no doubte of no seege / for it was
garnyshed of good knyghtes for to defende it / and wele
28 furnyshed wyth⁵ all manere of vytaylles⁵ necessaryre to
suche a fortres. The lady, that was shette wythin, was
full sore & wroth for her frende blanchardyn, that he
was soo ferre from her / and ryght moche desired his

Blanchardyn
had left Eglan-
tine in the
charge of the
traitor Subyon,

who tried to
wed her.

But she was
rescued and
taken to Castel-
ford,

where Subyon
besieges her.

¹ comme y apres porrez oyr. ²⁻² Wanting in the French.

³⁻³ afin de en debouter blanchandin ⁴⁻⁴ y fut pourueu

⁵⁻⁵ tous viures

Eglantine asks
the Earl of
Castelford and
the Provost of
Tormaday to
send to Blanch-
ardyn.

The Provost
undertakes to
go,

secretly sets
sail,

and lands at
Cassidonye.

comyng ayen. she dyd calle to her therle & the
prouost, to whom full swetli she prayed þat they wold
sende toward Blanchardyn, for to reherse & shewe vnto
hym the tydynges of the seege that byfore them was. 4
'madame,' sayd therle, 'I am redy to do your pleasure /
& me semeth it ought to be doon as ye saye / ye most
aduyse & see by whom your message shalbe made.' the
good prouost then rose on his feet, & sayd : 'madame, 8
yf your wyll be, I shall gladli tak this vyage in hande /
and I shall neuer rest noo where tyl that I haue founde
blanchardyn.' 'prouost,' sayd the pucell / 'of this
seruyce that ye profer me, I thanke you moche / for no 12
better messenger I can not send / nor that can better
recounte ¹& telle¹ the danger where we ben now in' /
The prouost made a galley to be redy, that was atte an
hauen there nyghe / he made her to be garnysched 16
wyth men and vytayllys; and syth, whan al thyng
was redy, he toke his leue of the noble mayden his
lady, and of the eerle / and sone after the houre of
mydnyghte he departed pryuely oute of the castell, 20
and went and toke his shyping wythin his galley
so styлле, that of ony bodey of the siege he² was not
aspyed. So moche exployted the prouoste, sailyng
nyght and daye ouer the see, that by good wynde that 24
he hadde / he arryued in a mornynge in to the hauon
of Cassidonye / where he fonde many shyppes, that
made theym selfe redy by the ordonaunce of blanch-
ardyn. The prouoste asked them after blanchardyn / 28
they tolde hym all that they knew of hym. The
prouoste descended a lande, and cam in to the towne /
and / syth mounted to the paleys, where he fonde the
barons, that talkyd to gyder. He salued blanchardyn 32
& Sadoyne, that welcomde hym and made hym grete
chere. ¶ Then spake blanchardin to the prouoste, and
asked hym of his tydynges. 'Syre,' sayd the prouost,

¹⁻¹ Wanting in the French.

² *Orig.* has

‘ye shal knowe that tydynges I brynge / but they be not
 pleysaunte.’ He thenne rehersed¹ and shewed¹ vnto
 him² al alonge the grete vntrouthe and false treyason,²
 4 that by Subyon hadde be made and machyned ayenste
 him and his lady, þ^e proude pucelle in amours. ¶ Blanch-
 ardin, heryng thees tydynges, was sore dolaunt. ³He
 called to his felawe Sadoyne,³ And recounted to him
 8 alle that the prouoste hadde reported and sayd ; ⁴Wher-
 upon they fulsone, wythoute eny other inspecte / con-
 cluded togyder / that they sholde departe the nexte
 daye towarde Tormaday, and that they sholde neuer
 12 ceasse vnto the tyme they⁴ had socoured the proude
 pucell in amours. ¶ ⁵Their shyppes were rede, and
 were garnyshed of folke and vytaylles.⁵ They toke their
 leue of the quene ⁶Beatrix, that was ryghte sory whan
 16 she sawe the departyng of her husbande sadoyne / and
 entrynge in to their vesseylles / saylled wyth so grete
 dyligence, by the goode wynde that they had / so that
 they came wyth out eny lette or aduenture, that ought
 20 to be tolde, and arryued wythin the hauen of Tour-
 maday. ¶ Whan they were come there, blanchardyn
 sent the prouost, for to wyte of theym of the cyte yf
 they wolde gyfe vp the cyte peasybly vnto hym, and
 24 he sholde receyue them ⁷to mercy⁷ / ¶ The prouost
 descended a lande, and cam in to the cyte ; And exposed
 vnto the burgeys and comynalte the charge that he had
 of blanchardyn. ¶ The cytezeyns & comon people of
 28 the towne, that vnderstode the prouost, were full glad
 of Blanchardyns comyng / And ansuered in this wyse,
 al wyth one voyce, that his comyng was to theym right
 pleysaunt and agreable / and that whiche had be doon

The Provost of
 Tormaday tells
 Blanchardyn
 the treason of
 Subyon against
 Eglantine.

Next day,
 Blanchardyn
 and Sadoyne
 set sail,
 6 M j.

and soon reach
 Tormaday.

The citizens

say they will
 give up the city
 to Blanchardyn.

1—1 Wanting in the French. 2—2 la desloyaulte et trayson
 3—3 Il appela sadoine son compagnon
 4—4 Si conclurent ensemble de partir lendemain et de non
 Iamais arrester tant quilz
 5—6 Ils firent hastiuement apprester et garnir leur nauire
 de tout ce que mestier auoyent. 7—7 a mercy

Subyon's
soldiers refuse
to give up
Tormaday to
Blanchardyn;

so the citizens
kill or wound
them all,

open the gates,

and receive
Blanchardyn
as their lord.

Blanchardyn's
spy tells Eglan-
tine the good
tidings.

ayenst hym and their lady, wythin the cyte, was doon
of force / ¶ Whan the souldyours, that Subyon had
leste there in garryson, herde and vnderstode the wylle
of the people of the towne, They ansuered all, that they 4
sholde not suffre this, and that the cyte sholde be kepte
for Subyon. Wherefore all the comynaltye of the towne
went and armed them hastely, and came vpon the
market place, where they byganne to fyght ayenst the 8
souldyours of the towne, that wolde haue kepte it for
Subyon / ¶ Ryght grete slawghter was doon there /
But the maystrye & strengthe abode wyth the peple,
soo that they kyld or hurted sore all them that were of 12
subyons folke. And syth toke the bodyes ded, and
caste hym ouer the walles of the towne in to the
dyches / ¶ And after this they opened the gates of
the towne, and in grete reuerence, and in token of 16
humylte cam the burgeys and the people, all barefote,
in maner of a processyon ayenst blanchardyn, and
receyued to their lorde / And after that he & al his
folke were entred wythin the cyte / he sent a spye vnto 20
the castel of Castelforde, toward his lady, þ^e proude
pucell in amours; whiche spye dyde soo well, that he
entred in to the sayd fortresse, that he was not seen ¹of
theym that were atte the syege¹ / He recounted ²and 24
tolde² vnto the lady & to the erle, how blanchardyn &
his felawe Sadoyne came for to socoure them, and that
they were entred wythin Tormaday. Thise tidynges
were to them moche playsaunt, for they were in a grete 28
daunger of Subyon, that domaged theym ryght sore, and
their place, wyth their bombardes and other engynes
of warre, that he had do brynge there. And whan
they of Castelforde vnderstode by the sayd spye that 32
blanchardyn was comen wythin Tormaday, and that he
came to gyue them socours and helpe ayenste Subyon,

1—1 Wanting in the French; et quant leans fut entre.

2—2 Wanting.

- they beganne to make grete festes and grete Loyes for
his comynge, and called and songe so highe that the
noyse therof came vnto subyons eeres / ¹that gaff himself
4 grete meruaylle why they ded soo.¹ On the morowe
erly, blanchardyn and Sadoyne departed from Tormaday,
and lefte there the good kyng of fryse, and foure thow-
sand goode men wyth hym, for to kepe the towne /
8 Whan blanchardyn and his ooste were yssued oute of
the cyte, he made two bataylles, euery one of ten
thowsand men / The fyrst bataylle he betoke to be
ledde by sadoyne his felawe, And ²that other² bataylle
12 he conducte himself, and prayd & admonested his folke
to doo welle: And syth toke their waye toward Castel-
forde, takyng a waye whiche was not moche haunted.
¶ And alle at one peyse cam and spored their horses
16 nyghe vnto the ³ooste of Subyon, or euer he was aware
of hem / Nor he had not knowen nothyng of theyr
commynge, but of a yoman of his owne, that came from
foragyng ⁴and sechyng of heey and ootes for his horses⁴ /
20 that aduertysed hym; whiche came rennyng all his
myght towarde Subyon, and toolde hym on highe that
blanchardyn came wyth a grete felyshyp, for to fyghte
wyth hym / And that yf he putte not his folke lyghtly
24 in ordonaunce for to receyue hym / he was in pereyll
to lose hym selfe and all his ooste. ¶ Whan subyon
vnderstode that yoman, he chaunged coloure in face,
and was sore abashed. Wyth ryghte grete haste he
28 made his folke to putte hemselfe in araye / & prayd
them that they wold helpe hym at his nede, pro-
myttyng theym for to make hem all ryche. They
ansuerd that he sholde make therof no doute, and that
32 they were stronge ynough for to resyste ayenste
blanchardyn, ¶ And promysed hym to yelde vnto hym

Next day,
Blanchardyn
and Sadoyne

march from
Tormaday with
two battalions
of 10,000 each,

and suddenly
come on
Subyon's host.
³ M ij.

Subyon, warnd
by a yeoman,

arrays his men.

¹⁻¹ qui moult sen donna grant merueille et ne sauvoit la
cause ni pour quoy Ilz se esioyssoient ainsi fort

²⁻² la seconde. ⁴⁻⁴ Wanting in the French.

Subyon's men
promise to give
him Blanchardyn
and Sadoyne,
alive or dead.
They number
30,000.

blanchardin, other quicke¹ or ded / or euer that the
euen sholde be come: and his felawe Sadoyne also.
They were a xxx thowsand men ther, that helde wyth
subyon, that thus thretened blanchardyn that they ⁴
sholde smyte his hed of / but it ys sayd in comyn /
that 'who soeuer rekeneth wythoute his hoste, he
rekeneth twys ²for ones.'² ¶ ³Thus hit happed wyth
Subyones men / as it foloweth.³ 8

The liij chapyter speketh how Blanchardyn
and Sadoyne dyscomfyted Subyon / And
of the grete bataylle / and manere how he
was taken ¶ ⁴And what folowed after.⁴ 12

Blanchardyn's
and Sadoyne's
battalions charge
Subyon's army.

WHan Blanchardin and Sadoyne sawe hem nyghe
Subyons ooste / they⁵ caste a ryghte highe
crye / and smote hemselfe in to their enmyes by suche a
force & vertue that ⁶their comynge on⁶ they owerthrewe 16
many⁷ of theym to grounde / that neuer syth releued
hemself / but / deyde myserable there bytwyxe the horses
feete. ¶ So grete and horyble byganne the batayll.
The ayer was derke wyth ⁸shotte of arowes, quareylles 20
& dartes⁸ that flowe bytwene bothe partyes. The dust⁹
and the brethe of men and of the horses was so thycke,
that wyth payne they knew one from a nother / Then
came they to fyghte wyth sperys, axes, guysarmes, and 24
swerdes, wherof they kylled and slew eche other.
Blanchardyn & Sadoyne sette all their entent to slee
their enmyes / whan theyr speres were broken they
sette hande to their swerdes, wher wyth they parted the 28
grete presses / and wythin a while they had dyed them-
self in rede wyth the bloode of their enmyes, that made
vnto them waye ¹⁰to passe by them.¹⁰ ¶ And Blanch-

They slay their
enemies.

¹ prins ²⁻² Wanting in the French.

³⁻³ ainsi comme cy apres pourrez oyr. ⁴⁻⁴ Wanting.

⁵ *Orig.* thay ⁶⁻⁶ alaborder quilz feirent ⁷ *Orig.* nany

⁸⁻⁸ por le trait ⁹ *Orig.* durste ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ Wanting.

ardyn that ceassed not to renne here and there as a mad man, loked and sawe byfore hym a knyghte / whiche was nyghe of sybbe vnto Subyon,¹ that bare the cheff
 4 standarde. he tourned brydell to hym ward, and wyth his goode swerde smote hym suche an horryble stroke that he cloue him doune to the chynne / and feell ded wyth the standarde to the erthe that was not after
 8 reysed vp ayen / How be it that Subyon and his folke putte hem in payne for to haue hit brought vp ayen / But blanchardyn and Sadoyne kepte hem ther fro / Of that other parte, the good erle of Castelforde, the pro-
 12 uost and the knyght of the fery yssued out of the castell wyth a thousaund knyghtes, that brake vpon their enmyes, castyng a right hyghe crye, wherof Subyon and his men were sore affrayed,² for he sawe his cheff
 16 banner ouer thrawen, & hym self enclosed of al sydes, his men that fled, & awayte non other but after the stroke of deth. Wherunto he sawe hym self to be brought, yf he fonde not som³ waye or meanes for to
 20 saue hym self⁴ / He putte hym self to flyght, for hym thought / the best manere for to flee / was for to departe by tyme. ¶ Blanchardyn and Sadoyne, that alwayes made watche ouer hym for to take and slee
 24 hym, Sawe hym go out of the bataylle / and set vpon a myghty courser / they ranne anone after hym and chassed hym sore / ¶ He was well mounted vpon a goode horse, Wherfore they coude not ouertake hym
 28 bycause the nyght byganne to comen, and myght no lenger see him: he toke and entred wythin a forest that was nyghe by / the remenaunt of his folke were al take by blanchardynes men; grete gayne they made
 32 there, & a grete foyson of prysoners: they had / grete Ioye and gladnesse they made of their victorye / But the erle of Castelforde and the barons merueylled them muche, bycause they wyste not where their lordes blanch-

Blanchardyn

eleaves Subyon's
Standard-bearer
to the chin.The Castelford
knights sally
out,and attack
Subyon's men.³ M iij.

Subyon flees.

Blanchardyn
and Sadoyne
pursue him,but lose him in
the night.His troops are
conquered.¹ *Orig.* Sadoyne. ² *Orig.* affyerad ⁴ *et mettre a garant.*

ardyn and Sadoyne ¹were drawn.¹ they soughte and /
 serched them all aboute / but they fonde them not.
 ¶ And for the recouthe of their aduenture, they chased
 Subyon that was horsed at a vauntage better than they 4
 were: he walopped soo longe that he came in to a
 valey where theues were, whiche were ten or twelue in
 nombre, that were all grete murdrers, wherof the pryn-
 cypall and the mayster of them all was named syl- 8
 uayne / that knew well ynough subyon, whiche came
 vnto theym, & sayd that he had grete nede of theym ;
 And that two knyghtes chased hym for to slee him.
 And that yf it so happed that they myght catche and 12
 gete hem ²there wythin their caues² / they sholde haue
 of them so grete a butyneue, and so grete goodes, that
 they all shall euer more be ryche / ¶ Whan the theues
 vnderstode subyon / they were sore desirouse to lodge 16
 theym wythin their streyngthe preuely wythin a secrete
 chambre: whiche thyng they ded, but they had not so
 soon doon so, that blanchardyn & sadoyne came there,
 and asked the theues ³yf they wyste not to speke³ of 20
 a man that was mounted on horsbacke, and armed as
 they were. They ansuerd that they wyste no tidynges
 of hym, nor of none suche; but wel they said to blanch-
 ardyn & to sadoyne, that yf they wolde be lodged there 24
 wythin for the nighte that was comen / they sholde
 make theim gode chere of suche goodes as god had lent
 hem: By cause they semed to be knyghtes, and that it
 was sore late to ryde eny ferther, & that noo housyng 28
 nor no retrayt was nyghe ⁴by syx myles⁴ where they
 myght be lodged. The two barons, heryng the theues
 speke, consented for to lodge hem selfe for that nyght
 wyth them / They entred in to their strengthe / And 32
 whan they were comen in, and that they had seen the
 dysposicoun of the place / they Iudged in hem selfe,

Subyon's horse
saves him.

He reaches a
valley of thieves

led by Sylvain,

and tells them of
the booty they'll
get if they kill
his two pursuers.

The thieves
offer to lodge
Blanchardyn
and Sadoyne,

and they go into
the thieves'
stronghold,

1-1 estoient vectis 2-2 Wanting in the French.

3-3 se ilz scauoient nouvelles 4-4 Wanting.

¹that al thys meyne were murderers and theues.¹ Where-
 for they concluded with in them selfe, that they sholde
 lye al nyghte in their harneys, and that they sholde
 4 not be dysgarnyshed of their swerdes. Whan Sylneyn,
 the chief mayster of the theeues, see that they had not
 putte off their harnes / he came toward them, & said
 that they were in pease & in a sure place / & that they
 8 myght wele putte of ther habilymentes of werre.
 blanchardyn then ansuerd vnto him & sayd / that it
 was the costome of theire land, not to putte of their
 armures for the fyrst nyght that they cam to a new
 12 lodgyng / the theues that sawe blanchardyn & Sadoyne
 so fayr, so grete, and so wele armed, durste not assaylle
 them ; but Subyon, that was hidde wythin a chambre,
 and that wele had herd theym / lept oute of it & gaaff
 16 them corage, And sayd that they were all wery of the
 batayl, And that a grete shame were to them xiiij in
 nombre / yf they durste not sette vpon two men.
 ¶ Thenne came ²syluayn, his felawes wyth hym,² And
 20 ascryed³ the two barons to ⁴dethe : Thenne saide blanch-
 ardyn to sadoyne / ' we must defende oure self now / yf
 we thinke to scape quyk out of this place, & euer see
 oure ladyes paramours.' They left their wordes, drewe
 24 their swerdes, & set their sheildes afore theym, so bigan
 they to smyte amonge their felon enmyes / they all to-
 hewe & cleue them in so moche that eyght of them
 fell down ded to therthe; the other foure trowed to
 28 haue fled in to sauete, but they were pursued so nyghe
 of blanchardyn & of sadoyne that they ouertoke & slew
 thre of them; the fourth that was maister of hem all
 fled wythin the place for to haue saued hymself, in to
 32 the chambre where subyon was⁵ / but of so nyghe he

but will not
disarm.

Subyon per-
suades the
thieves to
murder Blanch-
ardyn and
Sadoyne.

4 M iiij.

The two knights
draw their
swords,

kill eight thieves,

then three more,

and follow the
chief, Sylvain,
into the chamber
where Subyon is.

¹⁻¹ *que c'estoit voie larronniere et que eulx toux estoient larrons et murdriers a la facon quilz veoyent deulx.*

²⁻² *siluain auant avec ses compaignons* ³ *escrierent*

⁵ *ne la neust este trouue se par aduenture neust este siluain leur maistre qui leans se cuidoit bouter*

Blanchardyn
kills Sylvain.

Subyon knows
his days will soon
end.

was folowed that Blanchardyn ouer toke hym, and smote hym suche a stroke wyth his swerde, that he made his hede to flee fro the sholdres of hym / and fel ded eyn atte the dore of the chambre / ¹that he had ⁴opened all redy for to haue saued him there wythinne,¹ wher subyon was in grete fere & drede, & not wythout a cause, for he well ynough byleued and knew that his dayes were come atte an ende / syth that he was fallen ⁸into Blanchardynes haudes ¶ I shall here leue to speke of Blanchardyn, of Sadoyne, and of Subyon / that in grete fere was of his dethe, And shal retourne to speke of the proude pucelle in amours, ²and of the ¹²barons that were wythin the castell of Castelforde.²

¶ The liiiij and last chapter conteyneth how blanchardyn wedded his loue, the proude pucell in amours, And of the grete Ioye ¹⁶that was made there / ³and of þ^e kyng of fryse deth.³

After the battle
against Subyon's
army,

Eglantine comes
in hope to wel-
come Blanch-
ardyn.

After that the batayll was fynysshed, and that the folke of Subyon were all ded and taken, the ²⁰proude pucelle in amours cam douz from the toure / where she & the countes of Castelforde were mounted for to see the batayll / and cam to the castel gate for to welcome blanchardyn and sadoyn. whan they were ²⁴com there / they fonde the erle of Castelforde,⁴ [which

^{1-1, 2-2} Wanting in the French.

³⁻³ et de la mort de subien.

⁴ Lord Spencer's copy of Caxton ends here. The text following is supplied from the 1595 edition of the romance.

Comment Blanchandin espousa s'amie lorgueilleuse damours, et de la grande Ioye qui y fut faite, et de la mort de subion.

Apres ce que la bataille fut finie, et que les gens subion furent tous ²⁸mors et prins, lorgueilleuse damours descendy de la tour ou elle et la comtesse de chasteaufort estoient montees, et vindrent a la porte du chateau, pour estre audeuant de blanchandin et sadoine.

(euen then) was come to the Castell with many prisoners
and rich booties of the rebels, she demaunded where
Blanchardine and *Sadony* were. 'Madam,' answered
4 the old Earle, 'it is not long since they were both heere
in our companie, and we supposed that they had bene
alreadie entered the Castell before our comming.' When
the faire Queene perceiued that no tidings could be
8 heard of them, fearing some mischaunce, she fell into a
sounde, wherein she continued the space of an houre
and more; but being recouered, she began most pitte-
ously to weepe and exclaime against fortune: the old
12 Earle and the Countesse recomforted her as well as they
could, but nothing could sort to her content. then they
laid her on a sumptuous bed, hoping by sleepe to make
her forget sorowe; but neither sleepe nor quiet could
16 harber in her head, fearing least *Blanchardine* were

[ed. 1595]

When Eglantine
can hear no
tidings of
Blanchardyn,
she swoons.

¶ Quant la furent venues, elles trouverent le conte de chasteaufort
et les autres barons, qui grand foyson de prisonniers amenoyent avec
eulx, por Iceulx bouter en la place.

20 Alors lorgueilleuse damours, veant *que* son ami blanchandin nestoit
point venu, elle appella le conte, et luy demanda ou estoyent blan-
chandin et sadoine ¶ 'Madame,' ce dit le conte, 'nagaires *que* sy
estoyent avec nous, si ne scay quelle *part* Ilz soyent tournez. Car
24 bien cuidoit *que* ceans fussent entrez vers vous.'

¶ Quant la noble damoiselle oy le conte et le preuost qui la estoit,
qui nouuelles ne sauoyent des Barons De si hault quelle estoit chez
parterre en jettant vng moult hault et piteulx cry. Done eulx qui
28 la furent prins eurent moult grant douleur. Car tous cuiderent *que*
mort fust ce ce que que en elle ne sentoyent ne poulx nalaine ¶ Pi-
toiable chose estoit de voir la gente contesse et les autres gens que la
estoyent / Mais tost apres lorgueilleuse damours reuint a elle en Iettant
32 vng parfont sauspir; puis trespiteusement se prinst a complaindre en
regretter son leal amy *blanchandin* la nauoit si dur cuor d'homme ne
de femme que delle neust pitie ¶ Le bon conte et la bonne contesse
la reconforterent au mieulx quilz pourent, Mais ce riens ne valoît, car
36 de plus en plus commençoit a renforchier son dueil / Ilz lamenerent
en vne chambre; quant la fust venue, on la mist sur vne couche por
lui reposer ¶ La contesse et les dames furent autours delles doulantes
et explourees de ce *que* nullement ne la peurent rapaisier, Car point
40 ne cessoit de faire les plus piteulx et angoisseuses plaintes De jamais
pour son leal ami que cuidoit avoir perdu ¶ Mais gaires narresta

[ed. 1595] slaine. now *Blanchardine* and *Sadony*, hauing slaine
the murtherers and fettred *Subbion*, they mounted vpon
their horses, and tied *Subbion* with cordes fast to the
back of an other horse which they found there ; and 4
by the light of the Moone, tooke their way to *Castel-
ford*, which was distance thence foure miles ; *Sadony*
leading the way, *Subbion* in the midst, and *Blanch-
ardine* the hindmost. They posted so fast, that within 8
short time they came before the gate of the Castell,
where they allighted from their horses ; then knocking
at the gates, they were presently knowne, and with
all speed let in, leading *Subbion* betweene them. the 12
newes being brought to y^e Queene, her melancholy was
turned to mirth, her sorrow to sollace, and her weeping
to laughter. *Blanchardine* commaunded that *Subbion*
should be imprisoned in the most obscure dungeon 16
within the Castell, and that himselfe would become his
Taylor. After which he assended vp into the Queenes
chamber, whom he found new risen, raised by this
happy news, at whose entrance her spirits began to be 20

Blanchardyn
binds Subyon
on a horse,
¹ sign. I 2.

brings him to
Castelford,

and puts him in
a dungeon.

Blanchardyn
rejoins Eglan-
tine.

que ses plaints lui seront retournes en Ioye, comme sy apres pourrez
oyr ¶ Blanchandin et sadoine, qui en la maison des larons estoient,
ou Ilz trouverent subion dedens vne chambre ou Il estoit muchie
mais ce Riens ne lui prouffita Car quant les deux vassaulx le veyrent 24
la Ioye quilz en eurent fut moult grande / Ilz le prindrent et le sai-
sirent et lui lierent piez et mains / puis le monterent sur vng fort
cheual que leans trouverent ¶ Apres saillirent hors de la place / sy
en tirerent leurs destriers, sur lesquels Ilz monterent, et se mirent a 28
chemin vers chasteaufort, qui a deux lieues de la estoit ¶ Sadoine
aloit deuant, et subion apres, Et blanchandin le approuchoit derriere
ensuiant. La luna luisoit belle et clerre / tant cheuau cherent que
en peu despace furent deuant la port de chasteaufort, qui la estoit 32
fermee. Ils commencherent a huchier, en eulx faisant reconnoistre
¶ Quant leur venue fut sceue, de toutes pars y venoyent courant
pour luy faire ouuerture ; & si tost que dedens furent entrez, Ils des-
cendirent au peront deuant la salle. Subion fut mis en vne chartre 36
moult obscure, sans ce que onques depuis leure que Il auoit este
prins, Car bien sauoit que a mort estoit Iugie / Apres ce que les deux
Barons furent leans entrez, leur venue fut noncee a lorgueilleuse
damours, qui moult en eut grant Ioye, comme assez pouez scauoir. 40

recomforted. and after many kisses and sweet imbrace-
ments they sate downe, and spent the night in discours-
ing of their aduentures past.

[ed. 1595]

- 4 But when the day began to peepe, they tooke their
horses and rode to *Tormaday*, against whome (in all
kind manner) came the aged king of *Frize*, who for a
while had rested himself there, accompanied with all
8 the noble Knights and Burgises of *Tormaday*: the
walles were hanged with tapestry, the streets were
strewed with rushes and sweet smelling roses, to gratu-
late their comming; the matrons compiling garlands of
12 sundry flowers, the Ladyes dauncing, the damsels sing-
ing, the musicke sounding a sweet concordance to their
entrie. Thus in tryumph they assended the princely
pallace, most sumptuously adorned with rich cloth of
16 golde, embost with pearle and stone, where, by the
whole aduice and generall consent of all, they were
affiaunced.

Next day they
ride to Torma-
day,

and Blanchardyn
and Eglantine
are betrothd.

- Tantost lui furent muez tous ses pleurs et regretz en parfaite Ioye et
20 leesse. Elle se leua en grant haste; mais ja si tost ne sceut estre
leuee que blanchandin et sadoine ne fussent venus vers elle, dont la
Ioye fut Redoublee / Car deuant tous, elle baisa et embracha son
amy / Moul se deuiserent ensamble de plusieurs choses, La Ioye, la
24 recueillote, et la grant amour que fist blanchandin au bon conte de
chasteaufort, au preoust, et au chevalier du gue, avec les Remercie-
mens deulx, seroient trop longues, si reciter les vouloie. Mais pour
cause de briefte, men pässe. Ils passerent la nuit ¶ Puis, quant ce
28 vint le matin, Ils sapprestèrent et monterent a cheual, en tenant leur
chemin vers tourmaday, ou desia leur venue fut sceue. Le bon Roy
de frize, pere de blanchandin, et tous ceulx de la ville, vindrent au
deuant, ensemble tous les colleges de la cite, a crois et confanons pour
32 receuoir leur dame et blanchandin qui leur seigneur denoit estre.
¶ Moul grand Ioye et grant feste se firent quant ce vint a lasssembler
¶ La ville fut toute tenndue et encourtinee et Ionchie derbe verde,
par les rues, dames et damoiselles bourgeois et pucelles estoient aux
36 fenestres, chantans et demenans Ioye ¶ La estoient plusieurs et
diuers Instrumens qui Iettoient melodieux sons. Ils cheuaucherent
Iusques au palais, ou tous descendirent ¶ Moul grant Ioye y fut
demenee ¶ Apres que tous furent rasserisiez par le conseil des princes
40 et pareillemons de tous ceulx du Royaulme, blanchandin fianca la

[ed. 1595]

The neighboring Princes, which long had bent their deuotions to the¹ sweet Saint which kept her shrine in *Tormaday* (I meane the faire and chast Lady *Eglantine*, surnamed the proude Lady in loue), hauing receiued 4 notice by their espialls, which kept continuall residence within the Cittie of *Tormaday*, to certifie the newes which happened there, to their Princes and Counsels, hearing (I say) that this Queene, whose obstinacie 8 a^lgainst Cupid was incomparable, and peeuish conceit in loue most absurd, had nowe entred the chapter house of his mother *Venus*, being limed in the bush of *Blanchardines* beauty, whose large commendations and 12 magnanimious corage was caryed by the swift winges of flying fame throughout many Realmes and prouinces, the like before was sildome or neuer heard. These kings (I say) whose fancies before that time had receiued the 16 perfect impression of loue in the Angellike beautie of that Princely Queene, whose amber lockes trust vp in golden trammels, was a sufficient addamant to draw all Iron hearts vnto her, now seeing all hope of her 20 recouerie past, and their desires frustrate, with franke and friendly consent, not only come to visit and veiue *Blanchardine*, but also brought such honorable presentes and Kingly Iuels to welcome him to *Tormaday*, and 24 to congratulate the happie mariage betweene him and the faire Princesse *Eglantine*, as their Countries and kingdomes did afford. Some presented him with stately coursers and Iennets of seruice, some with ships 28 of huge and mightie burthen, some with Pearles and Iuels of inestimable valure. And to be short, euery one, though at first his foe and vtter enemy, yet in time veiuing his maiesticall and princely corage, became 32 his true and faithful freends, esteeming him worthy of greater honor than either their personages, presents, or the obtaining of the beautifull Queene of *Tormaday* could afford.

¹ *Orig. thee*

36

The Princes
near are told
of Eglantine's
submission to
Venus.

The Kings

bring marriage-
presents

of coursers,
ships and jewels.

And on the next morning, the beautifull Queene
 was royally led to and from the Church (where she
 was espoused to *Blanchardine*) by two Kings, *Sadony*
 4 and the king of *Frize*: and the same day crowned
 King and Queene of *Tormaday*, to the exceeding com-
 fort of all their subiectes and friendes. After their
 returne from the Church to the Court, they were
 8 feasted with all possible cheere that could bee deuised:
 and after dinner the Trumpets sounded to the Iustes
 and tiltings vntill supper. And after supper, masks,
 playes, and Princely deuises, spent the time till they
 12 went to bed.

[ed. 1595]

Eglantine and
Blanchardyn
are wedded

and crown'd.

On the morrow the feast began a-fresh, and con-
 tinued for the space of twentie daies. After all which

The wedding-
feast lasts 20
days.

belle lorgueilleuse damours / Puis quant ce vint a lendemain matin,
 16 lorgueilleuse damours fut menee au moustier a destree de deux Roys
 ¶ Cest assanoir, du Roy de frize et du Roy sadoine / Et par leuesque
 de la cite furent espousez les deux amans, et furent couronnez comme
 Roy et Royne du Royaulme de tourmaday. Moult grande et noble
 20 fut loffrande ¶ Apres ce que messe fut faicte, Ilz retournerent au
 palays ou les tables furent dreschees ¶ Leaue fut coruee si sas-
 seirent au mengier: de leur metz ne entremetz ne vous fay long
 compte, car moult richement furent seruis de tou ce que corps d'homme
 24 onpouoit aaisier ¶ Des habillemens et atours dont lespoux et espou-
 see furent parez ou vestuz, ne vous vueil tenir compte ¶ Mais bien
 vous ose dire que oncques puis ceneans parauant ne auoit ou veu ne
 sceu plus riches atours ne habillemens que sur les deux amans estoy-
 28 ent; car tous deux estoyent tant beaulx que dieu et nature ny enst
 sceu que amendir ¶ Puis apres ce quilz orent disne, Ioustes tournois
 commencerent, danses et esbatemens / Puis apres, quant temps et
 heure fut de soupper, Ilz sassirent au mengier / Se au disner avoyent
 32 este bien servis, aussi le furent au soupper ¶ Quant le soupper fut
 fait et acheue, et que tous temps fut de eulx retraire, Les deux amans
 furent menez en vne chambre, ou Ils se coucherent ensamble, et en-
 gendrèrent celle nuyt vng filz qui en son temps ot nom Rambault le
 36 frison ¶ Le quel fist et acheua pluseurs et haultes prouesses, et
 morut en la trespitouse bataille de Ramcheuaulx, avec Roland et
 oliuire, qui plus de luy vouldra sauoir, regarde en son histore, qui de
 luy fait mention, et retournerous a notre matiere ¶ Quant ce vint
 40 a lendemain, tous se leuerent par le palais, et recommenca la feste qui
 dura vng Iours entiers ¶ Apres que la solempnite et feste des nopces

[ed. 1595]

1 sign. I 3.

Subyon is
executed.

arroyalties were finysh^led by the commandement of *Blanchardine*, was *Subyon* and all his accomplices brought to execution. now the neues being caried with the swift wings of fame into *Frizeland*, the 4 Lords of *Frize* repaired to *Tormaday*, to accompany home their aged King, and to congratulate this happy marriage of *Blanchardine* and his new Queene.

Blanchardyn's
father, the King
of Friesland,

After the aged King of *Frize*, Father to *Blanchardine*, had seene the espousalls of this beautifull Queene and his noble Sonne; being decrepit & stiffe with age, hauing liued to fourscore and vpward, vnto whome, although his late enlargement from captiuitie, 12 and this new-come ioy of his decre sonne *Blanchardine*, being now married to the beautifull Queene of *Tormaday*, bred delight; Yet through debillitie of nature, which was sore infeebled by his hard imprisonment, he 16

is taken very ill.

was surprised with an vncoth malladie and extreame contagion of dangerous sicknes; in the which he had not long remained, but in the view of all, life began to vade, and death approche. And more to hasten on 20 deathes speedy pace to this senceles olde man, the nobles of *Frizeland*, hauing receiued sure and certaine inteligence from *Tormaday* of the life and freedome of their King at that time there, and the princely mariage 24 which now was fully concluded betweene his successiue heire, their naturall leige *Blanchardine*, with the renowned Lady and Queene of *Tormaday*, they came thither; at whose approche, this fainting olde man, 28 hoping to receiue glad tidings from his aged wife the Queene of *Frize*, began with cheerefull countenance to lift himselfe vp in his bed, as though no kinde of

The Frisian
Nobles

visit him.

furent passees par le commandement du Roy blanchandin, Subion, et 32 tous ses complices furent mis a mort ¶ Assez tost apres les barons du Royaulme de frize, arriuerent a tourmaday pour veoir le Roy leur seigneur, et le Roy blanchandin son filz, dont la Ioye fut renforcee.

deadly malladie or aged grieve had attained his [ed. 1595]
 withered limbes. But when he had a while listened
 to the sweet harmonie of their sugred speach, which
 4 presaged no kind of disaster, but all pleasure and
 sollace that might be, at the length he demaunded of
 the welfare of the aged Queene his wife; vnto whome,
 reply being made, that long time since, vpon the vnfor-
 8 tunate report and tragicall tidings of his captiuitie by
Darius, sonne to the Pagan king *Alimodes*, shee fell
 sicke and died; hee, listening to this impittious tale,
 fell as one distraught into a sound. But comming to
 12 himselfe, powred forth these speeches, ¹the true testi-
 monies of his faithfull loue: 'and is she gon, the
 comfort of my youth, the staffe of my age, the day of
 my night, the sonshine of my blisse, the sollace of my
 16 soule, and the life of my death? Ah! to to well I sus-
 pected (though alas I knew not the certentie) that my
 captiuitie would bring her callamity, and my imprison-
 ment her death. But since all humane flesh is mortall,
 20 and nothing vnder the Sunne permanent, what auailles
 my sorowful grones and passions? to weake, alas, to
 recall her againe, or any way to remedie my misfor-
 tune!' with these or the like exclaimes, this silly aged
 24 King, panting betweene life and death, lay still a while,
 till finding his heart ouer charged with an other pas-
 sion, he prosecuted his first complaint: 'O sacred Ioue, and prays God
 searcher of all secret thoughts, whose eternall dietie
 28 raigneth within the highest heauens, who from my
 cradle hast destined me to perpetuall miserie, now shew
 thy self a righteous iudge, and reuenge my wronges

When Blanchardyn's Father is told of his wife's death,

¹ sign. I 3, back.

he laments her,

and prays God

Mais quant le bon Roy sceut et fut bien aduerti que de ce monde
 32 transitoire esto(it) la Royne sa femme Hors, moult grant dueil en fut
 a demener. Et aussi fist le Roy blanchandin, qui moult en fut doulant
 et criste. Mais si grant dueil nest que en la fin ne conuiengne passer.
 Ia soit et que le bon Roy de frize pour quelque reconfort que on lui
 36 sceust faire, Il ne delaisa son dueil; et tant que du grant courroux

[ed. 1595]

to revenge him
on the Infidels.

vppon the accursed broode of infidels, who so irreligi-
ously prophane thy blessed name, & suffer them not to
escape thy reuenging powre, but at thy pleasure con-
sume and confound the workers of this my woe! and 4
now dissolue my daies and weary life, & leade me
through th' unknowne passages to my deere and
sweetest wife, that though our daies on earth did finde
small comfort, yet our soules in heauen may finde con- 8
solation.' And with this orizon he yeilded himself to
God, and died. When the brute of this heauie tidings
came to the eares of *Blanchardine* and his faire Queene,
although they swume before in the hauen of happines, 12
and floted on the floodes of al felicitie (as they thought),
yet in that very instant and moment of time, a cloudie
mist began to obscure their brightest sonshine, and a
frost of cares to ouer runne their summers blisse. 16

Blanchardyn's
Father dies.Blanchardyn
reproaches
himself

Now began *Blanchardine* to accuse and condemne
himselve of vnnaturall ingratitude and disobedience to
his parentes, to whome both nature and dutie bound
him to bee submissiue and kind; now he began to 20
maligne the time, the place, and the cause of his de-
parture and priuie escape from his fathers Court. But
all in vaine, for as teares, praiers, nor vowes can recall
the dead: so had I wist, and time abused and mispent, 24
is in vaine to ¹be desired. 'And yet (quoth he) how
vnnaturall was I to forsake them whome nature charged
me to loue and obey! now I may iustlie accuse my self
of the murther of these my louing parents: alas! I can- 28
not excuse my selfe, neither can I plead ignoraunce that
I knew not that my departure would be the finishing
of my parentes ioyes, and cause of their death, which
now (to my open shame) I finde most true. And 32
should I, nay, could I, suffer my selfe to be led and
carried away with such vaine fantasies, as leaue them

¹ sign. I 4.for causing his
parents' death
by leaving them.

quil en eut, Il coucha malade, dont Il morut ¶ Le Roy blanchandin

comfortles to whome I was the greatest comfort. Die, [ed. 1595]

Death is his fit
punishment.

Blanchardine, die ! and the rather die, that art the cause
of thy parents death : alas ! to kill a man is hainous
4 murder ; but to murder my parentes, a sinne against
Sanctitie : all creatures haue care to foster those that
gaue them life ; and I, careles in killing my father.
The Storke, when he seeth his sire olde & redy to die
8 with famine, taketh him vpon his shoulders, and feedeth
him by his trauaile : But I, insteede of feeding, haue
famisht, and in place of traueilling, haue traiterously
ouerthrowne my parents.'

- 12 The Lordes of *Tormaday*, seeing this soddaine and The Tormadians
vnexpected chaunce of the death of the aged King, &
the heaueie plight of *Blanchardine* and his beautifull
Quéene, humbly on their knees began to expostulate
16 him in this manner : ' Noble prince ! as the salue com-
meth to late, where the sore is irrecuperable ; as phisicke
is naught worth where the pacient is passing ; and as
fire giuen to the ordinance, tis to late to recall the
20 shot ; So, mightie King, booteles are these teares which
are shed for the dead. the honor of your father hath
eterniz'd his name for euer, though his body be here
interred ; and if fame be the marke whereat all noblo
24 mindes do shoote, then may you boast that he cannot
die whose fame is so ferre spred throughout the world.
Leaue therefore (braue King) to bewaile him whome
you haue cause to ioy for, and comfort our pensiuie
28 Queene and your faire spouse, whose torments cannot
cease, seeing you so sad.' As one newly risen from a
traunce, or out of a heauy slumber, so *Blanchardine*,
hauing listened to this short and sweete discourse of his
32 nobles, began to recall his sences home, which before
were wandring after the Ghost of his father, through

comfort Blanch-
ardyn,

and beg him to
stop sorrowing,
and to cheer his
wife.

son filz fut en tresamert desplaisance, et aussi fut la Royne sa femme,
qui moult lamoit. Il fut porte en terre, et son seruice et obseques

[ed. 1595]

¹ sign. I 4, back.Blanchardyn
comforts Eglan-
tine,and prays her to
be merry.They bury the
King of Fries-
land with great
solemnity.

the Elizian feeldes, and ¹perceiuing sorrow to be both
needlesse and bootlesse, so well as the time and this
hard occasion would permit, he began to be more
cheereful; and so pacing toward the Queene with a 4
simpering smile, neither presaging mirth nor mourning,
he began to recomfort her: 'How now, faire loue?
what, are your melancholies such as nothing can make
you merrie? sweete hart, be pacified, and shake of these 8
vntimelye passions, and learne by me to digest the
hard and harsh pilles of vnhappie fortune. The cause
is mine; and if sorrow be expected in any, it is I that
must be sorrowful; but I haue found it both hurtfull to 12
my body and [not] available² to the dead, and therefore
haue shaken it of as a thing of no regarde. Let vs not
therefore (sweete wife) be the cause of a mournfull
courte, but the authors of merry company, since it hath 16
pleased God to sorte our haps to our harts contentments
in our happy wedding.' The Queene, whose sadnes
grew by reason of her husbands heauinesse, seeing him
to haue so quickly dismissed his heauy passions, be- 20
came presentlye iocund & merry; & so betweene them
commaunded great preparation to be forthwith made, to
performe the obsequies of the deceased King of *Freeze*,
his Father; which shortly, with all solemnitie fitting 24
his estate, was accomplished, to the great admiration of
all beholders, for the sumptuous magnificencie and sur-
passing pompe wherwith he was interred; all costly
odors and sweet senting spices were bountifully be- 28

² ? unavailable

faictes, comme a vng tel Roy appartient. Apres tous les meschiefz et
Infortunes de blanchandin et de sa dame comme Roy et Royne,
rempliz et aournes de toutes bonnes vertus, vesquirent le demourant
leur vie en paix et transquilite en seruice de dieu, amez et cremus de 32
leurs voisins; Et eurent telle grace de nostre seigneur que ains que du
monde se partissent veirent leur filz grant a porter armes, et le feirent
couronner roy de frize ¶ Et vesquirent tres longtemps, en eulx

stowed vpon him; great almes and charity were dealt
and distributed; and innumerable sollemne processions
& praiers were made for him, in honor of his person
4 dead, and loue of his Sonne liuing.

[ed. 1595]

Now *Sadonie*, who was not only a beholder, but a
principall actor in all this heauy tragedie, after these
obsequies were solemnized, and that the estate of his
8 sworne freend *Blanchardine* and his faire Queene rested
in perfect quiet, voyde and free both of forraine and
domesticall enimies, bethinking himselfe of his beauti-
full *Beatrix*, his trusty Regent of *Cassidony* (hee, I
12 say) whome loue had stonge to the quicke by his late
marriage, comning to *Blanchardine*, began thus: 'Since,
Noble freend, and true copartner of all mishaps, that
fortune hath spit her deadly spight, ¹and that now
16 there remaineth no more seruice for me to doe in de-
fence of your royall person, your Realme and Queene;
and that my princely Queene languisheth at home, by
reason of my long absence, whose princely person is
20 the true Idea of my thought; let me craue fauor to
depart, vntill occasion or your freendly letters call me
hether againe, where and when I will not faile, so long
as life shall rest within me, to do you all possible fauor
24 and kindnes.' *Blanchardine* (imagining by himselfe)
that the Sting of loue was a sufficient pricke to call
Sadony home, and that he should greatly iniury him &
his faire *Beatrix*, in withholding them a sunder; not
28 onely gaue his consent for his departure, but with all
honor accompanied him to his ships, with his Princely
Eglantine, where, not without millions of teares and
many kind imbracements, they parted companie.
32 Thus with pleasant gale and quiet tide, *Neptune*

Sadoyne

asks Blanchardyn

¹ sign. K 1.to let him go
home to his wife
Beatrice.Blanchardyn
sees Sadoyne to
his ship,

gouvernant en ce monde, tellement que apres leur mort furent moult
regretez de leurs subgetes et voisins, et dautres qui ne les congnois-
soient, pour le grant renom de leur vie ¶ Tellement se gouvernerent
36 en ce monde transitoire, que Ilz trouuerent paix au Royaulme de

[ed. 1595]

and he sets sail.

guiding the healme, sayled *Sadony* and his warlike companie towards the Realme of *Cassidony*, where his princely Queene, the beautifull *Beatrix*, held her Royall court, but heauy and mournfull for the absence 4 of her Lorde and husband *Sadony*; for wrathfull *Nemisis*, enuying of her good hap, and willing to heape greater woes vpon the Queene, then before shee suspected, altered her hoped blisse into a deadly bane. 8 For when the calme silence of the night procured quiet to all liuing creatures, and that *Hesperus*, the harbenger of *Cinthia*, had giuen charge to call the inferior stars with twinkling light to illumine the earth; *Eolus* on 12 the sodaine began to roare, and with outrageous stormes and cruell blastes to bannish againe the starrs from the firmament, & in their places to spred his dusky clouds, so that instead of light there was obscuritie, with huge 16 and horrible crakes of thuunder: By force whereof, the wandering Prince *Sadony* and his amazed company were, from a sodaine hope of happy arriual, driuen into a dismall feare of drowning: then began the pittie- 20 full clamor of the people, seeing euery waue ready to swallow up the ship wherein they were caried, the foggy mist to thicken with cloudy vapors, that vnneth could the saylors see to doe their labours. *Sadony* (whose 24 corage no fortune was able to daunt) ha'uing his assured hope in the God whome *Blanchardine* made him to know, seeing his company to faint and in dispaire, began to exhort and comfort them in this sort: 28

and threatens to drown them.

1 sign. K 1, back.

Sadoyne bids his monks pray to God.

‘Trustie companion[s] and copartners of mishap, since it hath pleased the maiestie of the eternall God to terrifie with his thunderclaps our feeble hearts, and that all hope of safetie is vtterly denied; let vs with 32 one consent humble our selues before his mercy seat; and no doubt, as in many other our calamities, so in this our desperate distress, he will with the eyes of pittie looke downe vpon our penitencie, and by his 36

omnipotency appease the rage of these troubled seas, [ed. 1595]
which threateneth imminent death and destruction.

Frollike, deere friends! and the God of *Blanchardine*

4 defend us!’ The company seeing *Sudonie* so coragious and full of haughtie valor, inciting them to call vpon
the God of *Blanchardine*, euery one casting away his
dastard feare, eleuating their hearts and hands to

8 heauen, made their orizons thus: ‘Imortall *Iehoua*, pray to God,

guider of this glorious roume! although our dim-sighted
eies haue been long couered with the obscure vaile of
ignorance, & haue abandoned our hearts from thy

12 sacred law, yet since it hath pleased thee to make thy
name and glorie knowne among vs, suffer vs not to
miscarie, vntill wee haue yeelded thee all condng and
heauenly honor, so that from our lips thy praise may

16 flow, and in our hearts thy diety take roote!’ No
sooner was this short & zealous praiser finished, but
horned *Luna* began to shew her head, the cloudes to
vanish, the windes to cease, and the sea to calme,

and the sea soon
grows calm.

20 which yeelded such fuell to their faith, that for euer
they acknowledged the omnipotence of *Blanchardines*
God, and left the same to their posterities. Then the

skilfull Pilots, whose wandring course was past their

24 compasse, looking to the skyes, were directed a true
passage by a christall starre, so that within short time

they reacht the shore of *Cassidony*, where the beauti-
full *Beatrix*, with her Lordly Peeres and Princely

Sadoyne reaches
Cassidonye, and
is receivd by his
wife Beatrice.

28 Ladies, awaited their landing. When *Sadony* was

cieulx. Et sadoine son tresleal compaignon retourna en cassidoine,
ou lui et la Royne beatrix vesquirent en transquilite de ame et de
corps ¶ Ceste histoire ne touche plus anant ou gouuernement du

32 Roy blanchandin, na de la Royne sa femme ¶ Si finirons nostre
hystoire en priant au pere et au filz et au saint esprit, que en la fin de
noz Iours, nous vueille sa grace ottroyer. Amen.

[underlined in red ink]

Explicit expliciat

Quy plus vult scribere scribat.

[ed. 1595] now escaped the danger of the sea, and safely come
 a shore, after humble thanks to God, he seazing vpon
 the rosiall lips of his royall Queene, in whose counten-
 1 sign. K 2. ¹the opinion of all, if nature should devise to frame
 her paragon she might fayle in perfection. But after
 many kinde curtesies and amiable imbracements be-
 Sadoyne ⁸tweene *Sadony* and his *Beautrix*, and the Lordes and
 Ladies, where euery one stroue with kindnes to wel-
 come home her loue, they repaired to the court, where,
 repairs to his ¹²for that night, the King and his Queene spent the time
 Court, in content, and al the rest congratulated their happy
 meetings. On the morrow, when glorious *Phœbus*
 began to cut the cloudes, and drewe the darknes from
 the earth, every one prepared himselfe to be ready to
 attend the princes pleasure. 16

After *Sadony* had royally presented himselfe to the
 veiw of all, giuing a princely boniure to the Lordes
 and nobles, he commaunded that the soldiers, whose
 rewards his ²⁰trauels had beene great, should repaire to his presence,
 soldiers, to receiue a recompence for their paines; which bountie
 did so combine the trustie minds of all vnto him, that
 base was he accompted, that would refuse to hazard his
 life where and when it pleased *Sadony* to commaund. 24
 Then were the lawes, which in his absence the Quéene
 and ratifies laws. and Counsell had deuised, presented to him to ratifie,
 which he *with* all princely magnificencie did forthwith
 establish, to the great admiration and singuler content 28
 of all his subiectes and people. Now tatling swift-
 winged fame, the speedy messenger of happie newes,
 ceased not vntil these tidinges were brought to the
 eares of the King of *Spruse* at the cittie *Mariembourg* 32
 (then in his profound and deep meditations for his
 sonne *Sadony*), and his departed companion. But
 when he heard of the hard aduentures which his sonne
 had escaped by sea, his deliuerie from death on land, 36

- and his most happy marriage with the beautifull [ed. 1595]
Beautrix, banishing feare (whose cankering rust had hears of Sadoyne's marriage,
almost consumed his pleasure) hee, with all his nobles
4 and people, offered burnt sacrifices to their Mahon for
this happie tidings. Yet not content nor satisfied in
minde, he rigged certaine ships, wherein he and diuers
of his Lordes embarqued themselues, longing to visite
8 his son at *Cassidonie*; and led by this sweete desire,
after they had sayled the space of one weeke, they and comes to see him,
came ashore within those territories. But when newes
was brought to *Sadony* that certaine ¹Pagans were 1 sign. K 2, back.
12 arriued, and craued to bee admitted his princely pre-
sence: Ignorant altogether what or whence they
shoulde be: seating himselfe in his Royall throne,
accompanied with his faire Queene and chiefe peeres,
16 hee commaunded them to bee brought to his presence,
vpon whose approche, *Sadony* knowing his father by the Sadoyne
maiestie of his countenance, desended from his seate,
humbling himselfe on his knées at his fathers feete. The
20 faire *Beautrix* vnwitting who he might be, to whome and Beatrice
Sadony should shewe such reuerence, stood in a maze.
But after she knew him to be father to *Sadony*, with a
most gracious and amiable cheere came to entertaine welcome his father.
24 him; to whome the King of *Spruse* rendred millions
of thankes, both for the life and marriage of his
sonne, without whose rescue hee had bin traiterously
murdred, and hanged by *Alimodes*. But the faire
28 Quéene answered, that both her life, liuing, and people
rested in the safetie of *Sadony*, 'without whome (quoth
shee) neythir may I, nor my kingdome, continue.' Now
when the King of *Spruse* had listened to her zealous
32 and sugred tale, fixing a stedfast countenance on her
face, he seemed as one rauished in contemplation, admir-
ing the beauty and bounty of the Queene. But *Sadony*,
thinking his father (after his ariual from sea) to be
36 desirous to repose himself, led him with all maiestie

Beatrice's love
for Sadoyne.

[ed. 1595]

Sadoyne lodges
his Father
royally.But when the
King of Prussia
finds that his
son Sadoyne has
turn'd Christianhe at first curses
him,¹ sign. K 3.but, being per-
suaded by his
Lords,he, the King,
becomes a
Christian too.

into a most princely lodging ; where after his repast, he
 went to bed. the other Lords of his troope, and all
 their followers, were so honorably entertained there,
 that the commendation of *Sadonies* bountie was bruted 4
 euery where. Now on the next morning, when (accord-
 ing to custome) *Sadony* and his faire Queene repaired
 to the Church to heare deuine seruice, the King of
Spruse not suspecting that his Sonne *Sadony* had 8
 altered his religion from his Mahomet ; after the
 Priestes had begun to sing a sollemne procession in
 the honor of Christ, he, as a man distraught in sence,
 and ouercome with madding frenzy, ran vp and downe 12
 cursing and exclaiming against his sonne, so that neither
 perswasions, teares, vowes, nor praier, might once ap-
 pease his frantiecke rage ; till retiring himself all solitary
 into his chamber, tormented with passions & agonies, 16
 at length he fell a sleep ; to whome, a little after, entred
 diuers of the Lordes ¹ which accompanied *Sadonie* from
Marienbrough with *Blanchardine*, and perswaded the
 King that the idolatrous Mahomet was a false deceauer, 20
 and of no diety, which by sundry and wonderfull
 miracles, they had founde Christ to be the true Messias
 and sonne of God ; and, therefore, with all humilitie,
 ioyntly on their knees, they entreated his maiestie to 24
 leaue his superstitious worshipping of blockish Maho-
 met, and with all deuotion to acknowledge² Christ to
 be the true God. And euen at that very instant the
 stony heart of this Pagan King was mollified, who for- 28
 saking his idolatrie, became a christian. This happie
 newes so delighted his sonne, that vnder heauen nothing
 could make him more content. Then laboured *Sadony*
 and his faire Queene, with all royaltie, to welcome their 32
 father and his followers, where their entertainment was
 exceeding measure, both for magnificencie and cost. So
 past the time a moneth or more of their abode in iollity,

² *Orig.* acknowledged

untill the King, desirous to returne to *Marienbourgh*,
 requested leaue of *Sadony* for his departure: who seeing
 the tickle state of his fathers kingdome, in his absence,
 4 wanting a gouernour there, was the more willing; and
 so, all possible prouision being made, with princely
 bounty bestowed by *Sadony* and his *Beatrix* vpon the
 Lords of *Spruse*, they accompanied the King to his
 8 ships. And after humble dutie done by *Sadony* to his
 father, and kinde curtesie to the rest, he recommended
 them to the mercy of *Blanchardines* God.

[ed. 1595]

After a happy
month,Sadoyne's father
goes home to
Prussia.

12 Thus, Gentlemen, to satisfie your expectations, &
 performe my promise, I find you the second part of
Blanchardines aduentures, whose succes (if I finde as
 fortunate as his first) looke shortly, so soone as time
 16 and leasure will serue, for the finishing of all his
 Tragidies.

Look out for
more of Blanch-
ardyn's adven-
tures.

FINIS.



APPENDIX.

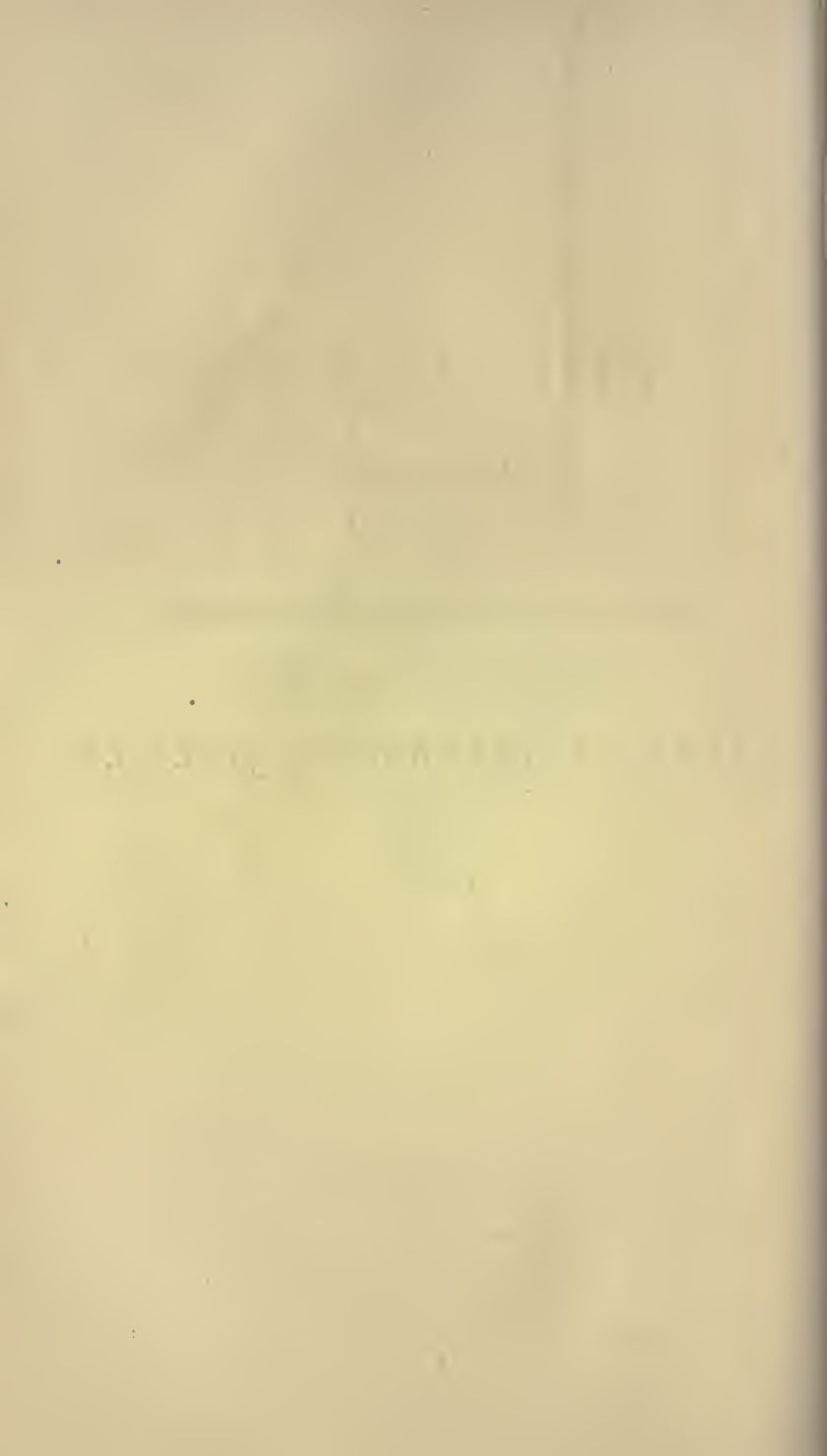
TITLE-PAGES AND DEDICATIONS

OF THE TWO PARTS OF THE

Blanchardine and Eglantine

OF

1595.



[Woodblock.]

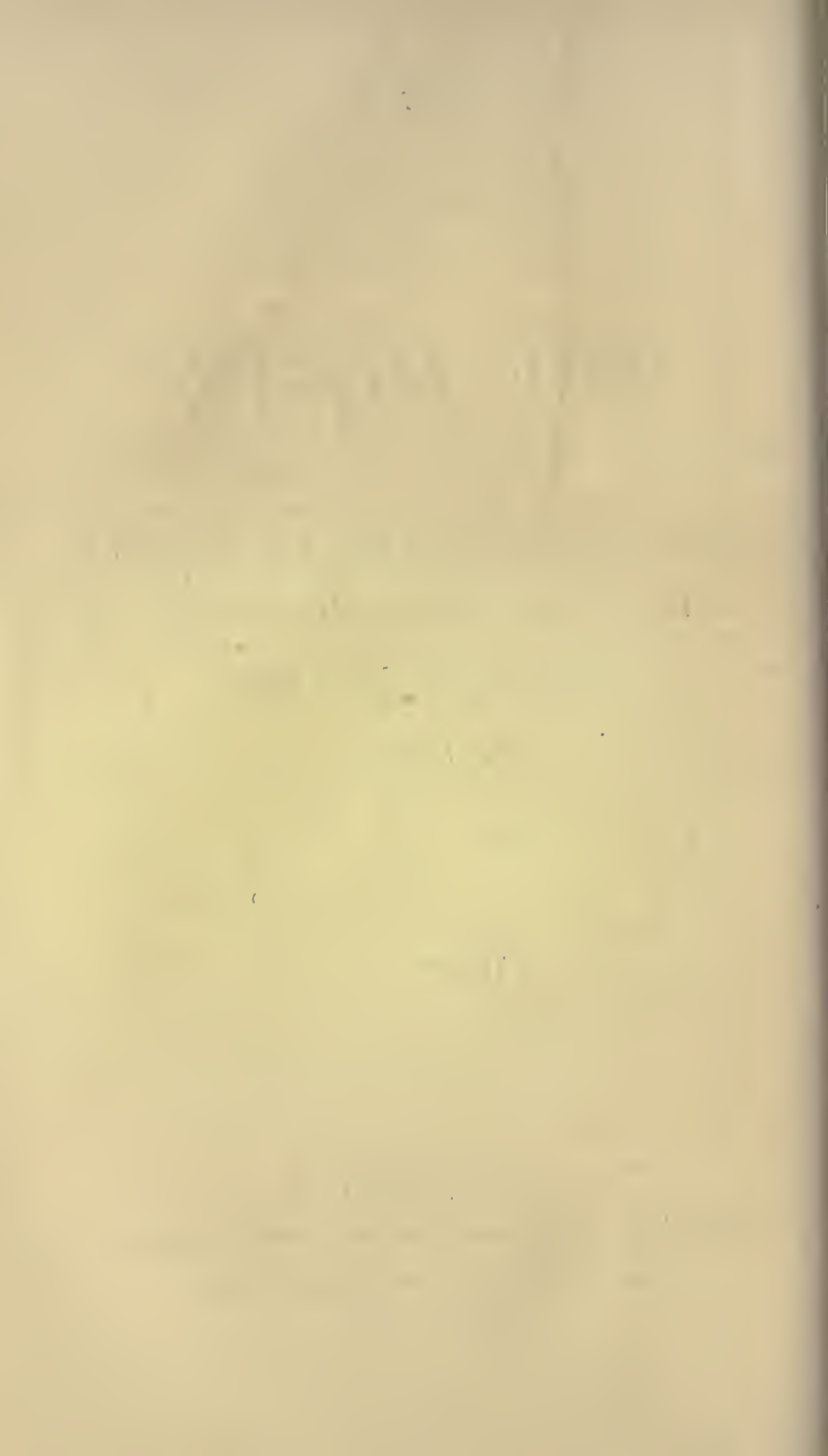
THE MOSTE

Pleafaunt Hiftorye of *Blanchardine*,
Sonne to the King of Friz; & *the faire*
Lady Eglantine Queene of *Tormaday*,
 (furnamed) *The proud Ladye*
in LOVE.

[Woodblock.]

LONDON

Printed for *VVilliam Blackewall*, and are to be
 folde at his Shop, ouer against Guild-
 Hall Gate. 1595.



¹ *To the woorfhipful and moft towardly*

Gentleman M. *William Peeter*, fonne and

heire to the Woorfhipfull Sir

John Peeter Knight.

4



Lthough with barren pen (right Worffhipful) I haue vndertaken the tranflation of this Hiftorie of *Blanchardine*, & the dedication therof to you, whome many fauours haue bound me to honour: knowing 8 the matter to determine nothing but honor & loyaltie, which both may challenge a great propertie in your self: I haue prefumed to offer thefe fruites of my labours to your fauourable acceptaunce, as part & parcell of my bounden duty to your Worffhips Father, your 12 vertuous Mother and your felfe, whose deferts haue tyed me during life the vaffaile of your and their commaunds in all obferuancie.

And if all men are by nature and dutie bound to gratifie his wel-deferuing Freinds, then muft not I ouerflip time to make requitall of 16 your many olde bounties by fome slender gift, fuch as the zeale of my duty & the abilitie of my minde is able to perfourme; and yet ffhall I neuer be able to ridde the feore of your gracious demerits towardes me the meaneft of many fauourits, nor cancel the bandes ²of my 20 dutie to your woorffhipful houle. But hauing imagined many waies to present you with the teftimonie of my humble looue, & finding none either more agreeing to mine eftat, or fitting for your worffhip then this new tranflation of this pleafant hiftory out of Latin, which 24 I haue at idle times vndertaken: whose ftile, although it may feeme rude and barberous and vnfitting your Worffhip, yet I doe not mif-truft, but the matter, beeing both pithie and plefaunt, will incite you

¹ sign. A 2.

² sign. A 2, back.

to read it at your leasures, & cenfure it (not according to the worth), but according to the dutiful defire of the giuer.

And though I, the vnſkilfulleſt of many, doe ſeeme as it were to
4 pluck *Hercules* clubbe out of his hands in vndertaking this tranſlation, which might beſeem a far deeper ſcholler then my ſelf: yet hauing not in my pore oppinion impaired the credit nor wronged my Author in my tranſlation, forcing him to ſpeak rude Engliſh (which
8 floweth with eloquence in latine), yet becauſe my leaſure ſerued, and my dutie bad mee be thankfull, I rather choſe this more then any other, which with all dutiful affection I commend to your learned
veiw.

12 Thus crauing your acceptance of this pore widowes mite, vnder taking the patronage of the ſame, I wiſh you all helth and happines.

Your Worſhips at command,
P. T. G.

16 [Part I of ed. 1595 ends on H 4, with

Thus, Gentlemen, haue I abruptly finiſhed this firſt part of
Blanchardines Aduentures, with the true conſtant loue of fayre
Eglantine, the proude Ladie in loue: which, if it ſhall paſſe with
20 your good fauors, I will verie ſhortly make the ſecond part readie for the preſſe. In the meane while I wiſh ye well.

¶ I N I S.]

[Leaf A j. Woodblock.]

The second part,
OF THE MOST
 Excellent and Famous Historye of
Blanchardine, Sonne to the King of *Frize*,
 and faire *Eglantine* Queene of Torma-
day, surnamed *The Proud Lady*
in Loue.

By P. T. G. Gent.



Imprinted at London for *William Blackwall*, and
 are to be folde at his Shop, ouer-against Guilde-
 hall Gate. 1595.

¹ To the moste forward Patrone of
learning and braue accomplisht Gentleman,

M. *William Peetre*, sonne and heir to the

right worshopfull sir *John*

4

Peetre knight.



Ipercyan the vnskilfull Piper, when he had founded vpon his Oaten reed his rustie Roundelaies in preface of God Mercurie, before whome, Orpheus (douting of his cunning) was ashamed to tune his Harpe: being at the first vncontroled, in the end began to 'blowe lower. So I, right worshopfull, not vnlike this rude Piper, hauing presumed to tune my rustie stringes to larum forth my simple musicke in the translation of the first parte of Blanchardines aduentures, in preface of you, whose learned censure as farre passeth my capacitie, as Mercuries cunning did poore *Ipercyans* skill: yet hauing found your fauourable acceptance of the former, I am encouraged to per- 16
seuer in the dedication of the second parte also, to you, his first and most worthy Patrone; to whose vasselage, not only many vnderfuerd fauours, but bountifull rewardes haue bound me during life, in all obseruancie. And hauing no fitter meane to make manifest the 20
integritie of my zeale, wherewith I honor your wor²shipfull house: I thought it my best to take hold of occasion, whilest (in my conceit) she proffered her selfe to be taken, which I greatly feared, if now I should negligently ouerslip, I should scantily hereafter ouertake. 24

This consideration (right worshopfull) was the spur that prickt me forth to offer the simple kernell which this fruitlesse shell incloseth, to your fauourable view, which I trust you will vouchsafe to accept,

¹ sign. A 2.

² sign. A 2, back.

though not according to the value, which is nothing, yet for the
dutifull desire of the giuer, which is my most. For in this I protest,
you may well deerne, that my willing minde dooth bewraie my good
4 meaning. And as the brightest Sun wanteth not fuell to yeild
increase to his glorious light; so there is not wanting in me a suffi-
cient will, to do you all possible dutie and seruice (by which two, the
Scutchion of my zeale is and shall for euer be supported). Thus
8 more then halfe assured, that this my poore Booke shall finde shelture
to flie vnder the shadow of your wing, in whose good grace (if once
it be armed) I force not what back-biting Momus or his curriish mates
can imagine against it. And as these (my Premities, patronized by
12 you) shall seeme pleasing; so wil I alwaies be most readie (if any
matter of more worth chance into my handes) to offer it vp in all
dutie at your shrine: vntill when I take my leaue, pray-
ing God in this life to grace you with all
16 happines, and in the other life
with all blessednes.

Your Worships euer deuoted,

P. T. G.

NAME INDEX.

- ACHILLES, the hero of the Trojan War, seen on the tapestry by Blanchardyn, 15/15.
- Almanye, Germany, 124/10.
- Alymodes, King of Cassydonye, besieging Tormaday, 38/2, 45/35, 55/18, 56/13, etc.
- Babylonye, Babylon, 125/9.
- Beatrice, daughter of King Alymodes, afterwards wife to Sadoyne, 92/18, 93/1, 97/2, etc.
- Blanchardyn, son of the King of Frise, 12/12, 20, etc.
- Cassydonye, the kingdom of Alymodes, afterwards of Sadoyne, 91/3, 95/11, 18, 96/25.
- Castelforde, Earl of, 179/20, 180/4, 181/9, 182/13, 197/18.
- Caxton, 1/5.
- Corbadas, nephew to King Alymodes, slain by Blanchardyn, 62/21.
- Corboraunt, brother to King Alymodes, 167/9, 168/14, 169/15.
- Darye, Daryus, son to King Alymodes, 56/28, 57/13, 86/7, 92/27, 94/31, 95/11.
- Deyphebus, one of the heroes of the Trojan War, depicted on the tapestry, 15/14.
- Eglantine, Queen of Tormaday, the pucelle in amours, 2/1, 3/3, 182/5, etc., etc.
- Englonde, England, 1/4.
- Fryse (Friesland?), the native country of Blanchardyn, 16/14, 18/21, 21/3, 31/22, etc.
- Grece, Greece, Blanchardyn pretends to be of Greece, 99/36.
- Grekes, Greekes, before Troy, 15/13.
- Hector, 15/13.
- Henry the Seventh, to his mother Caxton dedicates his book, 1/3.
- Mahoum, Mahomet, 100/17.
- Margarete, Duchess of Sommerset, to her 'Blanchardyn' is dedicated, 1/2.
- Maryenborough, Marienburg in Prussia, 95/6, 98/12, 101/1, 102/24, etc.
- Mocastre, the castle of Mocastre, in Greece, 100/7.
- Nourwaye, Northweye, Norweghe, Nourthwege (preceded by the article, on account of -way),¹ 95/12, 96/24, 120/29, 127/21, 132/26, 128/1, 153/6.
- Parys, son of Priam, 15/14.
- Polonye, Poleyne, Poland, 101/2, 31, 105/4, 32, 106/30, 107/19, 108/1, 4.
- Polonyens, Poles invade Prussia, 106/3, 107/11, 17, 108/20.
- Provost of Tormaday, 44/30, 46/3, etc.
- Pruce, Prussia, 98/13, 108/22, 33, 140/11.
- Prussyens, 107/1.

¹ Hence *Macbeth* I. ii: 'Sweno, the Norway's king, craves composition.'

Rome, 124/10.

Rubyon, a giant, suitor for Beatrice,
in the army of King Alynodes,
56/32, 82/25, 83/4 ff.

Sadoyn[e], son of the King of
Prussia, 102/24 ff.

Salamandre, the native country of
the giant Rubyon and of his
brother, 93/19, 95/1, 96/29 ff.

Spayne, 124/10.

Subyon, an upstart in the court of
Eglantine, who betrays her, 173/
9, 24, 175/19, 176/3.

Sylwayne, a thief, 204/8, 205/4, 19.

Tornaday, the residence of Eglan-
tine, 34/10, 38/5, 7, 39/19 ff.

Troians, 15/3.

Troye, 14/13, 15/1, 11.

Troylus, 15/14.

GLOSSARY.

- A, *prep.* (O. E. *on*.) It answers to Modern English *on* or *in*, and precedes nouns, adjectives, and participles present.
- (a) abak, back, *adv.* 167/19; a fote, on foot, 190/6; a horsbak, 180/27, 183/16; awerke, at work, to work, 60/16; a lande, 198/30, 199/25.
- (b) a hyghe, on high, 20/12; alowde, aloud, 180/8, 185/1; alowe, 107/34.
- (c) the noyse and the feste that was *adoyng*, 67/5; she wist not, whether she was *a-wakyng* or a slepe, 152/34.
- A, *prep.* of: a power, 109/9. Probably also in 'alonge' and 'alyue,' see Introduction, p. xvi.
- A, prefix, be-, afore, before, 176/1, 190/6.
- Abak, *adv.* back, 167/19.
- Accomptes, accounts; make accomptes, make hope, 186/27.
- Acoynt, acquainted, 66/27. (O. Fr. *acointier*.)
- Acquyte, acquit, 171/26.
- Ado, affair, 178/28, 195/2. (Original: *affaire*.)
- Affectual, hearty; prayenge right affectually, 49/27.
- Affeyt, educate, 14/17. (O. Fr. *afaitier*, to tame, to educate.)
- Afor, before, 37/17, 176/1.
- Alonge, *adv.* fully, 26/6, 199/3.
- Alonge, *prep.* along, 188/12.
- Alyaunce, alliance, 67/16; plur. 8/23.
- Amarytude, bitterness, 90/5. (L. *amaritudo*. Original: *amertume*.)
- Amours, amoures, love in connection with pucelle, *i. e.* Eglantine, passion; besides this, 69/2, 26, 92/19, 75/15 (amours and loue).
- Amyte, friendship, 188/9. (O. Fr. *amité*.)
- An-angred, angry, 106/7, 169/19, 170/26.
- Apayde, content, satisfied, 28/13, 34/4, 39/15.
- Apostata, renegade, 70/6.
- Appete, aim at, 13/26.
- Appiere, appear, 187/21.
- Ar, ere, before, 62/30.
- Ascrye, exclaim, 106/33, 113/2, 169/29. Cf. *escrye*. (O. Fr. *escrier*.)
- Asondre, asunder, 29/24.
- Aspye, *vb.* spy, 18/10.
- Assaut, assault, 69/3.
- Astäte, estate, 176/10.
- Aswaged, assuage, 155/14.
- Atones, at once, 195/5.
- Atte, at, 197/9, 198/15, 206/8.
- Attouch, touch, 26/8.
- Auantage, advantage, 18/11, 129/25; auauntage, 75/34.
- Auaunced, advance, 101/34, 141/17.
- Aulmonere, purse, 82/8. (O. Fr. *aumosniere*.)
- Auowe, vow, 106/5.
- Awerke, at work, to work, 60/16.
- Ax, ask, 23/13, 33/19, 42/1, 13, 47/12.
- Barnag[e], valiantness, 33/25. (O. F. *barnage*.)
- Bataylle, regiment (same meaning in O. Fr.), 184/32, 201/9, 10.
- Batelment, battlement, 90/18.

- Beaulte, beauty, 8/7, 13/6; (beawte, 13/9).
 Become, go, 18/13.
 Behouffe, behoof, 49/26.
 Behourdyng, jousting, 76/14. (O. F. *behourd*, M. H. G. *buhurd*.) Cf. Chaucer, *C. T.*, Prologue, l. 52: 'Ful ofte tyme he hadde the *bord* bygonne.' But several parallel instances are cited to show that *bord* here means table, the dais at which the guests and host sat.
 Beneured, happy, 11/10. (O. Fr. *ben eurez* = bien heureux.)
 Benyngne, benign, 189/21.
 Beslepe, sleep in, 178/15.
 Bestaylle, cattle, 7/3, 5. (O. Fr. *bestail*.)
 Blasure, escutcheon, 15/21.
 Bode (preterite of *bide*), abode, 180/27.
 Bren, burn, 52/27.
 Broch, broach, 25/4, 26/4, 184/21.
 Bruit (bruyt), report, 19/11, 14, 211/29.
 Bruse, break, 28/9; brusen = bruised. (O. Fr. *brisier*.)
 Bruyaunt, making a noise, a bustle, 42/5. (O. Fr. *bruire*, to make a noise.)
 Bussynes, straight trumpets, 57/11, 183/6. (O. Fr. *busine*; Lat. *buccina*.)
 Butyue? = buty, booty, 204/14.
 Byfyghteresse, valiant woman, 189/15. (Original: *batailleresse*.)
 Caytyf, captive, prisoner, 146/3. (O. Fr. *caitif*; Lat. *captivus*.)
 Cheff, chief, 55/2.
 Chere, cheer, face, 42/5. (O. Fr. *chiere*.)
 Chose (preterite of *chuse*), saw, 25/23; chosen, seen, 53/16.
 Choys, sight, 56/2.
 Cluse, perceive, see, 48/9, 64/5. (Original: *choisir*.)
 Cleues, cliffs, 117/14.
 Coll, embrace, 195/3. (O. Fr. *acoler*.)
 Combrauns, obstacle, hindrance. (O. Fr. *combrance*.)
 Complayse, please, 157/5. (Lat. *complacere*; O. Fr. *complaire*.)
 Comprehende, encompass, embrace, 124/6.
 Conestable, head captain, 100/29, 107/34; counstable, 104/13.
 Conquest, *vb.* conquer, take.
 Conteyne, behave; look well.
 Corage (O. Fr.), mind, 15/17, 16/2, 43/22, 51/11, 52/22, etc.; plur. 17/11.
 Coulpe, fault, 74/9. (Lat. *culpa*.)
 Coyffe, coif, the cap under the helmet, 28/19. (O. Fr. *coiffe*.)
 Crauent, overthrow. (O. Fr. *cra-vanter*.)
 Credence, belief, faith, 185/20. O. Fr. *credance*, *créance*.
 Cure, care, 65/23. (Lat. *cura*.)
 Curteys, courteous, 39/27, 29.
 Damesel (dameseyll, 143/22; dam-oysell, 39/2, 43/28, 47/4, etc.), damsel, 143/8.
 Dampnable, damnable, 177/21.
 Defend, prohibit, 184/8.
 Deffensable, defendable, 190/18.
 Delyber, deliberate, 117/32.
 Delyte, delight, 13/17.
 Demayne (demene, 7/21), complain-
 tantes, make, utter, 21/6. (O. Fr. *demener*.)
 Departe, lay a, lay apart, 17/9.
 Destrer, courser, 27/13. (O. Fr. *destrier*.)
 Detrench, hew to pieces, 28/18, 59/6, 85/30. (O. Fr. *detrenchier*.)
 Deuoyer, duty, 101/6; deuoyre, 113/3. (O. Fr. *devoir*.)
 Deuyse, *vb.* talk, 52/17.
 Denyses, *sb.* talking, conversation, 30/1, 121/5, 129/21, 131/2, 144/32, 153/10. (O. Fr. *deviser*, relate.)
 Displeysaunt, displeasing, disagree-
 able, 27/19; displeased, 127/11.
 Dolaunt, sorry, grieved, 21/2, 25/25, 99/6, etc. (O. Fr. *dolent*, *dolant*, from the verb *doloir*; Lat. *dolere*.)
 Doleaunce, grief, 26/3, 179/2.
 Dommage, (1) it were dommage, it were a pity, 64/27, 74/7.
 (2) damage, injury, 86/27; dam-
 age, 92/10.
 Dommage, *vb.* injure, damage, 200/29.
 Dompst, subdue, 196/14.

- Doub (dowb), dub, 24/2, 8.
 Drad, dreaded, 53/21.
 Dronke, drunk, 178/9.
 Druē, drew, 23/6.
 Dure, endure, 123/19.
 Dyspleasaunce, displeasure, sorrow,
 60/9.

 Efte, afterwards, 59/11.
 Eke, also, 60/21, 126/13. (O. E. *ēac*.)
 Embate, refl. enter vehemently. (O.
 Fr. *s'embatre*.)
 Emonge, among, 191/3.
 Empraynte, encounter, 62/30. (O.
 Fr. *empreinte*.)
 Enfamouse, infamous, 178/5.
 Engyne, wit, 17/3. (O. Fr. *engien*;
 Lat. *ingenium*.)
 Entent, intention, attention, 194/6,
 202/26.
 Entier (O. Fr.), entire, 179/5.
 Eny, any, 178/8, 184/19, 188/33,
 196/31.
 Eschewe, evade, 185/14. (O. Fr.
esquiver.)
 Esprised, inflamed, 68/2, 77/10, 79/
 33. (O. Fr. *espris*, from *esprendre*.)
 Exerceyte, army, 174/33, 175/16, 192/
 11, 197/7. (Lat. *exercitus*.)

 Facion, fashion, maner, 17/2, 157/7,
 189/15.
 Famylyer, familiar, intimate friend,
 51/16.
 Fantassye, sorrowful thoughts,
 112/6.
 Fantasyouse wylle, imagination,
 17/7.
 Faycture, stature, 53/18. (O. Fr.
faicture.)
 Faytes of armes, feats, 14/17, 63/23,
 93/4, 106/12, 24, 157/17.
 Feery, ferry, 34/8.
 Felawe, fellow, 8/6, 8/19.
 Felyship, fellowship, following com-
 pany, 132/2, 135/11, 201/22.
 Fet, fetch, 117/7.
 Forthar, further, 31/5.
 Foyson, plenty, 7/2, 58/27, 89/7.
 Cf. Fuson. (O. Fr. *foison*.)
 Frayed, afraid, 87/13.
 Frist, first, 62/20.
 Fuson, foison, 96/6, 179/31.

 Gadre, gather, 11/8.
 Galhouse, gallows, 187/24, 189/3.
 Gardebras, a piece of armour to pro-
 tect the shoulders and arms, 83/
 16. (O. Fr. Du Cange, *antebrachia*.)
 Germayn (cousin), german, 73/31,
 163/22.
 Graff, engraft, 104/24.
 Gromines, grooms, 19/8.
 Guysarme (O. Fr.), a long weapon
 with a spear at its head, 190/17,
 35, 191/15, 202/24.
 Gybet (gybette), gallows, 182/22,
 188/1, 191/12.

 Habandoune, abandon, 111/21, 136/
 17.
 Haboundaunce, abundance, 144/13,
 148/9, 172/11.
 Haboundaunt, 11/12.
 Haue = lead, take, bring, 96/20,
 177/32, 181/17, 183/2, 189/30,
 etc.
 Hauoyre, property, 64/26, 92/1. (O.
 Fr. *avoir*.)
 Hawten, proud, 173/10. (O. Fr.
haltain.)
 Henged, hanged, 29/7.
 Heue, heave, 28/15, 57/17.
 Hit, it, 19/17, 25/10, 29/8, etc.

 Incontynent (O. Fr.), immediately,
 56/16, 60/4, 64/30, 89/30, 93/30,
 187/1, 194/7.
 Inprenable, impregnable, 182/8.
 Iouencell (O. Fr.), youth, 18/5, 19/
 25, 20/28, 23/4, 25/16, etc.

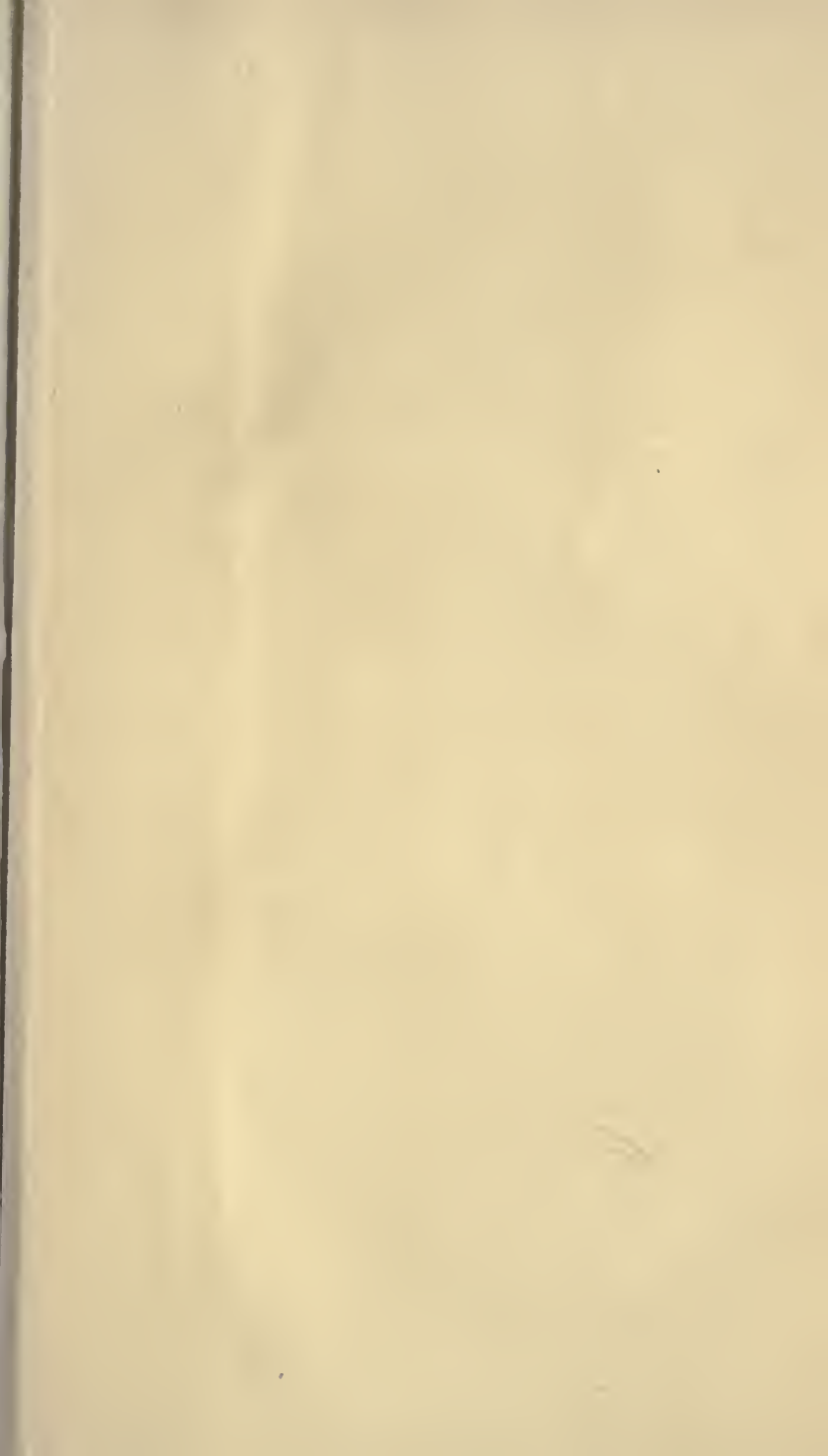
 Kene, cows, 114/9.
 Kerle, churl, 173/18: 'churl' occurs,
 173/13, 16. (O. E. *ceorl*.)
 Knowlege, he came to his know-
 lege, came again to himself, re-
 covered his senses, 49/19.
 Kyen, kine, cows, 119/11. Cf. Kene.
 Kynrede, kindred, 17/9.
 Kyt, cut, 85/30.

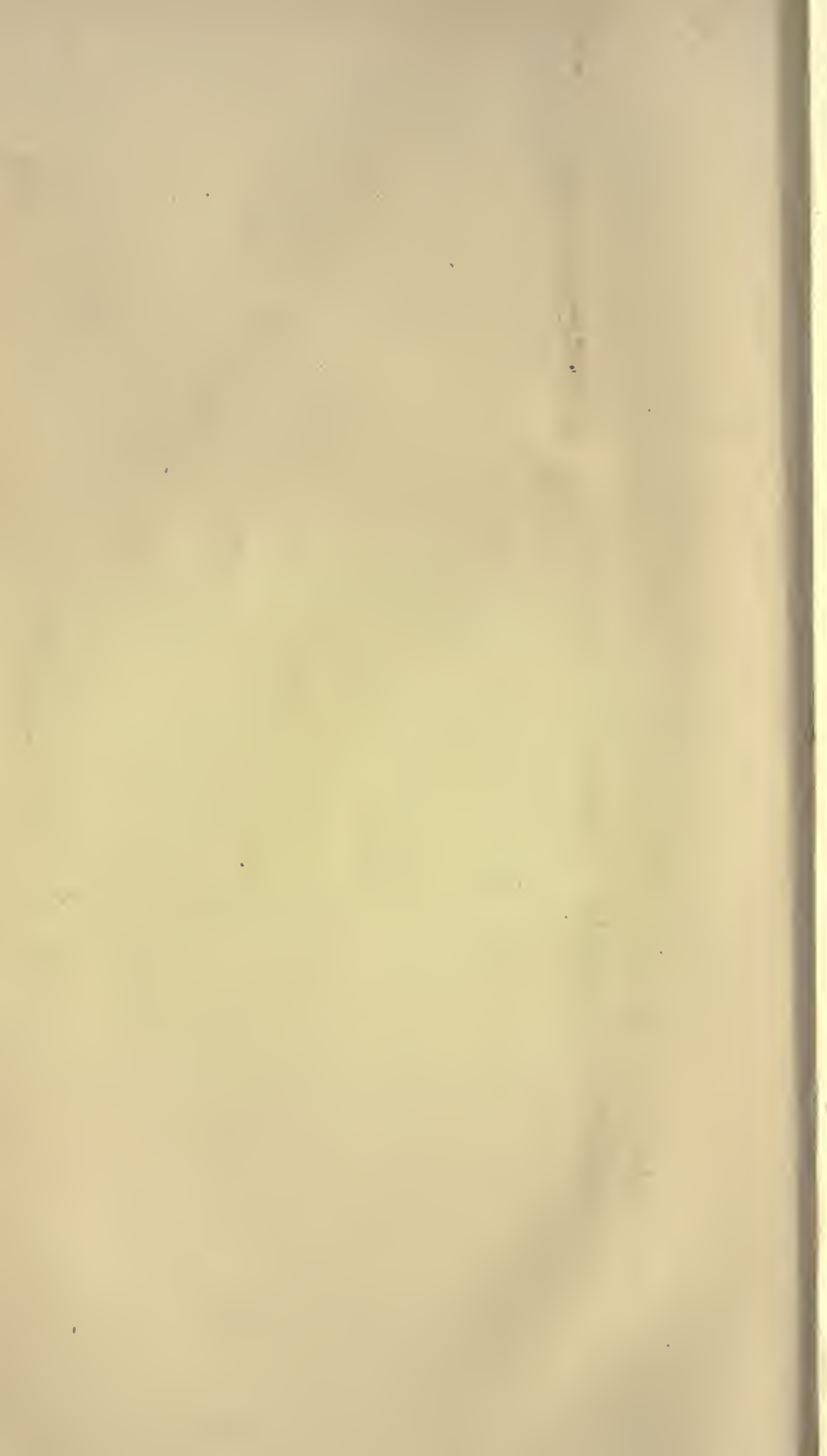
 Lad, led, 50/19.
 Largesse, liberality, 82/19.
 Leches cyrurgiens, surgeons, 102/
 18. (O. E. *lēce*.)
 Lese, lose, 43/15.

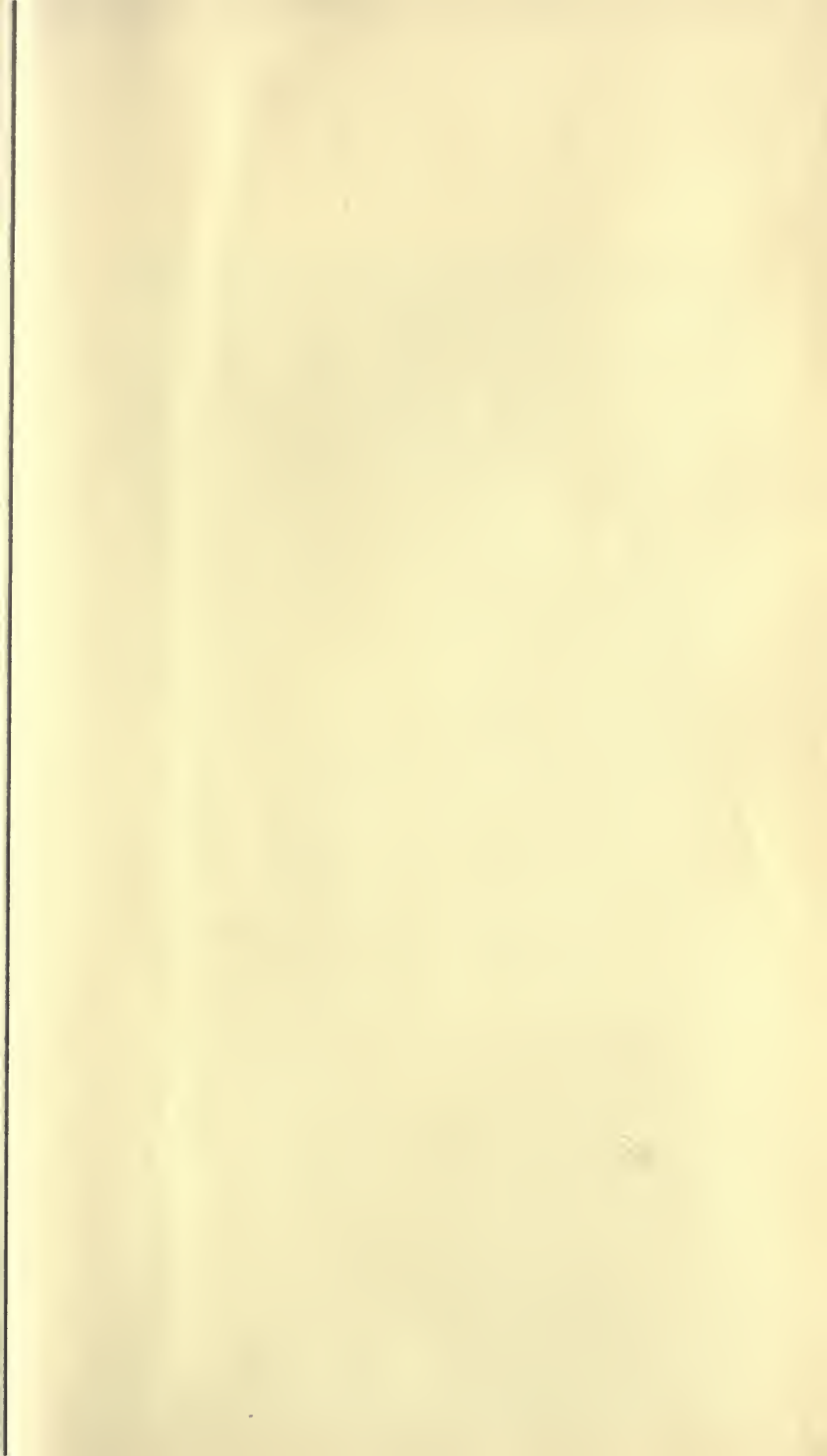
- Lette, hinder, 41/6.
 Leuer, liefer, rather, 183/23.
 Loenge (O. Fr.), praise, 72/9.
 Long, belong, 17/4, 111/26.
 Louenge, loenge, praise, 160/8.
 Lynage, kindred, 72/23, 78/32, 99/35, 109/13.
 Machyne, intend, 177/19, 199/4. (Lat. *machinari*.)
 Madamoselle, 53/3.
 Maister, captain, 205/30.
 Malgre, in spite of, 189/9. Cf. Maulgre. (O. Fr. *malgré*.)
 Mark, observe, notice, 179/30.
 Martrons, martens, 50/26.
 Maulgre, malgre, in spite of, 8/25, 9/1.
 Maumetys (from Mahomet), idols, 137/27.
 Mayster = maister, master, 3/8, 14/2, 14/19, 15/8, 16/10, etc.
 Maystresse, nurse, governess, 38/4, 49/6, 51/4, etc.
 Maystrye, victory, 200/11.
 Medle, fight, battle, 180/14. (O. Fr. *meslee*.)
 Merveyll (Mervayll), marvel, 51/5, 56/31, 63/16, etc.
 Meyne, band, 205/1. (O. Fr. *meignee*.)
 Mo, Moo, more, 104/31, 106/31, 167/6, etc.
 Modere, moderate, 5/7. (O. Fr. *modérer*.)
 Mowe, be able, 14/8, 32/7, 38/14, 43/14, 46/31, etc. (O. E. *mugan*.)
 Myddes, Myddys, middle, 27/18, 48/28.
 Mykel (Mekel), much, 71/26, 93/13, 186/23.
 Mynyshe, diminish, 71/13.
 Myschaunte, miserable, wicked, 178/5, 186/20, 188/29. (O. Fr. *meschëant*.)
 Myspryse, mistake, misbehave, 49/32. (O. Fr. *mesprendre*.)
 Myster, be in need, 77/32. (O. Fr. *mestier*, need, want.)
 Ne, nor, 37/1.
 Necessayre, necessary, 197/28.
 Nother, a, an other (a very common mistake; cf. the tone, the tother, that one, that other), 3/20, 177/35, 188/26, 194/32.
 Noureture (norreture), breeding, education, 60/12, 74/8.
 Nouryce, nurse, 39/4.
 Nyghe, approach, 135/22.
 Nys, ne is, is not, 19/22, 133/4, 148/2.
 Obeyssaunce, obedience, 69/27, 135/35, 196/15.
 Obluyon, forgetting, forgetfulness, 74/1, 94/11.
 Obtempre, obtemperate, grant, 93/17.
 Occysion, slaughter, 58/4, 88/13, 142/28, 166/22. (Lat. *occisio*.)
 Olyphauntes, trumpet, 183/5. (O. Fr. *olifan*.)
 Oost, host, army, 6/19, 9/11, 194/25, 197/8, etc.
 Oryson, prayer, 12/8, 98/8. (O. Fr. *orison*.)
 Ouerwenynge (Original: oultrecuidant), bold, conceited, 72/26, 186/21.
 Oure (Owre), hour, 97/4, 113/13, 117/10, etc.
 Paas, pace, 29/18, 40/10.
 Palays, palace, 12/6, 14/20, etc.
 Paraenture, peradventure, 72/15.
 Parell, peril, 49/11, 98/7.
 Parfit, perfect, 179/2, 192/23.
 Parfurnysshe, grant, 169/1.
 Part, depart, 19/1, 20/14.
 Penoncelles (dim. of pennon, standard), colours, 56/5.
 Pensefull, sad, melancholy, 16/10, 31/10, 127/4, 193/9.
 Perce, pierce, 54/8.
 Perdurable, lasting, 185/23.
 Perell, Pereyll, peril, 182/29, 189/12, 26, 201/24. Cf. Parell.
 Personne, person, 145/23.
 Pert, expert (Original: *appert*), skilled, 190/34.
 Payne, pain, 42/25, 179/1, etc.
 Peysaunt, heavy, 168/11. (Fr. *pesant*.)
 Peyse. See Poyse.
 Pleysaunt, pleasant, 199/31, 200/28.
 Porfend, cleave, 28/21. (O. Fr. *pourfendre*.)

- Powl, pull, 119/17.
 Poyse, weight; assault, attack, 194/15, 28, 201/15. (O. Fr. *poids*.)
 Praty, pretty, 53/16, 56/30, 66/23.
 Proesse, press, throng, 194/26.
 Prese, press, 168/4.
 Prest, ready, 23/20, 28/6, 47/24, etc.
 Preu, Prew, valiant, 164/32, 165/8, 178/7, 193/10. (O. Fr. *preud*, *preu*.)
 Proche, approach, 65/25.
 Proes, prowess, 82/32, 109/4, 180/34, 195/12.
 Proffe, proof, test, 40/21.
 Promesse, promise, 90/7.
 Promettre, *vb.* promise, 78/13; promytte, 131/12, 137/20, 138/30, etc.
 Pryuate, deprive, 23/21.
 Pucell, Pucelle, Pucel, maid, damsel, 40/11, 32, etc.
 Pusell, pucelle, damsel, 143/13.
 Pyere, peer, equal, 147/30.
 Pyght (Original: *adroit*), skilled, 47/31.
 Pytoyoble, pitiful, 94/23.
 Quareylles, arrows, 202/20. (O. Fr. *quarrel*.)
 Queyntaunce, acquaintance, 67/30.
 Quite, acquit, 29/22, 143/12, 19.
 Raenson, ransom, 6/13, 89/35, 92/22.
 Rayson, reason, 126/6.
 Recount (Original: *rencontra*), meet, 163/21. Perhaps a misprint, the regular word being *recountre*, 86/2, 132/4, etc.
 Recule, draw back, 88/22, 106/31, 107/18, 164/9, etc.; recuyelle, 107/5.
 Redoubt, dread, 1/2, 11/11.
 Reffut, refuge, 184/3. (O. Fr. *refuit*, *refui*.)
 Reforce, strengthen, 107/1, 110/13, 113/6.
 Refrene, refrain, 185/11; refreyn, 181/25.
 Renge, range, 105/10, 106/22.
 Rengne, reign, 140/13.
 Renomme, renoun, 38/14, 71/14, 82/32, 99/9, 100/2.
 Renommed, renounced, 48/5.
 Renoyouse, disagreeable, 174/23.
 Renyed, renegade, 185/31.
 Replyque, reply, 54/6.
 Rest, the spere on the rest (Original: *la lance au poing*), 24/16.
 Retentiss, resound, echo, 183/7.
 Reuerence, make the reuerence, courtesy, bow, 70/22, 77/2.
 Rewle, rule, 58/17.
 Rewthe, ruth, regret, sorrow, 17/2, 20/16, 21/5, 30/11, etc.
 Roche, rock, 97/26, 100/11.
 Roughte, reached, attacked, 28/7, 108/4. (M. E. *rechen*, *pt. t.* *raghte*, *raughte*.)
 Roume, room, 165/7.
 Royalne (realme), realm, 6/25, 20/16, 18, 101/2, 103/14, etc.
 Rydde, rode (sg. influenced by the plural), 83/27.
 Salew, salute, 23/3.
 Sauf, save, except, 133/26, 136/1, 138/9.
 Sawt, assault, 187/5.
 Scape, escape, 181/16, 205/22.
 Seen, considering (Original: *attendu*), 29/20.
 Self, same; that self knyght, 51/25.
 Semblaunt, appearance; make a semblaunt, let appear, 37/16.
 Sepayr, separate, 131/29.
 Shewe, show, 137/1.
 Solempne, solemn, 177/16.
 Sore, *adv.* very, 49/2, 59/17, 33, 60/17, etc.
 Sorough, sorrow, 70/7, 90/14.
 Soudyoure, soldier, 38/13, 90/1.
 Special, intimate friend, 84/34.
 Sporys (Spowrys, 26/4), spurs, 18/8, 25/4.
 Sprenct, besprinkled, 25/25.
 Stablysshe, establish, 144/25.
 Sterke ded, quite dead, 27/7, 30/13, 62/25, 87/11.
 Strenthe, strength, 190/13.
 Subgette, subject, 1/6, 11/11.
 Succombe, subdue, 104/30.
 Swone, swoon, 19/28.
 Swoune, swoon, 19/11, 30/7.
 Syn, synce, afterwards, 15/2, 40/1, 195/4.
 Syth, since, 180/3, 183/2, 187/20, etc.

- Tenement, feudal possession, tenure, 52/6.
- Thabylyments = the habiliments, 15/26. The *e* is dropped before nouns beginning with a vowel.
- Thende, the ende, 184/35, 187/17, 24, 197/16.
- Thentree, the entrance, 181/9.
- Thoo days, those days, 144/10.
- Threty, thirty, 71/27. (O. E. *þrittig*.)
- Thusage, the usage, 14/2.
- To-, as prefix of verbs involves the idea of separation, dismembering; cf. O. E. *tóberstan*, burst asunder; *tóbeatn*, beat to pieces.
- To brayne, dash out the brain, 141/27, 169/1.
- To cutte, cut to pieces, 101/20, 141/31.
- To fore, before, 1/10, 3/8, 15/23.
- To hewe, hew to pieces, 142/23, 164/2.
- Torent, rend asunder, 97/21.
- Tourbe, multitude, 191/20. (Lat. *turba*.)
- Toure, tower, 90/16, 19, 206/21.
- Tournoye, tilt, joust, 14/2.
- To your ward = towards you, 38/14; cf. to them warde, 86/1; to hym warde, 89/3.
- Trad, *pt. t.* of tread, 49/1, 89/5.
- Trahyssh, betray, 178/21.
- Traueyلة, work, to labour, 26/21, 31/19.
- Trenchaut, sharp, 28/3.
- Tryste, melancholy, 184/1; trystesse, sadness, 112/3.
- Tysc, entice, 77/8.
- Unfamouse, infamous, 186/20.
- Unpolysshed, unpolluted, 23/25.
- Vaunce, advance, 40/23, 53/19, 62/8, 77/1, etc.
- Veraye, true, 41/2.
- Vitayll, victuals, 7/3.
- Vouchsauuff, 29/2, 46/10.
- Vysage, face, 89/23, 98/23.
- Walop, gallop, 26/5, 42/5, 204/5.
- Warauntyse, protect, defend, 88/4.
- Ware, clever, 167/25. Cf. M. E. 'ware and wise.'
- Waunton, wanton, 72/31.
- Werke, work, 40/15, 71/34, 81/24, 82/35, etc.
- Wexe, wax, become, 54/1, 64/16.
- Where as, where, 4/26, 13/18.
- Whyle, other, sometimes, 1/13.
- Wrecke, revenge, 95/20. (O. E. *wracu*.)
- Wyst, knew, 29/3, 13, 49/4, 183/21.
- Y-, prefix forming past participles. (O. E. *ge*.)
- Yblinded, 113/32.
- Ybounde, 113/32, 170/35.
- Ybrought, 107/20.
- Ycast, 111/25.
- Ygadred, 144/14.
- Yholde, 110/1.
- Yhorsed, 102/5.
- Youghthe, youth, 174/29.
- Yrought, reached, 169/4.
- Ysette, 162/24.









PR
1119
E5
no.58

Early English Text
Society
[Publications]
Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

